Code of Federal Regulations

21
Parts 300 to 499
Revised as of April 1, 2002

Food and Drugs

Containing a codification of documents of general applicability and future effect

As of April 1, 2002

With Ancillaries

Published by
Office of the Federal Register
National Archives and Records Administration

A Special Edition of the Federal Register
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Title 21:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I—Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Continued)</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Finding Aids:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table of CFR Titles and Chapters</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List of CFR Sections Affected</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cite this Code: CFR

To cite the regulations in this volume use title, part and section number. Thus, 21 CFR 300.50 refers to title 21, part 300, section 50.
Explanation

The Code of Federal Regulations is a codification of the general and permanent rules published in the Federal Register by the Executive departments and agencies of the Federal Government. The Code is divided into 50 titles which represent broad areas subject to Federal regulation. Each title is divided into chapters which usually bear the name of the issuing agency. Each chapter is further subdivided into parts covering specific regulatory areas.

Each volume of the Code is revised at least once each calendar year and issued on a quarterly basis approximately as follows:

- Title 1 through Title 16 ..............................................................as of January 1
- Title 17 through Title 27 .................................................................as of April 1
- Title 28 through Title 41 .................................................................as of July 1
- Title 42 through Title 50 .............................................................as of October 1

The appropriate revision date is printed on the cover of each volume.

LEGAL STATUS

The contents of the Federal Register are required to be judicially noticed (44 U.S.C. 1507). The Code of Federal Regulations is prima facie evidence of the text of the original documents (44 U.S.C. 1510).

HOW TO USE THE CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

The Code of Federal Regulations is kept up to date by the individual issues of the Federal Register. These two publications must be used together to determine the latest version of any given rule.

To determine whether a Code volume has been amended since its revision date (in this case, April 1, 2002), consult the “List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA),” which is issued monthly, and the “Cumulative List of Parts Affected,” which appears in the Reader Aids section of the daily Federal Register. These two lists will identify the Federal Register page number of the latest amendment of any given rule.

EFFECTIVE AND EXPIRATION DATES

Each volume of the Code contains amendments published in the Federal Register since the last revision of that volume of the Code. Source citations for the regulations are referred to by volume number and page number of the Federal Register and date of publication. Publication dates and effective dates are usually not the same and care must be exercised by the user in determining the actual effective date. In instances where the effective date is beyond the cutoff date for the Code a note has been inserted to reflect the future effective date. In those instances where a regulation published in the Federal Register states a date certain for expiration, an appropriate note will be inserted following the text.

OMB CONTROL NUMBERS

The Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96–511) requires Federal agencies to display an OMB control number with their information collection request.
Many agencies have begun publishing numerous OMB control numbers as amendments to existing regulations in the CFR. These OMB numbers are placed as close as possible to the applicable recordkeeping or reporting requirements.

**OBSOLETE PROVISIONS**

Provisions that become obsolete before the revision date stated on the cover of each volume are not carried. Code users may find the text of provisions in effect on a given date in the past by using the appropriate numerical list of sections affected. For the period before January 1, 1986, consult either the List of CFR Sections Affected, 1949–1963, 1964–1972, or 1973–1985, published in seven separate volumes. For the period beginning January 1, 1986, a “List of CFR Sections Affected” is published at the end of each CFR volume.

**INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE**

*What is incorporation by reference?* Incorporation by reference was established by statute and allows Federal agencies to meet the requirement to publish regulations in the Federal Register by referring to materials already published elsewhere. For an incorporation to be valid, the Director of the Federal Register must approve it. The legal effect of incorporation by reference is that the material is treated as if it were published in full in the Federal Register (5 U.S.C. 552(a)). This material, like any other properly issued regulation, has the force of law.

*What is a proper incorporation by reference?* The Director of the Federal Register will approve an incorporation by reference only when the requirements of 1 CFR part 51 are met. Some of the elements on which approval is based are:

(a) The incorporation will substantially reduce the volume of material published in the Federal Register.

(b) The matter incorporated is in fact available to the extent necessary to afford fairness and uniformity in the administrative process.

(c) The incorporating document is drafted and submitted for publication in accordance with 1 CFR part 51.

Properly approved incorporations by reference in this volume are listed in the Finding Aids at the end of this volume.

*What if the material incorporated by reference cannot be found?* If you have any problem locating or obtaining a copy of material listed in the Finding Aids of this volume as an approved incorporation by reference, please contact the agency that issued the regulation containing that incorporation. If, after contacting the agency, you find the material is not available, please notify the Director of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington DC 20408, or call (202) 533–4534.

**CFR INDEXES AND TABULAR GUIDES**

A subject index to the Code of Federal Regulations is contained in a separate volume, revised annually as of January 1, entitled CFR INDEX AND FINDING AIDS. This volume contains the Parallel Table of Statutory Authorities and Agency Rules (Table I). A list of CFR titles, chapters, and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are also included in this volume.

An index to the text of “Title 3—The President” is carried within that volume.

The Federal Register Index is issued monthly in cumulative form. This index is based on a consolidation of the “Contents” entries in the daily Federal Register.

A List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA) is published monthly, keyed to the revision dates of the 50 CFR titles.
REPUBLICATION OF MATERIAL

There are no restrictions on the republication of material appearing in the Code of Federal Regulations.

INQUIRIES

For a legal interpretation or explanation of any regulation in this volume, contact the issuing agency. The issuing agency's name appears at the top of odd-numbered pages.

For inquiries concerning CFR reference assistance, call 202-523-5227 or write to the Director, Office of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington, DC 20408 or e-mail info@fedreg.nara.gov.

SALES

The Government Printing Office (GPO) processes all sales and distribution of the CFR. For payment by credit card, call 202-512-1800, M-F, 8 a.m. to 4 p.m. e.s.t. or fax your order to 202-512-2250, 24 hours a day. For payment by check, write to the Superintendent of Documents, Attn: New Orders, P.O. Box 371954, Pittsburgh, PA 15250-7954. For GPO Customer Service call 202-512-1803.

ELECTRONIC SERVICES

The full text of the Code of Federal Regulations, the LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected), The United States Government Manual, the Federal Register, Public Laws, Public Papers, Weekly Compilation of Presidential Documents and the Privacy Act Compilation are available in electronic format at www.access.gpo.gov/nara ("GPO Access"). For more information, contact Electronic Information Dissemination Services, U.S. Government Printing Office. Phone 202-512-1530, or 888-293-6498 (toll-free), E-mail, gpoaccess@gpo.gov.

The Office of the Federal Register also offers a free service on the National Archives and Records Administration’s (NARA) World Wide Web site for public law numbers, Federal Register finding aids, and related information. Connect to NARA’s web site at www.nara.gov/fedreg. The NARA site also contains links to GPO Access.

RAYMOND A. MOSLEY,

Director,

Office of the Federal Register.

April 1, 2002.
Title 21—FOOD AND DRUGS is composed of nine volumes. The parts in these volumes are arranged in the following order: Parts 1–99, 100–169, 170–199, 200–299, 300–499, 500–599, 600–799, 800–1299 and 1300–end. The first eight volumes, containing parts 1–1299, comprise Chapter I—Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services. The ninth volume, containing part 1300 to end, includes Chapter II—Drug Enforcement Administration, Department of Justice, and Chapter III—Office of National Drug Control Policy. The contents of these volumes represent all current regulations codified under this title of the CFR as of April 1, 2002.

Redesignation tables for Chapter I—Food and Drug Administration appear in the Finding Aids section for the volumes containing parts 170–199 and 500–599.
Would you like to know...

If any changes have been made to the Code of Federal Regulations or what documents have been published in the Federal Register without reading the Federal Register every day? If so, you may wish to subscribe to the LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected), the Federal Register Index, or both.

LSA
The LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected) is designed to lead users of the Code of Federal Regulations to amending actions published in the Federal Register. The LSA is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries indicate the nature of the changes—such as revised, removed, or corrected. $31 per year.

Federal Register Index
The index, covering the contents of the daily Federal Register, is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries are carried primarily under the names of the issuing agencies. Significant subjects are carried as cross-references. $28 per year.

A finding aid is included in each publication which lists Federal Register page numbers with the date of publication in the Federal Register.

Superintendent of Documents Subscription Order Form

Order Processing Code:  
*5421

☐ YES, send me the following indicated subscriptions for one year:
   __ LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected), (LCS) for $31 per year.
   __ Federal Register Index (FRSU) $28 per year.

(Includes regular shipping and handling.)

For privacy check box below:
☐ Do not make my name available to other mailers

Check method of payment:
☐ Check payable to Superintendent of Documents
☐ GPO Deposit Account
☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard  (expiration date)

Credit card No.  (must be 20 digits)

Thank you for your order!

Authorizing signature 7/10

Mail To: Superintendent of Documents
P.O. Box 371954
Pittsburgh, PA 15253-7954

Fax your orders (202) 512-2250
Phone your orders (202) 512-1800
Title 21—Food and Drugs

(This book contains parts 300 to 499)

CHAPTER I—Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Continued) ........................................ 300

Cross References: Food Safety and Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture: See 9 CFR chapter III.
United States Customs Service, Department of the Treasury: See Customs Duties, 19 CFR chapter I.
Internal Revenue Service, Department of the Treasury: See Internal Revenue, 26 CFR chapter I.
Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, and Firearms, Department of the Treasury: See Alcohol, Tobacco Products and Firearms, 27 CFR chapter I.
CHAPTER I—FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION, DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES (CONTINUED)

(Parts 300 to 499)

EDITORIAL NOTE: For nomenclature changes to chapter I see 59 FR 14366, Mar. 28, 1994.

SUBCHAPTER D—DRUGS FOR HUMAN USE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>New drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312</td>
<td>Investigational new drug application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314</td>
<td>Applications for FDA approval to market a new drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315</td>
<td>Diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316</td>
<td>Orphan drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Bioavailability and bioequivalence requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328</td>
<td>Over-the-counter drug products intended for oral ingestion that contain alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>329</td>
<td>Habit-forming drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330</td>
<td>Over-the-counter (OTC) human drugs which are generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331</td>
<td>Antacid products for over-the-counter (OTC) human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>332</td>
<td>Antiflatulent products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333</td>
<td>Topical antimicrobial drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336</td>
<td>Antiemetic drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>338</td>
<td>Nighttime sleep-aid drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>340</td>
<td>Stimulant drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>341</td>
<td>Cold, cough, allergy, bronchodilator, and anti-asthmatic drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>343</td>
<td>Internal analgesic, antipyretic, and antirheumatic drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344</td>
<td>Topical OTIC drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>346</td>
<td>Anorectal drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347</td>
<td>Skin protectant drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>348</td>
<td>External analgesic drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>349</td>
<td>Ophthalmic drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>352</td>
<td>Sunscreen drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>355</td>
<td>Anticaries drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357</td>
<td>Miscellaneous internal drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>358</td>
<td>Miscellaneous external drug products for over-the-counter human use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>361</td>
<td>Prescription drugs for human use generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded: Drugs used in research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>369</td>
<td>Interpretative statements re warnings on drugs and devices for over-the-counter sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>370–499</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBCHAPTER D—DRUGS FOR HUMAN USE

PART 300—GENERAL

Subpart A [Reserved]

Subpart B—Combination Drugs

Sec. 300.50 Fixed-combination prescription drugs for humans.

Subpart C—Substances Generally Prohibited From Drugs

300.100 Chlorofluorocarbon propellants.


Subpart A [Reserved]

Subpart B—Combination Drugs

§ 300.50 Fixed-combination prescription drugs for humans.

The Food and Drug Administration’s policy in administering the new-drug, antibiotic, and other regulatory provisions of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act regarding fixed combination dosage form prescription drugs for humans is as follows:

(a) Two or more drugs may be combined in a single dosage form when each component makes a contribution to the claimed effects and the dosage of each component (amount, frequency, duration) is such that the combination is safe and effective for a significant patient population requiring such concurrent therapy as defined in the labeling for the drug. Special cases of this general rule are where a component is added:

(1) To enhance the safety or effectiveness of the principal active component; and

(2) To minimize the potential for abuse of the principal active component.

(b) If a combination drug presently the subject of an approved new-drug application has not been recognized as effective by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs based on his evaluation of the appropriate National Academy of Sciences-National Research Council panel report, or if substantial evidence of effectiveness has not otherwise been presented for it, then formulation, labeling, or dosage changes may be proposed and any resulting formulation may meet the appropriate criteria listed in paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) A fixed-combination prescription drug for humans that has been determined to be effective for labeled indications by the Food and Drug Administration, based on evaluation of the NAS–NRC report on the combination, is considered to be in compliance with the requirements of this section.

[40 FR 13496, Mar. 27, 1975, as amended at 64 FR 401, Jan. 5, 1999]

Subpart C—Substances Generally Prohibited From Drugs

§ 300.100 Chlorofluorocarbon propellants.

The use of chlorofluorocarbons in human drugs as propellants in self-pressurized containers is generally prohibited except as provided by § 2.125 of this chapter.

[43 FR 11317, Mar. 17, 1978]

PART 310—NEW DRUGS

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec. 310.3 Definitions and interpretations.

310.4 Biologics; products subject to license control.

310.6 Applicability of “new drug” or safety or effectiveness findings in drug efficacy study implementation notices and notices of opportunity for hearing to identical, related, and similar drug products.

Subpart B—Specific Administrative Rulings and Decisions

310.100 New drug status opinions; statement of policy.

310.103 New drug substances intended for hypersensitivity testing.

Subpart C—New Drugs Exempted From Prescription-Dispensing Requirements

310.200 Prescription-exemption procedure.

310.201 Exemption for certain drugs limited by new drug applications to prescription sale.
§ 310.3

Subpart D—Records and Reports
310.303 Continuation of long-term studies, records, and reports on certain drugs for which new drug applications have been approved.
310.305 Records and reports concerning adverse drug experiences on marketed prescription drugs for human use without approved new drug applications.

Subpart E—Requirements for Specific New Drugs or Devices
310.500 Digoxin products for oral use; conditions for marketing.
310.501 Patient package inserts for oral contraceptives.
310.502 Certain drugs accorded new drug status through rulemaking procedures.
310.503 Requirements regarding certain radioactive drugs.
310.509 Parenteral drug products in plastic containers.
310.515 Patient package inserts for estrogens.
310.517 Labeling for oral hypoglycemic drugs of the sulfonylurea class.
310.518 Drug products containing iron or iron salts.
310.519 Drug products marketed as over-the-counter (OTC) daytime sedatives.
310.527 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for external use as hair growers or for hair loss prevention.
310.528 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use as an aphrodisiac.
310.529 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for oral use as insect repellents.
310.530 Topically applied hormone-containing drug products for over-the-counter (OTC) human use.
310.531 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for the treatment of boils.
310.532 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) to relieve the symptoms of benign prostatic hypertrophy.
310.533 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for human use as an anticholinergic in cough-cold drug products.
310.534 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for human use as oral wound healing agents.
310.536 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use as a nailbiting or thumb-sucking deterrent.
310.537 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for oral administration for the treatment of fever blisters and cold sores.
310.538 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use for ingrown toenail relief.
310.540 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use as stomach acidifiers.
310.543 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for human use in exocrine pancreatic insufficiency.
310.544 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use as a smoking deterrent.
310.545 Drug products containing certain active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for certain uses.
310.546 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for the treatment and/or prevention of nocturnal leg muscle cramps.
310.547 Drug products containing quinine offered over-the-counter (OTC) for the treatment and/or prevention of malaria.
310.548 Drug products containing colloidal silver ingredients or silver salts offered over-the-counter (OTC) for the treatment and/or prevention of disease.


Subpart A—General Provisions
§ 310.3 Definitions and interpretations.

As used in this part:
(b) Department means the Department of Health and Human Services.
(c) Secretary means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.
(d) Commissioner means the Commissioner of Food and Drugs.
(e) The term person includes individuals, partnerships, corporations, and associations.
(f) The definitions and interpretations of terms contained in section 201 of the act shall be applicable to such terms when used in the regulations in this part.
(g) *New drug substance* means any substance that when used in the manufacture, processing, or packing of a drug, causes that drug to be a new drug, but does not include intermediates used in the synthesis of such substance.

(b) The newness of a drug may arise by reason (among other reasons) of:

(1) The newness for drug use of any substance which composes such drug, in whole or in part, whether it be an active substance or a menstruum, excipient, carrier, coating, or other component.

(2) The newness for a drug use of a combination of two or more substances, none of which is a new drug.

(3) The newness for drug use of the proportion of a substance in a combination, even though such combination containing such substance in other proportion is not a new drug.

(4) The newness of use of such drug in diagnosing, curing, mitigating, treating, or preventing a disease, or to affect a structure or function of the body, even though such drug when used in another disease or to affect another structure or function of the body.

(5) The newness of a dosage, or method or duration of administration or application, or other condition of use prescribed, recommended, or suggested in the labeling of such drug, even though such drug when used in other dosage, or other method or duration of administration or application, or different condition, is not a new drug.

(i) [Reserved]

(j) The term *sponsor* means the person or agency who assumes responsibility for an investigation of a new drug, including responsibility for compliance with applicable provisions of the act and regulations. The “sponsor” may be an individual, partnership, corporation, or Government agency and may be a manufacturer, scientific institution, or an investigator regularly and lawfully engaged in the investigation of new drugs.

(k) The phrase related *drug(s)* includes other brands, potencies, dosage forms, salts, and esters of the same drug moiety, including articles prepared or manufactured by other manufacturers; and any other drug containing a component so related by chemical structure or known pharmacological properties that, in the opinion of experts qualified by scientific training and experience to evaluate the safety and effectiveness of drugs, it is prudent to assume or ascertain the liability of similar side effects and contraindications.

(l) *Special packaging* as defined in section 2(4) of the Poison Prevention Packaging Act of 1970 means packaging that is designed or constructed to be significantly difficult for children under 5 years of age to open or obtain a toxic or harmful amount of the substance contained therein within a reasonable time and not difficult for normal adults to use properly, but does not mean packaging which all such children cannot open or obtain a toxic or harmful amount within a reasonable time.

(m) [Reserved]

(n) The term *radioactive drug* means any substance defined as a drug in section 201(g)(1) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act which exhibits spontaneous disintegration of unstable nuclei with the emission of nuclear particles or photons and includes any nonradioactive reagent kit ornuclide generator which is intended to be used in the preparation of any such substance but does not include drugs such as carbon-containing compounds or potassium-containing salts which contain trace quantities of naturally occurring radionuclides. The term “radioactive drug” includes a “radioactive biological product” as defined in §600.3(ee) of this chapter.


§310.4 Biologics; products subject to license control.

(a) If a drug has an approved license under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 262 et seq.) or under the animal virus, serum, and toxin law of March 4, 1913 (21 U.S.C. 151 et seq.), it is not required to have an approved application under section 505 of the act.

(b) To obtain marketing approval for radioactive biological products for human use, as defined in §600.3(ee) of
§ 310.6 Applicability of "new drug" or safety or effectiveness findings in drug efficacy study implementation notices and notices of opportunity for hearing to identical, related, and similar drug products.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration's conclusions on the effectiveness of drugs are currently being published in the Federal Register as Drug Efficacy Study Implementation (DESI) Notices and as Notices of Opportunity for Hearing. The specific products listed in these notices include only those that were introduced into the market through the new drug procedures from 1938-62 and were submitted for review by the National Academy of Sciences-National Research Council (NAS-NRC), Drug Efficacy Study Group. Many products which are identical to, related to, or similar to the products listed in these notices have been marketed under different names or by different firms during this same period or since 1962 without going through the new drug procedures or the Academy review. Even though these products are not listed in the notices, they are covered by the new drug applications reviewed and thus are subject to these notices. All persons with an interest in a product that is identical, related, or similar to a drug listed in a drug efficacy notice or notice of opportunity for a hearing will be given the same opportunity as the applicant to submit data and information, to request a hearing, and to participate in any hearing. It is not feasible for the Food and Drug Administration to list all products which are covered by an NDA and thus subject to each notice. However, it is essential that the findings and conclusions that a drug product is a "new drug" or that there is a lack of evidence to show that a drug product is safe or effective are applicable to all identical, related, or similar drug products to which they are reasonably applicable. Any product not in compliance with an applicable drug efficacy notice is in violation of section 505 (new drugs) and/or section 502 (misbranding) of the act.

(b)(1) An identical, related, or similar drug includes other brands, potencies, dosage forms, salts, and esters of the same moiety as well as any drug moiety related in chemical structure or known pharmacological properties.

(2) Where experts qualified by scientific training and experience to evaluate the safety and effectiveness of drugs would conclude that the findings and conclusions, stated in a drug efficacy notice or notice of opportunity for hearing, that a drug product is a "new drug" or that there is a lack of evidence to show that a drug product is safe or effective are applicable to an identical, related, or similar drug product, such product is affected by the notice. A combination drug product containing a drug that is identical, related, or similar to a drug named in a notice may also be subject to the findings and conclusions in a notice that a drug product is a "new drug" or that there is a lack of evidence to show that a drug product is safe or effective.

(3) Any person may request an opinion on the applicability of such a notice to a specific product by writing to the Food and Drug Administration at the address shown in paragraph (e) of this section.

(c) Manufacturers and distributors of drugs should review their products as drug efficacy notices are published and assure that identical, related, or similar products comply with all applicable provisions of the notices.

(d) The published notices and summary lists of the conclusions are of particular interest to drug purchasing agents. These agents should take particular care to assure that the same purchasing policy applies to drug products that are identical, related, or similar to those named in the drug efficacy notices. The Food and Drug Administration applies the same regulatory policy to all such products. In many instances a determination can readily be made as to the applicability of a drug efficacy notice by an individual who is knowledgeable about drugs and their indications for use.
§ 310.103 New drug substances intended for hypersensitivity testing.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration is aware of the need in the practice of medicine for the ingredients of drug application is withdrawn under provisions of section 505(e) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, a drug generally recognized as safe may become a “new drug” within the meaning of section 201(p) of said act as amended by the Kefauver-Harris Act on October 10, 1962. This is of special importance by reason of proposed actions to withdraw approval of new drug applications for lack of substantial evidence of effectiveness as a result of reports on that the National Academy of Sciences—National Research Council on its review of drug effectiveness; for example, see the notice published in the Federal Register of January 23, 1968 (33 FR 818), regarding rutin, quercetin, et al.

(c) Any marketed drug is a “new drug” if any labeling change made after October 9, 1962, recommends or suggests new conditions of use under which the drug is not generally recognized as safe and effective by qualified experts. Undisclosed or unreported side effects as well as the emergence of new knowledge presenting questions with respect to the safety or effectiveness of a drug may result in its becoming a “new drug” even though it was previously considered “not a new drug.” Any previously given informal advice that an article is “not a new drug” does not apply to such an article if it has been changed in formulation, manufacture control, or labeling in a way that may significantly affect the safety of the drug.

(d) For these reasons, all opinions previously given by the Food and Drug Administration to the effect that an article is “not a new drug” or is “no longer a new drug” are hereby revoked. This does not mean that all articles that were the subjects of such prior opinions will be regarded as new drugs. The prior opinions will be replaced by opinions of the Food and Drug Administration that are qualified and current on when an article is “not a new drug,” as set forth in this subchapter.

[39 FR 11680, Mar. 29, 1974]
§ 310.200  Prescription-exemption procedure.

(a) Duration of prescription requirement. Any drug limited to prescription use under section 503(b)(1)(C) of the act remains so limited until it is exempted as provided in paragraph (b) or (e) of this section.

(b) Prescription-exemption procedure for drugs limited by a new drug application. Any drug limited to prescription use under section 503(b)(1)(C) of the act shall be exempted from prescription-dispensing requirements when the Commissioner finds such requirements are not necessary for the protection of the public health by reason of the drug’s toxicity or other potentiality for harmful effect, or the method of its use, or the collateral measures necessary to its use, and he finds that the drug is safe and effective for use in self-medication as directed in proposed labeling. A proposal to exempt a drug from the prescription-dispensing requirements of section 503(b)(1)(C) of the act may be initiated by the Commissioner or by any interested person. Any interested person may file a petition seeking such exemption, which petition may be pursuant to part 10 of this chapter, or in the form of a supplement to an approved new drug application.

(c) New drug status of drugs exempted from the prescription requirement. A drug exempted from the prescription requirement under the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section is a “new drug” within the meaning of section 201(p) of the act until it has been used to a material extent and for a material time under such conditions except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section.
(d) Prescription legend not allowed on exempted drugs. The use of the prescription caution statement quoted in section 503(b)(4) of the act, in the labeling of a drug exempted under the provisions of this section, constitutes misbranding. Any other statement or suggestion in the labeling of a drug exempted under this section, that such drug is limited to prescription use, may constitute misbranding.

(e) Prescription-exemption procedure of OTC drug review. A drug limited to prescription use under section 503(b)(1)(C) of the act may also be exempted from prescription-dispensing requirements by the procedure set forth in §330.13 of this chapter.


§310.201 Exemption for certain drugs limited by new-drug applications to prescription sale.

(a) The prescription-dispensing requirements of section 503(b)(1)(C) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act are not necessary for the protection of the public health with respect to the following drugs subject to new drug applications:

(1) N-Acetyl-p-aminophenol (acetaminophen, p-hydroxy-acetanilid) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The N-acetyl-p-aminophenol is prepared, with or without other drugs, in tablet or other dosage form suitable for oral use in self-medication, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The N-acetyl-p-aminophenol and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505 of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 0.325 gram (5 grains) of N-acetyl-p-aminophenol per dosage unit, or if it is in liquid form not more than 100 milligrams of N-acetyl-p-aminophenol per milliliter.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use in minor conditions as a simple analgesic.

(vi) The dosages of N-acetyl-p-aminophenol recommended or suggested in the labeling do not exceed: For adults, 0.65 gram (10 grains) per dose or 2.6 grams (40 grains) per 24-hour period; for children 6 to 12 years of age, one-half of the maximum adult dose or dosage; for children 3 to 6 years of age, one-fifth of the maximum adult dose or dosage.

(vii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the dosage recommendations, a clear warning statement against administration of the drug to children under 3 years of age and against use of the drug for more than 10 days, unless such uses are directed by a physician.

(viii) If the article is offered for use in arthritis or rheumatism, the labeling prominently bears a statement that the beneficial effects claimed are limited to the temporary relief of minor aches and pains of arthritis and rheumatism and, in juxtaposition with directions for use in such conditions, a conspicuous warning statement, such as "Caution: If pain persists for more than 10 days, or redness is present, or in conditions affecting children under 12 years of age, consult a physician immediately".

(2) Sodium gentisate (sodium-2, 5-dihydroxybenzoate) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The sodium gentisate is prepared, with or without other drugs, in tablet or other dosage form suitable for oral use in self-medication, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The sodium gentisate and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 0.5 gram (7.7 grains) per dose of 2.0 grams (31 grains) per 24-hour period; for children
§ 310.201

6 to 12 years of age, one-half of the maximum adult dose or dosage.

(vii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the dosage recommendations, a clear warning statement against administration of the drug to children under 6 years of age and against use of the drug for a prolonged period, except as such uses may be directed by a physician.

(3) Isoamylhydrocupreine and zolamine hydrochloride (N, N-dimethyl-N'-2-thiazolyl-N'-p-methoxybenzyl-ethyl-enediamine hydrochloride) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The isoamylhydrocupreine and zolamine hydrochloride are prepared in dosage form suitable for self-medication as rectal suppositories or as an ointment and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The isoamylhydrocupreine, zolamine hydrochloride, and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 0.25 percent of isoamylhydrocupreine and 1.0 percent of zolamine hydrochloride.

(v) If the preparation is in suppository form, it contains not more than 5.0 milligrams of isoamylhydrocupreine and not more than 20.0 milligrams of zolamine hydrochloride per suppository.

(vi) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use in the temporary relief of local pain and itching associated with hemorrhoids.

(vii) The directions provide for the use of not more than two suppositories or two applications of ointment in a 24-hour period.

(viii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the dosage recommendations, a clear warning statement against use of the preparation in case of rectal bleeding, as this may indicate serious disease.

(4) Phenyltoloxamine dihydrogen citrate (N,N-dimethyl-(a-phenyl-O-toloyl) ethylamine dihydrogen citrate), preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The phenyltoloxamine dihydrogen citrate is prepared, with or without other drugs, in tablet or other dosage form suitable for oral use in self-medication, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The phenyltoloxamine dihydrogen citrate and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 88 milligrams of phenyltoloxamine dihydrogen citrate (equivalent to 50 milligrams of phenyltoloxamine) per dosage unit.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use in the temporary relief of the symptoms of hay fever and/or the symptoms of other minor conditions in which it is indicated.

(vi) The dosages recommended or suggested in the labeling do not exceed: For adults, 88 milligrams of phenyltoloxamine dihydrogen citrate (equivalent to 50 milligrams of phenyltoloxamine) per dose or 264 milligrams of phenyltoloxamine dihydrogen citrate (equivalent to 150 milligrams of phenyltoloxamine) per 24-hour period; for children 6 to 12 years of age, one-half of the maximum adult dose or dosage.

(vii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the dosage recommendations:

(a) Clear warning statements against administration of the drug to children under 6 years of age, except as directed by a physician, and against driving a car or operating machinery while using the drug, since it may cause drowsiness.

(b) If the article is offered for temporary relief of the symptoms of colds, a statement that continued administration for such use should not exceed 3 days, except as directed by a physician.

(5)–(7) [Reserved]

(8) Dicyclomine hydrochloride (1-cyclohexylhexahydrobenzoic acid, β-diethylaminocarbethoxy-bicyclohexyl...
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 310.201

hydrochloride) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The dicyclomine hydrochloride is prepared with suitable antacid and other components, in tablet or other dosage form for oral use in self-medication, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The dicyclomine hydrochloride and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 5 milligrams of dicyclomine hydrochloride per dosage unit, or if it is in liquid form not more than 0.5 milligram of dicyclomine hydrochloride per milliliter.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use by adults and children over 12 years of age, in the temporary relief of gastric hyperacidity.

(vi) The dosages recommended or suggested in the directions for use do not exceed 10 milligrams of dicyclomine hydrochloride per dose or 30 milligrams in a 24-hour period.

(vii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the directions for use, clear warning statements against:

(a) Exceeding the recommended dosage.
(b) Prolonged use, except as directed by a physician, since persistent or recurring symptoms may indicate a serious disease requiring medical attention.
(c) Administration to children under 12 years of age except as directed by a physician.

(9)-(10) [Reserved]

(11) Hexadenol (a mixture of tetracontanes and their oxidation products) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The hexadenol is prepared and packaged, with or without other drugs, solvents, and propellants, in a form suitable for self-medication by external application to the skin as a spray, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The hexadenol and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 5 percent by weight of hexadenol.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use by external application in the treatment of minor burns and minor skin irritations.

(vi) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the directions for use, clear warning statements against:

(a) Use on serious burns or skin conditions or prolonged use, except as directed by a physician.
(b) Spraying the preparation in the vicinity of eyes, mouth, nose, or ears.

(12) Sulfur dioxide preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The sulfur dioxide is prepared with or without other drugs, in an aqueous solution packaged in a hermetic container suitable for use in self-medication by external application to the skin, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The sulfur dioxide and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 5 grams of sulfur dioxide per 100 milliliters of solution.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use by external application to the smooth skin in the prevention or treatment of minor conditions in which it is indicated.

(vi) The directions for use recommend or suggest not more than two applications a day for not more than 1 week, except as directed by a physician.

(13)-(15) [Reserved]

(16) Tuaminoheptane sulfate (2-aminoheptane sulfate) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The tuaminoheptane sulfate is prepared, with or without other drugs,
§ 310.201

in an aqueous vehicle suitable for administration in self-medication as nose drops, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The preparation is packaged with a style of container or assembly suited to self-medication by the recommended route of administration, and delivering not more than 0.1 milliliter of the preparation per drop.

(iii) The tuaminoheptane sulfate and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iv) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(v) The tuaminoheptane sulfate content of the preparation does not exceed 10 milligrams per milliliter.

(vi) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use in the temporary relief of nasal congestion.

(vii) The dosages recommended or suggested in the directions for use do not exceed the equivalent: For adults, 5 drops of a 1 percent solution per nostril per dose, and 5 doses in a 24-hour period; for children 1 to 6 years of age, 3 drops of a 1 percent solution per nostril per dose, and 5 doses in a 24-hour period; for infants under 1 year of age, 2 drops of a 1 percent solution per nostril per dose, and 5 doses in a 24-hour period.

(viii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the dosage recommendations:

(a) Clear warning statements against use of more than 5 doses daily, and against use longer than 4 days unless directed by a physician.

(b) A clear warning statement to the effect that frequent use may cause nervousness or sleeplessness, and that individuals with high blood pressure, heart disease, diabetes, or thyroid disease should not use the preparation unless directed by a physician.

(17) [Reserved]

(18) Vibesate (a mixture of copolymers of hydroxyvinyl chlorideacetate, sebacic acid, and modified maleic rosin ester) preparations meeting all the following conditions.

(i) The vibesate is prepared and packaged, with or without other drugs, solvents, and propellants, in a form suitable for self-medication by external application to the skin as a spray, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The vibesate and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 13 percent by weight of vibesate.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use by external application as a dressing for minor burns, minor cuts, or other minor skin irritations.

(vi) The labeling bears in juxtaposition with the directions for use clear warning statements against:

(a) Use on serious burns and on infected, deep, and puncture wounds unless directed by a physician.

(b) Spraying the preparation near the eyes or other mucous membranes.

(c) Inhaling the preparation.

(d) Use near open flames.

(e) Puncturing the container or throwing the container into fire.

(19) Pramoxine hydrochloride (4-N-butoxyphenyl γ-morpholinopropyl ether hydrochloride) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The pramoxine hydrochloride is prepared, with or without other drugs, in a dosage form suitable for use in self-medication by external application to the skin, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The pramoxine hydrochloride and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 1.0 percent of pramoxine hydrochloride.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use by external application to the skin for the temporary relief of pain or itching due to
minor burns and sunburn, nonpoisonous insect bites, and minor skin irritations.

(vi) The directions for use recommend or suggest not more than four applications of the preparation per day, unless directed by a physician.

(vii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the directions for use, clear warning statements against:

(a) Prolonged use.
(b) Application to large areas of the body.
(c) Continued use if redness, irritation, swelling, or pain persists or increases, unless directed by a physician.
(d) Use in the eyes or nose.

(20) Carbetapentane citrate (2-(2-diethylaminoethoxy)-ethyl-1-phenylcyclopentyl-1-carboxylate citrate) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The carbetapentane citrate is prepared, with or without other drugs, in tablet or other dosage form suitable for oral use in self-medication, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The carbetapentane citrate and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 25 milligrams of carbetapentane citrate per dosage unit; or if it is in liquid form, not more than 1.5 milligrams of carbetapentane citrate per milliliter.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use in the temporary relief of cough due to minor conditions in which it is indicated.

(vi) The dosages recommended or suggested in the labeling do not exceed:

- For adults, 30 milligrams of carbetapentane citrate per dose or 120 milligrams of carbetapentane citrate per 24-hour period; for children 4 to 12 years of age, 7.5 milligrams per dose or 30 milligrams per 24-hour period; for children 2 to 4 years of age, 4.0 milligrams per dose or 16.0 milligrams per 24-hour period.

(vii) The label bears a conspicuous warning to keep the drug out of the reach of children, and the labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the directions for use, the dosage recommendations:

(a) A clear warning statement against administration of the drug to children under 2 years of age, unless directed by a physician.

(b) Clear warning statements against use of the drug in the presence of high fever or if cough persists, since persistent cough as well as high fever may indicate the presence of a serious condition.

(21) Pamabrom (2-amino-2-methylpropanol-1-8-bromotheophyllinate) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The pamabrom is prepared with appropriate amounts of a suitable analgesic and with or without other drugs, in tablet or other dosage form suitable for oral use in self-medication, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The pamabrom and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 50 milligrams of pamabrom per dosage unit.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use in the temporary relief of the minor pains and discomforts that may occur a few days before and during the menstrual period.

(vi) The dosages recommended or suggested in the labeling do not exceed 50 milligrams of pamabrom per dose or 200 milligrams per 24-hour period.

(22) Diphemanil methylsulfate (4-di-phenylmethylene-1,1-dimethyl-piperidinium methylsulfate) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The diphemanil methylsulfate is prepared, with or without other drugs, in a dosage form suitable for use in self-medication by external application to the skin, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.
§ 310.201 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

(i) The diphemanil methylsulfate and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(ii) The diphemanil methylsulfate and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 2.0 percent of diphemanil methylsulfate.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use by external application to the skin for the relief of symptoms of mild poison ivy, oak, and sumac and other minor irritations and itching of the skin.

(vi) The directions for use recommend or suggest not more than four applications of the preparation per day, unless directed by a physician.

(vii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the directions for use, a clear warning statement, such as: "Caution: If redness, irritation, swelling, or pain persists or increases, discontinue use and consult physician."

(23) Dyclonine hydrochloride (4-butoxy-3-piperidinopropiophenone hydrochloride; 4-n-butoxy-β-piperidono-propiophenone hydrochloride) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The dyclonine hydrochloride is prepared, with or without other drugs, in a dosage form suitable for use as a cream or ointment in self-medication by external application to the skin, or rectally, and contains no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The dyclonine hydrochloride and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 1.0 percent of dyclonine hydrochloride.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use:

(a) By external application to the skin for the temporary relief of pain and itching in sunburn, nonpoisonous insect bites, minor burns, cuts, abrasions, and other minor skin irritations.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) In the prevention or treatment of other minor conditions in which it is indicated.

(vi) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the directions for use, clear warning statements against:

(a) Continued use if redness, irritation, swelling, or pain persists or increases, unless directed by a physician.

(b) Use in case of rectal bleeding, as this may indicate serious disease.

(c) Use in the eyes.

(d) Prolonged use.

(e) Application to large areas of the body.

(f) Use for deep or puncture wounds or serious burns.

(24) Chlorothen citrate (chloromethapyriline citrate; N,N-dimethyl-N′-(2-pyridyl)-N′-(5-chloro-2-thenyl) ethylenediamine citrate) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The chlorothen citrate is prepared, with or without other drugs, in tablet or other dosage form suitable for oral use in self-medication, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The chlorothen citrate and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 25 milligrams of chlorothen citrate per dosage unit.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use in the temporary relief of the symptoms of hay fever and/or the symptoms of other minor conditions in which it is indicated.

(vi) The dosages recommended or suggested in the labeling do not exceed:

For adults, 25 milligrams of chlorothen citrate per dose or 150 milligrams of chlorothen citrate per 24-hour period; for children 6 to 12 years of age, one-half of the maximum adult dose or dosage.

(vii) The labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the dosage recommendations:

(a) Clear warning statements against administration of the drug to children under 6 years of age or exceeding the recommended dosage, unless directed
by a physician, and against driving a car or operating machinery while using the drug, since it may cause drowsiness.

(b) If the article is offered for the temporary relief of symptoms of colds, a statement that continued administration for such use should not exceed 3 days, unless directed by a physician.

(25) [Reserved]

(26) Methoxyphenamine hydrochloride (β-(o-methoxyphenyl)-isopropyl-methylamine hydrochloride; 1-(o-methoxyphenyl)-2-methy lamino-propane hydrochloride) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The methoxyphenamine hydrochloride is prepared with appropriate amounts of a suitable antitussive, with or without other drugs, in a dosage form suitable for oral use in self-medication, and containing no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The methoxyphenamine hydrochloride and all other components of the preparation meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 3.5 milligrams of methoxyphenamine hydrochloride per milliliter.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use in the temporary relief of cough due to minor conditions in which it is indicated.

(vi) The dosages recommended or suggested in the labeling do not exceed: For adults, 35 milligrams of methoxyphenamine hydrochloride per dose or 140 milligrams of methoxyphenamine hydrochloride per 24-hour period; for children 6 to 12 years of age, one-half of the maximum adult dose or dosage.

(vii) The label bears a conspicuous warning to keep the drug out of the reach of children.

(27) Biphenamine hydrochloride (β-diethylaminoethyl-3-phenyl-2-hydroxybenzoate hydrochloride) preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The biphenamine hydrochloride is prepared in a form suitable for use as a shampoo and contains no drug limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act.

(ii) The biphenamine hydrochloride meets its professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iii) If the preparation is a new drug, an application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for it.

(iv) The preparation contains not more than 1 percent of biphenamine hydrochloride.

(v) The preparation is labeled with adequate directions for use for the temporary relief of itching and scaling due to dandruff.

(vi) The label bears a conspicuous warning to keep the drug out of the reach of children.

(28) Tyloxapol (an alkylarylpolyether alcohol) and benzalkonium chloride ophthalmic preparations meeting all the following conditions:

(i) The tyloxapol and benzalkonium chloride are prepared, with other appropriate ingredients which are not drugs limited to prescription sale under the provisions of section 503(b)(1) of the act, as a sterile, isotonic aqueous solution suitable for use in self-medication on eye prostheses.

(ii) The preparation is so packaged as to volume and type of container as to afford adequate protection and be suitable for self-medication with a minimum risk of contamination of the solution during use. Any dispensing unit is sterile and so packaged as to maintain sterility until the package is opened.
(iii) The tyloxapol, benzalkonium chloride, and other ingredients used to prepare the isotonic aqueous solution meet their professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(iv) An application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act is approved for the drug.

(v) The preparation contains 0.25 percent of tyloxapol and 0.02 percent of benzalkonium chloride.

(vi) The label bears a conspicuous warning to keep the drug out of the reach of children and the labeling bears, in juxtaposition with the dosage recommendations, a clear warning that if irritation occurs, persists, or increases, use of the drug should be discontinued and a physician consulted. The labeling includes a statement that the dropper or other dispensing tip should not touch any surface, since this may contaminate the solution.

(b) A proposal to require additional or continued studies with a drug for which a new drug application has been approved may be made by the Commissioner on his own initiative or on the petition of any interested person, pursuant to part 10 of this chapter. Prior to issuance of such a proposal, the applicant will be provided an opportunity for a conference with representatives of the Food and Drug Administration. When appropriate, investigators or other individuals may be invited to participate in the conference. All requirements for special studies, records, and reports will be published in §310.304.

310.305 Records and reports concerning adverse drug experiences on marketed prescription drugs for human use without approved new drug applications.

(a) Scope. FDA is requiring manufacturers, packers, and distributors of marketed prescription drug products that are not the subject of an approved new drug or abbreviated new drug application to establish and maintain records and make reports to FDA of all serious, unexpected adverse drug experiences associated with the use of their drug products. Any person subject to the reporting requirements of paragraph (c) of this section shall also develop written procedures for the surveillance, receipt, evaluation, and reporting of postmarketing adverse drug experiences to FDA.

(b) Definitions. The following definitions of terms apply to this section:
§ 310.305 Adverse drug experience

Adverse drug experience. Any adverse event associated with the use of a drug in humans, whether or not considered drug related, including the following: An adverse event occurring in the course of the use of a drug product in professional practice; an adverse event occurring from drug overdose whether accidental or intentional; an adverse event occurring from drug abuse; an adverse event occurring from drug withdrawal; and any failure of expected pharmacological action.

Disability. A substantial disruption of a person’s ability to conduct normal life functions.

Life-threatening adverse drug experience. Any adverse drug experience that places the patient, in the view of the initial reporter, at immediate risk of death from the adverse drug experience as it occurred, i.e., it does not include an adverse drug experience that, had it occurred in a more severe form, might have caused death.

Serious adverse drug experience. Any adverse drug experience occurring at any dose that results in any of the following outcomes: Death, a life-threatening adverse drug experience, inpatient hospitalization or prolongation of existing hospitalization, a persistent or significant disability/incapacity, or a congenital anomaly/birth defect. Important medical events that may not result in death, be life-threatening, or require hospitalization may be considered a serious adverse drug experience when, based upon appropriate medical judgment, they may jeopardize the patient or subject and may require medical or surgical intervention to prevent one of the outcomes listed in this definition. Examples of such medical events include allergic bronchospasm requiring intensive treatment in an emergency room or at home, blood dyscrasias or convulsions that do not result in inpatient hospitalization, or the development of drug dependency or drug abuse.

Unexpected adverse drug experience. Any adverse drug experience that is not listed in the current labeling for the drug product. This includes events that may be symptomatically and pathophysiologically related to an event listed in the labeling, but differ from the event because of greater severity or specificity. For example, under this definition, hepatic necrosis would be unexpected (by virtue of greater severity) if the labeling only referred to elevated hepatic enzymes or hepatitis. Similarly, cerebral thromboembolism and cerebral vasculitis would be unexpected (by virtue of greater specificity) if the labeling only listed cerebral vascular accidents. “Unexpected,” as used in this definition, refers to an adverse drug experience that has not been previously observed (i.e., included in the labeling) rather than from the perspective of such experience not being anticipated from the pharmacological properties of the pharmaceutical product.

(c) Reporting requirements. Each person identified in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section shall report to FDA adverse drug experience information as described in this section and shall submit one copy of each report to the Division of Pharmacovigilance and Epidemiology (HFD–730), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(1) Postmarketing 15-day “Alert reports”. (i) Any person whose name appears on the label of a marketed prescription drug product as its manufacturer, packer, or distributor shall report to FDA each adverse drug experience received or otherwise obtained that is both serious and unexpected as soon as possible, but in no case later than 15 calendar days of initial receipt of the information by the person whose name appears on the label. Each report shall be accompanied by a copy of the current labeling for the drug product.

(ii) A person identified in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section is not required to submit a 15-day “Alert report” for an adverse drug experience obtained from a postmarketing study (whether or not conducted under an investigational new drug application) unless the applicant concludes that there is a reasonable possibility that the drug caused the adverse experience.

(2) Postmarketing 15-day “Alert reports”—followup. Each person identified in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section shall promptly investigate all serious, unexpected adverse drug experiences.
§ 310.305 that are the subject of these post-
marketing 15-day Alert reports and
shall submit followup reports within 15
calendar days of receipt of new infor-
mation or as requested by FDA. If addi-
tional information is not obtainable,
records should be maintained of the un-
successful steps taken to seek addi-
tional information. Postmarketing 15-
day Alert reports and followups to
them shall be submitted under separate
cover.

(3) Submission of reports. To avoid un-
necessary duplication in the submis-
sion of, and followup to, reports re-
quired in this section, a packer’s or dis-
tributor’s obligations may be met by
submission of all reports of serious ad-
verse drug experiences to the manufac-
turer of the drug product. If a packer
or distributor elects to submit these
adverse drug experience reports to the
manufacturer rather than to FDA, it
shall submit each report to the manu-
facturer within 5 calendar days of its
receipt by the packer or distributor,
and the manufacturer shall then com-
ply with the requirements of this sec-
tion even if its name does not appear
on the label of the drug product. Under
this circumstance, the packer or dis-
tributor shall maintain a record of this
action which shall include:

(i) A copy of each adverse drug expe-
rience report;

(ii) The date the report was received
by the packer or distributor;

(iii) The date the report was sub-
mitted to the manufacturer; and

(iv) The name and address of the
manufacturer.

(4) Each report submitted to FDA
under this section shall bear prominent
identification as to its contents, i.e.,
“15-day Alert report,” or “15-day Alert
report-followup.”

(5) A person identified in paragraph
(c)(1)(i) of this section is not required
to resubmit to FDA adverse drug expe-
rience reports forwarded to that person
by FDA; however, the person must sub-
mite all followup information on such
reports to FDA.

(d) Reporting form. (1) Except as pro-
vided in paragraph (d)(3) of this sec-
tion, each person identified in para-
graph (c)(1)(i) of this section shall sub-
mit each report of a serious and unex-
pected adverse drug experience on an
FDA Form 3500A (foreign events may
be submitted either on an FDA Form
3500A or, if preferred, on a CIOMS I
form).

(2) Each completed FDA Form 3500A
should pertain only to an individual
patient.

(3) Instead of using Form FDA Form
3500A, a manufacturer, packer, or dis-
tributor may use a computer-generated
FDA Form 3500A or other alternative
format (e.g., a computer-generated
tape or tabular listing) provided that:

(i) The content of the alternative for-
mat is equivalent in all elements of in-
formation to those specified in FDA
Form 3500A, and

(ii) The format is agreed to in ad-
vance by MedWatch: The FDA Medical
Products Reporting Program.

(4) Ten copies or fewer of FDA Form
3500A and/or a copy of the instructions
for completing the form may be ob-
tained from the Division of Pharaco-
vigilance and Epidemiology
(HFD–730), Center for Drug Evaluation
and Research, Food and Drug Adminis-
tration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville,
MD 20857. More than 10 copies of the
form may be obtained by writing to the
Consolidated Forms and Publications
Distribution Center, Washington Com-
merce Center, 3222 Hubbard Rd., Land-
over, MD 20785.

(e) Patient privacy. Manufacturers,
packers, and distributors should not in-
clude in reports under this section the
names and addresses of individual pa-
tients; instead, the manufacturer,
packer, and distributor should assign a
unique code number to each report,
preferably not more than eight char-
acters in length. The manufacturer,
packer, and distributor should include
the name of the reporter from whom
the information was received. Names of
patients, individual reporters, health
(continued)
required under this section to be reported, including raw data and any correspondence relating to the adverse drug experiences, and the records required to be maintained under paragraph (c)(4) of this section.

(2) Manufacturers and packers may retain the records required in paragraph (f)(1) of this section as part of its complaint files maintained under §211.198 of this chapter.

(3) Manufacturers, packers, and distributors shall permit any authorized FDA employee, at all reasonable times, to have access to and copy and verify the records established and maintained under this section.

(g) Disclaimer. A report or information submitted by a manufacturer, packer, or distributor under this section (and any release by FDA of that report or information) does not necessarily reflect a conclusion by the manufacturer, packer, or distributor, or by FDA, that the report or information constitutes an admission that the drug caused or contributed to an adverse effect. The manufacturer, packer, or distributor need not admit, and may deny, that the report or information submitted under this section constitutes an admission that the drug caused or contributed to an adverse effect. The manufacturer, packer, or distributor need not admit, and may deny, that the report or information submitted under this section constitutes an admission that the drug caused or contributed to an adverse effect.


Subpart E—Requirements for Specific New Drugs or Devices

§ 310.500 Digoxin products for oral use; conditions for marketing.

(a) Studies have shown evidence of clinically significant differences in bioavailability in different batches of certain marketed digoxin products for oral use from single manufacturers as well as in batches of these products produced by different manufacturers. These differences were observed despite the fact that the products met compendial specifications. Other studies have shown that there is a sufficient correlation between bioavailability in vivo and the dissolution rate of digoxin tablets in vitro to make the dissolution test an important addition to the compendial standards. Because of the potential for serious risk to cardiac patients using digoxin products which may vary in bioavailability, the Commissioner of Food and Drugs has determined that immediate action must be taken to assure the uniformity of all digoxin products for oral use. The Commissioner is of the opinion that digoxin products for oral use are new drugs within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act for which approved new drug applications are required. The Commissioner has determined that, because of questions raised regarding the bioavailability of digoxin products for oral use, there is sufficient evidence to invoke the authority under section 505(j) of the act to fully investigate this question and to facilitate a determination of whether there is a ground for withdrawal of approval of the drug product under section 505(e) of the act. Marketing of these products may be continued only under the following conditions:

(1) Digoxin products for oral use, other than tablets: Any person marketing digoxin products for oral use, other than tablets, shall submit to the Food and Drug Administration on or before February 21, 1974, an abbreviated new drug application for these products. Any such drug product then on the market which is not the subject of an application submitted for the drug product shall be subject to regulatory procedures under section 505 of the act. In addition to the information specified in §314.50 of this chapter, the application shall contain:

(i) A full list of the articles used as components of the digoxin product, specifications for components, detailed identification and analytical procedures used to assure that the components meet established specifications of identity, strength, quality, and purity and a complete description of the manufacturing process.

(ii) The source of the digoxin used in the formulation including the name and address of the supplier.

(iii) A statement that stability studies will be conducted to establish a suitable expiration date for the digoxin...
§ 310.500 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

product in the form in which it is distributed.

(iv) A statement that the product label will contain a suitable expiration date. In the absence of any stability test data, this expiration date shall be no longer than one year after the batch is manufactured. If the expiration date is greater than one year, supporting stability data shall be included in the application.

(v) Labeling that is in compliance with all requirements of the act and regulations promulgated thereunder, the pertinent parts of which are indicated in paragraph (e) of this section.

(vi) A statement that the applicant will initiate recall of all stocks of the drug product outstanding when so requested by the Food and Drug Administration.

(vii) A statement that the applicant intends to conduct in vivo bioavailability tests and that the applicant, under the records and reports provisions of section 505(k) of the act, will:

(a) Within 30 days after the submission of the application, submit to the Food and Drug Administration the protocol which the applicant proposes to follow in conducting these in vivo bioavailability tests. The protocol shall contain all of the essential elements set forth in paragraph (d) of this section. The tests shall not be initiated prior to receiving notification from the Food and Drug Administration that the bioavailability protocol has been reviewed and either approved or its deficiencies delineated.

(b) Within 180 days after receiving notification from the Food and Drug Administration that the bioavailability protocol has been reviewed, submit to the Food and Drug Administration the results of the in vivo bioavailability tests.

(2) Digoxin tablets: Any person marketing digoxin tablets, in addition to complying with all of the requirements of paragraph (a)(1) of this section, shall include in their abbreviated new drug application:

(i) A statement that the applicant will establish procedures to test each lot of digoxin tablets prior to releasing the batch for distribution to assure that the batch meets all of The United States Pharmacopeia (USP XVIII) requirements for digoxin tablets including, but not limited to, potency, content uniformity, and dissolution and either (a) that the quantity of digoxin dissolved at one hour is not more than 95 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin or (b) that the quantity of digoxin dissolved at 15 minutes is not more than 90 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin.

(ii) A statement that finished product specifications shall be established to include provisions to assure that the range of average one-hour dissolution values among batches of digoxin tablets does not exceed 20 percent.

(3) Before releasing for distribution any batch of digoxin tablets manufactured after January 22, 1974, the manufacturer shall:

(i) Test a sample of the batch to assure that the batch meets all of the requirements of The United States Pharmacopeia (USP XVIII) including but not limited to, potency, content uniformity, and dissolution and either (a) that the quantity of digoxin dissolved at one hour is not more than 95 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin or (b) that the quantity of digoxin dissolved at 15 minutes is not more than 90 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin.

(ii) Submit a sample of the batch to the Food and Drug Administration according to the procedures set forth in paragraph (g) of this section. Results of tests conducted on the batch by or for the manufacturer and the batch production record shall accompany the sample.

(iii) Withhold the batch from distribution until he is notified by the Food and Drug Administration that the sample was tested and found to meet all of the requirements in The United States Pharmacopeia (USP XVIII) for potency, content uniformity, and dissolution and either (a) that the quantity of digoxin dissolved at one hour is not more than 95 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin or (b) that the quantity of digoxin dissolved at 15 minutes is not more than 90 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin.

(iv) Submit a sample of each batch of digoxin tablets as provided for in paragraph (a)(3)(ii) of this section until he
DIGOXIN LABELING GUIDANCE

(ADULT AND PEDIATRIC)

DESCRIPTION

Digoxin is one of the cardiac (or digitalis) glycosides, a closely related group of drugs having in common specific and powerful effects on the myocardium. These drugs are found in a number of plants. The term "digitalis" is used to designate the whole group. Typically, the glycosides are composed of three portions: a steroid nucleus, a lactone ring, and a sugar (hence "glycosides").

(This section should include a chemical and physical description of digoxin and the same quantitative ingredient information as that required on the label.)

ACTION

The digitalis glycosides have qualitatively the same therapeutic effects on the heart. They (1) increase the force of myocardial contraction, (2) increase the refractory period of the atrioventricular (A-V) node, and (3) to a lesser degree, affect the sinoatrial (S-A) node and conduction system via the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous systems.

Gastrointestinal absorption of digoxin is a passive process. About 50–75 percent of digoxin in tablet form is absorbed. Digoxin is only 20–25 percent bound to plasma proteins and is predominantly excreted by the kidneys unmethylated unless there is significant renal failure. Renal excretion of digoxin is proportional to glomerular filtration rate and is largely independent of urine flow. Digoxin is not effectively removed from the body by dialysis, exchange transfusion, or during cardiopulmonary bypass, presumably because of tissue binding. In subjects with normal renal function, digoxin is excreted exponentially with an average half-life of 36 hours.

Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 310.500

is notified by the Food and Drug Administration that he is released from the certification program. This notification will be made on the basis of sample test results, inspectional findings regarding compliance with current good manufacturing practice, and compliance with all other requirements of this section and any other directives issued by the Food and Drug Administration as a condition for release from the certification program.

(4) Any manufacturer who has distributed any batch of digoxin tablets which does not meet the compendial requirement for dissolution, when tested by the method in The United States Pharmacopeia (USP XVIII), shall initiate recall of the subject batch when so requested by the Food and Drug Administration.

(b) Failure of an applicant to submit the protocol and/or the results of the in vivo bioavailability tests showing adequate evidence of the product’s bioavailability within the times specified in paragraph (a)(1)(vii) of this section and/or to comply with all of the certification requirements of paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be justification for withdrawal of approval of the application under section 565(e) of the act.

(c) Any product reformulation or change in manufacturing process will require the submission of a supplement to the approved abbreviated new drug application containing adequate data to demonstrate the bioavailability of the reformulated product. Food and Drug Administration approval of the supplement is required before the reformulated product is marketed. The Food and Drug Administration recommends that, where digoxin tablets are reformulated, manufacturers reformulate their product to achieve dissolution of 70 to 90 percent at one hour when tested by all three methods (i.e., the USP method, and the “paddle-water” and “paddle-acid” methods) described in paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) The protocol for the in vivo bioavailability tests required in paragraphs (a) and (c) of this section shall employ a three-way crossover design using the digoxin test product; a reference digoxin tablet supplied, on request, by the Food and Drug Administration; and bulk digoxin USP in an oral solution. Appropriate venous blood and urinary samples are to be collected and analyzed. The method shall be capable of detecting the difference between the reference tablet and the reference oral solution. Bioavailability of the test product shall be demonstrated if a mean absorption of at least 75 percent of the combined mean of the two reference standards is observed. Assistance in developing a protocol for a particular dosage formulation may be obtained by contacting the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (HFD–420), 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(e) Parts of the digoxin product labeling indicated below shall be as follows:

DIGOXIN LABELING GUIDANCE

(ADULT AND PEDIATRIC)

DESCRIPTION

Digoxin is one of the cardiac (or digitalis) glycosides, a closely related group of drugs having in common specific and powerful effects on the myocardium. These drugs are found in a number of plants. The term “digitalis” is used to designate the whole group. Typically, the glycosides are composed of three portions: a steroid nucleus, a lactone ring, and a sugar (hence “glycosides”).

(This section should include a chemical and physical description of digoxin and the same quantitative ingredient information as that required on the label.)

ACTION

The digitalis glycosides have qualitatively the same therapeutic effects on the heart. They (1) increase the force of myocardial contraction, (2) increase the refractory period of the atrioventricular (A-V) node, and (3) to a lesser degree, affect the sinoatrial (S-A) node and conduction system via the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous systems.

Gastrointestinal absorption of digoxin is a passive process. About 50–75 percent of digoxin in tablet form is absorbed. Digoxin is only 20–25 percent bound to plasma proteins and is predominantly excreted by the kidneys unmethylated unless there is significant renal failure. Renal excretion of digoxin is proportional to glomerular filtration rate and is largely independent of urine flow. Digoxin is not effectively removed from the body by dialysis, exchange transfusion, or during cardiopulmonary bypass, presumably because of tissue binding. In subjects with normal renal function, digoxin is excreted exponentially with an average half-life of 36 hours.
hours, resulting in the loss of 35–40 percent of the body stores daily.

Serum levels and pharmacokinetics are essentially unchanged by massive weight loss, suggesting that lean body mass should be used in dosage calculations. The peak blood level from oral dosing with tablets occurs 1–3 hours after administration. The onset of therapeutic action of digoxin after oral tablets is 1–2 hours, with the peak therapeutic effect occurring 6–8 hours after dosing.

INDICATIONS

1. Congestive heart failure, all degrees, is the primary indication. The increased cardiac output due to digoxin results in diuresis and general amelioration of the disturbances characteristic of right (venous congestion, edema) and left (dyspnea, orthopnea, cardiac asthma) heart failure.

Digoxin, generally, is most effective in “low output” failure and less effective in “high output” (bronchopulmonary insufficiency, infection, hyperthyroidism) heart failure.

Digoxin should be continued after heart failure is abolished unless some known precipitating factor is corrected.

2. Atrial fibrillation, especially when the ventricular rate is elevated. Digoxin rapidly reduces ventricular rates and eliminates the pulse deficit. Palpitation, precordial distress or weakness are relieved and any concomitant congestive failure ameliorated.

Digoxin should be continued in doses necessary to maintain the desired ventricular rate and other clinical effects.

3. Atrial flutter. Digoxin slows the heart and regular sinus rhythm may appear. Frequently the flutter is converted to atrial fibrillation with a slow ventricular rate. Stopping digoxin at this point may be followed by restoration of sinus rhythm, especially if the flutter was of the paroxysmal type. It is preferable, however, to continue digoxin if failure ensues or if atrial flutter is a frequent occurrence.

4. Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia. Oral digoxin may be used, especially if the condition is resistant to lesser measures. Depending on the urgency, a more rapid acting parenteral preparation may be preferable to initiate digitalization, although if heart failure has ensued or paroxysms recur frequently, digoxin should be maintained by oral administration.

Digoxin is not indicated in sinus tachycardia unless due to heart failure.

5. Cardiogenic shock. The drug is often employed, especially when the condition is accompanied by pulmonary edema. Digoxin seems to affect adversely shock due to septicemia from gram negative bacteria.

CONTRAINDICATIONS

The presence of toxic effects (See ADVERSE REACTIONS section) induced by any digitalis preparation is a contraindication to all of the glycosides.

Allergy, though rare, does occur. It may not extend to all preparations, and another may be tried.

Ventricular fibrillation.

WARNINGS

Digitalis alone or with other drugs has been promoted for use in the treatment of obesity. This use of digoxin or other digitalis glycosides is unwarranted. Moreover, since they may cause potentially fatal arrhythmias or other adverse effects, the use of these drugs in the treatment of obesity is dangerous.

Many of the arrhythmias for which digoxin is advised closely resemble those reflecting digoxin intoxication. If the possibility of digoxin intoxication cannot be excluded, cardiac glycosides should be temporarily withheld if permitted by the clinical situation.

The patient with congestive heart failure may complain of nausea and vomiting. These symptoms may also be indications on digoxin intoxication. A clinical determination of the cause of these symptoms must be attempted before further drug administration.

Patients with renal insufficiency require smaller than usual doses of digoxin. See ACTION section for mechanism.

PRECAUTIONS

Atrial arrhythmias associated with hypermetabolic states are particularly resistant to digoxin treatment. Care must be taken to avoid digoxin toxicity if digoxin is used to help the arrhythmia.

Digoxin is not indicated for the treatment of ventricular tachycardia unless congestive heart failure supervenes after a protracted episode not itself due to digoxin.

Potassium wastage may result from diuretic or corticosteroid therapy, hemodialysis, and from suction of gastrointestinal secretions. It may accompany malnutrition, diarrhea, prolonged vomiting, old age, and long-standing congestive heart failure. In general, rapid changes in serum potassium or other electrolytes are to be avoided, and intravenous treatment with potassium should be reserved only for special circumstances as
Digitalization may be accomplished by any means and by increasing the heart rate. Adequate and the serum potassium level is low or normal, potassium should be administered intravenously in a solution of 5 percent dextrose in water. A total of 40-100 milliequivalents (30 milliequivalents per 500 milliliters) is given at the rate of 20 milliequivalents per hour unless limited by pain due to local irritation. Additional amounts may be given if the arrhythmia is uncontrolled and the potassium well tolerated. Continuous electrocardiographic monitoring should be performed to watch for any evidence of potassium toxicity, e.g., peaking of T waves, and to observe the effect on the arrhythmia so that the infusion may be promptly stopped when the desired effect is achieved. CAUTION: Potassium should not be used and may be dangerous for severe or complete heart block due to digoxin and not related to any tachycardia. Other agents that have been approved for the treatment of digoxin intoxication include procainamide, lidocaine, and propranolol.

DOSAGE AND ADMINISTRATION

Oral digoxin is administered slowly or rapidly as required until the desired therapeutic effect is obtained without symptoms of overdose. The amount can be predicted approximately from the lean body mass of the patient with allowances made for excretion during the time taken to induce digitalization. Subsequent maintenance dosage is also determined tentatively by the amount necessary to sustain the desired therapeutic effect. Recommanded dosages are practical average figures that may require considerable modification as dictated by individual sensitivity or associated conditions. Diminished renal function is the most important factor requiring modification of recommended or average doses. (See WARNINGS and PRECAUTIONS sections.) The average amount of digoxin that patients must accumulate to be digitalized with digoxin tablets is 1.0-1.5 milligrams. Digitalization may be accomplished by any
§ 310.500

21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

of several approaches that vary in dosage and frequency of administration, but reach the same endpoint in terms of total amount accumulated.

In previously undigitalized patients, a single loading dose of 0.5–0.75 milligram orally usually produces a detectable effect in 1–2 hours that becomes maximal in 6–8 hours. Additional doses of 0.25–0.5 milligram may be given cautiously at 6–8 hour intervals to full digitalization.

In previously undigitalized patients, institution of daily maintenance therapy (0.125–0.5 milligram, see next paragraph) without a loading dose results in development of a steady-state plateau concentrations in about 7 days in patients with normal renal function.

The average daily oral maintenance dose is 0.125–0.5 milligram, usually 0.25 milligram. In the elderly patient, 0.125–0.25 milligram should be considered the average maintenance dose.

In patients with renal impairment, digoxin excretion is impaired and serum half-life is prolonged (see ACTION section). Digitalizing and maintenance doses are lower than those recommended for patients with normal renal functions. Signs of digoxin toxicity develop sooner in patients with renal impairment, and it takes longer for toxic signs and symptoms to disappear. Because of the prolonged half-life, a longer period of time is required to achieve an initial or new steady-state plateau.

In previously undigitalized patients, institution of daily maintenance therapy (0.125–0.5 milligram, see next paragraph) without a loading dose results in development of a steady-state plateau concentrations in about 7 days in patients with normal renal function.

The average daily oral maintenance dose is 0.125–0.5 milligram, usually 0.25 milligram. In the elderly patient, 0.125–0.25 milligram should be considered the average maintenance dose.

In patients with renal impairment, digoxin excretion is impaired and serum half-life is prolonged (see ACTION section). Digitalizing and maintenance doses are lower than those recommended for patients with normal renal functions. Signs of digoxin toxicity develop sooner in patients with renal impairment, and it takes longer for toxic signs and symptoms to disappear. Because of the prolonged half-life, a longer period of time is required to achieve an initial or new steady-state plateau.

In previously undigitalized patients, institution of daily maintenance therapy (0.125–0.5 milligram, see next paragraph) without a loading dose results in development of a steady-state plateau concentrations in about 7 days in patients with normal renal function.

The average daily oral maintenance dose is 0.125–0.5 milligram, usually 0.25 milligram. In the elderly patient, 0.125–0.25 milligram should be considered the average maintenance dose.

It cannot be overemphasized that the values given are averages and substantial individual variation can be expected.

If pediatric dosage is available, the labeling sections above should be expanded to include the following information.

PEdiATRIC inFORMATiON

WARNiNGS

Newborn infants display considerable variability in their tolerance to digoxin, depending on their degree of maturity.

Premature and immature infants are particularly sensitive, and dosage must be reduced and digitalization should be even more individualized and cautiously approached than in more mature infants. Impaired renal function must also be carefully taken into consideration.

Congestive heart failure accompanying acute glomerulonephritis requires extreme care in digitalization. A relatively low total dose administered in divided doses and concomitant use of antihypertensive drugs has been recommended. ECG monitoring is essential. Digoxin should be discontinued as soon as possible.

Patients with idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis must be managed extremely carefully. Unless cardiac failure is severe, it is doubtful whether digoxin should be employed.

Patients with rheumatic carditis, especially when severe, are unusually sensitive to digoxin and prone to disturbances of rhythm. If heart failure develops, digitalization may be initiated with relatively low doses; then it can be cautiously increased until a beneficial effect is obtained. If a therapeutic trial does not result in improvement, the drug should be considered ineffective and be discontinued.

NOTE: Digitalis glycosides are an important cause of accidental poisoning in children.

PRECAUTIONS

Dosage must be carefully titrated and differences in the bioavailability of parenteral preparations, elixirs, and tablets should be taken into account when switching patients from one preparation to another.

Electrocardiographic monitoring may be necessary to avoid intoxication.

Premonitory signs of toxicity in the newborn are undue slowing of the sinus rate, sinoatrial arrest, and prolongation of PR interval.

ADVERSE REACTIONS

Toxic signs differ from the adult in a number of respects. Cardiac arrhythmias are the more reliable and frequent signs of toxicity.

Vomiting and diarrhea, neurologic and visual disturbances are rare as initial signs.

Premature ventricular systoles are rarely seen; nodal and atrial systoles are more frequent.

Atrial arrhythmias, atrial ectopic rhythms, and paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with A–V block particularly are more common manifestations of toxicity in children. Ventricular arrhythmias are rare.

TREATMENT OF ARRHYTHMIAS PRODUCED BY OVERDOSAGES

(See adult section for other recommendations for the treatment of arrhythmias produced by overdosages and for additional recommendations and cautions regarding the use of potassium.) Potassium preparations may be given orally in divided doses totaling 1–1.5 milliequivalents/kilogram (1 gram K contains 13.4 milliequivalents). When correction of the arrhythmia is urgent, approximately 0.5 milliequivalents/kilogram of potassium per hour may be given, with careful electrocardiographic monitoring, as a solution of 20 milliequivalents or less per 500 milliliters in 5 percent dextrose in water. The total dose should generally not exceed 2 milliequivalents of potassium/kilogram.

DOsAGE AND ADMINISTRATION

Digitalization must be individualized. Generally, premature and immature infants are
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 310.500

particularly sensitive, requiring reduced dosage that must be determined by careful titration.

Oral Dosage. Beyond the immediate newborn period, children require proportionally greater doses than adults on the basis of body weight or surface area. The recommended oral digitalizing dosages in children with normal renal function are:

Newborn infants (normal), up to 1 month, require 40–60 micrograms/kilogram.

Infants, 1 month to 2 years, require approximately 60–80 micrograms/kilogram.

Children 2 years to 10 years, require 40–60 micrograms/kilogram.

Children, over 10 years of age, require adult dosages in proportion to their body weight.

Maintenance therapy is 20–30 percent of the digitalizing dose administered each day.

Long term use of digoxin is indicated in almost all infants who have been digitalized for acute congestive heart failure unless the cause is transient. Many favor maintaining digoxin until at least 2 years of age in all infants with paroxysmal atrial tachycardia or in those who show either definite or latent failure.

Many children with severe inoperable congenital defects need digoxin throughout childhood and often for life.

(f) Abbreviated new drug applications shall be submitted to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Office of Generic Drugs, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(g) All samples of digoxin tablets required by paragraph (a)(3) of this section to be submitted to the Food and Drug Administration shall be handled as follows:

(1) The sample shall consist of 6 subsamples of 1000 tablets each collected at random from throughout the manufacturing run. Each of the 6 subsamples shall be identified with the name of the product, the labeled potency, the date of manufacture, the batch number, and the name and address of the manufacturer.

(2) The sample together with the batch production record and results of all tests conducted by or for the manufacturer to determine the product’s identity, strength, quality, and purity, content uniformity and dissolution shall be submitted to the Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, FDA National Center for Drug Analysis, 1114 Market St., St. Louis, MO 63101. The outer wrapper shall be identified “SAMPLE—DIGOXIN CERTIFICATION.”

(h) The Food and Drug Administration is aware of data with two in vitro methods, in addition to that described in The United States Pharmacopeia (USP XVIII), developed to measure digoxin tablets dissolution. These two methods, the so-called “paddle-water” and “paddle-acid” methods, are described below and are identical with the exception of the nature of the dissolution medium used in the procedures (i.e., distilled or deionized water vs. dilute hydrochloric acid (0.6 percent volume/volume)). The dissolution apparatus used in these two methods differs significantly from the apparatus described in the method in the compendium. The Food and Drug Administration is aware that the three methods (i.e., USP, “paddle-water,” and “paddle-acid”) show significant differences in dissolution in comparative tests on some formulations. Definitive bioavailability data to compare the relative value of each of these methods to predict bioavailability of the few formulations where the methods show significant differences in dissolution rate are not now available. Manufacturers who conduct research utilizing the “paddle-water” and “paddle-acid” methods, particularly in comparison with the method in The United States Pharmacopeia, shall submit any data obtained using these methods to the Food and Drug Administration pursuant to section 505(k) of the act.

(1) Dissolution apparatus.

(Note: Throughout this procedure use scrupulously clean glassware, which previously has been rinsed with dilute hydrochloric acid, distilled or deionized water, then with alcohol, and carefully dried. Take precautions to prevent contamination from airborne, fluorescent particles and from metal and rubber surfaces.) The apparatus consists of a suitable water bath, a 1000 milliliter glass vessel (Kimble Glass No. 26220 or equivalent), a small motor, and a polytetrafluoroethylene stirring blade (Sargent S-76637, Size R, 3 inch length; or equivalent) on a glass stirring shaft (Sargent 5-76636, 14.5 inch length; or equivalent). The water bath may be of any convenient size that permits keeping the water temperature uniformly at 37°C ± 0.5°C throughout the test. The vessel is spherical, and is provided with three ports at the top, one of which is centered. The lower half of the vessel is 50 millimeters in inside
radius and the vessel's nominal capacity is 1000 milliliters. The glass stirring shaft from the motor is placed in the center port, and one of the outer ports may be used for insertion of a thermometer. Samples may be removed for analysis through the other port. The motor is fitted with a speed-regulating device that allows the motor speed to be held at 50 rpm ± 2 rpm. The motor is suspended above the vessel in such a way that it may be raised or lowered to position the stirring blade. The glass stirring shaft is 10 millimeters in diameter and about 37 centimeters in length. It must run true on the motor axis without perceptible wobble. The polytetrafluoroethylene stirring blade is 4 millimeters thick and forms a section of a circle, whose diameter is 83 millimeters and which is subtended by parallel chords of 42 and 77 millimeters. The blade is positioned horizontally, with the 42-millimeter edge down, 2.5 centimeters ± 0.2 centimeter above the lowest inner surface of the vessel.

(2) Reagents—(i) Dissolution medium. For "paddle-water," use distilled or deionized water. For "paddle-acid," use dilute hydrochloric acid (0.6 percent volume/volume). Use the same batch of dissolution medium throughout the test.

(ii) Standard solutions. Accurately weigh approximately 25 milligrams of The United States Pharmacopeia Digoxin Reference Standard, dissolve in a minimum amount of 95 percent ethanol in a 500 milliliter volumetric flask and add 95 percent ethanol to volume and mix. Dilute 10.0 milliliters of this first solution to 100.0 milliliters with 95 percent ethanol and mix for the second solution. Just prior to use, individually dilute 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, and 5.0 milliliter aliquots of the second solution with dissolution medium to 50.0 milliliters. These solutions are equivalent to 20, 40, 60, 80, and 100 percent of dissolution, respectively, for a 0.25 milligram digoxin tablet.

(iii) Extraction solvent. Prepare a solvent containing 6 volumes of chloroform, analytical reagent grade, with 1 volume of n-propyl alcohol, analytical reagent grade.

(iv) Ascorbic acid-methanol solution. Prepare a solution containing 2 milligrams of ascorbic acid, analytical reagent grade, per 1 milliliter of methanol, absolute, analytical reagent grade.

(v) Hydrochloric acid, concentrated reagent grade.

(vi) Hydrogen peroxide-methanol solution. On the day of use, dilute 2.0 milliliters of recently assayed 30 percent hydrogen peroxide, reagent grade, with methanol, absolute, analytical reagent grade to 100.0 milliliters. Store in a refrigerator. Just prior to use, dilute 2.0 milliliters of this solution with methanol to 100.0 milliliters.

(3) Procedure—(i) Dissolution. Place 500 milliliters of dissolution medium in the vessel, immerse it in the constant-temperature bath set at 37°C ± 0.5°C, and allow the dissolution medium to assume the temperature of the bath. Position the shaft so that there is a distance of 2.5 centimeters ± 0.2 centimeter between the midpoint of the bottom of the blade and the bottom of the vessel. With the stirrer operating at a speed of 50 rpm ± 2 rpm, place 1 tablet into the flask. After 60 minutes, accurately timed, withdraw 25 milliliters, using a glass syringe connected to a glass sampling tube, of solution from a point midway between the stirring shaft and the wall of the vessel, and approximately midway in depth. Filter the solution promptly after withdrawal, using a suitable membrane filter of not greater than 0.8 micron porosity (Millipore AAWP 025 00, or equivalent), mounted in a suitable holder (Millipore Swinnex SX00 025 00, or equivalent), discarding the first 100 milliliters of filtrate. This is the test solution. Repeat the dissolution procedure on 5 additional tablets.

(ii) Extraction. Transfer 10.0 milliliters of each of the six filtrates, 10.0 milliliters of each of the five standard solutions, and 10.0 milliliters of dissolution medium, to provide a blank, in separate 60-milliliter separators. Extract each solution with two 10-milliliter portions of extraction solvent. Combine the extracts of each solution in separate, glass-stoppered, 50-milliliter conical flasks, and evaporate on a steam bath with the aid of a stream of nitrogen to dryness, rinsing the sides of the flasks with extraction solvent. Take care to ensure that all traces of solvent are removed, but avoid prolonged heating. For convenience the residues may be stored in a vacuum desiccator overnight.

(iii) Measurement of fluorescence. Begin with the standard solutions, and
keep all flasks in the same sequence throughout, so that the elapsed time from addition of reagents to reading of fluorescence is the same for each. Carry the test solutions, standard solutions, and the blank through the determination in one group. Add the following three reagents in as rapid a sequence as possible, swirling after each addition, treating 1 flask at a time, in the order named: 1.0 milliliter of ascorbic acid-methanol solution, 3.0 milliliters of concentrated hydrochloric acid, and 1.0 milliliter of hydrogen peroxide-methanol solution. Insert the stoppers in the flasks, and after 2 hours, measure the fluorescence at about 485 millimicrons, using excitation at about 372 millimicrons. In order to provide a check on the stability of the fluorometer, reread one or more standard solutions. Correct each reading for the blank and plot a standard curve of fluorescence versus percentage dissolution. Determine the percentage dissolution of digoxin in the test solutions by reading from the standard graph.

(iv) Digoxin tablets formulated so that the quantity of digoxin dissolved at one hour, when tested by the method in The United States Pharmacopeia (USP XVIII), is greater than 95 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin and so that the quantity of digoxin dissolved at 15 minutes is greater than 90 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin are new drugs which may be marketed only with an approved full new drug application as provided for in §314.50 of this chapter. The application shall include, but not be limited to, clinical studies establishing significantly greater bioavailability than digoxin tablets meeting compendial requirements and dosage recommendations based on clinical studies establishing the safe and effective use of the bioavailable digoxin product. Marketing of these digoxin products will be allowed only under a proprietary or trade name, established name, and labeling which differs from that used for digoxin tablets that meet all of the requirements in The United States Pharmacopeia (USP XVIII) and that are formulated so that either (a) the quantity of digoxin dissolved at one hour is not more than 95 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin or (b) the quantity of digoxin dissolved at 15 minutes is not more than 90 percent of the assayed amount of digoxin. New drug applications for these digoxin products shall be submitted to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Office of Drug Evaluation I (HFD-100), 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.


§310.501 Patient package inserts for oral contraceptives.

(a) Requirement for a patient package insert. The safe and effective use of oral contraceptive drug products requires that patients be fully informed of the benefits and the risks involved in their use. An oral contraceptive drug product that does not comply with the requirements of this section is misbranded under section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. Each dispenser of an oral contraceptive drug product shall provide a patient package insert to each patient (or to an agent of the patient) to whom the product is dispensed, except that the dispenser may provide the insert to the parent or legal guardian of a legally incompetent patient (or to the agent of either). The patient package insert is required to be placed in or accompany each package dispensed to the patient.

(b) Distribution requirements. (1) For oral contraceptive drug products, the manufacturer and distributor shall provide a patient package insert in or with each package of the drug product that the manufacturer or distributor intends to be dispensed to a patient.

(2) Patient package inserts for oral contraceptives dispensed in acute-care hospitals or long-term care facilities will be considered to have been provided in accordance with this section if provided to the patient before administration of the first oral contraceptive and every 30 days thereafter, as long as the therapy continues.

(c) Contents of patient package insert. A patient package insert for an oral contraceptive drug product is required to contain the following:

(1) The name of the drug.
§ 310.501

(2) A summary including a statement concerning the effectiveness of oral contraceptives in preventing pregnancy, the contraindications to the drug’s use, and a statement of the risks and benefits associated with the drug’s use.

(3) A statement comparing the effectiveness of oral contraceptives to other methods of contraception.

(4) A boxed warning concerning the increased risks associated with cigarette smoking and oral contraceptive use.

(5) A discussion of the contraindications to use, including information that the patient should provide to the prescriber before taking the drug.

(6) A statement of medical conditions that are not contraindications to use but deserve special consideration in connection with oral contraceptive use and about which the patient should inform the prescriber.

(7) A warning regarding the most serious side effects of oral contraceptives.

(8) A statement of other serious adverse reactions and potential safety hazards that may result from the use of oral contraceptives.

(9) A statement concerning common, but less serious side effects which may help the patient evaluate the benefits and risks from the use of oral contraceptives.

(10) Information on precautions the patients should observe while taking oral contraceptives, including the following:

(i) A statement of risks to the mother and unborn child from the use of oral contraceptives before or during early pregnancy;

(ii) A statement concerning excretion of the drug in human milk and associated risks to the nursing infant;

(iii) A statement about laboratory tests which may be affected by oral contraceptives; and

(iv) A statement that identifies activities and drugs, foods, or other substances the patient should avoid because of their interactions with oral contraceptives.

(11) Information about how to take oral contraceptives properly, including information about what to do if the patient forgets to take the product, information about becoming pregnant after discontinuing use of the drug, a statement that the drug product has been prescribed for the use of the patient and should not be used for other conditions or given to others, and a statement that the patient’s pharmacist or practitioner has a more technical leaflet about the drug product that the patient may ask to review.

(12) A statement of the possible benefits associated with oral contraceptive use.

(13) The following information about the drug product and the patient package insert:

(i) The name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor, or the name and place of business of the dispenser of the product.

(ii) The date, identified as such, of the most recent revision of the patient package insert placed prominently immediately after the last section of the labeling.

(d) Other indications. The patient package insert may identify indications in addition to contraception that are identified in the professional labeling for the drug product.

(e) Labeling guidance texts. The Food and Drug Administration issues informal labeling guidance texts under §10.90(b)(9) of this chapter to provide assistance in meeting the requirements of this section. A request for a copy of the guidance texts should be directed to the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Division of Metabolism and Endocrine Drug Products (HPD-510), Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(f) Requirement to supplement approved application. Holders of approved applications for oral contraceptive drug products that are subject to the requirements of this section are required to submit supplements under §314.70(c) of this chapter to provide for the labeling required by this section. A request for a copy of the guidance texts should be directed to the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Division of Metabolism and Endocrine Drug Products (HPD-510), Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

[54 FR 22587, May 25, 1989]
§ 310.502 Certain drugs accorded new drug status through rulemaking procedures.

(a) The drugs listed in this paragraph have been determined by rulemaking procedures to be new drugs within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Act. An approved new drug application under section 505 of the Act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing the following drugs:

1. Aerosol drug products for human use containing 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
2. Aerosol drug products containing zirconium.
3. Amphetamines (amphetamine, dextroamphetamine, and their salts, and levamfetamine and its salts) for human use.
5. Certain halogenated salicylanilides (tribromsalan (TBS, 3,4′,5-tribromosalicylanilide), dibromsalan (DBS, 4′,5-dibromosalicylanilide), metabromsalan (MBS, 3′, 5-dibromosalicylanilide), and 3,3′, 4,5′-tetrachlorosalicylanilide (TC–SA)) as an ingredient in drug products.
6. Chloroform used as an ingredient (active or inactive) in drug products.
7. Cobalt preparations intended for use by man.
8. Intravenous devices for human use for the purpose of contraception that incorporate heavy metals, drugs, or other active substances.
11. Sterilization of drugs by irradiation.
13. Thorium dioxide for drug use.
14. Timed release dosage forms.
15. Vinyl chloride as an ingredient, including propellant, in aerosol drug products.

(b) [Reserved]

§ 310.503 Requirements regarding certain radioactive drugs.

(a) On January 8, 1963 (28 FR 183), the Commissioner of Food and Drugs exempted investigational radioactive new drugs from part 312 of this chapter provided they were shipped in complete conformity with the regulations issued by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission. This exemption also applied to investigational radioactive biologics.

(b) It is the opinion of the Nuclear Regulatory Commission, and the Food and Drug Administration that this exemption should not apply for certain specific drugs and that these drugs should be appropriately labeled for uses for which safety and effectiveness can be demonstrated by new drug applications or through licensing under the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 262 et seq.) in the case of biologics. Continued distribution under the investigational exemption when the drugs are intended for established uses will not be permitted.

(c) Based on its experience in regulating investigational radioactive pharmaceuticals, the Nuclear Regulatory Commission has compiled a list of reactor-produced isotopes for which it considers that applicants may reasonably be expected to submit adequate evidence of safety and effectiveness for use as recommended in appropriate labeling. Such use may include, among others, the uses in this tabulation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isotope</th>
<th>Chemical form</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chromium 51</td>
<td>Chromate</td>
<td>Spleen scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Placenta localization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Red blood cell labeling and survival studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal protein loss studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Placenta localization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Intestinal absorption studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Liver scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Intracavitary treatment of pleural effusions and/or ascites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Intestinal treatment of cancer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Diagnosis of thyroid functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Thyroid scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Treatment of hyperthyroidism and/or cardiac dysfunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Treatment of thyroid carcinoma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Blood volume determinations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gold 198</td>
<td>Labeled human serum albumin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cobalt 58 or Cobalt 60</td>
<td>Labeled red blood cells.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine 131</td>
<td>Iodide</td>
<td>Diagnosis of thyroid functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Thyroid scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Treatment of hyperthyroidism and/or cardiac dysfunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Treatment of thyroid carcinoma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>Iodinated human serum albumin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 310.503  Use of radioactive substances in medical practice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isotope</th>
<th>Chemical form</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Cisternography. Brain tumor localization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Placenta localization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Cardiac scans for determination of pericardial effusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Liver function studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Kidney function studies and kidney scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rose Bengal</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Brain scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Liver scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Kidney function studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Fat absorption studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Cardiac absorption studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Lung scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Liver function studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Kidney function studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Fat absorption studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Iron turnover studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Diagnosis of cardiac abnormalities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Kidney scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Brain scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Treatment of polycythemia vera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Treatment of leukemia and bone metastasis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Intracavitary treatment of pleural effusions and/or ascites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Interstitial treatment of cancer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Potassium chloride.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium 75</td>
<td>Labeled methionine</td>
<td>Potassium space studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine 125</td>
<td>Iodide</td>
<td>Diagnosis of thyroid function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Blood volume determinations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Liver function studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Kidney function studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Brain scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Liver scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Kidney function studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Bone scans on patients with diagnosed cancer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Brain scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Thyroid scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Liver and spleen scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Placenta localization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Blood pool scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Salivary gland scans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>Kidney scans.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 This item has been removed from the AEC list for kidney scans but is included as the requirements of this order are applicable.

(d)(1) In view of the extent of experience with the isotopes listed in paragraph (c) of this section, the Nuclear Regulatory Commission and the Food and Drug Administration conclude that such isotopes should not be distributed under investigational-use labeling when they are actually intended for use in medical practice.

(2) The exemption referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, as applied to any drug or biologic containing any of the isotopes listed in paragraph (c) of this section, in the "chemical form" and intended for the uses stated, is terminated on March 3, 1972, except as provided in paragraph (d)(3) of this section.

(3) The exemption referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, as applied to any drug or biologic containing any of the isotopes listed in paragraph (c) of this section, in the "chemical form" and intended for the uses stated, for which drug a new drug application or an "Investigational New Drug Application" was submitted prior to March 3, 1972, or for which biologic an application for product license or "Investigational New Drug Application" was submitted prior to March 3, 1972, is terminated on August 20, 1976, unless an approval notice was issued on or before August 20, 1976, in which case the exemption is terminated either upon the subsequent issuance of a nonapprovable notice for the new drug application or
on November 20, 1976, whichever occurs first.

(e) No exemption from section 505 of the act or from part 312 of this chapter is in effect or has been in effect for radioactive drugs prepared from accelerator-produced radioisotopes, naturally occurring isotopes, or nonradioactive substances used in conjunction with isotopes.

(f)(1) Based on its experience in regulating investigational radioactive pharmaceuticals, the Nuclear Regulatory Commission has compiled a list of reactor-produced isotopes for which it considers that applicants may reasonably be expected to submit adequate evidence of safety and effectiveness for use as recommended in appropriate labeling; such use may include, among others, the uses in this tabulation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isotope</th>
<th>Chemical form</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fluorine 18</td>
<td>Fluoride ....................................</td>
<td>Bone imaging; kidney imaging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indium-111m</td>
<td>Diethylenetriamine pentaacetic acid (DTPA)</td>
<td>Brain imaging; kidney imaging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>Chloride .....................................</td>
<td>Placenta imaging; blood pool imaging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technetium 99m</td>
<td>Human serum albumin microspheres.</td>
<td>Kidney imaging; kidney function studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>Diethylenetriamine pentaacetic acid (Sn)</td>
<td>Brain imaging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>Polynucleates ...</td>
<td>Bone imaging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>Technetated aggregated albumin (human)</td>
<td>Lung imaging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>Disodium etidronate</td>
<td>Bone imaging.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) In view of the extent of experience with the isotopes listed in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, the Nuclear Regulatory Commission and the Food and Drug Administration conclude that these substances should not be distributed under investigational-use labeling when they are actually intended for use in medical practice.

(3) Any manufacturer or distributor interested in continuing to ship in interstate commerce drugs containing the isotopes listed in paragraph (f)(1) of this section for any of the indications listed, shall submit, on or before August 25, 1975 to the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 8800 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20894, a new drug application or a "Investigational New Drug Application" for each such drug for which the manufacturer or distributor does not have an approved new drug application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act. If the drug is a biologic, a "Investigational New Drug Application" or an application for a license under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act shall be submitted to the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 8800 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20894, in lieu of any submission to the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research.

(4) The exemption referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, as applied to any drug or biologic containing any of the isotopes listed in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, in the "chemical form" and intended for the uses stated, is terminated on August 26, 1975 except as provided in paragraph (f)(5) of this section.

(5)(i) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(5)(ii) of this section, the exemption referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, as applied to any drug containing any of the isotopes listed in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, in the "chemical form" and intended for the uses stated, for which drug a new drug application or "Investigational New Drug Application" was submitted to the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research on or before August 25, 1975 is terminated on August 20, 1976, unless an approvable notice was issued on or before August 20, 1976, in which case the exemption is terminated either upon the subsequent issuance of a nonapprovable notice for the new drug application or on November 20, 1976, whichever occurs first.

(ii) The exemption referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, as applied to any biologic containing any of the isotopes listed in paragraph (f)(1) of this section in the "chemical form" and intended for the uses stated, for which biologic an application for product license or "Investigational New Drug Application" was submitted to the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research on or before August 25, 1975 is terminated on October 20, 1976, unless an approvable notice was issued on or before October 20, 1976, in which case the exemption is terminated either upon the subsequent issuance of a
nonapprovable notice for the new drug application or on January 20, 1977, whichever occurs first.

(g) The exemption referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, as applied to any drug intended solely for investigational use as part of a research project, which use had been approved on or before July 25, 1975 in accordance with 10 CFR 35.11 (or equivalent regulation of an Agreement State) is terminated on February 20, 1976 if the manufacturer of such drug or the sponsor of the investigation of such drug submits on or before August 25, 1975 to the Food and Drug Administration, Bureau of Drugs, HFD–150, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857, the following information:

(1) The research project title;
(2) A brief description of the purpose of the project;
(3) The name of the investigator responsible;
(4) The name and license number of the institution holding the specific license under 10 CFR 35.11 (or equivalent regulation of an Agreement State);
(5) The name and maximum amount per subject of the radionuclide used;
(6) The number of subjects involved; and
(7) The date on which the administration of the radioactive drugs is expected to be completed.

(h) The exemption referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, as applied to any drug not referred to in paragraphs (d), (f), and (g) of this section, is terminated on August 26, 1975.

§ 310.509 Patient package inserts for estrogens.

(a) Requirement for a patient package insert. FDA concludes that the safe and effective use of drug products containing estrogens requires that patients be fully informed of the benefits and risks involved in the use of these drugs. Accordingly, except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, each estrogen drug product restricted to prescription distribution, including products containing estrogens in fixed combinations with other drugs, shall be dispensed to patients with a patient package insert containing information concerning the drug’s benefits and risks. An estrogen drug product that does not comply with the requirements of this section is misbranded under section 502(a) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

§ 310.515 Patient package inserts for estrogens.

(a) Requirement for a patient package insert. FDA concludes that the safe and effective use of drug products containing estrogens requires that patients be fully informed of the benefits and risks involved in the use of these drugs. Accordingly, except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, each estrogen drug product restricted to prescription distribution, including products containing estrogens in fixed combinations with other drugs, shall be dispensed to patients with a patient package insert containing information concerning the drug’s benefits and risks. An estrogen drug product that does not comply with the requirements of this section is misbranded under section 502(a) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 310.517

(b) Distribution requirements. (1) For estrogen drug products, the manufacturer and distributor shall provide a patient package insert in or with each package of the drug product that the manufacturer or distributor intends to be dispensed to a patient.

(2) In the case of estrogen drug products in bulk packages intended for multiple dispensing, and in the case of injectables in multiple-dose vials, a sufficient number of patient labeling pieces shall be included in or with each package to assure that one piece can be included with each package or dose dispensed or administered to every patient. Each bulk package shall be labeled with instructions to the dispensor to include one patient labeling piece with each package dispensed or, in the case of injectables, with each dose administered to the patient. This section does not preclude the manufacturer or labeler from distributing additional patient labeling pieces to the dispensor.

(3) Patient package inserts for estrogens dispensed in acute-care hospitals or long-term care facilities will be considered to have been provided in accordance with this section if provided to the patient before administration of the first estrogen and every 30 days thereafter, as long as the therapy continues.

(c) Patient package insert contents. A patient package insert for an estrogen drug product is required to contain the following information:

(1) The name of the drug.

(2) The name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor.

(3) A statement regarding the benefits and proper uses of estrogens.

(4) The contraindications to use, i.e., when estrogens should not be used.

(5) A description of the most serious risks associated with the use of estrogens.

(6) A brief summary of other side effects of estrogens.

(7) Instructions on how a patient may reduce the risks of estrogen use.

(8) The date, identified as such, of the most recent revision of the patient package insert.

(d) Guidance language. The Food and Drug Administration issues informal labeling guidance texts under §10.90(b)(9) of this chapter to provide assistance in meeting the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section. Requests for a copy of the guidance text should be directed to the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Division of Metabolism and Endocrine Drug Products (HFD–510), Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(e) Exemptions. This section does not apply to estrogen-progestogen oral contraceptives. Labeling requirements for these products are set forth in §310.501.

(f) Requirement to supplement approved application. Holders of approved applications for estrogen drug products that are subject to the requirements of this section must submit supplements under §314.70(c) of this chapter to provide for the labeling required by paragraph (a) of this section. Such labeling may be put into use without advance approval by the Food and Drug Administration.

[55 FR 18723, May 4, 1990]
§ 310.518

SPECIAL WARNING ON INCREASED RISK OF CARDIOVASCULAR MORTALITY

The administration of oral hypoglycemic drugs has been reported to be associated with increased cardiovascular mortality as compared to treatment with diet alone or diet plus insulin. This warning is based on the study conducted by the University Group Diabetes Program (UGDP), a long-term prospective clinical trial designed to evaluate the effectiveness of glucose-lowering drugs in preventing or delaying vascular complications in patients with non-insulin-dependent diabetes. The study involved 823 patients who were randomly assigned to one of four treatment groups (Diabetes, 19 (supp. 2): 747–830, 1970).

UGDP reported that patients treated for 5 to 8 years with diet plus a fixed dose of tolbutamide (1.5 grams per day) had a rate of cardiovascular mortality approximately 21/2 times that of patients treated with diet alone. A significant increase in total mortality was not observed, but the use of tolbutamide was discontinued based on the increase in cardiovascular mortality, thus limiting the opportunity for the study to show an increase in overall mortality. Despite controversy regarding the interpretation of these results, the findings of the UGDP study provide an adequate basis for this warning. The patient should be informed of the potential risks and advantages of (name of drug) and of alternative modes of therapy.

Although only one drug in the sulfonylurea class (tolbutamide) was included in this study, it is prudent from a safety standpoint to consider that this warning may also apply to other oral hypoglycemic drugs in this class, in view of their close similarities in mode of action and chemical structure.

[49 FR 14331, Apr. 11, 1984]

§ 310.518

Drug products containing iron or iron salts.

Drug products containing elemental iron or iron salts as an active ingredient in solid oral dosage form, e.g., tablets or capsules shall meet the following requirements:

(a) Packaging. If the product contains 30 milligrams or more of iron per dosage unit, it shall be packaged in unit-dose packaging. "Unit-dose packaging" means a method of packaging a product into a nonreusable container designed to hold a single dosage unit intended for administration directly from that container, irrespective of whether the recommended dose is one or more than one of these units. The term "dosage unit" means the individual physical unit of the product, e.g., tablet or capsule. Iron-containing drugs that are subject to this regulation are also subject to child-resistant special packaging requirements in 16 CFR parts 1700, 1701, and 1702.

(b) Temporary exemption. (1) Drug products offered in solid oral dosage form (e.g., tablets or capsules), and containing 30 milligrams or more of iron per dosage unit, are exempt from the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section until January 15, 1998, if the sole source of iron in the drug product is carbonyl iron that meets the specifications of § 184.1375 of this chapter.

(2) If this temporary exemption is not extended or made permanent, such drug products shall be in compliance with the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section on or before July 15, 1998.

(c) Labeling. (1) The label of any drug in solid oral dosage form (e.g., tablets or capsules) that contains iron or iron salts for use as an iron source shall bear the following statement:

WARNING: Accidental overdose of iron-containing products is a leading cause of fatal poisoning in children under 6. Keep this product out of reach of children. In case of accidental overdose, call a doctor or poison control center immediately.

(ii) If a drug product is packaged in unit-dose packaging, and if the immediate container bears labeling but not a label, the warning statement required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section shall appear prominently and conspicuously on the information panel of the immediate container label.

(2)(i) The warning statement required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section shall appear prominently and conspicuously on the information panel of the immediate container label.

(ii) If a drug product is packaged in unit-dose packaging, and if the immediate container bears labeling but not a label, the warning statement required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section shall appear prominently and conspicuously on the immediate container labeling in a way that maximizes the likelihood that the warning is intact until all of the dosage units to which it applies are used.

(3) Where the immediate container is not the retail package, the warning statement required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section shall also appear prominently and conspicuously on the information panel of the retail package label.
§310.527 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for external use as hair growers or for hair loss prevention.

(a) Amino acids, anthocyanin acids, ascorbic acid, benzoic acid, biotin, and all other B-vitamins, diallyl disulfide and other topical hormones, eugenol, hydrocortisone, and hydrocortisone acetate have been marketed as ingredients in OTC drug products for use as hair growers or for hair loss prevention. There is a lack of adequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of these ingredients as active ingredients in such drug products. Based on evidence currently available, all labeling claims for OTC hair grower and hair loss prevention drug products are either false, misleading, or unsupported by scientific data. Therefore, any OTC drug product for external use containing an ingredient offered for use as a hair grower or for hair loss prevention cannot be considered generally recognized as safe and effective for its intended use.

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted for external use as a hair grower or for hair loss prevention is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, for which an approved new drug application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.
§ 310.528 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use as an aphrodisiac.

(a) Any product that bears labeling claims that it will arouse or increase sexual desire, or that it will improve sexual performance, is an aphrodisiac drug product. Anise, cantharides, don quail, estrogens, fennel, ginseng, golden seal, gotu kola, Korean ginseng, licorice, mandrake, methyltestosterone, minerals, nux vomica, Pega Palo, sarsaparilla, strychnine, testosterone, vitamins, yohimbine, yohimbine hydrochloride, and yohimbinum have been present as ingredients in such drug products. Androgens (e.g., testosterone and methyltestosterone) and estrogens are powerful hormones when administered internally and are not safe for use except under the supervision of a physician. There is a lack of adequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of any of these ingredients, or any other ingredient, for OTC use as an aphrodisiac. Labeling claims for aphrodisiacs for OTC use are either false, misleading, or unsupported by scientific data. The following claims are examples of some that have been made for aphrodisiac drug products for OTC use: “acts as an aphrodisiac;” “arouses or increases sexual desire and improves sexual performance;” “helps restore sexual vigor, potency, and performance;” “improves performance, staying power, and sexual potency;” and “builds virility and sexual potency.” Based on evidence currently available, any OTC drug product containing ingredients for use as an aphrodisiac cannot be generally recognized as safe and effective.

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, or prompted for use as an aphrodisiac is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, (the act), for which an approved new drug application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use as an aphrodisiac is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After January 8, 1990, any such OTC drug product initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

[54 FR 28786, July 7, 1989]

§ 310.529 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for oral use as insect repellents.

(a) Thiamine hydrochloride (vitamin B-1) has been marketed as an ingredient in over-the-counter (OTC) drug products for oral use as an insect repellent (an orally administered drug product intended to keep insects away). There is a lack of adequate data to establish the effectiveness of this, or any other ingredient for OTC oral use as an insect repellent. Labeling claims for OTC orally administered insect repellent drug products are either false, misleading, or unsupported by scientific data. The following claims are examples of some that have been made for orally administered OTC insect repellent drug products: “Oral mosquito repellent,” “mosquitos avoid you,” “bugs stay away,” “keep mosquitos away for 12 to 24 hours,” and “the newest way to fight mosquitos.” Therefore,
§ 310.530 Topically applied hormone-containing drug products for over-the-counter (OTC) human use.

(a) The term “hormone” is used broadly to describe a chemical substance formed in some organ of the body, such as the adrenal glands or the pituitary, and carried to another organ or tissue, where it has a specific effect. Hormones include, for example, estrogens, progestins, androgens, anabolic steroids, and adrenal corticosteroids, and synthetic analogs. Estrogens, progesterone, pregnenolone, and pregnenolone acetate have been present as ingredients in OTC drug products marketed for topical use as hormone creams. However, there is a lack of adequate data to establish effectiveness for any OTC drug use of these ingredients. Therefore, with the exception of those hormones identified in paragraph (e) of this section, any OTC drug product containing an ingredient for use as a topically applied hormone cannot be considered generally recognized as safe and effective for its intended use. The intended use of the product may be inferred from the product’s labeling, promotional material, advertising, and any other relevant factor. The use of the word “hormone” in the text of the labeling or in the ingredient statement is an implied drug claim. The claim implied by the use of this term is that the product will have a therapeutic or some other physiological effect on the body. Therefore, reference to a product as a “hormone cream” or any statement in the labeling indicating that “hormones” are present in the product, or any statement that features or emphasizes the presence of a hormone ingredient in the product, will be considered to be a therapeutic claim for the product, or a claim that the product will affect the structure or function of the body, and will consequently cause the product to be a drug.

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted as a topically applied hormone-containing product for drug use, with the exception of those hormones identified in paragraph (e) of this section, is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the act, for which an approved application or abbreviated application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application or abbreviated new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted OTC for oral use as an insect repellent is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After March 9, 1994, any such OTC drug product initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

(e) This section does not apply to hydrocortisone and hydrocortisone acetate labeled, represented, or promoted
§ 310.531 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for the treatment of boils.

(a) Aminacrine hydrochloride, benzocaine, bismuth subnitrate, calomel, camphor, cholesterol, ergot fluid extract, hexachlorophene, ichthammol, isobutam benz, juniper tar (oil of cade), lanolin, magnesium sulfate, menthol, methyl salicylate, oxyguinoline sulfate, petrolatum, phenol, pine tar, rosin, rosin cerate, sassafras oil, thymol, triclosan, and zinc oxide have been present in OTC boil treatment drug products. There is a lack of adequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of these or any other ingredient for OTC use for the treatment of boils. Treatment is defined as reducing the size of a boil or reducing an infection related to a boil. Treatment has involved the use of “drawing salves” for these purposes. These “drawing salves” contained various ingredients. Based on evidence currently available, any OTC drug product offered for the treatment of boils cannot be considered generally recognized as safe and effective.

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted for the treatment of boils is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), for which an approved application or abbreviated application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application or abbreviated application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any OTC boil treatment drug product is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After May 7, 1991, any such OTC drug product that contains aminacrine hydrochloride, bismuth subnitrate, calomel, camphor, cholesterol, ergot fluid extract, hexachlorophene, isobutam benz, juniper tar (oil of cade), lanolin, magnesium sulfate, menthol, methyl salicylate, oxyguinoline sulfate, petrolatum, phenol, pine tar, rosin, rosin cerate, sassafras oil, thymol, or zinc oxide initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

(e) After May 16, 1994, any such OTC drug product that contains benzocaine, ichthammol, sulfur, or triclosan initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

(f) This section does not apply to drug products that contain benzocaine labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC topical use in accordance with part 348 of this chapter.

[58 FR 60336, Nov. 15, 1993]

§ 310.532 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) to relieve the symptoms of benign prostatic hypertrophy.

(a) The amino acids glycine, alanine, and glutamic acid (alone or in combination) and the ingredient sabal have been present in over-the-counter (OTC) drug products to relieve the symptoms of benign prostatic hypertrophy, e.g., urinary urgency and frequency, excessive urinating at night, and delayed urination. There is a lack of adequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of these or any other ingredients for OTC use in relieving the symptoms of benign prostatic hypertrophy. In addition, there is no definitive evidence that any drug product offered for the relief of the symptoms of benign prostatic hypertrophy would alter the obstructive or inflammatory signs and symptoms of this condition. Therefore, self-medication with OTC drug products might unnecessarily delay diagnosis and treatment of progressive obstruction and secondary infections. Based on evidence currently available, any OTC drug product containing ingredients offered for use in relieving the symptoms of benign prostatic hypertrophy.
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 310.534 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for human use as oral wound healing agents.

(a) Allantoin, carbamide peroxide in anhydrous glycerin, water soluble of benign prostatic hypertrophy cannot be generally recognized as safe and effective.

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted to relieve the symptoms of benign prostatic hypertrophy is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), for which an approved application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use to relieve the symptoms of benign prostatic hypertrophy is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After August 27, 1990, any such OTC drug product initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

[55 FR 6830, Feb. 27, 1990]
§ 310.536 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use as a nailbiting or thumbsucking deterrent.

(a) Denatonium benzoate and sucrose octaacetate have been present in OTC nailbiting and thumbsucking deterrent drug products. There is a lack of adequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of these and any other ingredients (e.g., cayenne pepper) for OTC use as a nailbiting or thumbsucking deterrent. Based on evidence currently available, any OTC drug product containing ingredients offered for use as a nailbiting or thumbsucking deterrent cannot be generally recognized as safe and effective.

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, and promoted as a nailbiting or thumbsucking deterrent is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) for which an approved application or abbreviated application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application or abbreviated new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use as a nailbiting or thumbsucking deterrent is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After March 2, 1994, any such OTC drug product initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

§ 310.537 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for oral administration for the treatment of fever blisters and cold sores.

(a) L-lysine (lysine, lysine hydrochloride), Lactobacillus acidophilus, and Lactobacillus bulgaricus have been present in orally administered OTC drug products to treat fever blisters and cold sores. There is a lack of adequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of these or any other orally administered ingredients for OTC use to treat or relieve the symptoms or discomfort.
§ 310.540 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use as stomach acidifiers.

(a) Betaine hydrochloride, glutamic acid hydrochloride, diluted hydrochloric acid, and pepsin have been present as ingredients in over-the-counter (OTC) drug products for use as stomach acidifiers. Because of the lack of adequate data to establish the effectiveness of these or any other ingredients for use in treating achlorhydria and hypochlorhydria, and because such conditions are asymptomatic, any OTC drug product containing ingredients offered for use as a stomach acidifier cannot be considered generally recognized as safe and effective.

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted for use as a stomach acidifier is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), for which an approved application or abbreviated application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application or abbreviated new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use as a stomach acidifier is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After March 9, 1994, any such OTC drug product initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

[58 FR 47605, Sept. 9, 1993]

(a) Hypophosphatemia is a condition in which an abnormally low plasma level of phosphate occurs in the blood. This condition is not amenable to self-diagnosis or self-treatment. Treatment of this condition should be restricted to the supervision of a physician. For this reason, any drug product containing ingredients offered for OTC use in the treatment of hypophosphatemia cannot be considered generally recognized as safe and effective.

(b) Any drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use in the treatment of hypophosphatemia is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), for which an approved application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use in the treatment of hypophosphatemia is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After November 12, 1990, any such OTC drug product initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

[55 FR 19858, May 11, 1990]


(a) Hyperphosphatemia is a condition in which an abnormally high plasma level of phosphate occurs in the blood. This condition is not amenable to self-diagnosis or self-treatment. Treatment of this condition should be restricted to the supervision of a physician. For this reason, any drug product containing ingredients offered for OTC use in the treatment of hyperphosphatemia cannot be considered generally recognized as safe and effective.

(b) Any drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use in the treatment of hyperphosphatemia is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), for which an approved application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use in the treatment of hyperphosphatemia is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After November 12, 1990, any such OTC drug product initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

[55 FR 19858, May 11, 1990]
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 310.543 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for human use in exocrine pancreatic insufficiency.

(a) Hemicellulase, pancreatin, and pancrelipase have been present as ingredients in exocrine pancreatic insufficiency drug products. Pancreatin and pancrelipase are composed of enzymes: amylase, trypsin (protease), and lipase. Significant differences have been shown in the bioavailability of marketed exocrine pancreatic insufficiency drug products produced by different manufacturers. These differences raise a potential for serious risk to patients using these drug products. The bioavailability of pancreatic enzymes is dependent on the process used to manufacture the drug products. Information on this process is not included in an OTC drug monograph. Therefore, the safe and effective use of these enzymes for treating exocrine pancreatic insufficiency cannot be regulated adequately by an OTC drug monograph. Information on the product’s formulation, manufacture, quality control procedures, and final formulation effectiveness testing are necessary in an approved application to ensure that a company has the ability to manufacture a proper bioactive formulation. In addition, continuous physician monitoring of patients who take these drug products is a collateral measure necessary to the safe and effective use of these enzymes, causing such products to be available by prescription only.

(b) Any drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use in the treatment of exocrine pancreatic insufficiency is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), for which an approved application is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use in the treatment of exocrine pancreatic insufficiency is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After May 7, 1991, any such OTC drug product that contains hemicellulase initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

(e) After October 24, 1995, any such OTC drug product that contains pancreatin or pancrelipase initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

[60 FR 20165, Apr. 24, 1995]

§ 310.544 Drug products containing active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for use as a smoking deterrent.

(a) Any product that bears labeling claims that it “helps stop or reduce the cigarette urge,” “helps break the cigarette habit,” “helps stop or reduce smoking,” or similar claims is a smoking deterrent drug product. Cloves, coriander, eucalyptus oil, ginger (Jamaica), lemon oil (terpeneless), licorice root extract, lobeline (in the form of lobeline sulfate or natural lobelia alkaloids or Lobelia inflata herb), menthol, methyl salicylate, povidone-silver nitrate, quinine ascorbate, silver acetate, silver nitrate, and thymol have been present as ingredients in such drug products. There is a lack of adequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of these or any other ingredients for OTC use as a smoking deterrent. Based on evidence currently available, any OTC drug product containing ingredients offered for use as a smoking deterrent cannot be generally recognized as safe and effective.

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted as a smoking deterrent is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), for which an approved application or abbreviated application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for use as a smoking deterrent.
for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application or abbreviated new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use as a smoking deterrent is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After May 7, 1991, any such OTC drug product containing cloves, coriander, eucalyptus oil, ginger (Jamaica), lemon oil (terpeneless), licorice root extract, menthol, methyl salicylate, quinine ascorbate, silver nitrate, and/or thymol initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action. After December 1, 1993, any such OTC drug product containing lobeline (in the form of lobeline sulfate or natural lobelia alkaloids or Lobelia inflata herb), povidone-silver nitrate, silver acetate, or any other ingredients initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

[58 FR 31241, June 1, 1993]

§ 310.545 Drug products containing certain active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for certain uses.

(a) A number of active ingredients have been present in OTC drug products for various uses, as described below. However, based on evidence currently available, there are inadequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of these ingredients for the specified uses:

(1) Topical acne drug products.

Alcloxa
Alkyl isoquinolinium bromide
Aluminum chlorohydrate
 Aluminum hydroxide
Benzocaine
 Benzoic acid
Boric acid
Calcium polysulfide
Calcium thiosulfate
Camphor
Chloroxylenol
Cloxyquin
Coal tar
Dibenzothiophene
Estrone
Magnesium aluminum silicate
Magnesium sulfate
Phenol
Phenolate sodium
Phenyl salicylate
Povidone-iodine
Pyritamine maleate
Resorcinol (as single ingredient)
Resorcinol monoacetate (as single ingredient)
Salicylic acid (over 2 up to 5 percent)
Sodium borate
Sodium thiosulfate
Tetracaine hydrochloride
Thymol
Vitamin E
Zinc oxide
Zinc stearate
Zinc sulfide

(2) Anticaries drug products—(i) Approved as of May 7, 1991.

Hydrogen fluoride
Sodium carbonate
Sodium monofluorophosphate (6 percent rinse)
Sodium phosphate

(ii) Approved as of October 7, 1996.

Calcium sucrose phosphate
Dicalcium phosphate dihydrate
Disodium hydrogen phosphate
Phosphoric acid
Sodium dihydrogen phosphate
Sodium dihydrogen phosphate monohydrate
Sodium phosphate, dibasic anhydrous reagent

(3) Antidiarrheal drug products.

Aluminum hydroxide
Atropine sulfate
Calcium carbonate
Carboxymethylcellulose sodium
Glycine
Homatropine methylbromide
Hyoscyamine sulfate
Lactobacillus acidophilus
Lactobacillus bulgaricus
Opium, powdered
Opium tincture
Paregoric
Phenyl salicylate
Scopolamine hydrobromide
Zinc phenolsulfonate

(4) Antiperspirant drug products.

†These ingredients are nonmonograph except when used to prepare acidulated phosphate fluoride treatment rinses identified in §355.10(a)(3) of this chapter.
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 310.545

Alum, potassium
Aluminum bromohydrate
Aluminum chloride (alcoholic solutions)
Aluminum chloride (aqueous solution) (aerosol only)
Aluminum sulfate
Aluminum sulfate, buffered (aerosol only)
Sodium aluminum chlorohydroxy lactate

(5) [Reserved]

(6) Cold, cough, allergy, bronchodilator, and antiasthmatic drug products—(i) Antihistamine drug products—(A) Ingredients.

Methapyrilene hydrochloride
Methapyrilene fumarate
Thenyldiamine hydrochloride

(B) Ingredients.

Phenyltoloxamine dihydrogen citrate
Methapyrilene hydrochloride
Methapyrilene fumarate
Thenyldiamine hydrochloride


Allyl isothiocyanate
Creosote, beechwood (oral)
Eucalyptol (lozenge)
Eucalyptus oil (lozenge)
Eucalyptus oil (mouthwash)
Menthol (mouthwash)
Peppermint oil (mouthwash)
Thenyldiamine hydrochloride
Thymol
Thenyldiamine hydrochloride
Thymol (lozenge)
Thymol (mouthwash)
Turpentine oil

(B) Approved as of August 23, 1995.

Bornyl acetate (topical)
Cedar leaf oil (topical)
Creosote, beechwood (topical)
Ephedrine (oral)
Ephedrine hydrochloride (oral)
Ephedrine sulfate (oral)
Racemephedrine hydrochloride (oral/topical)

(iii) Expectorant drug products.

Ammonium chloride
Antimony potassium tartrate
Beechwood creosote
Benzoin preparations (compound tincture of benzoin, tincture of benzoin)
Camphor
Chloroform
Eucalyptol/eucalyptus oil
Horehound
Iodides (calcium iodide anhydrous, hydriodic acid syrup, iodized lime, potassium iodide)
Ipecac
Ipecac fluidextract
Ipecac syrup
Menthol/peppermint oil
Pine tar preparations (extract white pine compound, pine tar, syrup of pine tar, compound white pine syrup, white pine)
Potassium guaiaicol sulfonate
Sodium citrate
Squill preparations (squill, squill extract)
Terpin hydrate preparations (terpin hydrate, terpin hydrate elixir)
Tolu preparations (tolu, tolu balsam, tolu balsam tincture)
Turpentine oil (spirits of turpentine)


Aminophylline
Belladonna alkaloids
Euphorbia pilulifera
Metaproterenol sulfate
Methoxyphenamine hydrochloride
Pseudoephedrine hydrochloride
Pseudoephedrine sulfate
Theophylline, anhydrous
Theophylline calcium salicylate
Theophylline sodium glycinate

(B) Approved as of January 29, 1996. Any combination drug product containing theophylline (e.g., theophylline and ephedrine, or theophylline and ephedrine and phenobarbital).

(C) Approved as of June 19, 1996. Any ingredient(s) in a pressurized metered-dose inhaler container.

(D) Approved as of October 29, 2001. Any oral bronchodilator active ingredient (e.g., ephedrine, ephedrine hydrochloride, ephedrine sulfate, racemephedrine hydrochloride, or any other ephedrine salt) in combination with any analgesic(s) oral, analgesic-antipyretic(s), anticholinergic, antihistamine, oral antitussive, or stimulant active ingredient.

(7) Dandruff/seborrheic dermatitis/psoriasis drug products.

Alkyl isoquinolinium bromide
Allantoin
Benzalkonium chloride
Benzethonium chloride
Boric acid
Calcium undecylenate
Captain
Chloroxylenol
Colloidal oatmeal
Cresol, saponated
Ethohexadiol
Eucalyptol
Juniper tar
Lauryl isoquinolinium bromide
Menthol
Mercury oleate
Methylbenzethonium chloride

47
§ 310.545  
Methyl salicylate
Phenol
Phenolate sodium
Pine tar
Povidone-iodine
Resorcinol
Sodium borate
Sodium salicylate
Thymol
Undecylenic acid

Bismuth sodium tartrate
Calcium carbonate
Cellulase
Dihydrocholic acid
Dihydroxyaluminum sodium carbonate
Duodenal substance
Garlic, dehydrated
Glutamic acid hydrochloride
Hemicellulase
Homatropine methylbromide
Magnesium hydroxide
Magnesium trisilicate
Ox bile extract
Pancreatin
Pancrelipase
Papain
Peppermint oil
Pepsin
Sodium bicarbonate
Sodium citrate
Sorbitol

(ii) Approved as of November 10, 1993.

Alcohol
Aluminum hydroxide
Amylase
Anise seed
Aromatic powder
Asafetida
Aspergillus oryza enzymes (except lactase enzyme derived from Aspergillus oryzae)
Bacillus acidophilus
Bean
Belladonna alkaloids
Belladonna leaves, powdered extract
Betaine hydrochloride
Bismuth subcarbonate
Bismuth subgallate
Black radish powder
Blessed thistle (cnicus benedictus)
Buckthorn
Calcium gluconate
Capsicum
Capsicum, fluid extract of Carbon
Cascara sagrada extract
Catechu, tincture
Catnip
Chamomile flowers
Charcoal, wood
Chloroform
Cinnamon oil
Cinnamon tincture
Citrus pectin
Diastase
Diastase malt
Dog grass
Elecampane
Ether
Fennel acid
Galega
Ginger
Glycine
Hydrastis canadensis (golden seal)
Hectorite
Horsetail
Huckleberry
Hydrastis fluid extract
Hydrochloric acid
Iodine
Iron oxide
Johnswort
Juniper
Kaolin, colloidal
Knotgrass
Lactic acid
Lactose
Lavender compound, tincture of Linden
Lipase
Lysine hydrochloride
Mannitol
Mycozyme
Myrrh, fluid extract of
Nettle
Nickel-pectin
Nux vomica extract
Ox bile
Peppermint
Peppermint spirit
Phenacetin
Potassium bicarbonate
Potassium carbonate
Protease
Prolase
Rhubarb fluid extract
Senna
Sodium chloride
Sodium salicylate
Stem bromelain
Strawberry
Strychnine
Tannic acid
Trillium
Woodruff

(iii) Charcoal, activated

(9) [Reserved]

(10) External analgesic drug products—

(i) Analgesic and anesthetic drug products.

Aspirin
Chloral hydrate
Chlorobutanol
Cyclomethycaine sulfate
Eugenol
Hexylresorcinol
§ 310.545

Methapyrilene hydrochloride
Salicylamide
Thymol
(ii) Counterirritant drug products.
Chloral hydrate
Eucalyptus oil
(iii) Male genital desensitizer drug products.
Benzyl alcohol
Camphorated metacresol
Ephedrine hydrochloride
(iv) Diaper rash drug products.
Any ingredient(s) labeled with claims or directions for use in the treatment and/or prevention of diaper rash.
(v) Fever blister and cold sore treatment drug products.
Allyl isothiocyanate
Aspirin
Benzyl alcohol
Camphorated metacresol
Ephedrine hydrochloride
(vi) Insect bite and sting treatment drug products.
Alcohol
Alcohol, ethoxylated alkyl
Benzalkonium chloride
Calamine
Ergot fluidextract
Ferric chloride
Panthenol
Peppermint oil
Pyrilamine maleate
Sodium borate
Trolamine salicylate
Turpentine oil
Zinc oxide
Zirconium oxide
(vii) Poison ivy, poison oak, and poison sumac drug products.
Alcohol
Aspirin
Benzethonium chloride
Benzocaine (0.5 to 1.25 percent)
Bithionol
Calamine
Cetalkonium chloride
Chloral hydrate
Chlorobutanol
Chlorpheniramine maleate
Creosote, beechwood
Cyclomethycaine sulfate
Dexpanthenol
Dipropylene glycol
Dexpanethol
Dipropylene glycol
Eucalyptus oil
Eugenol
Glycerin
Glycol salicylate
Hectorite
Hexylresorcinol
Hydrogen peroxide
Impatiens bifflo tincture
Iron oxide
Isopropyl alcohol
Lanolin
Lead acetate
Merbromin
Mercuric chloride
Methapyrilene hydrochloride
Panthenol
Parethoxycaine hydrochloride
Phenyltoloxamine dihydrogen citrate
Povidone-vinylacetate copolymers
Pyrilamine maleate
Salicylamide
Salicylic acid
Simethicone
Sulfur
Tannic acid
Thymol
Trolamine salicylate
Turpentine oil
Zinc oxide
Zyrloxin
(11) [Reserved]
(12) Laxative drug products—(i) Bulk laxatives.
Agar
Carrageenan (degraded)
Carrageenan (native)
Guar gum
(ii) Saline laxative.
Tartaric acid
(iii) Stool softener.
Poloxamer 188
(iv)(A) Stimulant laxatives—Approved as of May 7, 1991.
Aloin
Bile salts/acid
§ 310.545

Calcium pantothenate
Calomel
Colocynth
Elaterin resin
Frangula
Gamboge
Ipomea
Jalap
Ox bile
Podophyllum resin
Prune concentrate dehydrate
Prune powder
Rhubarb, Chinese
Sodium Olate


Danthron
Phenolphthalein

(13) [Reserved]

(14) Oral health care drug products (nonantimicrobial).

Antipyrine
Camphor
Cresol
Dibucaine
Dibucaine hydrochloride
Eucalyptol
Lidocaine
Lidocaine hydrochloride
Methyl salicylate
Myrrh tincture
Pyrilamine maleate
Sorbitol
Sugars
Tetracaine
Tetracaine hydrochloride
Thymol

(15) Topical otic drug products for the prevention of swimmer’s ear and for the drying of water-clogged ears—(i) Approved as of May 7, 1991.

Acetic acid


Glycerin and anhydrous glycerin
Isopropyl alcohol

(16) Poison treatment drug products.

Ipecac fluidextract
Ipecac tincture
Sodium Olate

(17) Skin bleaching drug products.

Mercury, ammoniated

(18) Skin protectant drug products. (i) Ingredients.

Allantoin (wound healing claims only)
Sulfur
Tannic acid
Zinc acetate (wound healing claims only)

(ii) Astringent drug products.

Acetone
Alcohol
Alum, ammonium
Alum, potassium
Aluminum chlorhydroxy complex
Aromatics
Benzoalkonium chloride
Benzenethionium chloride
Benzoic acid
Boric acid
Calcium acetate
Camphor gum
Clove oil
Colloidal oatmeal
Cresol
Cupric sulfate
Eucalyptus oil
Eugenol
Ferric subsulfate (Monsel’s Solution)
Honey
Isopropyl alcohol
Menthol
Methyl salicylate
Oxyquinoline sulfate
P-t-butyl-m-cresol
Peppermint oil
Phenol
Polyoxymethylene laurate
Potassium ferrocyanide
Sage oil
Silver nitrate
Sodium borate
Sodium diacetate
Talc
Tannic acid glycerite
Thymol
Topical starch
Zinc chloride
Zinc oxide
Zinc phenolsulfonate
Zinc stearate
Zinc sulfate

(iii) Diaper rash drug products.

Aluminum hydroxide
Cocoa butter
Cysteine hydrochloride
Glycerin
Protein hydrolysate
Racemethionine
Sulfur
Tannic acid
Zinc acetate
Zinc carbonate

(iv) Fever blister and cold sore treatment drug products.

Bismuth subnitrate
Boric acid
Pyridoxine hydrochloride
Sulfur
Tannic acid
Topical starch
(v) Insect bite and sting drug products.

Alcohol
Alcohol, ethoxylated alkyl
Ammonia solution, strong
Ammonium hydroxide
Benzalkonium chloride
Camphor
Ergot fluidextract
Ferric chloride
Menthol
Peppermint oil
Phenol
Pyrilamine maleate
Sodium borate
Trolamine
Turpentine oil
Zirconium oxide

(vi) Poison ivy, poison oak, and poison sumac drug products.

Alcohol
Anion and cation exchange resins buffered
Benzethonium chloride
Benzocaine
Benzyl alcohol
Bismuth subnitrate
Bithionol
Boric acid
Camphor
Cetalkonium chloride
Chloral hydrate
Chlorpheniramine maleate
Creosote
Diaperodon hydrochloride
Diphenhydramine hydrochloride
Eucalyptus oil
Ferric chloride
Glycerin
Hectorite
Hydrogen peroxide
Impatiens biflora tincture
Iron oxide
Isopropyl alcohol
Lanolin
Lead acetate
Lidocaine
Menthol
Merbromin
Mercuric chloride
Panthenol
Parethoxycaine hydrochloride
Phenol
Phenytoloxamine dihydrogen citrate
Povidone-vinylacetate copolymers
Salicylic acid
Simethicone
Tannic acid
Topical starch
Trolamine
Turpentine oil
Zirconium oxide
Zyloxin

(19) [Reserved]

(20) Weight control drug products.

Alcohol
Alfalfa
Alginate acid
Anise oil
Arginine
Ascorbic acid
Bearberry
Biotin
Bone marrow, red
Buchu
Buchu, potassium extract
Caffeine
Caffeine citrate
Calcium
Calcium carbonate
Calcium caseinate
Calcium lactate
Calcium pantothenate
Carboxymethylcellulose sodium
Carrageenan
Cholecalciferol
Choline
Chordrus
Citric acid
Cnicus benedictus
Copper
Copper gluconate
Corn oil
Corn syrup
Corn silk, potassium extract
Cupric sulfate
Cyanocobalamin (vitamin B12)
Cystine
Dextrose
Docusate sodium
Ergocalciferol
Ferric ammonium citrate
Ferric pyrophosphate
Ferrous fumarate
Ferrous gluconate
Ferrous sulfate (iron)
Flax seed
Folic acid
Fructose
Guar gum
Histidine
Hydrastis canadensis
Inositol
Iodine
Isoleucine
Juniper, potassium extract
Karaya gum
Kelp
Lactose
Lecithin
Leucine
Liver concentrate
Lysine
Lysine hydrochloride
Magnesium
Magnesium oxide
Malt
Maltodextrin
Manganese citrate
Mannitol

51
§ 310.545

Methionine
Methylcellulose
Mono- and di-glycerides
Niacinamide
Organic vegetables
Pancreatin
Pantothenic acid
Papain
Papaya enzymes
Pepsin
Phenacetin
Phenylalanine
Phosphorus
Phytolacca
Pineapple enzymes
Plantago seed
Potassium citrate
Pyridoxine hydrochloride (vitamin B<sub>6</sub>)
Riboflavin
Rice polishings
Saccharin
Sea minerals
Sesame seed
Sodium
Sodium bicarbonate
Sodium caseinate
Sodium chloride (salt)
Soybean protein
Soy meal
Sucrose
Thiamine hydrochloride (vitamin B<sub>1</sub>)
Thiamine mononitrate (vitamin B<sub>1</sub> mononitrate)
Threonine
Tricalcium phosphate
Tryptophan
Tyrosine
Uva ursi, potassium extract
Valine
Vegetable
Vitamin A
Vitamin A acetate
Vitamin A palmitate
Vitamin E
Wheat germ
Xanthan gum
Yeast

(21) Ophthalmic drug products.
   (i) Ophthalmic anesthetic drug products.
      Antipyrine
      Piperocaine hydrochloride
   (ii) Ophthalmic anti-infective drug products.
      Boric acid
      Mild silver protein
      Yellow mercuric oxide
   (iii) Ophthalmic astringent drug products.
      Infusion of rose petals
   (iv) Ophthalmic demulcent drug products.

Polyethylene glycol 6000

(v) Ophthalmic vasoconstrictor drug products.

Phenylephrine hydrochloride (less than 0.08 percent)

(22) Topical antifungal drug products.
   (i) Diaper rash drug products. Any ingredient(s) labeled with claims or directions for use in the treatment and/or prevention of diaper rash.
   (ii) Ingredients.
      Alcloxa
      Alum, potassium
      Aluminum sulfate
      Amytricresols, secondary
      Basic fuchsin
      Benzethonium chloride
      Benzonic acid
      Benzoxiquine
      Boric acid
      Camphor
      Candidin
      Chlorothymol
      Coal tar
      Dichlorophen
      Menthol
      Methylparaben
      Oxyquinoline
      Oxyquinoline sulfate
      Phenol
      Phenolate sodium
      Phenyl salicylate
      Propionic acid
      Propylparaben
      Resorcinol
      Salicylic acid
      Sodium borate
      Sodium caprylate
      Sodium propionate
      Sulfur
      Tannic acid
      Thymol
      Tolindate
      Triacetin
      Zinc caprylate
      Zinc propionate

(iii) Any ingredient(s) labeled with claims or directions for use on the scalp or on the nails.
   (iv) Ingredients.
      Camphorated metacresol
      Chloroxylenol
      n-cresol
      Nystatin

(23) Internal analgesic drug products.
   (i) Approved as of November 10, 1993.
      Aminobenzoic acid
      Antipyrine
      Aspirin, aluminum
      Calcium salicylate
      Codeine
§ 310.545

Any atropine ingredient
Any ephedrine ingredient


Alcohol
Aloes
Asclepias tuberosa
Asparagus
Barooma
Bearberry (extract of uva ursi)
Bearberry fluidextract (extract of bearberry)
Blessed thistle (cnicus benedictus)
Buchu powdered extract (extract of buchu)
Calcium lactate
Calcium pantothenate
Capsicum oleoresin
Cascara fluidextract, aromatic (extract of cascara)
Chlorprophenpyridamine maleate
Cimicifuga racemosa
Codlifia
Collinsonia (extract stone root)
Corn silk
Couch grass
Dog grass extract
Ethyl nitrite
Ferroc chloride
Ferrous sulfate
Gentiana lutea (gentian)
Glycyrrhiza (licorice)
Homatropine methylbromide
Hydrangea, powdered extract (extract of hydrangea)
Hydrastis canadensis (golden seal)
Hyoscyamine sulfate
Juniper oil (oil of juniper)
Magnesium sulfate
Methapyrillene hydrochloride
Methenamine
Methylene blue
Natural estrogenic hormone
Niacinamid
Nutmeg oil (oil of nutmeg)
Oil of erigeron
Parsley
Peppermint spirit
Pepsin, essence
Phenacetin
Phenindamine tartrate
Phenyl salicylate
Piscidia erythrina
Pipesseeawa
Potassium acetate
Potassium nitrate
Riboflavin
Saw palmetto
Senecio aureus
Sodium benzoate
Sodium nitrate
Sucrose
Sulferated oils of turpentine
Taraxacum officinale
Theobromine sodium salicylate
Theophylline
Thiamine hydrochloride
Triticum
Turpentine, venice (venice turpertine)
Urea

(ii) Approved as of February 22, 1999.

Any atropine ingredient
Any ephedrine ingredient


Benzocaine
Benzyl alcohol
Benzyl benzoate
Chloropherthanoline (dichlorodiphenyl trichlorethan)
Coconut oil soap, aqueous
Copper oleate
Docusate sodium
Formic acid
Isobornyl thiocyanacetate
Picrotoxin
Propylene glycol
Sabadilla alkaloids
Sulfur, sublimed
Thiocyanacetate

(ii) Approved as of June 14, 1994. The combination of pyrethrum extract (formerly named pyrethrins) and piperonyl butoxide in an aerosol dosage formulation.


Atropine
Belladonna extract

(ii) Antiseptic drug products.

Boric acid
Boroglycerin
Hydrastis
Phenol
Resocinol
Sodium salicylic acid phenolate

(iii) Astringent drug products.

Tannic acid

(iv) Counterirritant drug products.

Camphor (greater than 3 to 11 percent)
§ 310.545

Hydrastis Menthol (1.25 to 16 percent)
Turpentine oil (rectified) (6 to 50 percent)

(v) Keratolytic drug products.
Precipitated sulfur
Sublimed sulfur

(vi) Local anesthetic drug products.
Diperodon
Phenacaine hydrochloride

(vii) Other drug products.
Collinsonia extract
Escherichia coli vaccines
Lappa extract
Leptandra extract
Live yeast cell derivative
Mullein

(viii) Protectant drug products.
Bismuth oxide
Bismuth subcarbonate
Bismuth subgallate
Bismuth subnitrate
Lanolin alcohols

(ix) Vasoconstrictor drug products.
Epinephrine undecylenate

(x) Wound healing drug products.
Cholecalciferol
Cod liver oil
Live yeast cell derivative
Peruvian balsam
Shark liver oil
Vitamin A

(27) Topical antimicrobial drug products—(i) First aid antiseptic drug products.
Ammoniated mercury
Calomel (mercurous chloride)
Merbromin (mercurochrome)
Mercufenol chloride (orthochloromercuropbenol, hydroxyphenylmercuric chloride)
Mercuric chloride (bichloride of mercury, mercury chloride)
Mercuric oxide, yellow
Mercuric salicylate
Mercuric sulfide, red
Mercury
Mercury olate
Mercury sulfide
Nitromersol
Para-chloromercuropbenol
Phenylmercuric nitrate
Thimerosal
Vitromersol
Zyloxin

(ii) Diaper rash drug products.
Para-chloromercuropbenol
Any other ingredient containing mercury

(28) Vaginal contraceptive drug products.
Dodecaethylene glycol monolaurate (polyethylene glycol 600 monolaurate)
Laureth 10S
Methoxypolyoxyethylene glycol 550 laurate
Phenylmercuric acetate
Phenylmercuric nitrate
Any other ingredient containing mercury

(29) Sunscreen drug products.
Diethanolamine methoxyccinnamate
Digalloyl trioleate
Ethyl 4-[bis(hydroxypropyl)] aminobenzoate
Glyceryl aminobenzoate
Lawson with dihydrozyacetone
Red petrolatum

(b) Any OTC drug product that is labeled, represented, or promoted for the uses specified and containing any active ingredient(s) as specified in paragraph (a) of this section is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 210(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the Act), for which an approved new drug application under section 505 of the Act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the Act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for the OTC uses and containing any active ingredient(s) as specified in paragraph (a) of this section is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) Any OTC drug product that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action if initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce after the dates specified in paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(33) of this section.

(1) May 7, 1993, for products subject to paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(2)(i), (a)(3) through (a)(4), (a)(6)(i)(A), (a)(6)(ii)(A), (a)(7) (except as covered by paragraph (d)(3) of this section), (a)(8)(i), (a)(10)(i) through (a)(10)(iii), (a)(12)(i) through (a)(12)(iv)(A), (a)(14) through (a)(15)(i), and (a)(16) through (a)(18) of this section.
§ 310.545

(2) February 10, 1992, for products subject to paragraph (a)(20) of this section.

(3) December 4, 1992, for products subject to paragraph (a)(7) of this section that contain menthol as an anti-pruritic in combination with the anti-dandruff ingredient coal tar identified in §358.710(a)(1) of this chapter.

(4) February 28, 1990, for products subject to paragraph (a)(6)(iii) of this section, except those that contain ipecac.

(5) September 14, 1993, for products subject to paragraph (a)(6)(iii) of this section that contain ipecac.

(6) December 9, 1993, for products subject to paragraph (a)(6)(i)(B) of this section.

(7) March 6, 1989, for products subject to paragraph (a)(21) of this section that contain ophthalmic anti-infective ingredients listed in paragraph (a)(21)(i).

(8) June 18, 1993, for products subject to paragraph (a)(21) of this section that contain ipecac.

(9) June 18, 1993, for products subject to paragraph (a)(10)(iv) of this section.

(10) June 18, 1993, for products subject to paragraph (a)(22)(i) of this section.

(11) November 10, 1993, for products subject to paragraphs (a)(8)(ii), (a)(10)(v) through (a)(10)(vii), (a)(18)(i) (except products that contain ferric subsulfate) through (a)(18)(vii), (a)(22)(ii), (a)(23)(i), (a)(24)(i), and (a)(23) of this section.

(12) March 2, 1994, for products subject to paragraph (a)(22)(iii) of this section.

(13) August 5, 1991, for products subject to paragraphs (a)(26) of this section, except for those that contain live yeast cell derivative.

(14) September 2, 1994, for products subject to paragraph (a)(26)(vii) and (a)(26)(x) of this section that contain live yeast cell derivative.

(15) September 23, 1994, for products subject to paragraph (a)(22)(iv) of this section.

(16) June 14, 1994, for products subject to paragraph (a)(25)(ii) of this section.

(17) [Reserved]

(18) August 15, 1995, for products subject to paragraph (a)(15)(ii) of this section.

(19) October 2, 1987, for products subject to paragraph (a)(6)(iv)(A) of this section.

(20) January 29, 1996, for products subject to paragraph (a)(6)(iv)(B) of this section.

(21) April 21, 1994, for products subject to paragraph (a)(8)(iii) of this section.

(22) April 21, 1993, for products subject to paragraph (a)(18)(ii) of this section that contain ferric subsulfate.

(23) August 23, 1995, for products subject to paragraph (a)(6)(i)(B) of this section.

(24) October 7, 1996, for products subject to paragraph (a)(2)(ii) of this section.

(25) June 19, 1996, for products subject to paragraph (a)(6)(iv)(C) of this section.

(26) February 22, 1999, for products subject to paragraphs (a)(23)(ii) and (a)(24)(i) of this section.

(27) [Reserved]

(28) October 22, 1998, for products subject to paragraphs (a)(27) and (a)(28) of this section.

(29) January 29, 1999, for products subject to paragraph (a)(12)(iv)(B) of this section.

(30) [Reserved]

(31) May 21, 2001 for products subject to paragraph (a)(29) of this section.

(32) [Reserved]

(33) October 29, 2001, for products subject to paragraph (a)(6)(iv)(D) of this section.

[55 FR 46919, Nov. 7, 1990]

EDITORIAL NOTE: For Federal Register citations affecting §310.545, see the List of CFR Sections Affected, which appears in the Finding Aids section of the printed volume and on GPO Access.

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTES: 1. At 61 FR 9571, Mar. 8, 1996, in §310.545 in paragraph (a)(6)(ii)(B), the entry for “1-desoxyephedrine (topical)” was stayed until further notice.

2. At 64 FR 27687, May 21, 1999, in §310.545 paragraph (a)(29) was added. (d) introductory text was revised, paragraph (d)(30) was added and reserved, and paragraph (d)(31) was added, effective May 21, 2001. At 65 FR 36919, 36921, June 8, 2000, the effective date was delayed through Dec. 31, 2002, and paragraph (d)(31) was revised. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:
§ 310.546 Drug products containing certain active ingredients offered over-the-counter (OTC) for certain uses.

(a) * * *

(d) Any OTC drug product that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action if initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce after the dates specified in paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(29) of this section.

* * * * *

(31) December 31, 2002, for products subject to paragraph (a)(29) of this section.

§ 310.547 Drug products containing quinine offered over-the-counter (OTC) for the treatment and/or prevention of malaria.

(a) Quinine and quinine salts have been used OTC for the treatment and/or prevention of malaria, a serious and potentially life-threatening disease. Quinine is no longer the drug of choice for the treatment and/or prevention of most types of malaria. In addition, there are serious and complicating aspects of the disease itself and some potentially serious and life-threatening risks associated with the use of quinine at doses employed for the treatment of malaria. Therefore, quinine or quinine salts cannot be safely and effectively used for the treatment and/or prevention of malaria except under the care and supervision of a doctor.
(b) Any OTC drug product containing quinine or quinine salts that is labeled, represented, or promoted for the treatment and/or prevention of malaria is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the act, for which an approved application or abbreviated application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application or abbreviated new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product labeled, represented, or promoted for OTC use for the treatment and/or prevention of malaria is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After April 20, 1998, any such OTC drug product initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

(83 FR 13528, Mar. 20, 1998)

§310.548 Drug products containing colloidal silver ingredients or silver salts offered over-the-counter (OTC) for the treatment and/or prevention of disease.

(a) Colloidal silver ingredients and silver salts have been marketed in over-the-counter (OTC) drug products for the treatment and prevention of numerous disease conditions. There are serious and complicating aspects to many of the diseases these silver ingredients purport to treat or prevent. Further, there is a lack of adequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness of colloidal silver ingredients or silver salts for OTC use in the treatment or prevention of any disease. These ingredients and salts include, but are not limited to, silver proteins, mild silver protein, strong silver protein, silver, silver ion, silver chloride, silver cyanide, silver iodide, silver oxide, and silver phosphate.

(b) Any OTC drug product containing colloidal silver ingredients or silver salts that is labeled, represented, or promoted for the treatment and/or prevention of any disease is regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) for which an approved application or abbreviated application under section 505 of the act and part 314 of this chapter is required for marketing. In the absence of an approved new drug application or abbreviated new drug application, such product is also misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(c) Clinical investigations designed to obtain evidence that any drug product containing colloidal silver or silver salts labeled, represented, or promoted for any OTC drug use is safe and effective for the purpose intended must comply with the requirements and procedures governing the use of investigational new drugs as set forth in part 312 of this chapter.

(d) After September 16, 1999, any such OTC drug product containing colloidal silver or silver salts initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into interstate commerce that is not in compliance with this section is subject to regulatory action.

(64 FR 44658, Aug. 17, 1999)
§ 312.1 Scope.

312.15 Submissions for treatment use.
312.16 Emergency use of an investigational new drug.
312.18 Withdrawal of an IND.

Subpart C—Administrative Actions

312.40 General requirements for use of an investigational new drug in a clinical investigation.
312.41 Comment and advice on an IND.
312.42 Clinical holds and requests for modification.
312.44 Termination.
312.45 Inactive status.
312.47 Meetings.
312.48 Dispute resolution.

Subpart D—Responsibilities of Sponsors and Investigators

312.50 General responsibilities of sponsors.
312.52 Transfer of obligations to a contract research organization.
312.53 Selecting investigators and monitors.
312.54 Emergency research under §50.24 of this chapter.
312.55 Informing investigators.
312.56 Review of ongoing investigations.
312.57 Recordkeeping and record retention.
312.58 Inspection of sponsor's records and reports.
312.59 Disposition of unused supply of investigational drug.
312.60 General responsibilities of investigators.
312.61 Control of the investigational drug.
312.62 Investigator recordkeeping and record retention.
312.64 Investigator reports.
312.66 Assurance of IRB review.
312.68 Inspection of investigator's records and reports.
312.69 Handling of controlled substances.
312.70 Disqualification of a clinical investigator.

Subpart E—Drugs Intended to Treat Life-Threatening and Severely-debilitating Illnesses

312.80 Purpose.
312.81 Scope.
312.82 Early consultation.
312.83 Treatment protocols.
312.84 Risk-benefit analysis in review of marketing applications for drugs to treat life-threatening and severely-debilitating illnesses.
312.85 Phase 4 studies.
312.86 Focused FDA regulatory research.
312.87 Active monitoring of conduct and evaluation of clinical trials.
312.88 Safeguards for patient safety.

Subpart F—Miscellaneous

312.110 Import and export requirements.
to support any other significant change in the labeling for the drug;
(ii) If the drug that is undergoing investigation is lawfully marketed as a prescription drug product, the investigation is not intended to support a significant change in the advertising for the product;
(iii) The investigation does not involve a route of administration or dosage level or use in a patient population or other factor that significantly increases the risks (or decreases the acceptability of the risks) associated with the use of the drug product;
(iv) The investigation is conducted in compliance with the requirements for institutional review set forth in part 56 and with the requirements for informed consent set forth in part 50; and
(v) The investigation is conducted in compliance with the requirements of §312.7.
(2)(i) A clinical investigation involving an in vitro diagnostic biological product listed in paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section is exempt from the requirements of this part if (a) it is intended to be used in a diagnostic procedure that confirms the diagnosis made by another, medically established, diagnostic product or procedure and (b) it is shipped in compliance with §312.160.
(ii) In accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, the following products are exempt from the requirements of this part: (a) blood grouping serum; (b) reagent red blood cells; and (c) anti-human globulin.
(3) A drug intended solely for tests in vitro or in laboratory research animals is exempt from the requirements of this part if shipped in accordance with §312.160.
(4) FDA will not accept an application for an investigation that is exempt under the provisions of paragraph (b)(1) of this section.
(5) A clinical investigation involving use of a placebo is exempt from the requirements of this part if the investigation does not otherwise require submission of an IND.
(6) A clinical investigation involving an exception from informed consent under §50.24 of this chapter is not exempt from the requirements of this part.

(c) Bioavailability studies. The applicability of this part to in vivo bioavailability studies in humans is subject to the provisions of §320.31.
(d) Unlabeled indication. This part does not apply to the use in the practice of medicine for an unlabeled indication of a new drug product approved under part 314 or of a licensed biological product.
(e) Guidance. FDA may, on its own initiative, issue guidance on the applicability of this part to particular investigational uses of drugs. On request, FDA will advise on the applicability of this part to a planned clinical investigation.

§ 312.6 Labeling of an investigational new drug.

(a) The immediate package of an investigational new drug intended for human use shall bear a label with the statement “Caution: New Drug—Limited by Federal (or United States) law to investigational use.”

(b) The label or labeling of an investigational new drug shall not bear any statement that is false or misleading in any particular and shall not represent that the investigational new drug is safe or effective for the purposes for which it is being investigated.

§ 312.7 Promotion and charging for investigational drugs.

(a) Promotion of an investigational new drug. A sponsor or investigator, or any person acting on behalf of a sponsor or investigator, shall not represent in a promotional context that an investigational new drug is safe or effective for the purposes for which it is under investigation or otherwise promote the drug. This provision is not intended to restrict the full exchange of scientific information concerning the drug, including dissemination of scientific findings in scientific or lay media. Rather, its intent is to restrict promotional claims of safety or effectiveness of the drug for a use for which it is under investigation and to preclude commercialization of the drug before it is approved for commercial distribution.

(b) Commercial distribution of an investigational new drug. A sponsor or investigator shall not commercially distribute or test market an investigational new drug.

(c) Prolonging an investigation. A sponsor shall not unduly prolong an investigation after finding that the results of the investigation appear to establish sufficient data to support a marketing application.

(d) Charging for and commercialization of investigational drugs—(1) Clinical trials under an IND. Charging for an investigational drug in a clinical trial under an IND is not permitted without the prior written approval of FDA. In requesting such approval, the sponsor shall provide a full written explanation of why charging is necessary in order
for the sponsor to undertake or continue the clinical trial, e.g., why distribution of the drug to test subjects should not be considered part of the normal cost of doing business.

(2) Treatment protocol or treatment IND. A sponsor or investigator may charge for an investigational drug for a treatment use under a treatment protocol or treatment IND provided: (i) There is adequate enrollment in the ongoing clinical investigations under the authorized IND; (ii) charging does not constitute commercial marketing of a new drug for which a marketing application has not been approved; (iii) the drug is not being commercially promoted or advertised; and (iv) the sponsor of the drug is actively pursuing marketing approval with due diligence. FDA must be notified in writing in advance of commencing any such charges, in an information amendment submitted under §312.31. Authorization for charging goes into effect automatically 30 days after receipt by FDA of the information amendment, unless the sponsor is notified to the contrary.

(3) Noncommercialization of investigational drug. Under this section, the sponsor may not commercialize an investigational drug by charging a price larger than that necessary to recover costs of manufacture, research, development, and handling of the investigational drug.

(4) Withdrawal of authorization. Authorization to charge for an investigational drug under this section may be withdrawn by FDA if the agency finds that the conditions underlying the authorization are no longer satisfied.

§312.20 Requirement for an IND.

(a) A sponsor shall submit an IND to FDA if the sponsor intends to conduct a clinical investigation with an investigational new drug that is subject to §312.2(a).

(b) A sponsor shall not begin a clinical investigation subject to §312.2(a) until the investigation is subject to an IND which is in effect in accordance with §312.40.

(c) A sponsor shall submit a separate IND for any clinical investigation involving an exception from informed consent under §50.24 of this chapter. Such a clinical investigation is not permitted to proceed without the prior written authorization from FDA. FDA shall provide a written determination 30 days after FDA receives the IND or earlier.

§312.21 Phases of an investigation.

An IND may be submitted for one or more phases of an investigation. The
§ 312.22 Clinical investigation of a previously untested drug is generally divided into three phases. Although in general the phases are conducted sequentially, they may overlap. These three phases of an investigation are as follows:

(a) Phase 1. (1) Phase 1 includes the initial introduction of an investigational new drug into humans. Phase 1 studies are typically closely monitored and may be conducted in patients or normal volunteer subjects. These studies are designed to determine the metabolism and pharmacologic actions of the drug in humans, the side effects associated with increasing doses, and, if possible, to gain early evidence on effectiveness. During Phase 1, sufficient information about the drug’s pharmacokinetics and pharmacological effects should be obtained to permit the design of well-controlled, scientifically valid, Phase 2 studies. The total number of subjects and patients included in Phase 1 studies varies with the drug, but is generally in the range of 20 to 80.

(2) Phase 1 studies also include studies of drug metabolism, structure-activity relationships, and mechanism of action in humans, as well as studies in which investigational drugs are used as research tools to explore biological phenomena or disease processes.

(b) Phase 2. Phase 2 includes the controlled clinical studies conducted to evaluate the effectiveness of the drug for a particular indication or indications in patients with the disease or condition under study and to determine the common short-term side effects and risks associated with the drug. Phase 2 studies are typically well controlled, closely monitored, and conducted in a relatively small number of patients, usually involving no more than several hundred subjects.

(c) Phase 3. Phase 3 studies are expanded controlled and uncontrolled trials. They are performed after preliminary evidence suggesting effectiveness of the drug has been obtained, and are intended to gather the additional information about effectiveness and safety that is needed to evaluate the overall benefit-risk relationship of the drug and to provide an adequate basis for physician labeling. Phase 3 studies usually include from several hundred to several thousand subjects.

§ 312.22 General principles of the IND submission.

(a) FDA’s primary objectives in reviewing an IND are, in all phases of the investigation, to assure the safety and rights of subjects, and, in Phase 2 and 3, to help assure that the quality of the scientific evaluation of drugs is adequate to permit an evaluation of the drug’s effectiveness and safety. Therefore, although FDA’s review of Phase 1 submissions will focus on assessing the safety of Phase 1 investigations, FDA’s review of Phases 2 and 3 submissions will also include an assessment of the scientific quality of the clinical investigations and the likelihood that the investigations will yield data capable of meeting statutory standards for marketing approval.

(b) The amount of information on a particular drug that must be submitted in an IND to assure the accomplishment of the objectives described in paragraph (a) of this section depends upon such factors as the novelty of the drug, the extent to which it has been studied previously, the known or suspected risks, and the developmental phase of the drug.

(c) The central focus of the initial IND submission should be on the general investigational plan and the protocols for specific human studies. Subsequent amendments to the IND that contain new or revised protocols should build logically on previous submissions and should be supported by additional information, including the results of animal toxicology studies or other human studies as appropriate. Annual reports to the IND should serve as the focus for reporting the status of studies being conducted under the IND and should update the general investigational plan for the coming year.

(d) The IND format set forth in §312.23 should be followed routinely by sponsors in the interest of fostering an efficient review of applications. Sponsors are expected to exercise considerable discretion, however, regarding the content of information submitted in each section, depending upon the kind of drug being studied and the nature of the available information. Section 312.23 outlines the information needed for a commercially sponsored IND for a
new molecular entity. A sponsor-investigator who uses, as a research tool, an investigational new drug that is already subject to a manufacturer’s IND or marketing application should follow the same general format, but ordinarily may, if authorized by the manufacturer, refer to the manufacturer’s IND or marketing application in providing the technical information supporting the proposed clinical investigation. A sponsor-investigator who uses an investigational drug not subject to a manufacturer’s IND or marketing application is ordinarily required to submit all technical information supporting the IND, unless such information may be referenced from the scientific literature.

§ 312.23 IND content and format.
(a) A sponsor who intends to conduct a clinical investigation subject to this part shall submit an “Investigational New Drug Application” (IND) including, in the following order:

1. Cover sheet (Form FDA–1571). A cover sheet for the application containing the following:
   (i) The name, address, and telephone number of the sponsor, the date of the application, and the name of the investigational new drug.
   (ii) Identification of the phase or phases of the clinical investigation to be conducted.
   (iii) A commitment not to begin clinical investigations until an IND covering the investigations is in effect.
   (iv) A commitment that an Institutional Review Board (IRB) that complies with the requirements set forth in part 56 will be responsible for the initial and continuing review and approval of each of the studies in the proposed clinical investigation and that the investigator will report to the IRB proposed changes in the research activity in accordance with the requirements of part 56.
   (v) A commitment to conduct the investigation in accordance with all other applicable regulatory requirements.
   (vi) The name and title of the person responsible for monitoring the conduct and progress of the clinical investigations.
   (vii) The name(s) and title(s) of the person(s) responsible under §312.32 for review and evaluation of information relevant to the safety of the drug.
   (viii) If a sponsor has transferred any obligations for the conduct of any clinical study to a contract research organization, a statement containing the name and address of the contract research organization, identification of the clinical study, and a listing of the obligations transferred. If all obligations governing the conduct of the study have been transferred, a general statement of this transfer—in lieu of a listing of the specific obligations transferred—may be submitted.
   (ix) The signature of the sponsor or the sponsor’s authorized representative. If the person signing the application does not reside or have a place of business within the United States, the IND is required to contain the name and address of, and be countersigned by, an attorney, agent, or other authorized official who resides or maintains a place of business within the United States.

2. A table of contents.
3. Introductory statement and general investigational plan. (1) A brief introductory statement giving the name of the drug and all active ingredients, the drug’s pharmacological class, the structural formula of the drug (if known), the formulation of the dosage form(s) to be used, the route of administration, and the broad objectives and planned duration of the proposed clinical investigation(s).
   (ii) A brief description of the overall plan for investigating the drug product for the following year. The plan should include the following: (a) The rationale for the drug or the research study; (b)
§ 312.23  Investigator's brochure. If required under §312.55, a copy of the investigator's brochure, containing the following information:

(i) A brief description of the drug substance and the formulation, including the structural formula, if known.

(ii) A summary of the pharmacological and toxicological effects of the drug in animals and, to the extent known, in humans.

(iii) A summary of the pharmacokinetics and biological disposition of the drug in animals and, if known, in humans.

(iv) A summary of information relating to safety and effectiveness in humans obtained from prior clinical studies. (Reprints of published articles on such studies may be appended when useful.)

(v) A description of possible risks and side effects to be anticipated on the basis of prior experience with the drug under investigation or with related drugs, and of precautions or special monitoring to be done as part of the investigational use of the drug.

(6) Protocols. (i) A protocol for each planned study. (Protocols for studies not submitted initially in the IND should be submitted in accordance with §312.30(a).) In general, protocols for Phase 1 studies may be less detailed and more flexible than protocols for Phase 2 and 3 studies. Phase 1 protocols should be directed primarily at providing an outline of the investigation—an estimate of the number of patients to be involved, a description of safety exclusions, and a description of the dosing plan including duration, dose, or method to be used in determining dose—and should specify in detail only those elements of the study that are critical to safety, such as necessary monitoring of vital signs and blood chemistries. Modifications of the experimental design of Phase 1 studies that do not affect critical safety assessments are required to be reported to FDA only in the annual report.

(ii) In Phases 2 and 3, detailed protocols describing all aspects of the study should be submitted. A protocol for a Phase 2 or 3 investigation should be designed in such a way that, if the sponsor anticipates that some deviation from the study design may become necessary as the investigation progresses, alternatives or contingencies to provide for such deviation are built into the protocols at the outset. For example, a protocol for a controlled short-term study might include a plan for an early crossover of nonresponders to an alternative therapy.

(iii) A protocol is required to contain the following, with the specific elements and detail of the protocol reflecting the above distinctions depending on the phase of study:

(a) A statement of the objectives and purpose of the study.

(b) The name and address and a statement of the qualifications (curriculum vitae or other statement of qualifications) of each investigator, and the name of each subinvestigator (e.g., research fellow, resident) working under the supervision of the investigator; the name and address of the research facilities to be used; and the name and address of each reviewing Institutional Review Board.

(c) The criteria for patient selection and for exclusion of patients and an estimate of the number of patients to be studied.

(d) A description of the design of the study, including the kind of control group to be used, if any, and a description of methods to be used to minimize bias on the part of subjects, investigators, and analysts.

(e) The method for determining the dose(s) to be administered, the planned maximum dosage, and the duration of individual patient exposure to the drug.

(f) A description of the observations and measurements to be made to fulfill the objectives of the study.
(g) A description of clinical procedures, laboratory tests, or other measures to be taken to monitor the effects of the drug in human subjects and to minimize risk.

(7) Chemistry, manufacturing, and control information. (i) As appropriate for the particular investigations covered by the IND, a section describing the composition, manufacture, and control of the drug substance and the drug product. Although in each phase of the investigation sufficient information is required to be submitted to assure the proper identification, quality, purity, and strength of the investigational drug, the amount of information needed to make that assurance will vary with the phase of the investigation, the proposed duration of the investigation, the dosage form, and the amount of information otherwise available. FDA recognizes that modifications to the method of preparation of the new drug substance and dosage form and changes in the dosage form itself are likely as the investigation progresses. Therefore, the emphasis in an initial Phase 1 submission should generally be placed on the identification and control of the raw materials and the new drug substance. Final specifications for the drug substance and drug product are not expected until the end of the investigational process.

(ii) It should be emphasized that the amount of information to be submitted depends upon the scope of the proposed clinical investigation. For example, although stability data are required in all phases of the IND to demonstrate that the new drug substance and drug product are within acceptable chemical and physical limits for the planned duration of the proposed clinical investigation, if very short-term tests are proposed, the supporting stability data can be correspondingly limited.

(iii) As drug development proceeds and as the scale or production is changed from the pilot-scale production appropriate for the limited initial clinical investigations to the larger-scale production needed for expanded clinical trials, the sponsor should submit information amendments to supplement the initial information submitted on the chemistry, manufacturing, and control processes with information appropriate to the expanded scope of the investigation.

(iv) Reflecting the distinctions described in this paragraph (a)(7), and based on the phase(s) to be studied, the submission is required to contain the following:

(a) Drug substance. A description of the drug substance, including its physical, chemical, or biological characteristics; the name and address of its manufacturer; the general method of preparation of the drug substance; the acceptable limits and analytical methods used to assure the identity, strength, quality, and purity of the drug substance; and information sufficient to support stability of the drug substance during the toxicological studies and the planned clinical studies. Reference to the current edition of the United States Pharmacopeia—National Formulary may satisfy relevant requirements in this paragraph.

(b) Drug product. A list of all components, which may include reasonable alternatives for inactive compounds, used in the manufacture of the investigational drug product, including both those components intended to appear in the drug product and those which may not appear but which are used in the manufacturing process, and, where applicable, the quantitative composition of the investigational drug product, including any reasonable variations that may be expected during the investigational stage; the name and address of the drug product manufacturer; a brief general description of the manufacturing and packaging procedure as appropriate for the product; the acceptable limits and analytical methods used to assure the identity, strength, quality, and purity of the drug product; and information sufficient to assure the product’s stability during the planned clinical studies. Reference to the current edition of the United States Pharmacopeia—National Formulary may satisfy certain requirements in this paragraph.

(c) A brief general description of the composition, manufacture, and control of any placebo used in a controlled clinical trial.

(d) Labeling. A copy of all labels and labeling to be provided to each investigator.
(e) Environmental analysis requirements. A claim for categorical exclusion under §25.30 or 25.31 or an environmental assessment under §25.40.

(8) Pharmacology and toxicology information. Adequate information about pharmacological and toxicological studies of the drug involving laboratory animals or in vitro, on the basis of which the sponsor has concluded that it is reasonably safe to conduct the proposed clinical investigations. The kind, duration, and scope of animal and other tests required varies with the duration and nature of the proposed clinical investigations. Guidance documents are available from FDA that describe ways in which these requirements may be met. Such information is required to include the identification and qualifications of the individuals who evaluated the results of such studies and concluded that it is reasonably safe to begin the proposed investigations and a statement of where the investigations were conducted and where the records are available for inspection. As drug development proceeds, the sponsor is required to submit informational amendments, as appropriate, with additional information pertinent to safety.

(i) Pharmacology and drug disposition. A section describing the pharmacological effects and mechanism(s) of action of the drug in animals, and information on the absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion of the drug, if known.

(ii) Toxicology. (a) An integrated summary of the toxicological effects of the drug in animals and in vitro. Depending on the nature of the drug and the phase of the investigation, the description is to include the results of acute, subacute, and chronic toxicity tests; tests of the drug’s effects on reproduction and the developing fetus; any special toxicity test related to the drug’s particular mode of administration or conditions of use (e.g., inhalation, dermal, or ocular toxicity); and any in vitro studies intended to evaluate drug toxicity.

(b) For each toxicology study that is intended primarily to support the safety of the proposed clinical investigation, a full tabulation of data suitable for detailed review.

(iii) For each nonclinical laboratory study subject to the good laboratory practice regulations under part 58, a statement that the study was conducted in compliance with the good laboratory practice regulations in part 58, or, if the study was not conducted in compliance with those regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(9) Previous human experience with the investigational drug. A summary of previous human experience known to the applicant, if any, with the investigational drug. The information is required to include the following:

(i) If the investigational drug has been investigated or marketed previously, either in the United States or other countries, detailed information about such experience that is relevant to the safety of the proposed investigation or to the investigation’s rationale. If the drug has been the subject of controlled trials, detailed information on such trials that is relevant to an assessment of the drug’s effectiveness for the proposed investigational use(s) should also be provided. Any published material that is relevant to an assessment of the drug’s effectiveness for the proposed investigational use(s) should also be provided. Any published material that is less directly relevant may be supplied by a bibliography.

(ii) If the drug is a combination of drugs previously investigated or marketed, the information required under paragraph (a)(9)(i) of this section should be provided for each active drug component. However, if any component in such combination is subject to an approved marketing application or is otherwise lawfully marketed in the United States, the sponsor is not required to submit published material concerning that active drug component unless such material relates directly to the proposed investigational use (including publications relevant to component-component interaction).

(iii) If the drug has been marketed outside the United States, a list of the countries in which the drug has been marketed and a list of the countries in which the drug has been withdrawn from marketing for reasons potentially related to safety or effectiveness.
(10) **Additional information.** In certain applications, as described below, information on special topics may be needed. Such information shall be submitted in this section as follows:

(i) **Drug dependence and abuse potential.** If the drug is a psychotropic substance or otherwise has abuse potential, a section describing relevant clinical studies and experience and studies in test animals.

(ii) **Radioactive drugs.** If the drug is a radioactive drug, sufficient data from animal or human studies to allow a reasonable calculation of radiation-absorbed dose to the whole body and critical organs upon administration to a human subject. Phase 1 studies of radioactive drugs must include studies which will obtain sufficient data for dosimetry calculations.

(iii) **Pediatric studies.** Plans for assessing pediatric safety and effectiveness.

(iv) **Other information.** A brief statement of any other information that would aid evaluation of the proposed clinical investigations with respect to their safety or their design and potential as controlled clinical trials to support marketing of the drug.

(11) **Relevant information.** If requested by FDA, any other relevant information needed for review of the application.

(b) **Information previously submitted.** The sponsor ordinarily is not required to resubmit information previously submitted, but may incorporate the information by reference. A reference to information submitted previously must identify the file by name, reference number, volume, and page number where the information can be found. A reference to information submitted to the agency by a person other than the sponsor is required to contain a written statement that authorizes the reference and that is signed by the person who submitted the information.

(c) **Material in a foreign language.** The sponsor shall submit an accurate and complete English translation of each part of the IND that is not in English. The sponsor shall also submit a copy of each original literature publication for which an English translation is submitted.

(d) **Number of copies.** The sponsor shall submit an original and two copies of all submissions to the IND file, including the original submission and all amendments and reports.

(e) **Numbering of IND submissions.** Each submission relating to an IND is required to be numbered serially using a single, three-digit serial number. The initial IND is required to be numbered 000; each subsequent submission (e.g., amendment, report, or correspondence) is required to be numbered chronologically in sequence.

(f) **Identification of exception from informed consent.** If the investigation involves an exception from informed consent under §50.24 of this chapter, the sponsor shall prominently identify on the cover sheet that the investigation is subject to the requirements in §50.24 of this chapter.


**§312.30 Protocol amendments.**

Once an IND is in effect, a sponsor shall amend it as needed to ensure that the clinical investigations are conducted according to protocols included in the application. This section sets forth the provisions under which new protocols may be submitted and changes in previously submitted protocols may be made. Whenever a sponsor intends to conduct a study that is not covered by a protocol already contained in the IND, the sponsor shall submit to FDA a separate IND for such investigation.

(a) **New protocol.** Whenever a sponsor intends to conduct a study that is not covered by a protocol already contained in the IND, the sponsor shall submit to FDA a protocol amendment containing the protocol for the study. Such study may begin provided two conditions are met: (1) The sponsor has submitted the protocol to FDA for its review; and (2) the protocol has been approved by the Institutional Review Board (IRB) with responsibility for review and approval of the study in accordance with the requirements of part 56. The sponsor may comply with these two conditions in either order.
§ 312.30

(b) Changes in a protocol. (1) A sponsor shall submit a protocol amendment describing any change in a Phase 1 protocol that significantly affects the safety of subjects or any change in a Phase 2 or 3 protocol that significantly affects the safety of subjects, the scope of the investigation, or the scientific quality of the study. Examples of changes requiring an amendment under this paragraph include:

(i) Any increase in drug dosage or duration of exposure of individual subjects to the drug beyond that in the current protocol, or any significant increase in the number of subjects under study.

(ii) Any significant change in the design of a protocol (such as the addition or dropping of a control group).

(iii) The addition of a new test or procedure that is intended to improve monitoring for, or reduce the risk of, a side effect or adverse event; or the dropping of a test intended to monitor safety.

(2)(i) A protocol change under paragraph (b)(1) of this section may be made provided two conditions are met:

(a) The sponsor has submitted the change to FDA for its review; and

(b) The change has been approved by the IRB with responsibility for review and approval of the study. The sponsor may comply with these two conditions in either order.

(ii) Notwithstanding paragraph (b)(1) of this section, a protocol change intended to eliminate an apparent immediate hazard to subjects may be implemented immediately provided FDA is subsequently notified by protocol amendment and the reviewing IRB is notified in accordance with §56.104(c).

(d) Content and format. A protocol amendment is required to be prominently identified as such (i.e., “Protocol Amendment: New Protocol”, “Protocol Amendment: Change in Protocol”, or “Protocol Amendment: New Investigator”), and to contain the following:

(1)(i) In the case of a new protocol, a copy of the new protocol and a brief description of the most clinically significant differences between it and previous protocols.

(ii) In the case of a change in protocol, a brief description of the change and reference (date and number) to the submission that contained the protocol.

(iii) In the case of a new investigator, the investigator’s name, the qualifications to conduct the investigation, reference to the previously submitted protocol, and all additional information about the investigator's study as is required under §312.23(a)(6)(iii)(b).

(2) Reference, if necessary, to specific technical information in the IND or in a concurrently submitted information amendment to the IND that the sponsor relies on to support any clinically significant change in the new or amended protocol. If the reference is made to supporting information already in the IND, the sponsor shall identify by name, reference number, volume, and page number the location of the information.

(3) If the sponsor desires FDA to comment on the submission, a request for such comment and the specific questions FDA’s response should address.

(e) When submitted. A sponsor shall submit a protocol amendment for a new protocol or a change in protocol before its implementation. Protocol amendments to add a new investigator or to provide additional information about investigators may be grouped and submitted at 30-day intervals.
§ 312.31 Information amendments.

(a) Requirement for information amendment. A sponsor shall report in an information amendment essential information on the IND that is not within the scope of a protocol amendment, IND safety reports, or annual report. Examples of information requiring an information amendment include:

(1) New toxicology, chemistry, or other technical information;

(2) A report regarding the discontinuance of a clinical investigation.

(b) Content and format of an information amendment. An information amendment is required to bear prominent identification of its contents (e.g., "Information Amendment: Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control", "Information Amendment: Pharmacology-Toxicology", "Information Amendment: Clinical"), and to contain the following:

(1) A statement of the nature and purpose of the amendment.

(2) An organized submission of the data in a format appropriate for scientific review.

(3) If the sponsor desires FDA to comment on an information amendment, a request for such comment.

(c) When submitted. Information amendments to the IND should be submitted as necessary but, to the extent feasible, not more than every 30 days.


§ 312.32 IND safety reports.

(a) Definitions. The following definitions of terms apply to this section:

Associated with the use of the drug. There is a reasonable possibility that the experience may have been caused by the drug.

Disability. A substantial disruption of a person’s ability to conduct normal life functions.

Life-threatening adverse drug experience. Any adverse drug experience that places the patient or subject, in the view of the investigator, at immediate risk of death from the reaction as it occurred, i.e., it does not include a reaction that, had it occurred in a more severe form, might have caused death.

Serious adverse drug experience. Any adverse drug experience occurring at any dose that results in any of the following outcomes: Death, a life-threatening adverse drug experience, inpatient hospitalization or prolongation of existing hospitalization, a persistent or significant disability/incapacity, or a congenital anomaly/birth defect. Important medical events that may not result in death, be life-threatening, or require hospitalization may be considered a serious adverse drug experience when, based upon appropriate medical judgment, they may jeopardize the patient or subject and may require medical or surgical intervention to prevent one of the outcomes listed in this definition. Examples of such medical events include allergic bronchospasm requiring intensive treatment in an emergency room or at home, blood dyscrasias or convulsions that do not result in inpatient hospitalization, or the development of drug dependency or drug abuse.

Unexpected adverse drug experience: Any adverse drug experience, the specificity or severity of which is not consistent with the current investigator brochure; or, if an investigator brochure is not required or available, the specificity or severity of which is not consistent with the risk information described in the general investigational plan or elsewhere in the current application, as amended. For example, under this definition, hepatic necrosis would be unexpected (by virtue of greater severity) if the investigator brochure only referred to elevated hepatic enzymes or hepatitis. Similarly, cerebral thromboembolism and cerebral vasculitis would be unexpected (by virtue of greater specificity) if the investigator brochure only listed cerebral vascular accidents. "Unexpected," as used in this definition, refers to an
§312.32 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

adverse drug experience that has not
been previously observed (e.g., included
in the investigator brochure) rather
than from the perspective of such expe-
rience not being anticipated from the
pharmacological properties of the
pharmaceutical product.

(b) Review of safety information. The
sponsor shall promptly review all infor-
mation relevant to the safety of the
drug obtained or otherwise received by
the sponsor from any source, foreign or
domestic, including information de-
derived from any clinical or epidemiolog-
ical investigations, animal investiga-
tions, commercial marketing experi-
ence, reports in the scientific lit-
erature, and unpublished scientific pa-
ters, as well as reports from foreign
regulatory authorities that have not
already been previously reported to the
agency by the sponsor.

(c) IND safety reports. (1) Written re-
ports—(i) The sponsor shall notify FDA
and all participating investigators in a
written IND safety report of:

(A) Any adverse experience associ-
ated with the use of the drug that is
both serious and unexpected; or

(B) Any finding from tests in labora-
tory animals that suggests a signifi-
cant risk for human subjects including
reports of mutagenicity,
teratogenicity, or carcinogenicity.
Each notification shall be made as soon
as possible and in no event later than
15 calendar days after the sponsor’s ini-
tial receipt of the information. Each
written notification may be submitted
on FDA Form 3500A or in a narrative
format (foreign events may be sub-
mitted either on an FDA Form 3500A
or, if preferred, on a CIOMS I form; re-
ports from animal or epidemiological
studies shall be submitted in a nar-
rative format) and shall bear promi-
nent identification of its contents, i.e.,
"IND Safety Report." Each written no-
tification to FDA shall be transmitted
to the FDA new drug review division in
the Center for Drug Evaluation and Re-
search or the product review division in
the Center for Biologics Evaluation
and Research that has responsibility
for review of the IND.

(2) Telephone and facsimile trans-
mission safety reports. The sponsor shall
also notify FDA by telephone or by fac-
simile transmission of any unexpected
fatal or life-threatening experience as-
associated with the use of the drug as
soon as possible but in no event later
than 7 calendar days after the spon-
sor’s initial receipt of the information.
Each telephone call or facsimile trans-
mission to FDA shall be transmitted to
the FDA new drug review division in
the Center for Drug Evaluation and Re-
search or the product review division in
the Center for Biologics Evaluation
and Research which has responsibility
for review of the IND.

(3) Reporting format or frequency. FDA
may request a sponsor to submit IND
safety reports in a format or at a fre-
quency different than that required
under this paragraph. The sponsor may
also propose and adopt a different re-
porting format or frequency if the
change is agreed to in advance by the
director of the new drug review divi-
sion in the Center for Drug Evaluation
and Research or the director of the
products review division in the Center
for Biologics Evaluation and Research
which is responsible for review of the
IND.

(4) A sponsor of a clinical study of a
marketed drug is not required to make
a safety report for any adverse experi-
ence associated with use of the drug
that is not from the clinical study
itself.

(d) Followup. (1) The sponsor shall
promptly investigate all safety infor-
mation received by it.

(2) Followup information to a safety
report shall be submitted as soon as
the relevant information is available.

(3) If the results of a sponsor’s inves-
tigation show that an adverse drug ex-
perience not initially determined to be
reportable under paragraph (c) of this
section is so reportable, the sponsor
shall report such experience in a writ-
ten safety report as soon as possible,
but in no event later than 15 calendar days after the determination is made.

4. Results of a sponsor’s investigation of other safety information shall be submitted, as appropriate, in an information amendment or annual report.

(e) Disclaimer. A safety report or other information submitted by a sponsor under this part (and any release by FDA of that report or information) does not necessarily reflect a conclusion by the sponsor or FDA that the report or information constitutes an admission that the drug caused or contributed to an adverse experience. A sponsor need not admit, and may deny, that the report or information submitted by the sponsor constitutes an admission that the drug caused or contributed to an adverse experience.

§ 312.33 Annual reports.

A sponsor shall within 60 days of the anniversary date that the IND went into effect, submit a brief report of the progress of the investigation that includes:

(a) Individual study information. A brief summary of the status of each study in progress and each study completed during the previous year. The summary is required to include the following information for each study:

(1) The title of the study (with any appropriate study identifiers such as protocol number), its purpose, a brief statement identifying the patient population, and a statement as to whether the study is completed.

(2) The total number of subjects initially planned for inclusion in the study; the number entered into the study to date, tabulated by age group, gender, and race; the number whose participation in the study was completed as planned; and the number who dropped out of the study for any reason.

(3) If the study has been completed, or if interim results are known, a brief description of any available study results.

(b) Summary information. Information obtained during the previous year’s clinical and nonclinical investigations, including:

(1) A narrative or tabular summary showing the most frequent and most serious adverse experiences by body system.

(2) A summary of all IND safety reports submitted during the past year.

(3) A list of subjects who died during participation in the investigation, with the cause of death for each subject.

(4) A list of subjects who dropped out during the course of the investigation in association with any adverse experience, whether or not thought to be drug related.

(5) A brief description of what, if anything, was obtained that is pertinent to an understanding of the drug’s actions, including, for example, information about dose response, information from controlled trails, and information about bioavailability.

(6) A list of the preclinical studies (including animal studies) completed or in progress during the past year and a summary of the major preclinical findings.

(7) A summary of any significant manufacturing or microbiological changes made during the past year.

(c) A description of the general investigational plan for the coming year to replace that submitted 1 year earlier. The general investigational plan shall contain the information required under §312.23(a)(3)(iv).

(d) If the investigator brochure has been revised, a description of the revision and a copy of the new brochure.

(e) A description of any significant Phase 1 protocol modifications made during the previous year and not previously reported to the IND in a protocol amendment.

(f) A brief summary of significant foreign marketing developments with the drug during the past year, such as approval of marketing in any country or withdrawal or suspension from marketing in any country.

(g) If desired by the sponsor, a log of any outstanding business with respect to the IND for which the sponsor requests or expects a reply, comment, or meeting.

§ 312.34 Treatment use of an investigational new drug.

(a) General. A drug that is not approved for marketing may be under clinical investigation for a serious or immediately life-threatening disease condition in patients for whom no comparable or satisfactory alternative drug or other therapy is available. During the clinical investigation of the drug, it may be appropriate to use the drug in the treatment of patients not in the clinical trials, in accordance with a treatment protocol or treatment IND. The purpose of this section is to facilitate the availability of promising new drugs to desperately ill patients as early in the drug development process as possible, before general marketing begins, and to obtain additional data on the drug’s safety and effectiveness. In the case of a serious disease, a drug ordinarily may be made available for treatment use under this section during Phase 3 investigations or after all clinical trials have been completed; however, in appropriate circumstances, a drug may be made available for treatment use during this section earlier than Phase 3, but ordinarily not earlier than Phase 2. For purposes of this section, the “treatment use” of a drug includes the use of a drug for diagnostic purposes. If a protocol for an investigational drug meets the criteria of this section, the protocol is to be submitted as a treatment protocol under the provisions of this section.

(b) Criteria. (1) FDA shall permit an investigational drug to be used for a treatment use under a treatment protocol or treatment IND if:

(i) The drug is intended to treat a serious or immediately life-threatening disease;

(ii) There is no comparable or satisfactory alternative drug or other therapy available to treat that stage of the disease in the intended patient population;

(iii) The drug is under investigation in a controlled clinical trial under an IND in effect for the trial, or all clinical trials have been completed; and

(iv) The sponsor of the controlled clinical trial is actively pursuing marketing approval of the investigational drug with due diligence.

(2) Serious disease. For a drug intended to treat a serious disease, the Commissioner may deny a request for treatment use under a treatment protocol or treatment IND if there is insufficient evidence of safety and effectiveness to support such use.

(3) Immediately life-threatening disease. (i) For a drug intended to treat an immediately life-threatening disease, the Commissioner may deny a request for treatment use of an investigational drug under a treatment protocol or treatment IND if the available scientific evidence, taken as a whole, fails to provide a reasonable basis for concluding that the drug:

(A) May be effective for its intended use in its intended patient population; or

(B) Would not expose the patients to whom the drug is to be administered to an unreasonable and significant additional risk of illness or injury.

(ii) For the purpose of this section, an “immediately life-threatening” disease means a stage of a disease in which there is a reasonable likelihood that death will occur within a matter of months or in which premature death is likely without early treatment.

(c) Safeguards. Treatment use of an investigational drug is conditioned on the sponsor and investigators complying with the safeguards of the IND process, including the regulations governing informed consent (21 CFR part 50) and institutional review boards (21 CFR part 56) and the applicable provisions of part 312, including distribution of the drug through qualified experts, maintenance of adequate manufacturing facilities, and submission of IND safety reports.

(d) Clinical hold. FDA may place on clinical hold a proposed or ongoing treatment protocol or treatment IND in accordance with §312.42.


§ 312.35 Submissions for treatment use.

(a) Treatment protocol submitted by IND sponsor. Any sponsor of a clinical
§ 312.35 Investigation of a drug who intends to sponsor a treatment use for the drug shall submit to FDA a treatment protocol under §312.34 if the sponsor believes the criteria of §312.34 are satisfied. If a protocol is not submitted under §312.34, but FDA believes that the protocol should have been submitted under this section, FDA may deem the protocol to be submitted under §312.34. A treatment use under a treatment protocol may begin 30 days after FDA receives the protocol or on earlier notification by FDA that the treatment use described in the protocol may begin.

(a) A treatment protocol is required to contain the following:
   (1) The intended use of the drug.
   (2) An explanation of the rationale for use of the drug, including, as appropriate, either a list of what available regimens ordinarily should be tried before using the investigational drug or an explanation of why the use of the investigational drug is preferable to the use of available marketed treatments.
   (3) A brief description of the criteria for patient selection.
   (4) The method of administration of the drug and the dosages.
   (5) A description of clinical procedures, laboratory tests, or other measures to monitor the effects of the drug and to minimize risk.

(b) A treatment protocol is to be supported by the following:
   (1) Informational brochure for supplying to each treating physician.
   (2) The technical information that is relevant to safety and effectiveness of the drug for the intended treatment purpose. Information contained in the sponsor’s IND may be incorporated by reference.
   (3) A commitment by the sponsor to assure compliance of all participating investigators with the informed consent requirements of 21 CFR part 50.

(c) A licensed practitioner who receives an investigational drug for treatment use under a treatment protocol is an “investigator” under the protocol and is responsible for meeting all applicable investigator responsibilities under this part and 21 CFR parts 50 and 56.

(d) Treatment IND submitted by licensed practitioner. (1) If a licensed medical practitioner wants to obtain an investigational drug subject to a controlled clinical trial for a treatment use, the practitioner should first attempt to obtain the drug from the sponsor of the controlled trial under a treatment protocol. If the sponsor of the controlled clinical investigation of the drug will not establish a treatment protocol for the drug under paragraph (a) of this section, the licensed medical practitioner may seek to obtain the drug from the sponsor and submit a treatment IND to FDA requesting authorization to use the investigational drug for treatment use. A treatment use under a treatment IND may begin 30 days after FDA receives the IND or on earlier notification by FDA that the treatment use under the IND may begin. A treatment IND is required to contain the following:
   (i) A cover sheet (Form FDA 1571) meeting §312.23(g)(1).
   (ii) Information (when not provided by the sponsor) on the drug’s chemistry, manufacturing, and controls, and prior clinical and nonclinical experience with the drug submitted in accordance with §312.23. A sponsor of a clinical investigation subject to an IND who supplies an investigational drug to a licensed medical practitioner for purposes of a separate treatment clinical investigation shall be deemed to authorize the incorporation-by-reference of the technical information contained in the sponsor’s IND into the medical practitioner’s treatment IND.
   (iii) A statement of the steps taken by the practitioner to obtain the drug under a treatment protocol from the drug sponsor.
   (iv) A treatment protocol containing the same information listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.
   (v) A statement of the practitioner’s qualifications to use the investigational drug for the intended treatment use.
   (vi) The practitioner’s statement of familiarity with information on the drug’s safety and effectiveness derived from previous clinical and nonclinical experience with the drug.
   (vii) Agreement to report to FDA safety information in accordance with §312.32.
§ 312.36 Emergency use of an investigational new drug.

Need for an investigational drug may arise in an emergency situation that does not allow time for submission of an IND in accordance with §312.23 or §312.34. In such a case, FDA may authorize shipment of the drug for a specified use in advance of submission of an IND. A request for such authorization may be transmitted to FDA by telephone or other rapid communication means. For investigational biological drugs, the request should be directed to the Division of Biological Investigational New Drugs (HFB–230), Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 8800 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20892, 301–443–4864. For all other investigational drugs, the request for authorization should be directed to the Document Management and Reporting Branch (HFD–53), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857, 301–443–4320. After normal working hours, eastern standard time, the request should be directed to the FDA Division of Emergency and Epidemiological Operations, 202–857–8400. Except in extraordinary circumstances, such authorization will be conditioned on the sponsor making an appropriate IND submission as soon as practicable after receiving the authorization.


Subpart C—Administrative Actions

§ 312.40 General requirements for use of an investigational new drug in a clinical investigation.

(a) An investigational new drug may be used in a clinical investigation if the following conditions are met:

(1) The sponsor of the investigation submits an IND for the drug to FDA; the IND is in effect under paragraph (b) of this section; and the sponsor complies with all applicable requirements in this part and parts 50 and 56 with respect to the conduct of the clinical investigations; and

(2) Each participating investigator conducts his or her investigation in compliance with the requirements of this part and parts 50 and 56.

(b) An IND goes into effect:

(1) Thirty days after FDA receives the IND, unless FDA notifies the sponsor that the investigations described in the IND are subject to a clinical hold under §312.42; or

(2) On earlier notification by FDA that the clinical investigations in the IND may begin. FDA will notify the sponsor in writing of the date it receives the IND.

(c) A sponsor may ship an investigational new drug to investigators named in the IND:

(1) Thirty days after FDA receives the IND; or

(2) On earlier FDA authorization to ship the drug.

(d) An investigator may not administer an investigational new drug to human subjects until the IND goes into effect under paragraph (b) of this section.
§ 312.41 Comment and advice on an IND.

(a) FDA may at any time during the course of the investigation communicate with the sponsor orally or in writing about deficiencies in the IND or about FDA’s need for more data or information.

(b) On the sponsor’s request, FDA will provide advice on specific matters relating to an IND. Examples of such advice may include advice on the adequacy of technical data to support an investigational plan, on the design of a clinical trial, and on whether proposed investigations are likely to produce the data and information that is needed to meet requirements for a marketing application.

(c) Unless the communication is accompanied by a clinical hold order under §312.42, FDA communications with a sponsor under this section are solely advisory and do not require any modification in the planned or ongoing clinical investigations or response to the agency.


§ 312.42 Clinical holds and requests for modification.

(a) General. A clinical hold is an order issued by FDA to the sponsor to delay a proposed clinical investigation or to suspend an ongoing investigation. The clinical hold order may apply to one or more of the investigations covered by an IND. When a proposed study is placed on clinical hold, subjects may not be given the investigational drug. When an ongoing study is placed on clinical hold, no new subjects may be recruited to the study and placed on the investigational drug; patients already in the study should be taken off therapy involving the investigational drug unless specifically permitted by FDA in the interest of patient safety.

(b) Grounds for imposition of clinical hold—(1) Clinical hold of a Phase 1 study under an IND. FDA may place a proposed or ongoing Phase 1 investigation on clinical hold if it finds that:

   (i) Human subjects are or would be exposed to an unreasonable and significant risk of illness or injury;

   (ii) The clinical investigators named in the IND are not qualified by reason of their scientific training and experience to conduct the investigation described in the IND;

   (iii) The investigator brochure is misleading, erroneous, or materially incomplete; or

   (iv) The IND does not contain sufficient information required under §312.23 to assess the risks to subjects of the proposed studies.

   (v) The IND is for the study of an investigational drug intended to treat a life-threatening disease or condition that affects both genders, and men or women with reproductive potential who have the disease or condition being studied are excluded from eligibility because of a risk or potential risk from use of the investigational drug of reproductive toxicity (i.e., affecting reproductive organs) or developmental toxicity (i.e., affecting potential offspring). The phrase “women with reproductive potential” does not include pregnant women. For purposes of this paragraph, “life-threatening illnesses or diseases” are defined as “diseases or conditions where the likelihood of death is high unless the course of the disease is interrupted.” The clinical hold would not apply under this paragraph to clinical studies conducted:

   (A) Under special circumstances, such as studies pertinent only to one gender (e.g., studies evaluating the excretion of a drug in semen or the effects on menstrual function);

   (B) Only in men or women, as long as a study that does not exclude members of the other gender with reproductive potential is being conducted concurrently, has been conducted, or will take place within a reasonable time agreed upon by the agency; or

   (C) Only in subjects who do not suffer from the disease or condition for which the drug is being studied.

   (2) Clinical hold of a Phase 2 or 3 study under an IND. FDA may place a proposed or ongoing Phase 2 or 3 investigation on clinical hold if it finds that:

   (i) Any of the conditions in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) through (b)(1)(v) of this section apply; or
§ 312.42 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

(ii) The plan or protocol for the investigation is clearly deficient in design to meet its stated objectives.

(3) Clinical hold of a treatment IND or treatment protocol.

(i) Proposed use. FDA may place a proposed treatment IND or treatment protocol on clinical hold if it is determined that:

(A) The pertinent criteria in § 312.34(b) for permitting the treatment use to begin are not satisfied; or

(B) The treatment protocol or treatment IND does not contain the information required under § 312.35 (a) or (b) to make the specified determination under § 312.34(b).

(ii) Ongoing use. FDA may place an ongoing treatment protocol or treatment IND on clinical hold if it is determined that:

(A) There becomes available a comparable or satisfactory alternative drug or other therapy to treat that stage of the disease in the intended patient population for which the investigational drug is being used;

(B) The investigational drug is not under investigation in a controlled clinical trial under an IND in effect for the trial and not all controlled clinical trials necessary to support a marketing application have been completed, or a clinical study under the IND has been placed on clinical hold;

(C) The sponsor of the controlled clinical trial is not pursuing marketing approval with due diligence;

(D) If the treatment IND or treatment protocol is intended for a serious disease, there is insufficient evidence of safety and effectiveness to support such use; or

(E) If the treatment protocol or treatment IND was based on an immediately life-threatening disease, the available scientific evidence, taken as a whole, fails to provide a reasonable basis for concluding that the drug:

(1) May be effective for its intended use in its intended population; or

(2) Would not expose the patients to whom the drug is to be administered to an unreasonable and significant additional risk of illness or injury.

(iii) FDA may place a proposed or ongoing treatment IND or treatment protocol on clinical hold if it finds that any of the conditions in paragraph (b)(4)(i) through (b)(4)(viii) of this section apply.

(4) Clinical hold of any study that is not designed to be adequate and well-controlled. FDA may place a proposed or ongoing investigation that is not designed to be adequate and well-controlled on clinical hold if it finds that:

(i) Any of the conditions in paragraph (b)(1) or (b)(2) of this section apply; or

(ii) There is reasonable evidence the investigation that is not designed to be adequate and well-controlled is impeding enrollment in, or otherwise interfering with the conduct or completion of, a study that is designed to be an adequate and well-controlled investigation of the same or another investigational drug; or

(iii) Insufficient quantities of the investigational drug exist to adequately conduct both the investigation that is not designed to be adequate and well-controlled and the investigations that are designed to be adequate and well-controlled; or

(iv) The drug has been studied in one or more adequate and well-controlled investigations that strongly suggest lack of effectiveness; or

(v) Another drug under investigation or approved for the same indication and available to the same patient population has demonstrated a better potential benefit/risk balance; or

(vi) The drug has received marketing approval for the same indication in the same patient population; or

(vii) The sponsor of the study that is designed to be an adequate and well-controlled investigation is not actively pursuing marketing approval of the investigational drug with due diligence; or

(viii) The Commissioner determines that it would not be in the public interest for the study to be conducted or continued. FDA ordinarily intends that clinical holds under paragraphs (b)(4)(ii), (b)(4)(iii) and (b)(4)(v) of this section would only apply to additional enrollment in nonconcurrently controlled trials rather than eliminating continued access to individuals already receiving the investigational drug.

(5) Clinical hold of any investigation involving an exception from informed consent under § 50.24 of this chapter. FDA
§ 312.44 Termination.

(a) General. This section describes the procedures under which FDA may terminate an IND. If an IND is terminated, the sponsor shall end all clinical investigations conducted under the IND and recall or otherwise provide for the disposition of all unused supplies of the drug. A termination action may be based on deficiencies in the IND or in the conduct of an investigation under an IND. Except as provided in paragraph (d) of this section, a termination shall be preceded by a proposal to terminate by FDA and an opportunity for the sponsor to respond. FDA will, in
general, only initiate an action under this section after first attempting to resolve differences informally or, when appropriate, through the clinical hold procedures described in §312.42.

(b) Grounds for termination—(1) Phase 1. FDA may propose to terminate an IND during Phase 1 if it finds that:
   (i) Human subjects would be exposed to an unreasonable and significant risk of illness or injury.
   (ii) The IND does not contain sufficient information required under §312.23 to assess the safety to subjects of the clinical investigations.
   (iii) The methods, facilities, and controls used for the manufacturing, processing, and packing of the investigational drug are inadequate to establish and maintain appropriate standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity as needed for subject safety.
   (iv) The clinical investigations are being conducted in a manner substantially different than that described in the protocols submitted in the IND.
   (v) The drug is being promoted or distributed for commercial purposes not justified by the requirements of the investigation or permitted by §312.7.
   (vi) The IND, or any amendment or report to the IND, contains an untrue statement of a material fact or omits material information required by this part.
   (vii) The sponsor fails promptly to investigate and inform the Food and Drug Administration and all investigators of serious and unexpected adverse experiences in accordance with §312.32 or fails to make any other report required under this part.
   (viii) The sponsor fails to submit an accurate annual report of the investigations in accordance with §312.33.
   (ix) The sponsor fails to comply with any other applicable requirement of this part, part 50, or part 56.
   (x) The IND has remained on inactive status for 5 years or more.
   (xi) The IND has remained on inactive status for 5 years or more.
   (xii) The IND is being promoted or distributed for commercial purposes not justified by the requirements of the investigation or permitted by §312.7.

(2) Phase 2 or 3. FDA may propose to terminate an IND during Phase 2 or Phase 3 if FDA finds that:
   (i) Any of the conditions in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) through (b)(1)(x) of this section apply; or
   (ii) The investigational plan or protocol(s) is not reasonable as a bona fide scientific plan to determine whether or not the drug is safe and effective for use.
   (iii) There is convincing evidence that the drug is not effective for the purpose for which it is being investigated.

(c) Opportunity for sponsor response.

(1) If FDA proposes to terminate an IND, FDA will notify the sponsor in writing, and invite correction or explanation within a period of 30 days.

(2) On such notification, the sponsor may provide a written explanation or correction or may request a conference with FDA to provide the requested explanation or correction. If the sponsor does not respond to the notification within the allocated time, the IND shall be terminated.

(c) Opportunity for sponsor response.

(1) If FDA proposes to terminate an IND, FDA will notify the sponsor in writing, and invite correction or explanation within a period of 30 days.

(2) On such notification, the sponsor may provide a written explanation or correction or may request a conference with FDA to provide the requested explanation or correction. If the sponsor does not respond to the notification within the allocated time, the IND shall be terminated.

(3) If the sponsor responds but FDA does not accept the explanation or correction submitted, FDA shall inform the sponsor in writing of the reason for the nonacceptance and provide the sponsor with an opportunity for a regulatory hearing before FDA under part 16 on the question of whether the IND should be terminated. The sponsor’s request for a regulatory hearing must be made within 10 days of the sponsor’s receipt of FDA’s notification of nonacceptance.

(d) Immediate termination of IND. Notwithstanding paragraphs (a) through (c) of this section, if at any time FDA concludes that continuation of the investigation presents an immediate and substantial danger to the health of individuals, the agency shall immediately, by written notice to the sponsor from the Director of the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research or the Director of the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, terminate the IND. An IND so terminated is subject to reinstatement by the Director.
§ 312.47 Meetings.

(a) General. Meetings between a sponsor and the agency are frequently useful in resolving questions and issues raised during the course of a clinical investigation. FDA encourages such meetings to the extent that they aid in the evaluation of the drug and in the solution of scientific problems concerning the drug, to the extent that FDA’s resources permit. The general principle underlying the conduct of such meetings is that there should be free, full, and open communication about any scientific or medical question that may arise during the clinical investigation. These meetings shall be conducted and documented in accordance with part 10.

(b) “End-of-Phase 2” meetings and meetings held before submission of a marketing application. At specific times during the drug investigation process, meetings between FDA and a sponsor can be especially helpful in minimizing wasteful expenditures of time and money and thus in speeding the drug development and evaluation process. In particular, FDA has found that meetings at the end of Phase 2 of an investigation (end-of-Phase 2 meetings) are of considerable assistance in planning later studies and that meetings held near completion of Phase 3 and before submission of a marketing application (“pre-NDA” meetings) are helpful in developing methods of presentation and submission of data in the marketing application that facilitate review and allow timely FDA response.

(1) End-of-Phase 2 meetings—(i) Purpose. The purpose of an end-of-phase 2 meeting is to determine the safety of proceeding to Phase 3, to evaluate the Phase 3 plan and protocols and the adequacy of current studies and plans to described in the amendment are subject to a clinical hold under §312.42, or (2) on earlier notification by FDA that the clinical investigations described in the protocol amendment may begin.

(e) An IND that remains on inactive status for 5 years or more may be terminated under §312.44.

§ 312.47

assess pediatric safety and effectiveness, and to identify any additional information necessary to support a marketing application for the uses under investigation.

(ii) Eligibility for meeting. While the end-of-Phase 2 meeting is designed primarily for IND’s involving new molecular entities or major new uses of marketed drugs, a sponsor of any IND may request and obtain an end-of-Phase 2 meeting.

(iii) Timing. To be most useful to the sponsor, end-of-Phase 2 meetings should be held before major commitments of effort and resources to specific Phase 3 tests are made. The scheduling of an end-of-Phase 2 meeting is not, however, intended to delay the transition of an investigation from Phase 2 to Phase 3.

(iv) Advance information. At least 1 month in advance of an end-of-Phase 2 meeting, the sponsor should submit background information on the sponsor’s plan for Phase 3, including summaries of the Phase 1 and 2 investigations, the specific protocols for Phase 3 clinical studies, plans for any additional nonclinical studies, plans for pediatric studies, including a time line for protocol finalization, enrollment, completion, and data analysis, or information to support any planned request for waiver or deferral of pediatric studies, and, if available, tentative labeling for the drug. The recommended contents of such a submission are described more fully in FDA Staff Manual Guide 4850.7 that is publicly available under FDA’s public information regulations in part 20.

(v) Conduct of meeting. Arrangements for an end-of-Phase 2 meeting are to be made with the division in FDA’s Center for Drug Evaluation and Research or the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research which is responsible for review of the IND. The meeting will be scheduled by FDA at a time convenient to both FDA and the sponsor. Both the sponsor and FDA may bring consultants to the meeting. The meeting should be directed primarily at establishing agreement between FDA and the sponsor of the overall plan for Phase 3 and the objectives and design of particular studies. The adequacy of the technical information to support Phase 3 studies and/or a marketing application may also be discussed. FDA will also provide its best judgment, at that time, of the pediatric studies that will be required for the drug product and whether their submission will be deferred until after approval. Agreements reached at the meeting on these matters will be recorded in minutes of the conference that will be taken by FDA in accordance with §10.65 and provided to the sponsor. The minutes along with any other written material provided to the sponsor will serve as a permanent record of any agreements reached. Barring a significant scientific development that requires otherwise, studies conducted in accordance with the agreement shall be presumed to be sufficient in objective and design for the purpose of obtaining marketing approval for the drug.

(2) “Pre-NDA” and “pre-BLA” meetings. FDA has found that delays associated with the initial review of a marketing application may be reduced by exchanges of information about a proposed marketing application. The primary purpose of this kind of exchange is to uncover any major unresolved problems, to identify those studies that the sponsor is relying on as adequate and well-controlled to establish the drug’s effectiveness, to identify the status of ongoing or needed studies adequate to assess pediatric safety and effectiveness, to acquaint FDA reviewers with the general information to be submitted in the marketing application (including technical information), to discuss appropriate methods for statistical analysis of the data, and to discuss the best approach to the presentation and formatting of data in the marketing application. Arrangements for such a meeting are to be initiated by the sponsor with the division responsible for review of the IND. To permit FDA to provide the sponsor with the most useful advice on preparing a marketing application, the sponsor should submit to FDA’s reviewing division at least 1 month in advance of the meeting the following information:

(i) A brief summary of the clinical studies to be submitted in the application.
§ 312.52 Transfer of obligations to a contract research organization.

(a) A sponsor may transfer responsibility for any or all of the obligations
§ 312.53 Selecting investigators and monitors.

(a) Selecting investigators. A sponsor shall select only investigators qualified by training and experience as appropriate experts to investigate the drug.

(b) Control of drug. A sponsor shall ship investigational new drugs only to investigators participating in the investigation.

(c) Obtaining information from the investigator. Before permitting an investigator to begin participation in an investigation, the sponsor shall obtain the following:

(1) A signed investigator statement (Form FDA-1572) containing:

(i) The name and address of the investigator;

(ii) The name and code number, if any, of the protocol(s) in the IND identifying the study(ies) to be conducted by the investigator;

(iii) The name and address of any medical school, hospital, or other research facility where the clinical investigation(s) will be conducted;

(iv) The name and address of any clinical laboratory facilities to be used in the study;

(v) The name and address of the IRB that is responsible for review and approval of the study(ies);

(vi) A commitment by the investigator that he or she:

(a) Will conduct the study(ies) in accordance with the relevant, current protocol(s) and will only make changes in a protocol after notifying the sponsor, except when necessary to protect the safety, the rights, or welfare of subjects;

(b) Will comply with all requirements regarding the obligations of clinical investigators and all other pertinent requirements in this part;

(c) Will personally conduct or supervise the described investigation(s);

(d) Will inform any potential subjects that the drugs are being used for investigational purposes and will ensure that the requirements relating to obtaining informed consent (21 CFR part 50) and institutional review board review and approval (21 CFR part 50) are met;

(e) Will report to the sponsor adverse experiences that occur in the course of the investigation(s) in accordance with § 312.64;

(f) Has read and understands the information in the investigator’s brochures, including the potential risks and side effects of the drug; and

(g) Will ensure that all associates, colleagues, and employees assisting in the conduct of the study(ies) are informed about their obligations in meeting the above commitments.

(vii) A commitment by the investigator that, for an investigation subject to an institutional review requirement under part 56, an IRB that complies with the requirements of that part will be responsible for the initial and continuing review and approval of the clinical investigation and that the investigator will promptly report to the IRB all changes in the research activity and all unanticipated problems involving risks to human subjects or others, and will not make any changes in the research without IRB approval, except where necessary to eliminate apparent immediate hazards to the human subjects.

(viii) A list of the names of the sub-investigators (e.g., research fellows,
residents) who will be assisting the investigator in the conduct of the investigation(s).

(2) **Curriculum vitae.** A curriculum vitae or other statement of qualifications of the investigator showing the education, training, and experience that qualifies the investigator as an expert in the clinical investigation of the drug for the use under investigation.

(3) **Clinical protocol.** (i) For Phase 1 investigations, a general outline of the planned investigation including the estimated duration of the study and the maximum number of subjects that will be involved.

(ii) For Phase 2 or 3 investigations, an outline of the study protocol including an approximation of the number of subjects to be treated with the drug and the number to be employed as controls, if any; the clinical uses to be investigated; characteristics of subjects by age, sex, and condition; the kind of clinical observations and laboratory tests to be conducted; the estimated duration of the study; and copies or a description of case report forms to be used.

(4) **Financial disclosure information.** Sufficient accurate financial information to allow the sponsor to submit complete and accurate certification or disclosure statements required under part 54 of this chapter. The sponsor shall obtain a commitment from the clinical investigator to promptly update this information if any relevant changes occur during the course of the investigation and for 1 year following the completion of the study.

(d) **Selecting monitors.** A sponsor shall select a monitor qualified by training and experience to monitor the progress of the investigation.

§ 312.54 Emergency research under § 50.24 of this chapter.

(a) The sponsor shall monitor the progress of all investigations involving an exception from informed consent under § 50.24 of this chapter. When the sponsor receives from the IRB information concerning the public disclosures required by § 50.24(a)(7)(ii) and (a)(7)(iii) of this chapter, the sponsor promptly shall submit to the IND file and to Docket Number 95S–0158 in the Dockets Management Branch (HFA–305), Food and Drug Administration, 12420 Parklawn Dr., rm. 1–23, Rockville, MD 20857, copies of the information that was disclosed, identified by the IND number.

(b) The sponsor also shall monitor such investigations to identify when an IRB determines that it cannot approve the research because it does not meet the criteria in the exception in §50.24(a) of this chapter or because of other relevant ethical concerns. The sponsor promptly shall provide this information in writing to FDA, investigators who are asked to participate in this or a substantially equivalent clinical investigation, and other IRB’s that are asked to review this or a substantially equivalent investigation.

[61 FR 51350, Oct. 2, 1996]

§ 312.55 Informing investigators.

(a) Before the investigation begins, a sponsor (other than a sponsor-investigator) shall give each participating clinical investigator an investigator brochure containing the information described in §312.23(a)(5).

(b) The sponsor shall, as the overall investigation proceeds, keep each participating investigator informed of new observations discovered by or reported to the sponsor on the drug, particularly with respect to adverse effects and safe use. Such information may be distributed to investigators by means of periodically revised investigator brochures, reprints or published studies, reports or letters to clinical investigators, or other appropriate means. Important safety information is required to be relayed to investigators in accordance with §312.32.


§ 312.56 Review of ongoing investigations.

(a) The sponsor shall monitor the progress of all clinical investigations being conducted under its IND.

(b) A sponsor who discovers that an investigator is not complying with the signed agreement (Form FDA–1572), the
§ 312.57 Recordkeeping and record retention.

(a) A sponsor shall maintain adequate records showing the receipt, shipment, or other disposition of the investigational drug. These records are required to include, as appropriate, the name of the investigator to whom the drug is shipped, and the date, quantity, and batch or code mark of each such shipment.

(b) A sponsor shall maintain complete and accurate records showing any financial interest in § 54.4(a)(3)(i), (a)(3)(ii), (a)(3)(iii), and (a)(3)(iv) of this chapter paid to clinical investigators by the sponsor of the covered study. A sponsor shall also maintain complete and accurate records concerning all other financial interests of investigators subject to part 54 of this chapter.

§ 312.58 Inspection of sponsor's records and reports.

(a) FDA inspection. A sponsor shall upon request from any properly authorized officer or employee of the Food and Drug Administration, at reasonable times, permit such officer or employee to have access to and copy and verify any records and reports relating to a clinical investigation conducted under this part. Upon written request by FDA, the sponsor shall submit the records or reports (or copies of them) to FDA. The sponsor shall discontinue shipments of the drug to any investigator who has failed to maintain or make available records or reports of the investigation as required by this part.

(b) Controlled substances. If an investigational new drug is a substance listed in any schedule of the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 801; 21 CFR part 1308), records concerning shipment, delivery, receipt, and disposition of the drug, which are required to be

Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 312.62 Investigator recordkeeping and record retention.

(a) Disposition of drug. An investigator is required to maintain adequate records of the disposition of the drug, including dates, quantity, and use by subjects. If the investigation is terminated, suspended, discontinued, or completed, the investigator shall return the unused supplies of the drug to the sponsor, or otherwise provide for disposition of the unused supplies of the drug under §312.59.

(b) Case histories. An investigator is required to prepare and maintain adequate and accurate case histories that record all observations and other data pertinent to the investigation on each individual administered the investigational drug or employed as a control in the investigation. Case histories include the case report forms and supporting data including, for example, signed and dated consent forms and medical records including, for example, progress notes of the physician, the individual’s hospital chart(s), and the nurses’ notes. The case history for each individual shall document that informed consent was obtained prior to participation in the study.

(c) Record retention. An investigator shall retain records required to be maintained under this part for a period of 2 years following the date a marketing application is approved for the drug for the indication for which it is being investigated; or, if no application is to be filed or if the application is not approved for such indication, until 2

§ 312.61 Control of the investigational drug.

An investigator shall administer the drug only to subjects under the investigator’s personal supervision or under the supervision of a subinvestigator responsible to the investigator. The investigator shall not supply the investigational drug to any person not authorized under this part to receive it.

§ 312.60 General responsibilities of investigators.

An investigator is responsible for ensuring that an investigation is conducted according to the signed investigator statement, the investigational plan, and applicable regulations; for protecting the rights, safety, and welfare of subjects under the investigator’s care; and for the control of drugs under investigation. An investigator shall, in accordance with the provisions of part 50 of this chapter, obtain the informed consent of each human subject to whom the drug is administered, except as provided in §§50.23 or 50.24 of this chapter. Additional specific responsibilities of clinical investigators are set forth in this part and in parts 50 and 56 of this chapter.


§ 312.59 Disposition of unused supply of investigational drug.

The sponsor shall assure the return of all unused supplies of the investigational drug from each individual investigator whose participation in the investigation is discontinued or terminated. The sponsor may authorize alternative disposition of unused supplies of the investigational drug provided this alternative disposition does not expose humans to risks from the drug. The sponsor shall maintain written records of any disposition of the drug in accordance with §312.57.


§ 312.62 Investigator recordkeeping and record retention.

(a) Disposition of drug. An investigator is required to maintain adequate records of the disposition of the drug, including dates, quantity, and use by subjects. If the investigation is terminated, suspended, discontinued, or completed, the investigator shall return the unused supplies of the drug to the sponsor, or otherwise provide for disposition of the unused supplies of the drug under §312.59.

(b) Case histories. An investigator is required to prepare and maintain adequate and accurate case histories that record all observations and other data pertinent to the investigation on each individual administered the investigational drug or employed as a control in the investigation. Case histories include the case report forms and supporting data including, for example, signed and dated consent forms and medical records including, for example, progress notes of the physician, the individual’s hospital chart(s), and the nurses’ notes. The case history for each individual shall document that informed consent was obtained prior to participation in the study.

(c) Record retention. An investigator shall retain records required to be maintained under this part for a period of 2 years following the date a marketing application is approved for the drug for the indication for which it is being investigated; or, if no application is to be filed or if the application is not approved for such indication, until 2
§ 312.64 Investigator reports.

(a) Progress reports. The investigator shall furnish all reports to the sponsor of the drug who is responsible for collecting and evaluating the results obtained. The sponsor is required under §312.33 to submit annual reports to FDA on the progress of the clinical investigations.

(b) Safety reports. An investigator shall promptly report to the sponsor any adverse effect that may reasonably be regarded as caused by, or probably caused by, the drug. If the adverse effect is alarming, the investigator shall report the adverse effect immediately.

(c) Final report. An investigator shall provide the sponsor with an adequate report shortly after completion of the investigator’s participation in the investigation.

(d) Financial disclosure reports. The clinical investigator shall provide the sponsor with sufficient accurate financial information to allow an applicant to submit complete and accurate certification or disclosure statements as required under part 54 of this chapter. The clinical investigator shall promptly update this information if any relevant changes occur during the course of the investigation and for 1 year following the completion of the study.

§ 312.66 Assurance of IRB review.

An investigator shall assure that an IRB that complies with the requirements set forth in part 56 will be responsible for the initial and continuing review and approval of the proposed clinical study. The investigator shall also assure that he or she will promptly report to the IRB all changes in the research activity and all unanticipated problems involving risk to human subjects or others, and that he or she will not make any changes in the research without IRB approval, except where necessary to eliminate apparent immediate hazards to human subjects.

§ 312.68 Inspection of investigator’s records and reports.

An investigator shall upon request from any properly authorized officer or employee of FDA, at reasonable times, permit such officer or employee to have access to, and copy and verify any records or reports made by the investigator pursuant to §312.62. The investigator is not required to divulge subject names unless the records of particular individuals require a more detailed study of the cases, or unless there is reason to believe that the records do not represent actual case studies, or do not represent actual results obtained.

§ 312.69 Handling of controlled substances.

If the investigational drug is subject to the Controlled Substances Act, the investigator shall take adequate precautions, including storage of the investigational drug in a securely locked, substantially constructed cabinet, or other securely locked, substantially constructed enclosure, access to which is limited, to prevent theft or diversion of the substance into illegal channels of distribution.

§ 312.70 Disqualification of a clinical investigator.

(a) If FDA has information indicating that an investigator (including a sponsor-investigator) has repeatedly or deliberately failed to comply with the requirements of this part, part 50, or part 56 of this chapter, or has submitted to FDA or to the sponsor false information in any required report, the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research or the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research will furnish the investigator written notice of the matter complained of and offer the investigator an opportunity to explain the matter in writing, or, at the option of the investigator, in an informal conference. If an explanation is offered but not accepted by the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research or the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research,
§ 312.80 Purpose.

The purpose of this section is to establish procedures designed to expedite the development, evaluation, and marketing of new therapies intended to treat persons with life-threatening and severely-debilitating illnesses, especially where no satisfactory alternative therapy exists. As stated §314.105(c) of this chapter, while the statutory standards of safety and effectiveness apply to all drugs, the many kinds of drugs that are subject to them, and the wide range of uses for those drugs, demand flexibility in applying the standards. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has determined that it is appropriate to exercise the broadest flexibility in applying the statutory standards, while preserving appropriate guarantees for safety and effectiveness. These procedures reflect the recognition that physicians and patients are generally willing to accept greater risks or side effects from products that treat life-threatening and severely-debilitating illnesses, than they would accept from products that treat less serious illnesses. These procedures also reflect the recognition that the investigator will be given an opportunity for a regulatory hearing under part 16 on the question of whether the investigator is entitled to receive investigational new drugs.

(b) After evaluating all available information, including any explanation presented by the investigator, if the Commissioner determines that the investigator has repeatedly or deliberately failed to comply with the requirements of this part, part 50, or part 56 of this chapter, or has deliberately or repeatedly submitted false information to FDA or to the sponsor in any required report, the Commissioner will notify the investigator and the sponsor of any investigation in which the investigator has been named as a participant that the investigator is not entitled to receive investigational drugs. The notification will provide a statement of basis for such determination.

(c) Each IND and each approved application submitted under part 314 containing data reported by an investigator who has been determined to be ineligible to receive investigational drugs will be examined to determine whether the investigator has submitted unreliable data that are essential to the continuation of the investigation or essential to the approval of any marketing application.

(d) If the Commissioner determines, after the unreliable data submitted by the investigator are eliminated from consideration, that the data remaining are inadequate to support a conclusion that it is reasonably safe to continue the investigation, the Commissioner will notify the sponsor who shall have an opportunity for a regulatory hearing under part 16. If a danger to the public health exists, however, the Commissioner shall terminate the IND immediately and notify the sponsor of the determination. In such case, the sponsor shall have an opportunity for a regulatory hearing before FDA under part 16 on the question of whether the IND should be reinstated.

(e) If the Commissioner determines, after the unreliable data submitted by the investigator are eliminated from consideration, that the continued approval of the drug product for which the data were submitted cannot be justified, the Commissioner will proceed to withdraw approval of the drug product in accordance with the applicable provisions of the act.

(f) An investigator who has been determined to be ineligible to receive investigational drugs may be reinstated as eligible when the Commissioner determines that the investigator has presented adequate assurances that the investigator will employ investigational drugs solely in compliance with the provisions of this part and of parts 50 and 56.

§ 312.81 Benefits of the drug need to be evaluated in light of the severity of the disease being treated. The procedure outlined in this section should be interpreted consistent with that purpose.

§ 312.81 Scope.

This section applies to new drug and biological products that are being studied for their safety and effectiveness in treating life-threatening or severely-debilitating diseases.

(a) For purposes of this section, the term “life-threatening” means:

(1) Diseases or conditions where the likelihood of death is high unless the course of the disease is interrupted; and

(2) Diseases or conditions with potentially fatal outcomes, where the end point of clinical trial analysis is survival.

(b) For purposes of this section, the term “severely debilitating” means diseases or conditions that cause major irreversible morbidity.

(c) Sponsors are encouraged to consult with FDA on the applicability of these procedures to specific products.

§ 312.82 Early consultation.

For products intended to treat life-threatening or severely-debilitating illnesses, sponsors may request to meet with FDA-reviewing officials early in the drug development process to review and reach agreement on the design of necessary preclinical and clinical studies. Where appropriate, FDA will invite to such meetings one or more outside expert scientific consultants or advisory committee members. To the extent FDA resources permit, agency reviewing officials will honor requests for such meetings

(a) Pre-investigational new drug (IND) meetings. Prior to the submission of the initial IND, the sponsor may request a meeting with FDA-reviewing officials. The primary purpose of this meeting is to review and reach agreement on the design of animal studies needed to initiate human testing. The meeting may also provide an opportunity for discussing the scope and design of phase 1 testing, plans for studying the drug product in pediatric populations, and the best approach for presentation and formatting of data in the IND.

(b) End-of-phase 1 meetings. When data from phase 1 clinical testing are available, the sponsor may again request a meeting with FDA-reviewing officials. The primary purpose of this meeting is to review and reach agreement on the design of phase 2 controlled clinical trials, with the goal that such testing will be adequate to provide sufficient data on the drug’s safety and effectiveness to support a decision on its approvability for marketing, and to discuss the need for, as well as the design and timing of, studies of the drug in pediatric patients. For drugs for life-threatening diseases, FDA will provide its best judgment, at that time, whether pediatric studies will be required and whether their submission will be deferred until after approval. The procedures outlined in §312.47(b)(1) with respect to end-of-phase 2 conferences, including documentation of agreements reached, would also be used for end-of-phase 1 meetings.

§ 312.83 Treatment protocols.

If the preliminary analysis of phase 2 test results appears promising, FDA may ask the sponsor to submit a treatment protocol to be reviewed under the procedures and criteria listed in §§312.34 and 312.35. Such a treatment protocol, if requested and granted, would normally remain in effect while the complete data necessary for a marketing application are being assembled by the sponsor and reviewed by FDA (unless grounds exist for clinical hold of ongoing protocols, as provided in §312.42(b)(3)(ii)).

§ 312.84 Risk-benefit analysis in review of marketing applications for drugs to treat life-threatening and severely-debilitating illnesses.

(a) FDA’s application of the statutory standards for marketing approval shall recognize the need for a medical risk-benefit judgment in making the final decision on approvability. As part of this evaluation, consistent with the statement of purpose in §312.80, FDA will consider whether the benefits of
the drug outweigh the known and potential risks of the drug and the need to answer remaining questions about risks and benefits of the drug, taking into consideration the severity of the disease and the absence of satisfactory alternative therapy.

(b) In making decisions on whether to grant marketing approval for products that have been the subject of an end-of-phase 1 meeting under §312.82, FDA will usually seek the advice of outside expert scientific consultants or advisory committees. Upon the filing of such a marketing application under §314.101 or part 601 of this chapter, FDA will notify the members of the relevant standing advisory committee of the application’s filing and its availability for review.

(c) If FDA concludes that the data presented are not sufficient for marketing approval, FDA will issue (for a drug) a not approvable letter pursuant to §314.120 of this chapter, or (for a biological) a deficiencies letter consistent with the biological product licensing procedures. Such letter, in describing the deficiencies in the application, will address why the results of the research design agreed to under §312.82, or in subsequent meetings, have not provided sufficient evidence for marketing approval. Such letter will also describe any recommendations made by the advisory committee regarding the application.

(d) Marketing applications submitted under the procedures contained in this section will be subject to the requirements and procedures contained in part 314 or part 600 of this chapter, as well as those in this subpart.

§ 312.85  Phase 4 studies.

Concurrent with marketing approval, FDA may seek agreement from the sponsor to conduct certain postmarketing (phase 4) studies to delineate additional information about the drug’s risks, benefits, and optimal use. These studies could include, but would not be limited to, studying different doses or schedules of administration than were used in phase 2 studies, use of the drug in other patient populations or other stages of the disease, or use of the drug over a longer period of time.

§ 312.86  Focused FDA regulatory research.

At the discretion of the agency, FDA may undertake focused regulatory research on critical rate-limiting aspects of the preclinical, chemical/manufacturing, and clinical phases of drug development and evaluation. When initiated, FDA will undertake such research efforts as a means for meeting a public health need in facilitating the development of therapies to treat life-threatening or severely debilitating illnesses.

§ 312.87  Active monitoring of conduct and evaluation of clinical trials.

For drugs covered under this section, the Commissioner and other agency officials will monitor the progress of the conduct and evaluation of clinical trials and be involved in facilitating their appropriate progress.

§ 312.88  Safeguards for patient safety.

All of the safeguards incorporated within parts 50, 56, 312, 314, and 600 of this chapter designed to ensure the safety of clinical testing and the safety of products following marketing approval apply to drugs covered by this section. This includes the requirements for informed consent (part 50 of this chapter) and institutional review boards (part 56 of this chapter). These safeguards further include the review of animal studies prior to initial human testing (§312.23), and the monitoring of adverse drug experiences through the requirements of IND safety reports (§312.32), safety update reports during agency review of a marketing application (§314.50 of this chapter), and postmarketing adverse reaction reporting (§314.80 of this chapter).

Subpart F—Miscellaneous

§ 312.110  Import and export requirements.

(a) Imports. An investigational new drug offered for import into the United States complies with the requirements of this part if it is subject to an IND that is in effect for it under §312.40 and:

(1) The consignee in the United States is the sponsor of the IND; (2) the consignee is a qualified investigator named in the IND; or (3) the consignee...
§ 312.120 Foreign clinical studies not conducted under an IND.

(a) Introduction. This section describes the criteria for acceptance by FDA of foreign clinical studies not conducted under an IND. In general, FDA accepts such studies provided they are well designed, well conducted, performed by qualified investigators, and conducted in accordance with ethical principles acceptable to the world community. Studies meeting these criteria may be utilized to support clinical investigations in the United States and/or marketing approval. Marketing approval of a new drug based solely on foreign clinical data is governed by §314.106.

(b) Data submissions. A sponsor who wishes to rely on a foreign clinical study to support an IND or to support an application for marketing approval shall submit to FDA the following information:

(1) A description of the investigator's qualifications;

(2) A description of the research facilities;

(3) A detailed summary of the protocol and results of the study, and, should FDA request, case records maintained by the investigator or additional background data such as hospital or other institutional records;
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 312.120

(4) A description of the drug substance and drug product used in the study, including a description of components, formulation, specifications, and bioavailability of the specific drug product used in the clinical study, if available; and

(5) If the study is intended to support the effectiveness of a drug product, information showing that the study is adequate and well controlled under § 314.126.

(c) Conformance with ethical principles. (1) Foreign clinical research is required to have been conducted in accordance with the ethical principles stated in the “Declaration of Helsinki” (see paragraph (c)(4) of this section) or the laws and regulations of the country in which the research was conducted, whichever represents the greater protection of the individual.

(2) For each foreign clinical study submitted under this section, the sponsor shall explain how the research conformed to the ethical principles contained in the “Declaration of Helsinki” or the foreign country’s standards, whichever were used. If the foreign country’s standards were used, the sponsor shall explain in detail how those standards differ from the “Declaration of Helsinki” and how they offer greater protection.

(3) When the research has been approved by an independent review committee, the sponsor shall submit to FDA documentation of such review and approval, including the names and qualifications of the members of the committee. In this regard, a “review committee” means a committee composed of scientists and, where practicable, individuals who are otherwise qualified (e.g., other health professionals or laymen). The investigator may not vote on any aspect of the review of his or her protocol by a review committee.

(4) The “Declaration of Helsinki” states as follows:

RECOMMENDATIONS GUIDING PHYSICIANS IN BIOMEDICAL RESEARCH INVOLVING HUMAN SUBJECTS

Introduction

It is the mission of the physician to safeguard the health of the people. His or her knowledge and conscience are dedicated to the fulfillment of this mission.

The Declaration of Geneva of the World Medical Association binds the physician with the words, “The health of my patient will be my first consideration,” and the International Code of Medical Ethics declares that, “A physician shall act only in the patient’s interest when providing medical care which might have the effect of weakening the physical and mental condition of the patient.”

The purpose of biomedical research involving human subjects must be to improve diagnostic, therapeutic and prophylactic procedures and the understanding of the aetiology and pathogenesis of disease. In current medical practice most diagnostic, therapeutic or prophylactic procedures involve hazards. This applies especially to biomedical research.

Medical progress is based on research which ultimately must rest in part on experimentation involving human subjects. In the field of biomedical research a fundamental distinction must be recognized between medical research in which the aim is essentially diagnostic or therapeutic for the patient, and medical research, the essential object of which is purely scientific and without implying direct diagnostic or therapeutic value to the person subjected to the research.

Special caution must be exercised in the conduct of research which may affect the environment, and the welfare of animals used for research must be respected.

Because it is essential that the results of laboratory experiments be applied to human beings to further scientific knowledge and to help suffering humanity, the World Medical Association has prepared the following recommendations as a guide to every physician in biomedical research involving human subjects. They should be kept under review in the future. It must be stressed that the standards as drafted are only a guide to physicians all over the world. Physicians are not relieved from criminal, civil and ethical responsibilities under the laws of their own countries.

I. Basic Principles

1. Biomedical research involving human subjects must conform to generally accepted scientific principles and should be based on adequately performed laboratory and animal experimentation and on a thorough knowledge of the scientific literature.

2. The design and performance of each experimental procedure involving human subjects should be clearly formulated in an experimental protocol which should be transmitted for consideration, comment and guidance to a specially appointed committee independent of the investigator and the
§ 312.120 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

sponsored provided that this independent committee is in conformity with the laws and regulations of the country in which the research experiment is performed.

3. Biomedical research involving human subjects should be conducted only by scientifically qualified persons and under the supervision of a clinically competent medical person. The responsibility for the human subject must always rest with a medically qualified person and never rest on the subject of the research, even though the subject has given his or her consent.

4. Biomedical research involving human subjects cannot legitimately be carried out unless the importance of the objective is in proportion to the inherent risk to the subject.

5. Every biomedical research project involving human subjects should be preceded by careful assessment of predictable risks in comparison with foreseeable benefits to the subject or to others. Concern for the interests of the subject must always prevail over the interests of science and society.

6. The right of the research subject to safeguard his or her integrity must always be respected. Every precaution should be taken to respect the privacy of the subject and to minimize the impact of the study on the subject’s physical and mental integrity and on the personality of the subject.

7. Physicians should abstain from engaging in research projects involving human subjects unless they are satisfied that the hazards involved are believed to be predictable. Physicians should cease any investigation if the hazards are found to outweigh the potential benefits.

8. In publication of the results of his or her research, the physician is obliged to preserve the accuracy of the results. Reports of experimentation not in accordance with the principles laid down in this Declaration should not be accepted for publication.

9. In any research on human beings, each potential subject must be adequately informed of the aims, methods, anticipated benefits and potential hazards of the study and the discomfort it may entail. He or she should be informed that he or she is at liberty to abstain from participation in the study and that he or she is free to withdraw his or her consent to participation at any time. The physician should then obtain the subject’s freely-given informed consent, preferably in writing.

10. When obtaining informed consent for the research project the physician should be particularly cautious if the subject is in a dependent relationship to him or her or may consent under duress. In that case the informed consent should be obtained by a physician who is not engaged in the investigation and who is completely independent of this official relationship.

11. In case of legal incompetence, informed consent should be obtained from the legal guardian in accordance with national legislation. Where physical or mental incapacity makes it impossible to obtain informed consent, or when the subject is a minor, permission from the responsible relative replaces that of the subject in accordance with national legislation.

Whenever the minor child is in fact able to give a consent, the minor’s consent must be obtained in addition to the consent of the minor’s legal guardian.

12. The research protocol should always contain a statement of the ethical considerations involved and should indicate that the principles enunciated in the present Declaration are complied with.

II. Medical Research Combined with Professional Care (Clinical Research)

1. In the treatment of the sick person, the physician must be free to use a new diagnostic and therapeutic measure, if in his or her judgment it offers hope of saving life, re-establishing health or alleviating suffering.

2. The potential benefits, hazards and discomfort of a new method should be weighed against the advantages of the best current diagnostic and therapeutic methods.

3. In any medical study, every patient—including those of a control group, if any—should be assured of the best proven diagnostic and therapeutic method.

4. The refusal of the patient to participate in a study must never interfere with the physician-patient relationship.

5. If the physician considers it essential not to obtain informed consent, the specific reasons for this proposal should be stated in the experimental protocol for transmission to the independent committee (I. 2).

6. The physician can combine medical research with professional care, the objective being the acquisition of new medical knowledge, only to the extent that medical research is justified by its potential diagnostic or therapeutic value for the patient.

III. Non-Therapeutic Biomedical Research Involving Human Subjects (Non-Clinical Biomedical Research)

1. In the purely scientific application of medical research carried out on a human being, it is the duty of the physician to remain the protector of the life and health of that person on whom biomedical research is being carried out.

2. The subjects should be volunteers—either healthy persons or patients for whom the experimental design is not related to the patient’s illness.

3. The investigator or the investigating team should discontinue the research if in his/her or their judgment it may, if continued, be harmful to the individual.

92
4. In research on man, the interest of science and society should never take precedence over considerations related to the well-being of the subject.

§ 312.140 Address for correspondence.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, a sponsor shall send an initial IND submission to the Central Document Room, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, Park Bldg., Rm. 214, 12420 Parklawn Dr., Rockville, MD 20852. On receiving the IND, FDA will inform the sponsor which one of the divisions in the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research or the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research is responsible for the IND. Amendments, reports, and other correspondence relating to matters covered by the IND should be directed to the appropriate division. The outside wrapper of each submission shall state what is contained in the submission, for example, “IND Application”, “Protocol Amendment”, etc.

(b) Applications for the products listed below should be submitted to the Division of Biological Investigational New Drugs (HFB-230), Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 8800 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20892. (1) Products subject to the licensing provisions of the Public Health Service Act of July 1, 1944 (58 Stat. 682, as amended (42 U.S.C. 201 et seq.)) or subject to part 600; (2) ingredients packaged together with containers intended for the collection, processing, or storage of blood or blood components; (3) urokinase products; (4) plasma volume expanders and hydroxyethyl starch for leukapheresis; and (5) coupled antibodies, i.e., products that consist of an antibody component coupled with a drug or radionuclide component in which both components provide a pharmacological effect but the biological component determines the site of action.

(c) All correspondence relating to biological products for human use which are also radioactive drugs shall be submitted to the Division of Oncology and Radiopharmaceutical Drug Products (HFD–150), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857, except that applications for coupled antibodies shall be submitted in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) All correspondence relating to export of an investigational drug under §312.110(b)(2) shall be submitted to the International Affairs Staff (HFY–50), Office of Health Affairs, Food and Drug
§ 312.145 Guidance documents.

(a) FDA has made available guidance documents under §10.115 of this chapter to help you to comply with certain requirements of this part.

(b) The Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER) and the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER) maintain lists of guidance documents that apply to the centers’ regulations. The lists are maintained on the Internet and are published annually in the FEDERAL REGISTER. A request for a copy of the CDER list should be directed to the Office of Training and Communications, Division of Communications Management, Drug Information Branch (HFD–210), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. A request for a copy of the CBER list should be directed to the Office of Communication, Training, and Manufacturers Assistance (HFM–40), Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 1401 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20852–1448.

[65 FR 56479, Sept. 19, 2000]

Subpart G—Drugs for Investigational Use in Laboratory Research Animals or In Vitro Tests

§ 312.160 Drugs for investigational use in laboratory research animals or in vitro tests.

(a) Authorization to ship. (1)(i) A person may ship a drug intended solely for tests in vitro or in animals used only for laboratory research purposes if it is labeled as follows:

CAUTION: Contains a new drug for investigational use only in laboratory research animals, or for tests in vitro. Not for use in humans.

(ii) A person may ship a biological product for investigational in vitro diagnostic use that is listed in §312.2(b)(2)(ii) if it is labeled as follows:

CAUTION: Contains a biological product for investigational in vitro diagnostic tests only.

(2) A person shipping a drug under paragraph (a) of this section shall use due diligence to assure that the consignee is regularly engaged in conducting such tests and that the shipment of the new drug will actually be used for tests in vitro or in animals used only for laboratory research.

(3) A person who ships a drug under paragraph (a) of this section shall maintain adequate records showing the name and post office address of the expert to whom the drug is shipped and the date, quantity, and batch or code mark of each shipment and delivery. Records of shipments under paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this section are to be maintained for a period of 2 years after the shipment. Records and reports of data and shipments under paragraph (a)(1)(ii) of this section are to be maintained in accordance with §312.57(b). The person who ships the drug shall upon request from any properly authorized officer or employee of the Food and Drug Administration, at reasonable times, permit such officer or employee to have access to and copy and verify records required to be maintained under this section.

(b) Termination of authorization to ship. FDA may terminate authorization to ship a drug under this section if it finds that:

(1) The sponsor of the investigation has failed to comply with any of the conditions for shipment established under this section; or

(2) The continuance of the investigation is unsafe or otherwise contrary to the public interest or the drug is used for purposes other than bona fide scientific investigation. FDA will notify the person shipping the drug of its finding and invite immediate correction. If correction is not immediately made, the person shall have an opportunity for a regulatory hearing before FDA pursuant to part 16.

(c) Disposition of unused drug. The person who ships the drug under paragraph (a) of this section shall assure the return of all unused supplies of the drug from individual investigators.
whenever the investigation discontinues or the investigation is terminated. The person who ships the drug may authorize in writing alternative disposition of unused supplies of the drug provided this alternative disposition does not expose humans to risks from the drug, either directly or indirectly (e.g., through food-producing animals). The shipper shall maintain records of any alternative disposition.


PART 314—APPLICATIONS FOR FDA APPROVAL TO MARKET A NEW DRUG

Subpart A—General Provisions
Sec.
314.1 Scope of this part.
314.2 Purpose.
314.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Applications
314.50 Content and format of an application.
314.52 Notice of certification of invalidity or noninfringement of a patent.
314.53 Submission of patent information.
314.54 Procedure for submission of an application requiring investigations for approval of a new indication for, or other change from, a listed drug.
314.55 Pediatric use information.
314.56 Amendments to an unapproved application.
314.57 Withdrawal by the applicant of an unapproved application.
314.58 Supplements and other changes to an approved application.
314.59 Procedures for submission of a supplement to an approved application.
314.60 Postmarketing reporting of adverse drug experiences.
314.61 Other postmarketing reports.
314.62 Waivers.

Subpart C—Abbreviated Applications
314.92 Drug products for which abbreviated applications may be submitted.
314.93 Petition to request a change from a listed drug.
314.94 Content and format of an abbreviated application.
314.95 Notice of certification of invalidity or noninfringement of a patent.
314.96 Amendments to an unapproved abbreviated application.
314.97 Supplements and other changes to an approved abbreviated application.
314.98 Postmarketing reports.
314.99 Other responsibilities of an applicant of an abbreviated application.

Subpart D—FDA Action on Applications and Abbreviated Applications
314.100 Timeframes for reviewing applications and abbreviated applications.
314.101 Filing an application and receiving an abbreviated new drug application.
314.102 Communications between FDA and applicants.
314.103 Dispute resolution.
314.104 Drugs with potential for abuse.
314.105 Approval of an application and an abbreviated application.
314.106 Foreign data.
314.107 Effective date of approval of a 505(b)(2) application or abbreviated new drug application under section 505(j) of the act.
314.108 New drug product exclusivity.
314.110 Approvable letter to the applicant.
314.112 Submitting an abbreviated application for, or a 505(j)(2)(C) petition that relies on, a listed drug that is no longer marketed.
314.115 Refusal to approve an application.
314.116 Adequate and well-controlled studies.
314.117 Refusal to approve an abbreviated new drug application.
314.118 Withdrawal of approval of an application or Abbreviated application for a new drug.
314.119 Suspension of approval of an approved application or abbreviated application for a new drug.
314.120 Not approvable letter to the applicant.
314.121 New drug product exclusivity.
314.122 Notice of withdrawal of approval of an application or abbreviated application for an approved drug.
314.123 Determination of reasons for voluntary withdrawal of a listed drug.
314.124 Removal of a drug product from the list.
314.125 Adulteration and misbranding of an approved drug.

Subpart E—Hearing Procedures for New Drugs
314.200 Notice of opportunity for hearing; notice of participation and request for hearing; grant or denial of hearing.
314.201 Procedure for hearings.
§ 314.1 Judicial review.

Subpart F [Reserved]

Subpart G—Miscellaneous Provisions

314.410 Imports and exports of new drugs.
314.420 Drug master files.
314.430 Availability for public disclosure of data and information in an application or abbreviated application.
314.440 Addresses for applications and abbreviated applications.

Subpart H—Accelerated Approval of New Drugs for Serious or Life-Threatening Illnesses

314.500 Scope.
314.510 Approval based on a surrogate endpoint or on an effect on a clinical endpoint other than survival or irreversible morbidity.
314.520 Approval with restrictions to assure safe use.
314.530 Withdrawal procedures.
314.540 Postmarketing safety reporting.
314.550 Promotional materials.
314.560 Termination of requirements.


EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 65 FR 64617, Oct. 30, 2001, the authority citation for 21 CFR part 314 was revised, effective Feb. 27, 2001. At 66 FR 10815, Feb. 20, 2001, the effective date was delayed until Apr. 30, 2001. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set forth as follows:


SOURCE: 50 FR 7493, Feb. 22, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 314.1 Scope of this part.

(a) This part sets forth procedures and requirements for the submission to, and the review by, the Food and Drug Administration of applications and abbreviated applications to market a new drug under section 505 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, as well as amendments, supplements, and postmarketing reports to them.

(b) This part does not apply to drug products subject to licensing by FDA under the Public Health Service Act (38 Stat. 632 as amended (42 U.S.C. 201 et seq.)) and subchapter F of chapter I of title 21 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(c) References in this part to regulations in the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21, unless otherwise noted.


§ 314.2 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to establish an efficient and thorough drug review process in order to: (a) Facilitate the approval of drugs shown to be safe and effective; and (b) ensure the disapproval of drugs not shown to be safe and effective. These regulations are also intended to establish an effective system for FDA’s surveillance of marketed drugs. These regulations shall be construed in light of these objectives.

§ 314.3 Definitions.

(a) The definitions and interpretations contained in section 201 of the act apply to those terms when used in this part.

(b) The following definitions of terms apply to this part:

Abbreviated application means the application described under § 314.94, including all amendments and supplements to the application. “Abbreviated application” applies to both an abbreviated new drug application and an abbreviated antibiotic application.


Applicant means any person who submits an application or abbreviated application or an amendment or supplement to them under this part to obtain FDA approval of a new drug or an antibiotic drug and any person who owns an approved application or abbreviated application.

Application means the application described under § 314.50, including all amendments and supplements to the application.

505(b)(2) Application means an application submitted under section 505(b)(2) of the act for a drug for which the investigations described in section 505(b)(1)(A) of the act and relied upon by the applicant for approval of the application were not conducted by or for
§ 314.50 Content and format of an application.

Applications and supplements to approved applications are required to be submitted in the form and contain the information, as appropriate for the particular submission, required under this section. Three copies of the application are required: An archival copy, a review copy, and a field copy. An application for a new chemical entity will generally contain an application form, an index, a summary, five or six technical sections, case report tabulations of patient data, case report forms, drug samples, and labeling, including, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter. Other applications will generally contain only some of those items, and information will be limited to that needed to support the particular submission. These include an application of the type described in section 505(b)(2).
§ 314.50 of the act, an amendment, and a supplement. The application is required to contain reports of all investigations of the drug product sponsored by the applicant, and all other information about the drug pertinent to an evaluation of the application that is received or otherwise obtained by the applicant from any source. FDA will maintain guidance documents on the format and content of applications to assist applicants in their preparation.

(a) Application form. The applicant shall submit a completed and signed application form that contains the following:

(1) The name and address of the applicant; the date of the application; the application number if previously issued (for example, if the application is a resubmission, an amendment, or a supplement); the name of the drug product, including its established, proprietary, code, and chemical names; the dosage form and strength; the route of administration; the identification numbers of all investigational new drug applications that are referenced in the application; the identification numbers of all drug master files and other applications under this part that are referenced in the application; and the drug product’s proposed indications for use.

(2) A statement whether the submission is an original submission, a 505(b)(2) application, a resubmission, or a supplement to an application under §314.70.

(3) A statement whether the applicant proposes to market the drug product as a prescription or an over-the-counter product.

(4) A check-list identifying what enclosures required under this section the applicant is submitting.

(5) The applicant, or the applicant’s attorney, agent, or other authorized official shall sign the application. If the person signing the application does not reside or have a place of business within the United States, the application is required to contain the name and address of, and be countersigned by, an attorney, agent, or other authorized official who resides or maintains a place of business within the United States.

(b) Index. The archival copy of the application is required to contain a comprehensive index by volume number and page number to the summary under paragraph (c) of this section, the technical sections under paragraph (d) of this section, and the supporting information under paragraph (f) of this section.

(c) Summary. (1) An application is required to contain a summary of the application in enough detail that the reader may gain a good general understanding of the data and information in the application, including an understanding of the quantitative aspects of the data. The summary is not required for supplements under §314.70. Resubmissions of an application should contain an updated summary, as appropriate. The summary should discuss all aspects of the application, and synthesize the information into a well-structured and unified document. The summary should be written at approximately the level of detail required for publication in, and meet the editorial standards generally applied by, refereed scientific and medical journals. In addition to the agency personnel reviewing the summary in the context of their review of the application, FDA may furnish the summary to FDA advisory committee members and agency officials whose duties require an understanding of the application. To the extent possible, data in the summary should be presented in tabular and graphic forms. FDA has prepared a guideline under §10.90(b) that provides information about how to prepare a summary. The summary required under this paragraph may be used by FDA or the applicant to prepare the Summary Basis of Approval document for public disclosure (under §314.430(e)(2)(ii)) when the application is approved.

(2) The summary is required to contain the following information:

(i) The proposed text of the labeling, including, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter, for the drug, with annotations to the information in the summary and technical sections of the application that support the inclusion of each statement in the labeling, and, if the application is for a prescription
drug, statements describing the reasons for omitting a section or subsection of the labeling format in §201.57 of this chapter.

(ii) A statement identifying the pharmacologic class of the drug and a discussion of the scientific rationale for the drug, its intended use, and the potential clinical benefits of the drug product.

(iii) A brief description of the marketing history, if any, of the drug outside the United States, including a list of the countries in which the drug has been marketed, a list of any countries in which the drug has been withdrawn from marketing for any reason related to safety or effectiveness, and a list of countries in which applications for marketing are pending. The description is required to describe both marketing by the applicant and, if known, the marketing history of other persons.

(iv) A summary of the chemistry, manufacturing, and controls section of the application.

(v) A summary of the nonclinical pharmacology and toxicology section of the application.

(vi) A summary of the human pharmacokinetics and bioavailability section of the application.

(vii) A summary of the microbiology section of the application (for anti-infective drugs only).

(viii) A summary of the clinical data section of the application, including the results of statistical analyses of the clinical trials.

(ix) A concluding discussion that presents the benefit and risk considerations related to the drug, including a discussion of any proposed additional studies or surveillance the applicant intends to conduct postmarketing.

(d) Technical sections. The application is required to contain the technical sections described below. Each technical section is required to contain data and information in sufficient detail to permit the agency to make a knowledgeable judgment about whether to approve the application or whether grounds exist under section 505(d) of the act to refuse to approve the application. The required technical sections are as follows:

(1) **Chemistry, manufacturing, and controls section.** A section describing the composition, manufacture, and specification of the drug substance and the drug product, including the following:

   (i) **Drug substance.** A full description of the drug substance including its physical and chemical characteristics and stability; the name and address of its manufacturer; the method of synthesis (or isolation) and purification of the drug substance; the process controls used during manufacture and packaging; and such specifications and analytical methods as are necessary to assure the identity, strength, quality, and purity of the drug substance and the bioavailability of the drug products made from the substance, including, for example, specifications relating to stability, sterility, particle size, and crystalline form. The application may provide additionally for the use of alternatives to meet any of these requirements, including alternative sources, process controls, methods, and specifications. Reference to the current edition of the U.S. Pharmacopeia and the National Formulary may satisfy relevant requirements in this paragraph.

   (ii) **Drug product.** A list of all components used in the manufacture of the drug product (regardless of whether they appear in the drug product); and a statement of the composition of the drug product; a statement of the specifications and analytical methods for each component; the name and address of each manufacturer the drug product; a description of the manufacturing and packaging procedures and in-process controls for the drug product; such specifications and analytical methods as are necessary to assure the identity, strength, quality, purity, and bioavailability of the drug product, including, for example, specifications relating to sterility, dissolution rate, containers and closure systems; and stability data with proposed expiration dating. The application may provide additionally for the use of alternatives to meet any of these requirements, including alternative components, manufacturing and packaging procedures, in-process controls, methods, and specifications. Reference to the current edition of the U.S. Pharmacopeia and the National Formulary may satisfy
§ 314.50

relevant requirements in this paragraph.

(b) Unless provided by paragraph (d)(1)(ii)(a) of this section, for each batch of the drug product used to conduct a bioavailability or bioequivalence study described in § 320.38 or § 320.63 of this chapter or used to conduct a primary stability study: The batch production record; the specifications and test procedures for each component and for the drug product; the names and addresses of the sources of the active and noncompendial inactive components and of the container and closure system for the drug product; the name and address of each contract facility involved in the manufacture, processing, packaging, or testing of the drug product and identification of the operation performed by each contract facility; and the results of any test performed on the components used in the manufacture of the drug product as required by § 211.84(d) of this chapter and on the drug product as required by § 211.165 of this chapter.

(c) The proposed or actual master production record, including a description of the equipment, to be used for the manufacture of a commercial lot of the drug product or a comparably detailed description of the production process for a representative batch of the drug product.

(ii) Environmental impact. The application is required to contain either a claim for categorical exclusion under § 25.30 or 25.31 of this chapter or an environmental assessment under § 25.40 of this chapter.

(iv) The applicant may, at its option, submit a complete chemistry, manufacturing, and controls section 90 to 120 days before the anticipated submission of the remainder of the application. FDA will review such early submissions as resources permit.

(v) Except for a foreign applicant, the applicant shall include a statement certifying that the field copy of the application has been provided to the applicant’s home FDA district office.

(2) Nonclinical pharmacology and toxicology section. A section describing, with the aid of graphs and tables, animal and in vitro studies with drug, including the following:

(i) Studies of the pharmacological actions of the drug in relation to its proposed therapeutic indication and studies that otherwise define the pharmacologic properties of the drug or are pertinent to possible adverse effects.

(ii) Studies of the toxicological effects of the drug as they relate to the drug’s intended clinical uses, including, as appropriate, studies assessing the drug’s acute, subacute, and chronic toxicity; carcinogenicity; and studies of toxicities related to the drug’s particular mode of administration or conditions of use.

(iii) Studies, as appropriate, of the effects of the drug on reproduction and on the developing fetus.

(iv) Any studies of the absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion of the drug in animals.

(v) For each nonclinical laboratory study subject to the good laboratory practice regulations under part 58 a statement that it was conducted in compliance with the good laboratory practice regulations in part 58, or, if the study was not conducted in compliance with those regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(3) Human pharmacokinetics and bioavailability section. A section describing the human pharmacokinetic data and human bioavailability data, or information supporting a waiver of the submission of in vivo bioavailability data under subpart B of part 320, including the following:

(i) A description of each of the bioavailability and pharmacokinetic studies of the drug in humans performed by or on behalf of the applicant that includes a description of the analytical and statistical methods used in each study and a statement with respect to each study that it either was conducted in compliance with the institutional review board regulations in part 56, or was not subject to the regulations under § 56.104 or § 56.105, and that it was conducted in compliance with the informed consent regulations in part 50.

(ii) If the application describes in the chemistry, manufacturing, and controls section specifications or analytical methods needed to assure the bioavailability of the drug product or drug
§ 314.50

Food and Drug Administration, HHS

substance, or both, a statement in this section of the rationale for establishing the specification or analytical methods, including data and information supporting the rationale.

(iii) A summarizing discussion and analysis of the pharmacokinetics and metabolism of the active ingredients and the bioavailability or bioequivalence, or both, of the drug product.

(4) Microbiology section. If the drug is an anti-infective drug, a section describing the microbiology data, including the following:

(i) A description of the biochemical basis of the drug’s action on microbial physiology.

(ii) A description of the antimicrobial spectra of the drug, including results of in vitro preclinical studies to demonstrate concentrations of the drug required for effective use.

(iii) A description of any known mechanisms of resistance to the drug, including results of any known epidemiologic studies to demonstrate prevalence of resistance factors.

(iv) A description of clinical microbiology laboratory methods (for example, in vitro sensitivity discs) needed for effective use of the drug.

(5) Clinical data section. A section describing the clinical investigations of the drug, including the following:

(i) A description and analysis of each clinical pharmacology study of the drug, including a brief comparison of the results of the human studies with the animal pharmacology and toxicology data.

(ii) A description and analysis of each controlled clinical study pertinent to a proposed use of the drug, including the protocol and a description of the statistical analyses used to evaluate the study. If the study report is an interim analysis, this is to be noted and a projected completion date provided. Controlled clinical studies that have not been analyzed in detail for any reason (e.g., because they have been discontinued or are incomplete) are to be included in this section, including a copy of the protocol and a brief description of the results and status of the study.

(iii) A description of each uncontrolled clinical study, a summary of the results, and a brief statement explaining why the study is classified as uncontrolled.

(iv) A description and analysis of any other data or information relevant to an evaluation of the safety and effectiveness of the drug product obtained or otherwise received by the applicant from any source, foreign or domestic, including information derived from clinical investigations, including controlled and uncontrolled studies of uses of the drug other than those proposed in the application, commercial marketing experience, reports in the scientific literature, and unpublished scientific papers.

(v) An integrated summary of the data demonstrating substantial evidence of effectiveness for the claimed indications. Evidence is also required to support the dosage and administration section of the labeling, including support for the dosage and dose interval recommended. The effectiveness data shall be presented by gender, age, and racial subgroups and shall identify any modifications of dose or dose interval needed for specific subgroups. Effectiveness data from other subgroups of the population of patients treated, when appropriate, such as patients with renal failure or patients with different levels of severity of the disease, also shall be presented.

(vi) A summary and updates of safety information, as follows:

(a) The applicant shall submit an integrated summary of all available information about the safety of the drug product, including pertinent animal data, demonstrated or potential adverse effects of the drug, clinically significant drug/drug interactions, and other safety considerations, such as data from epidemiological studies of related drugs. The safety data shall be presented by gender, age, and racial subgroups. When appropriate, safety data from other subgroups of the population of patients treated also shall be presented, such as for patients with renal failure or patients with different levels of severity of the disease. A description of any statistical analyses performed in analyzing safety data should also be included, unless already included under paragraph (d)(5)(ii) of this section.
§ 314.50 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

(b) The applicant shall, under section 505(i) of the act, update periodically its pending application with new safety information learned about the drug that may reasonably affect the statement of contraindications, warnings, precautions, and adverse reactions in the draft labeling and, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter. These “safety update reports” are required to include the same kinds of information (from clinical studies, animal studies, and other sources) and are required to be submitted in the same format as the integrated summary in paragraph (d)(5)(vi)(a) of this section. In addition, the reports are required to include the case report forms for each patient who died during a clinical study or who did not complete the study because of an adverse event (unless this requirement is waived). The applicant shall submit these reports (1) 4 months after the initial submission; (2) following receipt of an approvable letter; and (3) at other times as requested by FDA. Prior to the submission of the first such report, applicants are encouraged to consult with FDA regarding further details on its form and content.

(vii) If the drug has a potential for abuse, a description and analysis of studies or information related to abuse of the drug, including a proposal for scheduling under the Controlled Substances Act. A description of any studies related to overdosage is also required, including information on dialysis, antidotes, or other treatments, if known.

(viii) An integrated summary of the benefits and risks of the drug, including a discussion of why the benefits exceed the risks under the conditions stated in the labeling.

(ix) A statement with respect to each clinical study involving human subjects that it either was conducted in compliance with the institutional review board regulations in part 56, or was not subject to the regulations under §56.104 or §56.105, and that it was conducted in compliance with the informed consent regulations in part 50.

(x) If a sponsor has transferred any obligations for the conduct of any clinical study to a contract research organization, a statement containing the name and address of the contract research organization, identification of the clinical study, and a listing of the obligations transferred. If all obligations governing the conduct of the study have been transferred, a general statement of this transfer—in lieu of a listing of the specific obligations transferred—may be submitted.

(xi) If original subject records were audited or reviewed by the sponsor in the course of monitoring any clinical study to verify the accuracy of the case reports submitted to the sponsor, a list identifying each clinical study so audited or reviewed.

(6) Statistical section. A section describing the statistical evaluation of clinical data, including the following:

(i) A copy of the information submitted under paragraph (d)(5)(ii) of this section concerning the description and analysis of each controlled clinical study, and the documentation and supporting statistical analyses used in evaluating the controlled clinical studies.

(ii) A copy of the information submitted under paragraph (d)(5)(vi)(a) of this section concerning a summary of information about the safety of the drug product, and the documentation and supporting statistical analyses used in evaluating the safety information.

(7) Pediatric use section. A section describing the investigation of the drug for use in pediatric populations, including an integrated summary of the information (the clinical pharmacology studies, controlled clinical studies, or uncontrolled clinical studies, or other data or information) that is relevant to the safety and effectiveness and benefits and risks of the drug in pediatric populations for the claimed indications, a reference to the full descriptions of such studies provided under paragraphs (d)(3) and (d)(5) of this section, and information required to be submitted under §314.55.

(e) Samples and labeling. (1) Upon request from FDA, the applicant shall submit the samples described below to the places identified in the agency’s request. FDA will generally ask applicants to submit samples directly to two or more agency laboratories that will perform all necessary tests on the
samples and validate the applicant’s analytical methods.

(i) Four representative samples of the following, each sample in sufficient quantity to permit FDA to perform three times each test described in the application to determine whether the drug substance and the drug product meet the specifications given in the application:

(a) The drug product proposed for marketing;

(b) The drug substance used in the drug product from which the samples of the drug product were taken; and

(c) Reference standards and blanks (except that reference standards recognized in an official compendium need not be submitted).

(ii) Samples of the finished market package, if requested by FDA.

(2) The applicant shall submit the following in the archival copy of the application:

(i) Three copies of the analytical methods and related descriptive information contained in the chemistry, manufacturing, and controls section under paragraph (d)(1) of this section for the drug substance and the drug product that are necessary for FDA’s laboratories to perform all necessary tests on the samples and to validate the applicant’s analytical methods. The related descriptive information includes a description of each sample; the proposed regulatory specifications for the drug; a detailed description of the methods of analysis; supporting data for accuracy, specificity, precision and ruggedness; and complete results of the applicant’s tests on each sample.

(ii) Copies of the label and all labeling for the drug product (including, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter) for the drug product (4 copies of draft labeling or 12 copies of final printed labeling).

(f) Case report forms and tabulations. The archival copy of the application is required to contain the following case report tabulations and case report forms:

(1) Case report tabulations. The application is required to contain tabulations of the data from each adequate and well-controlled study under §314.126 (Phase 2 and Phase 3 studies as described in §§312.21 (b) and (c) of this chapter), tabulations of the data from the earliest clinical pharmacology studies (Phase 1 studies as described in §312.21(a) of this chapter), and tabulations of the safety data from other clinical studies. Routine submission of other patient data from uncontrolled studies is not required. The tabulations are required to include the data on each patient in each study, except that the applicant may delete those tabulations which the agency agrees, in advance, are not pertinent to a review of the drug’s safety or effectiveness. Upon request, FDA will discuss with the applicant in a “pre-NDA” conference those tabulations that may be appropriate for such deletion. Barring unforeseen circumstances, tabulations agreed to be deleted at such a conference will not be requested during the conduct of FDA’s review of the application. If such unforeseen circumstances do occur, any request for deleted tabulations will be made by the director of the FDA division responsible for reviewing the application, in accordance with paragraph (f)(3) of this section.

(2) Case report forms. The application is required to contain copies of individual case report forms for each patient who died during a clinical study or who did not complete the study because of an adverse event, whether believed to be drug related or not, including patients receiving reference drugs or placebo. This requirement may be waived by FDA for specific studies if the case report forms are unnecessary for a proper review of the study.

(3) Additional data. The applicant shall submit to FDA additional case report forms and tabulations needed to conduct a proper review of the application, as requested by the director of the FDA division responsible for reviewing the application. The applicant’s failure to submit information requested by FDA within 30 days after receipt of the request may result in the agency viewing any eventual submission as a major amendment under §314.60 and extending the review period as necessary. If desired by the applicant, the FDA division director will verify in writing any request for additional data that was made orally.
§ 314.50

(4) Applicants are invited to meet with FDA before submitting an application to discuss the presentation and format of supporting information. If the applicant and FDA agree, the applicant may submit tabulations of patient data and case report forms in a form other than hard copy, for example, on microfiche or computer tapes.

(g) Other. The following general requirements apply to the submission of information within the summary under paragraph (c) of this section and within the technical sections under paragraph (d) of this section.

(1) The applicant ordinarily is not required to resubmit information previously submitted, but may incorporate the information by reference. A reference to information submitted previously is required to identify the file by name, reference number, volume, and page number in the agency’s records where the information can be found. A reference to information submitted to the agency by a person other than the applicant is required to contain a written statement that authorizes the reference and that is signed by the person who submitted the information.

(2) The applicant shall submit an accurate and complete English translation of each part of the application that is not in English. The applicant shall submit a copy of each original literature publication for which an English translation is submitted.

(3) If an applicant who submits a new drug application under section 505(b) of the act obtains a “right of reference or use,” as defined under §314.3(b), to an investigation described in clause (A) of section 505(b)(1) of the act, the applicant shall include in its application a written statement signed by the owner of the data from each such investigation that the applicant may rely on in support of the approval of its application, and provide FDA access to, the underlying raw data that provide the basis for the report of the investigation submitted in its application.

(h) Patent information. The application is required to contain the patent information described under §314.53.

(i) Patent certification—(1) Contents. A 505(b)(2) application is required to contain the following:

(1) Patents claiming drug, drug product, or method of use. (A) Except as provided in paragraph (i)(2) of this section, a certification with respect to each patent issued by the United States Patent and Trademark Office that, in the opinion of the applicant and to the best of its knowledge, claims a drug (the drug product or drug substance that is a component of the drug product) on which investigations that are relied upon by the applicant for approval of its application were conducted or that claims an approved use for such drug and for which information is required to be filed under section 505(b) and (c) of the act and §314.53. For each such patent, the applicant shall provide the patent number and certify, in its opinion and to the best of its knowledge, one of the following circumstances:

(1) That the patent information has not been submitted to FDA. The applicant shall entitle such a certification “Paragraph I Certification”; (2) That the patent has expired. The applicant shall entitle such a certification “Paragraph II Certification”; (3) The date on which the patent will expire. The applicant shall entitle such a certification “Paragraph III Certification”; or (4) That the patent is invalid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed by the manufacture, use, or sale of the drug product for which the application is submitted. The applicant shall entitle such a certification “Paragraph IV Certification”. This certification shall be submitted in the following form:

1. (name of applicant), certify that Patent No. (is invalid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed by the manufacture, use, or sale of) (name of proposed drug product) for which this application is submitted.

The certification shall be accompanied by a statement that the applicant will comply with the requirements under §314.52(a) with respect to providing a notice to each owner of the patent or their representatives and to the holder of the approved application for the drug product which is claimed by the patent or a use of which is claimed by the patent and with the requirements under §314.52(c) with respect to the content of the notice.
Paragraph IV Certification

(B) If the drug on which investigations are relied upon by the applicant were conducted is itself a licensed generic drug of a patented drug first approved under section 505(b) of the act, the appropriate patent certification under this section with respect to each patent that claims the first-approved patented drug or that claims an approved use for such a drug.

(2) Method of manufacturing patent. An applicant is not required to make a certification with respect to any patent that claims only a method of manufacturing the drug product for which the applicant is seeking approval.

(3) Licensing agreements. If a 505(b)(2) application is for a drug or method of using a drug claimed by a patent and the applicant has a licensing agreement with the patent owner, the applicant shall submit a certification under paragraph (i)(1)(i)(A)(4) of this section (“Paragraph IV Certification”) as to that patent and a statement that it has been granted a patent license. If the patent owner consents to an immediate effective date upon approval of the 505(b)(2) application, the application shall contain a written statement from the patent owner that it has a licensing agreement with the applicant and that it consents to an immediate effective date.

(4) Late submission of patent information. If a patent described in paragraph (i)(1)(i)(A) of this section is issued and the holder of the approved application for the patented drug does not submit the required information on the patent within 30 days of issuance of the patent, an applicant who submitted a 505(b)(2) application that, before the submission of the patent information, contained an appropriate patent certification is not required to submit an amended certification. An applicant whose 505(b)(2) application is filed after a late submission of patent information or whose 505(b)(2) application was previously filed but did not contain an appropriate patent certification at the time of the patent submission shall submit a certification under paragraph (i)(1)(i) or (i)(1)(ii) of this section or a statement under paragraph (i)(1)(iii) of this section as to that patent.

(5) Disputed patent information. If an applicant disputes the accuracy or relevance of patent information submitted to FDA, the applicant may seek a confirmation of the correctness of the patent information in accordance with the procedures under §314.53(f). Unless the patent information is withdrawn or changed, the applicant must submit an appropriate certification for each relevant patent.

(6) Amended certifications. A certification submitted under paragraphs (i)(1)(i) through (i)(1)(iii) of this section may be amended at any time before the effective date of the approval of the application. An applicant shall submit an amended certification as an amendment to a pending application or by letter to an approved application. If an applicant with a pending application voluntarily makes a patent certification for an untimely filed patent, the applicant may withdraw the patent certification for the untimely filed patent. Once an amendment or letter for the change in certification has been submitted, the application will no
§ 314.50

21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

longer be considered to be one containing the prior certification.

(i) After finding of infringement. An applicant who has submitted a certification under paragraph (i)(1)(i)(A)(4) of this section and is sued for patent infringement within 45 days of the receipt of notice sent under §314.52 shall amend the certification if a final judgment in the action is entered finding the patent to be infringed unless the final judgment also finds the patent to be invalid. In the amended certification, the applicant shall certify under paragraph (i)(1)(i)(A)(3) of this section that the patent will expire on a specific date.

(ii) After removal of a patent from the list. If a patent is removed from the list, any applicant with a pending application (including a tentatively approved application with a delayed effective date) who has made a certification with respect to such patent shall amend its certification. The applicant shall certify under paragraph (i)(1)(ii) of this section that no patents described in paragraph (i)(1)(i) of this section claim the drug or, if other relevant patents claim the drug, shall amend the certification to refer only to those relevant patents. In the amendment, the applicant shall state the reason for the change in certification (that the patent is or has been removed from the list). A patent that is the subject of a lawsuit under §314.107(c) shall not be removed from the list until FDA determines either that no delay in effective dates of approval is required under that section as a result of the lawsuit, that the patent has expired, or that any such period of delay in effective dates of approval is ended. An applicant shall submit an amended certification as an amendment to a pending application. Once an amendment for the change has been submitted, the application will no longer be considered to be one containing a certification under paragraph (i)(1)(i)(A)(4) of this section.

(iii) Other amendments. (A) Except as provided in paragraphs (i)(4) and (i)(6)(iii)(B) of this section, an applicant shall amend a submitted certification if, at any time before the effective date of the approval of the application, the applicant learns that the submitted certification is no longer accurate.

(B) An applicant is not required to amend a submitted certification when information on an otherwise applicable patent is submitted after the effective date of approval for the 505(b)(2) application.

(j) Claimed exclusivity. A new drug product, upon approval, may be entitled to a period of marketing exclusivity under the provisions of §314.108. If an applicant believes its drug product is entitled to a period of exclusivity, it shall submit with the new drug application prior to approval the following information:

(1) A statement that the applicant is claiming exclusivity.

(2) A reference to the appropriate paragraph under §314.108 that supports its claim.

(3) If the applicant claims exclusivity under §314.108(b)(2), information to show that, to the best of its knowledge or belief, a drug has not previously been approved under section 505(b) of the act containing any active moiety in the drug for which the applicant is seeking approval.

(4) If the applicant claims exclusivity under §314.108(b)(4) or (b)(5), the following information to show that the application contains “new clinical investigations” that are “essential to approval of the application or supplement” and were “conducted or sponsored by the applicant.”

(i) “New clinical investigations.” A certification that to the best of the applicant’s knowledge each of the clinical investigations included in the application meets the definition of “new clinical investigation” set forth in §314.108(a).

(ii) “Essential to approval.” A list of all published studies or publicly available reports of clinical investigations known to the applicant through a literature search that are relevant to the conditions for which the applicant is seeking approval, a certification that the applicant has thoroughly searched the scientific literature and, to the best of the applicant’s knowledge, the list is complete and accurate and, in the applicant’s opinion, such published studies or publicly available reports do not provide a sufficient basis for the
approval of the conditions for which the applicant is seeking approval without reference to the new clinical investigation(s) in the application, and an explanation as to why the studies or reports are insufficient.

(iii) “Conducted or sponsored by.” If the applicant was the sponsor named in the Form FDA–1571 for an investigational new drug application (IND) under which the new clinical investigation(s) that is essential to the approval of its application was conducted, identification of the IND by number. If the applicant was not the sponsor of the IND under which the clinical investigation(s) was conducted, a certification that the applicant or its predecessor in interest provided substantial support for the clinical investigation(s) that is essential to the approval of its application, and information supporting the certification. To demonstrate “substantial support,” an applicant must either provide a certified statement from a certified public accountant that the applicant provided 50 percent or more of the cost of conducting the study or provide an explanation of why FDA should consider the applicant to have conducted or sponsored the study if the applicant’s financial contribution to the study is less than 50 percent or the applicant did not sponsor the investigational new drug. A predecessor in interest is an entity, e.g., a corporation, that the applicant has taken over, merged with, or purchased, or from which the applicant has purchased all rights to the drug. Purchase of non-exclusive rights to a clinical investigation after it is completed is not sufficient to satisfy this definition.

(k) Financial certification or disclosure statement. The application shall contain a financial certification or disclosure statement or both as required by part 54 of this chapter.

(l) Format of an original application. The application shall contain a complete archival copy of the application that contains the information required under paragraphs (a) through (f) of this section. FDA will maintain the archival copy during the review of the application to permit individual reviewers to refer to information that is not contained in their particular technical sections of the application, to give other agency personnel access to the application for official business, and to maintain in one place a complete copy of the application. An applicant may submit on microfiche the portions of the archival copy of the application described in paragraphs (b) through (d) of this section. Information relating to samples and labeling (including, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter), described in paragraph (e) of this section, may be submitted on microfiche only if the applicant and FDA agree. If FDA agrees, the applicant may use another suitable microform system.

(2) The application shall submit a review copy of the application. Each of the technical sections, described in paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section, in the review copy is required to be separately bound with a copy of the application form required under paragraph (a) of this section and a copy of the summary required under paragraph (c) of this section.

(3) The applicant shall submit a field copy of the application that contains the technical section described in paragraph (d)(1) of this section, a copy of the application form required under paragraph (a) of this section, a copy of the summary required under paragraph (c) of this section, and a certification that the field copy is a true copy of the technical section described in paragraph (d)(1) of this section contained in the archival and review copies of the application.

(4) The applicant may obtain from FDA sufficient folders to bind the archival, the review, and the field copies of the application.
§ 314.52 Notice of certification of invalidity or noninfringement of a patent.

(a) Notice of certification. For each patent which claims the drug or drugs on which investigations that are relied upon by the applicant for approval of its application were conducted or which claims a use for such drug or drugs and which the applicant certifies under §314.50(i)(1)(i)(A)(4) that a patent is invalid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed, the applicant shall send notice of such certification by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested to each of the following persons:

(1) Each owner of the patent that is the subject of the certification or the representative designated by the owner to receive the notice. The name and address of the patent owner or its representative may be obtained from the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and

(2) The holder of the approved application under section 505(b) of the act for each drug product which is claimed by the patent or a use of which is claimed by the patent and for which the applicant is seeking approval, or, if the application holder does not reside or maintain a place of business within the United States, the application holder's attorney, agent, or other authorized official. The name and address of the application holder or its attorney, agent, or authorized official may be obtained from the Division of Drug Information Resources (HFD–80), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(b) Sending the notice. The applicant shall send the notice required by paragraph (a) of this section when it receives from FDA an acknowledgment letter stating that its application has been filed. At the same time, the applicant shall amend its application to include a statement certifying that the notice has been provided to each person identified under paragraph (a) of this section and that the notice met the content requirement under paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) Content of a notice. In the notice, the applicant shall cite section 505(b)(3)(B) of the act and shall include, but not be limited to, the following information:

(1) A statement that a 505(b)(2) application submitted by the applicant has been filed by FDA.

(2) The application number.

(3) The established name, if any, as defined in section 502(e)(3) of the act, of the proposed drug product.

(4) The active ingredient, strength, and dosage form of the proposed drug product.

(5) The patent number and expiration date, as submitted to the agency or as known to the applicant, of each patent alleged to be invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed.

(6) A detailed statement of the factual and legal basis of the applicant's opinion that the patent is not valid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed. The applicant shall include in the detailed statement:

(i) For each claim of a patent alleged not to be infringed, a full and detailed explanation of why the claim is not infringed.

(ii) For each claim of a patent alleged to be invalid or unenforceable, a full and detailed explanation of the grounds supporting the allegation.

(7) If the applicant does not reside or have a place of business in the United States, the name and address of an agent in the United States authorized to accept service of process for the applicant.

(d) Amendment to an application. If an application is amended to include the certification described in §314.50(i), the applicant shall send the notice required by paragraph (a) of this section at the same time that the amendment to the application is submitted to FDA.

(e) Documentation of receipt of notice. The applicant shall amend its application to document receipt of the notice required under paragraph (a) of this section by each person provided the notice. The applicant shall include a copy of the return receipt or other similar evidence of the date the notification was received by each person.
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 314.53 Submission of patent information.

(a) Who must submit patent information. This section applies to any applicant who submits to FDA a new drug application or an amendment to it under section 505(b) of the act and §314.50 or a supplement to an approved application under §314.70, except as provided in paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(b) Patents for which information must be submitted. An applicant described in paragraph (a) of this section shall submit information on each patent that claims the drug or a method of using the drug that is the subject of the new drug application or amendment or supplement to it and with respect to which a claim of patent infringement could reasonably be asserted if a person not licensed by the owner of the patent engaged in the manufacture, use, or sale of the drug product. For purposes of this part, such patents consist of drug substance (ingredient) patents, drug product (formulation and composition) patents, and method of use patents. Process patents are not covered by this section and information on process patents may not be submitted to FDA. For patents that claim a drug product or drug product, the applicant shall submit information only on those patents that claim a drug product that is the subject of a pending or approved application, or that claim a drug substance that is a component of such a product. For patents that claim a method of use, the applicant shall submit information only on those patents that claim indications or other conditions of use of a pending or approved application.

(c) Reporting requirements—(1) General requirements. An applicant described in paragraph (a) of this section shall submit the following information for each patent described in paragraph (b) of this section:

(i) Patent number and the date on which the patent will expire.

(ii) Type of patent, i.e., drug, drug product, or method of use.

(iii) Name of the patent owner.

(iv) If the patent owner or applicant does not reside or have a place of business within the United States, the name of an agent (representative) of the patent owner or applicant who resides or maintains a place of business within the United States authorized to receive notice of patent certification under section 505(b)(3) and (j)(2)(B) of the act and §§314.52 and 314.95.

(2) Formulation, composition, or method of use patents—(i) Original declaration. For each formulation, composition, or method of use patent, in addition to the patent information described in paragraph (c)(1) of this section the applicant shall submit the following declaration:

The undersigned declares that Patent No. covers the formulation, composition, and/or method of use of [name of drug product]. This product is (currently approved under section 505 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act) [or] (the subject of this application for which approval is being sought):

(ii) Amendment of patent information upon approval. Within 30 days after the date of approval of its application, if the application contained a declaration required under paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section, the applicant shall by letter amend the declaration to identify each patent that claims the formulation, composition, or the specific indications or other conditions of use that have been approved.
§ 314.53  21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

(3) No relevant patents. If the applicant believes that there are no patents which claim the drug or the drug product or which claim a method of using the drug product and with respect to which a claim of patent infringement could reasonably be asserted if a person not licensed by the owner of the patent engaged in the manufacture, use, or sale of the drug product, it shall so declare.

(4) Authorized signature. The declarations required by this section shall be signed by the applicant or patent owner, or the applicant’s or patent owner’s attorney, agent (representative), or other authorized official.

(d) When and where to submit patent information—(1) Original application. An applicant shall submit with its original application submitted under this part, including an application described in section 505(b)(2) of the act, the information described in paragraph (c) of this section on each drug (ingredient), drug product (formulation and composition), and method of use patent issued before the application is filed with FDA and for which patent information is required to be submitted under this section. If a patent is issued after the application is filed with FDA but before the application is approved, the applicant shall, within 30 days of the date of issuance of the patent, submit the required patent information in an amendment to the application under § 314.60.

(2) Supplements. (i) An applicant shall submit patent information required under paragraph (c) of this section for a patent that claims the drug, drug product, or method of use for which approval is sought in any of the following supplements:

(A) To change the formulation;

(B) To add a new indication or other condition of use, including a change in route of administration;

(C) To change the strength;

(D) To make any other patented change regarding the drug, drug product, or any method of use.

(ii) If the applicant submits a supplement for one of the changes listed under paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section and no patents, including previously submitted patents, claim the changed product, it shall so certify.

(iv) The applicant shall comply with the requirements for amendment of formulation or composition and method of use patent information under paragraphs (c)(2)(ii) and (d)(3) of this section.

(3) Patent information deadline. If a patent is issued for a drug, drug product, or method of use after an application is approved, the applicant shall submit to FDA the required patent information within 30 days of the date of issuance of the patent.

(4) Copies. The applicant shall submit two copies of each submission of patent information, an archival copy and a copy for the chemistry, manufacturing, and controls section of the review copy, to the Central Document Room, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, Park Bldg., rm. 2-14, 12229 Parklawn Dr., Rockville, MD 20857. The applicant shall submit the patent information by letter separate from, but at the same time as, submission of the supplement.

(5) Submission date. Patent information shall be considered to be submitted to FDA as of the date the information is received by the Central Document Room.

(6) Identification. Each submission of patent information, except information submitted with an original application, and its mailing cover shall bear prominent identification as to its contents, i.e., “Patent Information,” or, if submitted after approval of an application, “Time Sensitive Patent Information.”

(e) Public disclosure of patent information. FDA will publish in the list the patent number and expiration date of each patent that is required to be, and is, submitted to FDA by an applicant, and for each use patent, the approved indications or other conditions of use covered by a patent. FDA will publish such patent information upon approval
§ 314.54 Procedure for submission of an application requiring investigations for approval of a new indication for, or other change from, a listed drug.

(a) The act does not permit approval of an abbreviated new drug application for a new indication, nor does it permit approval of other changes in a listed drug if investigations, other than bioavailability or bioequivalence studies, are essential to the approval of the change. Any person seeking approval of a drug product that represents a modification of a listed drug (e.g., a new indication or new dosage form) and for which investigations, other than bioavailability or bioequivalence studies, are essential to the approval of the changes may, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, submit a 505(b)(2) application. This application need contain only that information needed to support the modification(s) of the listed drug.

(i) The applicant shall submit a complete archival copy of the application that contains the following:

(ii) The information required under § 314.50(a), (b), (c), (d)(1), (d)(3), (e), and (g), except that § 314.50(d)(1)(ii)(c) shall contain the proposed or actual master production record, including a description of the equipment, to be used for the manufacture of a commercial lot of the drug product.

(iii) Identification of the listed drug for which FDA has made a finding of safety and effectiveness and on which the applicant relies in seeking approval of its proposed drug product by established name, if any, proprietary name, dosage form, strength, route of administration, name of listed drug’s application holder, and listed drug’s approved application number.

(iv) If the applicant is seeking approval only for a new indication and not for the indications approved for the listed drug on which the applicant relies, a certification so stating.

(v) Any patent information required under section 505(b)(1) of the act with respect to any patent which claims the...
§ 314.55 Pediatric use information.

(a) Required assessment. Except as provided in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, each application for a new active ingredient, new indication, new dosage form, new dosing regimen, or new route of administration shall contain data that are adequate to assess the safety and effectiveness of the drug product for the claimed indications in all relevant pediatric subpopulations, and to support dosing and administration for each pediatric subpopulation for which the drug is safe and effective. Where the course of the disease and the effects of the drug are sufficiently similar in adults and pediatric patients, FDA may conclude that pediatric effectiveness can be extrapolated from adequate and well-controlled studies in adults usually supplemented with other information obtained in pediatric patients, such as pharmacokinetic studies. Studies may not be needed in each pediatric age group, if data from one age group can be extrapolated to another. Assessments of safety and effectiveness required under this section for a drug product that represents a meaningful therapeutic benefit over existing treatments for pediatric patients must be carried out using appropriate formulations for each age group(s) for which the assessment is required.

(b) Deferred submission. (1) FDA may, on its own initiative or at the request of an applicant, defer submission of some or all assessments of safety and effectiveness described in paragraph (a) of this section until after approval of the drug product for use in adults. Deferral may be granted if, among other

(2) The applicant shall submit a review copy that contains the technical sections described in §314.50(d)(1), except that §314.50(d)(1)(i)(c) shall contain the proposed or actual master production record, including a description of the equipment, to be used for the manufacture of a commercial lot of the drug product, and the technical sections described in paragraphs (d)(2), (d)(4), (d)(5), (d)(6), and (f) when needed to support the modification. Each of the technical sections in the review copy is required to be separately bound with a copy of the information required under §314.50(a), (b), and (c) and a copy of the proposed labeling.

(3) The information required by §314.50(d)(2), (d)(4) (if an anti-infective drug), (d)(5), (d)(6), and (f) for the listed drug on which the applicant relies shall be satisfied by reference to the listed drug under paragraph (a)(1)(iii) of this section.

(4) The applicant shall submit a field copy of the application that contains the technical section described in §314.50(d)(1), a copy of the information required under §314.50(a) and (c), and certification that the field copy is a true copy of the technical section described in §314.50(d)(1) contained in the archival and review copies of the application.

(5) An application may not be submitted under this section for a drug product whose only difference from the reference listed drug is that:

(1) The extent to which its active ingredient(s) is absorbed or otherwise made available to the site of action is less than that of the reference listed drug; or

(2) The rate at which its active ingredient(s) is absorbed or otherwise made available to the site of action is unintentionally less than that of the reference listed drug.

reasons, the drug is ready for approval in adults before studies in pediatric patients are complete, or pediatric studies should be delayed until additional safety or effectiveness data have been collected. If an applicant requests deferred submission, the request must provide a certification from the applicant of the grounds for delaying pediatric studies, a description of the planned or ongoing studies, and evidence that the studies are being or will be conducted with due diligence and at the earliest possible time.

(2) If FDA determines that there is an adequate justification for temporarily delaying the submission of assessments of pediatric safety and effectiveness, the drug product may be approved for use in adults subject to the requirement that the applicant submit the required assessments within a specified time.

(c) Waivers—(1) General. FDA may grant a full or partial waiver of the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section on its own initiative or at the request of an applicant. A request for a waiver must provide an adequate justification.

(2) Full waiver. An applicant may request a waiver of the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section if the applicant certifies that:

(i) The drug product does not represent a meaningful therapeutic benefit over existing treatments for pediatric patients and is not likely to be used in a substantial number of pediatric patients;

(ii) Necessary studies are impossible or highly impractical because, e.g., the number of patients in that age group is so small or geographically dispersed; or

(iii) There is evidence strongly suggesting that the drug product would be ineffective or unsafe in that age group; or

(iv) The applicant can demonstrate that reasonable attempts to produce a pediatric formulation necessary for that age group have failed.

(4) FDA action on waiver. FDA shall grant a full or partial waiver, as appropriate, if the agency finds that there is a reasonable basis on which to conclude that one or more of the grounds for waiver specified in paragraphs (c)(2) or (c)(3) of this section have been met. If a waiver is granted on the ground that it is not possible to develop a pediatric formulation, the waiver will cover only those pediatric age groups requiring that formulation. If a waiver is granted because there is evidence that the product would be ineffective or unsafe in pediatric populations, this information will be included in the product’s labeling.

(5) Definition of “meaningful therapeutic benefit.” For purposes of this section and §201.23 of this chapter, a drug will be considered to offer a meaningful therapeutic benefit over existing therapies if FDA estimates that:

(i) If approved, the drug would represent a significant improvement in the treatment, diagnosis, or prevention of a disease, compared to marketed products adequately labeled for that use in the relevant pediatric population. Examples of how improvement might be demonstrated include, for example, evidence of increased effectiveness in treatment, prevention, or diagnosis of disease, elimination or substantial reduction of a treatment-limiting drug reaction, documented enhancement of compliance, or evidence of safety and effectiveness in a new subpopulation; or

(ii) The drug is in a class of drugs or for an indication for which there is a need for additional therapeutic options.

(d) Exemption for orphan drugs. This section does not apply to any drug for an indication or indications for which orphan designation has been granted.
§ 314.60 Amendments to an unapproved application.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, the applicant may submit an amendment to an application that is filed under §314.100, but not yet approved. The submission of a major amendment (for example, an amendment that contains significant new data from a previously unreported study or detailed new analyses of previously submitted data), whether on the applicant’s own initiative or at the invitation of the agency, constitutes an agreement by the applicant under section 505(c) of the act to extend the date by which the agency is required to reach a decision on the application. Ordinarily, the agency will extend the review period for a major amendment but only for the time necessary to review the new information. However, the agency may not extend the review period more than 180 days. If the agency extends the review period for the application, the director of the division responsible for reviewing the application will notify the applicant of the length of the extension. The submission of an amendment that is not a major amendment will not extend the review period. An amendment that contains new clinical data from a previously unreported study shall contain a financial certification or disclosure statement or both as required by part 54 of this chapter, or FDA may refuse to accept any such amendment.

(b)(1) An unapproved application may not be amended if all of the following conditions apply:

(i) The unapproved application is for a drug for which a previous application has been approved and granted a period of exclusivity in accordance with section 505(c)(3)(D)(ii) of the act that has not expired;

(ii) The applicant seeks to amend the unapproved application to include a published report of an investigation that was conducted or sponsored by the applicant entitled to exclusivity for the drug;

(iii) The applicant has not obtained a right of reference to the investigation described in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section; and

(iv) The report of the investigation described in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section would be essential to the approval of the unapproved application.

(2) The submission of an amendment described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section will cause the unapproved application to be deemed to be withdrawn by the applicant under §314.65 on the date of receipt by FDA of the amendment. The amendment will be considered a resubmission of the application, which may not be accepted except as provided in accordance with section 505(c)(3)(D)(ii) of the act.

(c) The applicant shall submit a field copy of each amendment to §314.50(d)(1). The applicant, other than a foreign applicant, shall include in its submission of each such amendment to FDA a statement certifying that a field copy of the amendment has been sent to the applicant’s home FDA district office.

§ 314.65 Withdrawal by the applicant of an unapproved application.

An applicant may at any time withdraw an application that is not yet approved by notifying the Food and Drug Administration in writing. The agency will consider an applicant’s failure to respond within 10 days to an approvable letter under §314.110 or a not approvable letter under §314.120 to be a request by the applicant to withdraw the application. A decision to withdraw the application is without prejudice to refiling. The agency will retain the application and will provide a copy to the applicant on request under the fee schedule in §20.42 of FDA’s public information regulations.

§ 314.70 Supplements and other changes to an approved application.

(a) Changes to an approved application. The applicant shall notify FDA about each change in each condition established in an approved application beyond the variations already provided
§ 314.70

For in the application. The notice is required to describe the change fully. Depending on the type of change, the applicant shall notify FDA about it in a supplemental application under paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section or by inclusion of the information in the annual report to the application under paragraph (d) of this section. Notwithstanding the requirements of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, an applicant shall make a change provided for in those paragraphs (for example, the deletion of an ingredient common to many drug products) in accordance with a notice, or regulation published in the Federal Register that provides for a less burdensome notification of the change (for example, by notification at the time a supplement is submitted or in the next annual report). Except for a supplemental application providing for a change in the labeling, the applicant, other than a foreign applicant, shall include in each supplemental application providing for a change under paragraph (b) or (c) of this section a statement certifying that a field copy of the supplement has been provided to the applicant’s home FDA district office.

(b) Supplements requiring FDA approval before the change is made. An applicant shall submit a supplement, and obtain FDA approval of it, before making the changes listed below in the conditions in an approved application, unless the change is made to comply with an official compendium. An applicant may ask FDA to expedite its review of a supplement if a delay in making the change described in it would impose an extraordinary hardship on the applicant. Such a supplement and its mailing cover should be plainly marked: “Supplement—Expedited Review Requested.”

(1) Drug substance. A change affecting the drug substance to accomplish any of the following:

(i) To relax the limits for a specification;

(ii) To establish a new regulatory analytical method;

(iii) To delete a specification or regulatory analytical method;

(iv) To change the synthesis of the drug substance, including a change in solvents and a change in the route of synthesis.

(v) To use a different facility or establishment to manufacture the drug substance, where: (a) the manufacturing process in the new facility or establishment differs materially from that in the former facility or establishment, or (b) the new facility or establishment has not received a satisfactory current good manufacturing practice (CGMP) inspection within the previous 2 years covering that manufacturing process.

(2) Drug product. A change affecting the drug product to accomplish any of the following:

(i) To add or delete an ingredient, or otherwise to change the composition of the drug product, other than deletion of an ingredient intended only to affect the color of the drug product;

(ii) To relax the limits for a specification;

(iii) To establish a new regulatory analytical method;

(iv) To delete a specification or regulatory analytical method;

(v) To change the method of manufacture of the drug product, including changing or relaxing an in-process control;

(vi) To use a different facility or establishment, including a different contract laboratory or labeler, to manufacture, process, or pack the drug product;

(vii) To change the container and closure system for the drug product (for example, glass to high density polyethylene (HDPE), or HDPE to polyvinyl chloride) or change a specification or regulatory analytical method for the container and closure system;

(x) To extend the expiration date of the drug product based on data obtained under a new or revised stability testing protocol that has not been approved in the application.

(x) To establish a new procedure for reprocessing a batch of the drug product that fails to meet specifications.

(xi) To add a code imprint by printing with ink on a solid oral dosage form drug product.
§ 314.70  

(xii) To add a code imprint by embossing, debossing, or engraving on a modified release solid oral dosage form drug product.

(3) Labeling. (i) Any change in labeling, except one described in paragraphs (c)(2) or (d) of this section.

(ii) If applicable, any change to a Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter, except for changes in the information specified in §208.20(b)(8)(iii) and (b)(8)(iv).

(c) Supplements for changes that may be made before FDA approval. An applicant shall submit a supplement at the time the applicant makes any kind of change listed below in the conditions in an approved application, unless the change is made to comply with an official compendium. A supplement under this paragraph is required to give a full explanation of the basis for the change, identify the date on which the change is made, and, if the change concerns labeling, include 12 copies of final printed labeling. The applicant shall promptly revise all promotional labeling and drug advertising to make it consistent with any change in the labeling. The supplement and its mailing cover should be plainly marked: "Special Supplement—Changes Being Effected."

(1) Adds a new specification or test method or changes in the methods, facilities (except a change to a new facility), or controls to provide increased assurance that the drug will have the characteristics of identity, strength, quality, and purity which it purports or is represented to possess;

(2) Changes labeling to accomplish any of the following:

(i) To add or strengthen a contraindication, warning, precaution, or adverse reaction;

(ii) To add or strengthen a statement about drug abuse, dependence, or overdosage;

(iii) To add or strengthen an instruction about dosage and administration that is intended to increase the safe use of the product.

(iv) To delete false, misleading, or unsupported indications for use or claims for effectiveness.

(3) To use a different facility or establishment to manufacture the drug substance, where: (i) The manufacturing process in the new facility or establishment does not differ materially from that in the former facility or establishment, and (ii) the new facility or establishment has received a satisfactory current good manufacturing practice (CGMP) inspection within the previous 2 years covering that manufacturing process.

(d) Changes described in the annual report. An applicant shall not submit a supplement to make any change in the conditions in an approved application, unless otherwise required under paragraph (b) or (c) of this section, but shall describe the change in the next annual report required under §314.81. Some examples of changes that can be described in the annual report are the following:

(1) Any change made to comply with an official compendium.

(2) A change in the labeling concerning the description of the drug product or in the information about how the drug product is supplied, that does not involve a change in the dosage strength or dosage form.

(3) An editorial or similar minor change in labeling.

(4) The deletion of an ingredient intended only to affect the color of the drug product.

(5) An extension of the expiration date based upon full shelf-life data obtained from a protocol approved in the application.

(6) A change within the container and closure system for the drug product (for example, a change from one high density polyethylene (HDPE) to another HDPE), except a change in container size for nonsolid dosage forms, based upon a showing of equivalency to the approved system under a protocol approved in the application or published in an official compendium.

(7) The addition or deletion of an alternate analytical method.

(8) A change in the size of a container for a solid dosage form, without a change from one container and closure system to another.

(9) The addition by embossing, debossing, or engraving of a code imprint to a solid oral dosage form drug product other than a modified release dosage form, or a minor change in an existing code imprint.
(e) **Patent information.** The applicant shall comply with the patent information requirements under section 505(c)(2) of the act.

(f) **Claimed exclusivity.** If an applicant claims exclusivity under §314.108 upon approval of a supplemental application for a change to its previously approved drug product, the applicant shall include with its supplemental application the information required under §314.50(j).

(g) **Exception.** An applicant proposing to make a change of a type described in paragraphs (a), (b)(1), (b)(2), (c)(1), (c)(3), (d)(1), and (d)(4) through (d)(9) of this section affecting a recombinant DNA-derived protein/peptide product or a complex or conjugate of a drug with a monoclonal antibody regulated under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act shall comply with the following:

(i) **Changes requiring supplement submission and approval prior to distribution of the product made using the change (major changes).** A supplement shall be submitted for any change in the product, production process, quality controls, equipment, or facilities that has a substantial potential to have an adverse effect on the identity, strength, quality, purity, or potency of the product as they may relate to the safety or effectiveness of the product.

(ii) These changes include, but are not limited to:

(A) Changes in the qualitative or quantitative formulation or other specifications as provided in the approved application or in the regulations;

(B) Changes requiring completion of an appropriate human study to demonstrate the equivalence of the identity, strength, quality, purity, or potency of the product as they may relate to the safety or effectiveness of the product;

(C) Changes in the virus or adventitious agent removal or inactivation method(s);

(D) Changes in the source material or cell line;

(E) Establishment of a new master cell bank or seed; and

(F) Changes which may affect product sterility assurance, such as changes in product or component sterilization method(s) or an addition, deletion, or substitution of steps in an aseptic processing operation.

(iii) The applicant must obtain approval of the supplement from FDA prior to distribution of the product made using the change. Except for submissions under paragraph (g)(4) of this section, the following shall be contained in the supplement:

(A) A detailed description of the proposed change;

(B) The product(s) involved;

(C) The manufacturing site(s) or area(s) affected;

(D) A description of the methods used and studies performed to evaluate the effect of the change on the identity, strength, quality, purity, or potency of the product as they may relate to the safety or effectiveness of the product;

(E) The data derived from such studies;

(F) Relevant validation protocols and data; and

(G) A reference list of relevant standard operating procedures (SOP’s).

(ii) **Changes requiring supplement submission at least 30 days prior to distribution of the product made using the change.** A supplement shall be submitted for any change in the product, production process, quality controls, equipment, or facilities that has a moderate potential to have an adverse effect on the identity, strength, quality, purity, or potency of the product as they may relate to the safety or effectiveness of the product.

(ii) These changes include, but are not limited to:

(A) Change in the site of testing from one facility to another;

(B) An increase or decrease in production scale during finishing steps that involves new or different equipment; and

(C) Replacement of equipment with that of similar, but not identical, design and operating principle that does not affect the process methodology or process operating parameters.

(iii) Pending approval of the supplement by FDA, and except as provided in paragraph (g)(2)(v) of this section,
§ 314.71 Procedures for submission of a supplement to an approved application.

(a) Only the applicant may submit a supplement to an application.

(b) All procedures and actions that apply to an application under §314.50 also apply to supplements, except that...
the information required in the supplement is limited to that needed to support the change. A supplement is required to contain an archival copy and a review copy that include an application form and appropriate technical sections, samples, and labeling; except that a supplement for a change other than a change in labeling is required also to contain a field copy.

(c) All procedures and actions that apply to applications under this part, including actions by applicants and the Food and Drug Administration, also apply to supplements.

§ 314.80 Postmarketing reporting of adverse drug experiences.

(a) Definitions. The following definitions of terms apply to this section—

Adverse drug experience. Any adverse event associated with the use of a drug in humans, whether or not considered drug related, including the following: An adverse event occurring in the course of the use of a drug product in professional practice; an adverse event occurring from drug overdose whether accidental or intentional; an adverse event occurring from drug abuse; an adverse event occurring from drug withdrawal; and any failure of expected pharmacological action.

Disability. A substantial disruption of a person’s ability to conduct normal life functions.

Life-threatening adverse drug experience. Any adverse drug experience that places the patient, in the view of the initial reporter, at immediate risk of death from the adverse drug experience as it occurred, i.e., it does not include an adverse drug experience that, had it occurred in a more severe form, might have caused death.

Serious adverse drug experience. Any adverse drug experience occurring at any dose that results in any of the following outcomes: Death, a life-threatening adverse drug experience, inpatient hospitalization or prolongation of existing hospitalization, a persistent or significant disability/incapacity, or a congenital anomaly/birth defect. Important medical events that may not result in death, be life-threatening, or require hospitalization may be considered a serious adverse drug experience when, based upon appropriate medical judgment, they may jeopardize the patient or subject and may require medical or surgical intervention to prevent one of the outcomes listed in this definition. Examples of such medical events include allergic bronchospasm requiring intensive treatment in an emergency room or at home, blood dyscrasias or convulsions that do not result in inpatient hospitalization, or...
the development of drug dependency or drug abuse.

Unexpected adverse drug experience. Any adverse drug experience that is not listed in the current labeling for the drug product. This includes events that may be symptomatically and pathophysiologically related to an event listed in the labeling, but differ from the event because of greater severity or specificity. For example, under this definition, hepatic necrosis would be unexpected (by virtue of greater severity) if the labeling only referred to elevated hepatic enzymes or hepatitis. Similarly, cerebral thromboembolism and cerebral vasculitis would be unexpected (by virtue of greater specificity) if the labeling only listed cerebral vascular accidents. "Unexpected," as used in this definition, refers to an adverse drug experience that has not been previously observed (i.e., included in the labeling) rather than from the perspective of such experience not being anticipated from the pharmacological properties of the pharmaceutical product.

(b) Review of adverse drug experiences. Each applicant having an approved application under §314.50 or, in the case of a 505(b)(2) application, an effective approved application, shall promptly review all adverse drug experience information obtained or otherwise received by the applicant from any source, foreign or domestic, including information derived from commercial marketing experience, postmarketing clinical investigations, postmarketing epidemiological/surveillance studies, reports in the scientific literature, and unpublished scientific papers. Applicants are not required to resubmit to FDA adverse drug experience reports forwarded to the applicant by FDA; however, applicants must submit all followup information on such reports to FDA. Any person subject to the reporting requirements under paragraph (c) of this section shall also develop written procedures for the surveillance, receipt, evaluation, and reporting of postmarketing adverse drug experiences to FDA.

(c) Reporting requirements. The applicant shall report to FDA adverse drug experience information, as described in this section. The applicant shall submit two copies of each report described in this section to the Central Document Room, 12229 Wilkins Ave., Rockville, MD 20852. FDA may waive the requirement for the second copy in appropriate instances.

(1)(i) Postmarketing 15-day "Alert reports". The applicant shall report each adverse drug experience that is both serious and unexpected, whether foreign or domestic, as soon as possible but in no case later than 15 calendar days of initial receipt of the information by the applicant.

(ii) Postmarketing 15-day "Alert reports"—followup. The applicant shall promptly investigate all adverse drug experiences that are the subject of these postmarketing 15-day Alert reports and shall submit followup reports within 15 calendar days of receipt of new information or as requested by FDA. If additional information is not obtainable, records should be maintained of the unsuccessful steps taken to seek additional information. Postmarketing 15-day Alert reports and followups to them shall be submitted under separate cover.

(iii) Submission of reports. The requirements of paragraphs (c)(1)(i) and (c)(1)(ii) of this section, concerning the submission of postmarketing 15-day Alert reports, shall also apply to any person other than the applicant (nonapplicant) whose name appears on the label of an approved drug product as a manufacturer, packer, or distributor. To avoid unnecessary duplication in the submission to FDA of reports required by paragraphs (c)(1)(i) and (c)(1)(ii) of this section, obligations of a nonapplicant may be met by submission of all reports of serious adverse drug experiences to the applicant. If a nonapplicant elects to submit adverse drug experience reports to the applicant rather than to FDA, the nonapplicant shall submit each report to the applicant within 5 calendar days of receipt of the report by the nonapplicant, and the applicant shall then comply with the requirements of this section. Under this circumstance, the nonapplicant shall maintain a record of this action which shall include:

(A) A copy of each adverse drug experience report;
(B) The date the report was received by the nonapplicant;
(C) The date the report was submitted to the applicant; and
(D) The name and address of the applicant.

(iv) Report identification. Each report submitted under this paragraph shall bear prominent identification as to its contents, i.e., “15-day Alert report,” or “15-day Alert report-followup.”

(2) Periodic adverse drug experience reports. (i) The applicant shall report each adverse drug experience not reported under paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section at quarterly intervals, for 3 years from the date of approval of the application, and then at annual intervals. The applicant shall submit each quarterly report within 30 days of the close of the quarter (the first quarter beginning on the date of approval of the application) and each annual report within 60 days of the anniversary date of approval of the application. Upon written notice, FDA may extend or reestablish the requirement that an applicant submit quarterly reports, or require that the applicant submit reports under this section at different times than those stated. For example, the agency may reestablish a quarterly reporting requirement following the approval of a major supplement. Followup information to adverse drug experiences submitted in a periodic report may be submitted in the next periodic report.

(ii) Each periodic report is required to contain: (a) a narrative summary and analysis of the information in the report and an analysis of the 15-day Alert reports submitted during the reporting interval (all 15-day Alert reports being appropriately referenced by the applicant’s patient identification number, adverse reaction term(s), and date of submission to FDA); (b) a FDA Form 3500A (Adverse Reaction Report) for each adverse drug experience not reported under paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section (with an index consisting of a line listing of the applicant’s patient identification number and adverse reaction term(s)); and (c) a history of actions taken since the last report because of adverse drug experiences (for example, labeling changes or studies initiated).

(iii) Periodic reporting, except for information regarding 15-day Alert reports, does not apply to adverse drug experience information obtained from postmarketing studies (whether or not conducted under an investigational new drug application), from reports in the scientific literature, and from foreign marketing experience.

(d) Scientific literature. (1) A 15-day Alert report based on information from the scientific literature is required to be accompanied by a copy of the published article. The 15-day reporting requirements in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section (i.e., serious, unexpected adverse drug experiences) apply only to reports found in scientific and medical journals either as case reports or as the result of a formal clinical trial.

(2) As with all reports submitted under paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section, reports based on the scientific literature shall be submitted on FDA Form 3500A or comparable format as prescribed by paragraph (f) of this section. In cases where the applicant believes that preparing the FDA Form 3500A constitutes an undue hardship, the applicant may arrange with the Division of Pharmacovigilance and Epidemiology for an acceptable alternative reporting format.

(e) Postmarketing studies. (1) An applicant is not required to submit a 15-day Alert report under paragraph (c) of this section for an adverse drug experience obtained from a postmarketing study (whether or not conducted under an investigational new drug application) unless the applicant concludes that there is a reasonable possibility that the drug caused the adverse experience.

(2) The applicant shall separate and clearly mark reports of adverse drug experiences that occur during a postmarketing study as being distinct from those experiences that are being reported spontaneously to the applicant.

(f) Reporting FDA Form 3500A. (1) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(3) of this section, the applicant shall complete FDA Form 3500A for each report of an adverse drug experience (foreign events may be submitted either on a FDA Form 3500A or, if preferred, on a CIOMS I form).
§ 314.81 Other postmarketing reports.

(a) Applicability. Each applicant shall make the reports for each of its approved applications and abbreviated applications required under this section and section 505(k) of the act.

(b) Reporting requirements. The applicant shall submit to the Food and Drug Administration at the specified times two copies of the following reports:

(1) NDA—Field alert report. The applicant shall submit information of the following kinds about distributed drug products and articles to the FDA district office that is responsible for the facility involved within 3 working days of receipt by the applicant. The information may be provided by telephone or other rapid communication means.

(2) Each completed FDA Form 3500A should refer only to an individual patient or a single attached publication.

(3) Instead of using FDA Form 3500A, an applicant may use a computer-generated FDA Form 3500A or other alternative format (e.g., a computer-generated tape or tabular listing) provided that: (i) The content of the alternative format is equivalent in all elements of information to those specified in FDA Form 3500A; and (ii) The format is agreed to in advance by MedWatch: The FDA Medical Products Reporting Program.

(4) Ten copies or fewer of FDA Form 3500A and/or a copy of the instructions for completing the form may be obtained from the Division of Pharmacovigilance and Epidemiology (HFDe730), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. More than 10 copies of the form may be obtained by writing to the Consolidated Forms and Publications Distribution Center, Washington Commerce Center, 3222 Hubbard Rd., Landover, MD 20785.

(g) Multiple reports. An applicant should not include in reports under this section any adverse drug experiences that occurred in clinical trials if they were previously submitted as part of the approved application. If a report applies to a drug for which an applicant holds more than one approved application, the applicant should submit the report to the application that was first approved. If a report refers to more than one drug marketed by an applicant, the applicant should submit the report to the application for the drug listed first in the report.

(h) Patient privacy. An applicant should not include in reports under this section the names and addresses of individual patients; instead, the applicant should assign a unique code number to each report, preferably not more than eight characters in length. The applicant should include the name of the reporter from whom the information was received. Names of patients, health care professionals, hospitals, and geographical identifiers in adverse drug experience reports are not releasable to the public under FDA’s public information regulations in part 20.

(i) Recordkeeping. The applicant shall maintain for a period of 10 years records of all adverse drug experiences known to the applicant, including raw data and any correspondence relating to adverse drug experiences.

(j) Withdrawal of approval. If an applicant fails to establish and maintain records and make reports required under this section, FDA may withdraw approval of the application and, thus, prohibit continued marketing of the drug product that is the subject of the application.

(k) Disclaimer. A report or information submitted by an applicant under this section (and any release by FDA of that report or information) does not necessarily reflect a conclusion by the applicant or FDA that the report or information constitutes an admission that the drug caused or contributed to an adverse effect. An applicant need not admit, and may deny, that the report or information submitted under this section constitutes an admission that the drug caused or contributed to an adverse effect. For purposes of this provision, the term “applicant” also includes any person reporting under paragraph (c)(1)(iii) of this section.

Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 314.81

with prompt written followup. The report and its mailing cover should be plainly marked: "NDA—Field Alert Report."

(i) Information concerning any incident that causes the drug product or its labeling to be mistaken for, or applied to, another article.

(ii) Information concerning any bacteriological contamination, or any significant chemical, physical, or other change or deterioration in the distributed drug product, or any failure of one or more distributed batches of the drug product to meet the specifications established for it in the application.

(2) Annual report. The applicant shall submit each year within 60 days of the anniversary date of U.S. approval of the application, two copies of the report to the FDA division responsible for reviewing the application. Each annual report is required to be accompanied by a completed transmittal Form FDA 2252 (Transmittal of Periodic Reports for Drugs for Human Use), and must include all the information required under this section that the applicant received or otherwise obtained during the annual reporting interval that ends on the U.S. anniversary date. The report is required to contain in the order listed:

(i) Summary. A brief summary of significant new information from the previous year that might affect the safety, effectiveness, or labeling of the drug product. The report is also required to contain a brief description of actions the applicant has taken or intends to take as a result of this new information, for example, submit a labeling supplement, add a warning to the labeling, or initiate a new study. The summary shall briefly state whether labeling supplements for pediatric use have been submitted and whether new studies in the pediatric population have been initiated. Where possible, an estimate of patient exposure to the drug product, with special reference to the pediatric population (neonates, infants, children, and adolescents) shall be provided, including dosage form.

(ii) Distribution data. Information about the quantity of the drug product distributed under the approved application, including that distributed to distributors. The information is required to include the National Drug Code (NDC) number, the total number of dosage units of each strength or potency distributed (e.g., 100,000/5 milligram tablets, 50,000/10 milliliter vials), and the quantities distributed for domestic use and the quantities distributed for foreign use. Disclosure of financial or pricing data is not required.

(iii) Labeling. Currently used professional labeling, patient brochures or package inserts (if any), a representative sample of the package labels, and a summary of any changes in labeling that have been made since the last report listed by date in the order in which they were implemented, or if no changes, a statement of that fact.

(iv) Chemistry, manufacturing, and controls changes. (a) Reports of experiences, investigations, studies, or tests involving chemical or physical properties, or any other properties of the drug (such as the drug’s behavior or properties in relation to microorganisms, including both the effects of the drug on microorganisms and the effects of microorganisms on the drug). These reports are only required for new information that may affect FDA’s previous conclusions about the safety or effectiveness of the drug product.

(b) A full description of the manufacturing and controls changes not requiring a supplemental application under §314.70 (b) and (c), listed by date in the order in which they were implemented.

(v) Nonclinical laboratory studies. Copies of unpublished reports and summaries of published reports of new toxicological findings in animal studies and in vitro studies (e.g., mutagenicity) conducted by, or otherwise obtained by, the applicant concerning the ingredients in the drug product. The applicant shall submit a copy of a published report if requested by FDA.

(vi) Clinical data. (a) Published clinical trials of the drug (or abstracts of them), including clinical trials on safety and effectiveness; clinical trials on new uses; biopharmaceutic, pharmacokinetic, and clinical pharmacology studies; and reports of clinical experience pertinent to safety (for example,
§ 314.81 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)
epidemiologic studies or analyses of experience in a monitored series of patients) conducted by or otherwise obtained by the applicant. Review articles, papers describing the use of the drug product in medical practice, papers and abstracts in which the drug is used as a research tool, promotional articles, press clippings, and papers that do not contain tabulations or summaries of original data should not be reported.

(b) Summaries of completed unpublished clinical trials, or prepublication manuscripts if available, conducted by, or otherwise obtained by, the applicant. Supporting information should not be reported. (A study is considered completed 1 year after it is concluded.)

(c) Analysis of available safety and efficacy data in the pediatric population and changes proposed in the labeling based on this information. An assessment of data needed to ensure appropriate labeling for the pediatric population shall be included.

(vi) Status reports of postmarketing study commitments. A status report of each postmarketing study of the drug product concerning clinical safety, clinical efficacy, clinical pharmacology, and nonclinical toxicology that is required by FDA (e.g., accelerated approval clinical benefit studies, pediatric studies) or that the applicant has committed, in writing, to conduct either at the time of approval of an application for the drug product or a supplement to an application, or after approval of the application or a supplement. For pediatric studies, the status report shall include a statement indicating whether postmarketing clinical studies in pediatric populations were required by FDA under § 301.23 of this chapter. The status of these postmarketing studies shall be reported annually until FDA notifies the applicant, in writing, that the agency concurs with the applicant’s determination that the study commitment has been fulfilled or that the study is either no longer feasible or would no longer provide useful information.

(a) Content of status report. The following information must be provided for each postmarketing study reported under this paragraph:

(1) Applicant’s name.

(2) Product name. Include the approved drug product’s established name and proprietary name, if any.

(3) NDA, ANDA, and supplement number.

(4) Date of U.S. approval of NDA or ANDA.

(5) Date of postmarketing study commitment.

(6) Description of postmarketing study commitment. The description must include sufficient information to uniquely describe the study. This information may include the purpose of the study, the type of study, the patient population addressed by the study and the indication(s) and dosage(s) that are to be studied.

(7) Schedule for completion and reporting of the postmarketing study commitment. The schedule should include the actual or projected dates for submission of the study protocol to FDA, completion of patient accrual or initiation of an animal study, completion of the study, submission of the final study report to FDA, and any additional milestones or submissions for which projected dates were specified as part of the commitment. In addition, it should include a revised schedule, as appropriate. If the schedule has been previously revised, provide both the original schedule and the most recent, previously submitted revision.

(8) Current status of the postmarketing study commitment. The status of each postmarketing study should be categorized using one of the following terms that describes the study’s status on the anniversary date of U.S. approval of the application or other agreed upon date:

(i) Pending. The study has not been initiated, but does not meet the criterion for delayed.

(ii) Ongoing. The study is proceeding according to or ahead of the original schedule described under paragraph (b)(7)(viii)(a) of this section.

(iii) Delayed. The study is behind the original schedule described under paragraph (b)(7)(viii)(a)(7) of this section.

(iv) Terminated. The study was ended before completion but a final study report has not been submitted to FDA.

(v) Submitted. The study has been completed or terminated and a final
study report has been submitted to FDA.

(9) Explanation of the study’s status. Provide a brief description of the status of the study, including the patient accrual rate (expressed by providing the number of patients or subjects enrolled to date, and the total planned enrollment), and an explanation of the study’s status identified under paragraph (b)(2)(vii)(a)(δ) of this section. If the study has been completed, include the date the study was completed and the date the final study report was submitted to FDA, as applicable. Provide a revised schedule, as well as the reason(s) for the revision, if the schedule under paragraph (b)(2)(vii)(a)(7) of this section has changed since the last report.

(b) Public disclosure of information. Except for the information described in this paragraph, FDA may publicly disclose any information described in paragraph (b)(2)(vii) of this section, concerning a postmarketing study, if the agency determines that the information is necessary to identify the applicant or to establish the status of the study, including the reasons, if any, for failure to conduct, complete, and report the study. Under this section, FDA will not publicly disclose trade secrets, as defined in §20.61 of this chapter, or information, described in §20.63 of this chapter, the disclosure of which would constitute an unwarranted invasion of personal privacy.

(vii) Status of other postmarketing studies. A status report of any postmarketing study not included under paragraph (b)(2)(vii) of this section that is being performed by, or on behalf of, the applicant. A status report is to be included for any chemistry, manufacturing, and controls studies that the applicant has agreed to perform and for all product stability studies.

(ix) Log of outstanding regulatory business. To facilitate communications between FDA and the applicant, the report may, at the applicant’s discretion, also contain a list of any open regulatory business with FDA concerning the drug product subject to the application (e.g., a list of the applicant’s unanswered correspondence with the agency, a list of the agency’s unanswered correspondence with the applicant).

(3) Other reporting—(i) Advertisements and promotional labeling. The applicant shall submit specimens of mailing pieces and any other labeling or advertising devised for promotion of the drug product at the time of initial dissemination of the labeling and at the time of initial publication of the advertisement for a prescription drug product. Mailing pieces and labeling that are designed to contain samples of a drug product are required to be complete, except the sample of the drug product may be omitted. Each submission is required to be accompanied by a completed transmittal Form FDA–2253 (Transmittal of Advertisements and Promotional Labeling for Drugs for Human Use) and is required to include a copy of the product’s current professional labeling. Form FDA–2253 may be obtained from the PHS Forms and Publications Distribution Center, 12100 Parklawn Dr., Rockville, MD 20857.

(ii) Special reports. Upon written request the agency may require that the applicant submit the reports under this section at different times than those stated.

(iii) Withdrawal of approved drug product from sale. (a) The applicant shall submit on Form FDA 2657 (Drug Product Listing), within 15 working days of the withdrawal from sale of a drug product, the following information:

(1) The National Drug Code (NDC) number.

(2) The identity of the drug product by established name and by proprietary name.

(3) The new drug application or abbreviated application number.

(4) The date of withdrawal from sale. It is requested but not required that the reason for withdrawal of the drug product from sale be included with the information.

(b) The applicant shall submit each Form FDA–2657 to the Drug Listing Branch (HFD–334), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(c) Reporting under paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section constitutes compliance with the requirements
§ 314.81 Other postmarketing reports.

(b) * * *

(2) Annual report. The applicant shall submit each year within 60 days of the anniversary date of U.S. approval of the application, two copies of the report to the FDA division responsible for reviewing the application. Each annual report is required to be accompanied by a completed transmittal Form FDA 2252 (Transmittal of Periodic Reports for Drugs for Human Use), and must include all the information required under this section that the applicant received or otherwise obtained during the annual reporting interval that ends on the U.S. anniversary date. The report is required to contain in the order listed:

* * * * *

(vii) Status reports of postmarketing study commitments. A status report of each postmarketing study of the drug product concerning clinical safety, clinical efficacy, clinical pharmacology, and nonclinical toxicology that is required by FDA (e.g., accelerated approval clinical benefit studies, pediatric studies) or that the applicant has committed, in writing, to conduct either at the time of approval of an application for the drug product or a supplement to an application, or after approval of the application or a supplement. For pediatric studies, the status report shall include a statement indicating whether postmarketing clinical studies in pediatric populations were required by FDA under § 201.23 of this chapter. The status of these postmarketing studies shall be reported annually until FDA notifies the applicant, in writing, that the agency concurs with the applicant’s determination that the study commitment has been fulfilled or that the study is either no longer feasible or would no longer provide useful information.

(a) Content of status report. The following information must be provided for each postmarketing study reported under this paragraph:

(1) Applicant’s name.

(2) Product name. Include the approved drug product’s established name and proprietary name, if any.

(3) NDA, ANDA, and supplement number.

(4) Date of U.S. approval of NDA or ANDA.

(5) Date of postmarketing study commitment.

(6) Description of postmarketing study commitment. The description must include sufficient information to uniquely describe the study. This information may include the purpose of the study, the type of study, the patient population addressed by the study and the indication(s) and dosage(s) that are to be studied.

(7) Schedule for completion and reporting of the postmarketing study commitment. The schedule should include the actual or projected dates for submission of the study protocol to FDA, completion of patient accrual
or initiation of an animal study, completion of the study, submission of the final study report to FDA, and any additional milestones or submissions for which projected dates were specified as part of the commitment. In addition, it should include a revised schedule, as appropriate. If the schedule has been previously revised, provide both the original schedule and the most recent, previously submitted revision.

(d) Current status of the postmarketing study commitment. The status of each postmarketing study should be categorized using one of the following terms that describes the study’s status on the anniversary date of U.S. approval of the application or other agreed upon date:

(i) Pending. The study has not been initiated, but does not meet the criterion for delayed.

(ii) Ongoing. The study is proceeding according to or ahead of the original schedule described under paragraph (b)(2)(vii)(a)(7) of this section.

(iii) Delayed. The study is behind the original schedule described under paragraph (b)(2)(vii)(a)(7) of this section.

(iv) Terminated. The study was ended before completion but a final study report has not been submitted to FDA.

(v) Submitted. The study has been completed or terminated and a final study report has been submitted to FDA.

(b) FDA may grant a waiver if it

(i) finds one of the following:

(1) An explanation why the applicant’s compliance with the requirement is unnecessary or cannot be achieved;

(2) A description of an alternative submission that satisfies the purpose of the requirement;

(3) Other information justifying a waiver.

(c) A waiver request under this section any requirement that applies to the applicant under §§314.50 through 314.81. An applicant may ask FDA to waive under §314.126(c) any criteria of an adequate and well-controlled study described in §314.126(b). A waiver request under this section is required to be submitted with supporting documentation in an application, or in an amendment or supplement to an application. The waiver request is required to contain one of the following:

(1) An explanation why the applicant’s compliance with the requirement is unnecessary or cannot be achieved;

(2) A description of an alternative submission that satisfies the purpose of the requirement;

(3) Other information justifying a waiver.

(b) FDA may grant a waiver if it finds one of the following:

(1) The applicant’s compliance with the requirement is unnecessary for the agency to evaluate the application or compliance cannot be achieved;

(2) The applicant’s alternative submission satisfies the requirement;

(3) The applicant’s submission otherwise justifies a waiver.
§ 314.92 Drug products for which abbreviated applications may be submitted.

(a) Abbreviated applications are suitable for the following drug products within the limits set forth under § 314.93:

1. Drug products that are the same as a listed drug. A "listed drug" is defined in § 314.3. For determining the suitability of an abbreviated new drug application, the term "same as" means identical in active ingredient(s), dosage form, strength, route of administration, and conditions of use, except that conditions of use for which approval cannot be granted because of exclusivity or an existing patent may be omitted. If a listed drug has been voluntarily withdrawn from or not offered for sale by its manufacturer, a person who wishes to submit an abbreviated new drug application for the drug shall comply with § 314.122.

2. [Reserved]

3. Drug products that have been declared suitable for an abbreviated new drug application submission by FDA through the petition procedures set forth under § 10.30 of this chapter and § 314.93.

(b) FDA will publish in the list listed drugs for which abbreviated applications may be submitted. The list is available from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, 202-783-3238.

[57 FR 17983, Apr. 28, 1992, as amended at 64 FR 401, Jan. 5, 1999]

§ 314.93 Petition to request a change from a listed drug.

(a) The only changes from a listed drug for which the agency will accept a petition under this section are those changes described in paragraph (b) of this section. Petitions to submit abbreviated new drug applications for other changes from a listed drug will not be approved.

(b) A person who wants to submit an abbreviated new drug application for a drug product which is not identical to a listed drug in route of administration, dosage form, and strength, or in which one active ingredient is substituted for one of the active ingredients in a listed combination drug, must first obtain permission from FDA to submit such an abbreviated application.

(c) To obtain permission to submit an abbreviated new drug application for a change described in paragraph (b) of this section, a person must submit and obtain approval of a petition requesting the change. A person seeking permission to request such a change from a reference listed drug shall submit a petition in accordance with § 10.20 of this chapter and in the format specified in § 10.30 of this chapter. The petition shall contain the information specified in § 10.30 of this chapter and any additional information required by this section. If any provision of § 10.20 or § 10.30 of this chapter is inconsistent with any provision of this section, the provisions of this section apply.

(d) The petitioner shall identify a listed drug and include a copy of the proposed labeling for the drug product that is the subject of the petition and a copy of the approved labeling for the listed drug. The petitioner may, under limited circumstances, identify more than one listed drug, for example, when the proposed drug product is a combination product that differs from the combination reference listed drug with regard to an active ingredient, and the different active ingredient is an active ingredient of a listed drug. The petitioner shall also include information to show that:

1. The active ingredients of the proposed drug product are of the same pharmacological or therapeutic class as those of the reference listed drug.

2. The drug product can be expected to have the same therapeutic effect as the reference listed drug when administered to patients for each condition of use in the reference listed drug’s labeling for which the applicant seeks approval.

3. If the proposed drug product is a combination product with one different active ingredient, including a different ester or salt, from the reference listed...
drug, that the different active ingredient has previously been approved in a listed drug or is a drug that does not meet the definition of "new drug" in section 201(b) of the act.

(e) No later than 90 days after the date a petition that is permitted under paragraph (a) of this section is submitted, FDA will approve or disapprove the petition.

(1) FDA will approve a petition properly submitted under this section unless it finds that:

(i) Investigations must be conducted to show the safety and effectiveness of the drug product or of any of its active ingredients, its route of administration, dosage form, or strength which differs from the reference listed drug; or

(ii) For a petition that seeks to change an active ingredient, the drug product that is the subject of the petition is not a combination drug; or

(iii) For a combination drug product that is the subject of the petition and has an active ingredient different from the reference listed drug:

(A) The drug product may not be adequately evaluated for approval as safe and effective on the basis of the information required to be submitted under §314.94; or

(B) The petition does not contain information to show that the different active ingredient of the drug product is of the same pharmacological or therapeutic class as the ingredient of the reference listed drug that is to be changed and that the drug product can be expected to have the same therapeutic effect as the reference listed drug when administered to patients for each condition of use in the listed drug’s labeling for which the applicant seeks approval; or

(C) The different active ingredient is not an active ingredient in a listed drug or a drug that meets the requirements of section 201(p) of the act; or

(D) The remaining active ingredients are not identical to those of the listed combination drug; or

(iv) Any of the proposed changes from the listed drug would jeopardize the safe or effective use of the product so as to necessitate significant labeling changes to address the newly introduced safety or effectiveness problem; or

(v) FDA has determined that the reference listed drug has been withdrawn from sale for safety or effectiveness reasons under §314.161, or the reference listed drug has been voluntarily withdrawn from sale and the agency has not determined whether the withdrawal is for safety or effectiveness reasons.

(2) For purposes of this paragraph, "investigations must be conducted" means that information derived from animal or clinical studies is necessary to show that the drug product is safe or effective. Such information may be contained in published or unpublished reports.

(3) If FDA approves a petition submitted under this section, the agency’s response may describe what additional information, if any, will be required to support an abbreviated new drug application for the drug product. FDA may, at any time during the course of its review of an abbreviated new drug application, request additional information required to evaluate the change approved under the petition.

(f) FDA may withdraw approval of a petition if the agency receives any information demonstrating that the petition no longer satisfies the conditions under paragraph (e) of this section.

§314.94 Content and format of an abbreviated application.

Abbreviated applications are required to be submitted in the form and contain the information required under this section. Three copies of the application are required, an archival copy, a review copy, and a field copy. FDA will maintain guidance documents on the format and content of applications to assist applicants in their preparation.

(a) Abbreviated new drug applications. Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, the applicant shall submit a complete archival copy of the abbreviated new drug application that includes the following:

(1) Application form. The applicant shall submit a completed and signed application form that contains the information described under §314.50(a)(1), (a)(3), (a)(4), and (a)(5). The applicant shall state whether the submission is
§ 314.94

an abbreviated application under this section or a supplement to an abbreviated application under § 314.97.

(2) Table of contents. The archival copy of the abbreviated new drug application is required to contain a table of contents that shows the volume number and page number of the contents of the submission.

(3) Basis for abbreviated new drug application submission. An abbreviated new drug application must refer to a listed drug. Ordinarily, that listed drug will be the drug product selected by the agency as the reference standard for conducting bioequivalence testing. The application shall contain:

(i) The name of the reference listed drug, including its dosage form and strength. For an abbreviated new drug application based on an approved petition under §10.30 of this chapter or §314.93, the reference listed drug must be the same as the listed drug approved in the petition.

(ii) A statement as to whether, according to the information published in the list, the reference listed drug is entitled to a period of marketing exclusivity under section 505(j)(4)(D) of the act.

(iii) For an abbreviated new drug application based on an approved petition under §10.30 of this chapter or §314.93, a reference to FDA-assigned docket number for the petition and a copy of FDA’s correspondence approving the petition.

(4) Conditions of use. (i) A statement that the conditions of use prescribed, recommended, or suggested in the labeling proposed for the drug product have been previously approved for the reference listed drug.

(ii) A reference to the applicant’s annotated proposed labeling and to the currently approved labeling for the reference listed drug provided under paragraph (a)(8) of this section.

(5) Active ingredients. (i) For a single-active-ingredient drug product, information to show that the active ingredient is the same as that of the reference single-active-ingredient listed drug, as follows:

(A) A statement that the active ingredient of the proposed drug product is the same as that of the reference listed drug.

(B) A reference to the applicant’s annotated proposed labeling and to the currently approved labeling for the reference listed drug provided under paragraph (a)(8) of this section.

(ii) For a combination drug product, information to show that the active ingredients are the same as those of the reference listed drug except for any different active ingredient that has been the subject of an approved petition, as follows:

(A) A statement that the active ingredients of the proposed drug product are the same as those of the reference listed drug, or if one of the active ingredients differs from one of the active ingredients of the reference listed drug and the abbreviated application is submitted under the approval of a petition under §314.93 to vary such active ingredient, information to show that the other active ingredients of the drug product are the same as the other active ingredients of the reference listed drug, information to show that the different active ingredient is an active ingredient of another listed drug or of a drug that does not meet the definition of “new drug” in section 201(p) of the act, and such other information about the different active ingredient that FDA may require.

(B) A reference to the applicant’s annotated proposed labeling and to the currently approved labeling for the reference listed drug provided under paragraph (a)(8) of this section.

(6) Route of administration, dosage form, and strength. (i) Information to show that the route of administration, dosage form, and strength of the drug product are the same as those of the reference listed drug except for any differences that have been the subject of an approved petition, as follows:

(A) A statement that the route of administration, dosage form, and strength of the proposed drug product are the same as those of the reference listed drug.

(B) A reference to the applicant’s annotated proposed labeling and to the currently approved labeling for the reference listed drug provided under paragraph (a)(8) of this section.

(ii) If the route of administration, dosage form, or strength of the drug
(7) **Bioequivalence.** (i) Information that shows that the drug product is bioequivalent to the reference listed drug upon which the applicant relies; or

(ii) If the abbreviated new drug application is submitted under a petition approved under §314.93, the results of any bioavailability or bioequivalence testing required by the agency, or any other information required by the agency to show that the active ingredients of the proposed drug product are of the same pharmacological or therapeutic class as those in the reference listed drug and that the proposed drug product can be expected to have the same therapeutic effect as the reference listed drug. If the proposed drug product contains a different active ingredient than the reference listed drug, FDA will consider the proposed drug product to have the same therapeutic effect as the reference listed drug if the applicant provides information demonstrating that:

(A) There is an adequate scientific basis for determining that substitution of the specific proposed dose of the different active ingredient for the dose of the member of the same pharmacological or therapeutic class in the reference listed drug will yield a resulting drug product whose safety and effectiveness have not been adversely affected.

(B) The unchanged active ingredients in the proposed drug product are bioequivalent to those in the reference listed drug.

(C) The different active ingredient in the proposed drug product is bioequivalent to an approved dosage form containing that ingredient and approved for the same indication as the proposed drug product or is bioequivalent to a drug product offered for that indication which does not meet the definition of “new drug” under section 201(p) of the act.

(iii) For each in vivo bioequivalence study contained in the abbreviated new drug application, a description of the analytical and statistical methods used in each study and a statement with respect to each study that it either was conducted in compliance with the institutional review board regulations in part 56 of this chapter, or was not subject to the regulations under §56.104 or §56.105 of this chapter and that each study was conducted in compliance with the informed consent regulations in part 50 of this chapter.

(8) **Labeling—** (i) **Listed drug labeling.** A copy of the currently approved labeling (including, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter) for the listed drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application, if the abbreviated new drug application relies on a reference listed drug.

(ii) **Copies of proposed labeling.** Copies of the label and all labeling for the drug product including, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter (4 copies of draft labeling or 12 copies of final printed labeling).

(iii) **Statement on proposed labeling.** A statement that the applicant’s proposed labeling including, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter is the same as the labeling of the reference listed drug except for differences annotated and explained under paragraph (a)(8)(iv) of this section.

(iv) **Comparison of approved and proposed labeling.** A side-by-side comparison of the applicant’s proposed labeling including, if applicable, any Medication Guide required under part 208 of this chapter with the approved labeling for the reference listed drug with all differences annotated and explained. Labeling (including the container label, package insert, and, if applicable, Medication Guide) proposed for the drug product must be the same as the labeling approved for the reference listed drug, except for changes required because of differences approved under a petition filed under §314.93 or because the drug product and the reference listed drug are produced or distributed by different manufacturers. Such differences between the applicant’s proposed labeling and labeling approved
§ 314.94

21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

for the reference listed drug may include differences in expiration date, formulation, bioavailability, or pharmacokinetics, labeling revisions made to comply with current FDA labeling guidelines or other guidance, or omission of an indication or other aspect of labeling protected by patent or accorded exclusivity under section 505(j)(4)(D) of the act.

(9) Chemistry, manufacturing, and controls. (i) The information required under §314.50(d)(i), except that §314.50(d)(i)(ii)(c) shall contain the proposed or actual master production record, including a description of the equipment, to be used for the manufacture of a commercial lot of the drug product.

(ii) Inactive ingredients. Unless otherwise stated in paragraphs (a)(9)(iii) through (a)(9)(v) of this section, an applicant shall identify and characterize the inactive ingredients in the proposed drug product and provide information demonstrating that such inactive ingredients do not affect the safety of the proposed drug product.

(iii) Inactive ingredient changes permitted in drug products intended for parenteral use. Generally, a drug product intended for parenteral use shall contain the same inactive ingredients and in the same concentration as the reference listed drug identified by the applicant under paragraph (a)(3) of this section. However, an applicant may seek approval of a drug product that differs from the reference listed drug provided that the applicant identifies and characterizes the differences and provides information demonstrating that the differences do not affect the safety of the proposed drug product.

(iv) Inactive ingredient changes permitted in drug products intended for ophthalmic or otic use. Generally, a drug product intended for ophthalmic or otic use shall contain the same inactive ingredients and in the same concentration as the reference listed drug identified by the applicant under paragraph (a)(3) of this section. However, an applicant may seek approval of a drug product that differs from the reference listed drug provided that the applicant identifies and characterizes the differences and provides information demonstrating that the differences do not affect the safety of the proposed drug product.

(v) Inactive ingredient changes permitted in drug products intended for topical use. Generally, a drug product intended for topical use shall contain the same inactive ingredients as the reference listed drug identified by the applicant under paragraph (a)(3) of this section. However, an applicant may seek approval of a drug product that differs from the reference listed drug provided that the applicant identifies and characterizes the differences and provides information demonstrating that the differences do not affect the safety of the proposed drug product.

(10) Samples. The information required under §314.50(e)(1) and (e)(2)(i). Samples need not be submitted until requested by FDA.

(11) Other. The information required under §314.50(g).

(12) Patent certification—(i) Patents claiming drug, drug product, or method of use. (A) Except as provided in paragraph (a)(12)(iv) of this section, a certification with respect to each patent issued by the United States Patent and Trademark Office that, in the opinion of the applicant and to the best of its knowledge, claims the reference listed drug or that claims a use of such listed drug for which the applicant is seeking approval under section 505(j) of the act and for which information is required to be filed under section 505(b) and (c) of the act and §314.53. For each such patent, the applicant shall provide the patent number and certify, in its opinion and to the best of its knowledge, one of the following circumstances:
Paragraph I Certification: This certification shall be submitted in the following form:

I, (name of applicant), certify that Patent No. (is invalid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed by the manufacture, use, or sale of) (name of proposed drug product) for which this application is submitted.

The certification shall be accompanied by a statement that the applicant will comply with the requirements under §314.95(a) with respect to providing a notice to each owner of the patent or their representatives and to the holder of the approved application for the listed drug, and with the requirements under §314.95(c) with respect to the content of the notice.

Paragraph II Certification

(B) If the labeling of the drug product for which the applicant is seeking approval includes an indication that, according to the patent information submitted under section 505(b) or (c) of the act and §314.53 in the opinion of the applicant, is claimed by a use patent, an applicable certification under paragraph (a)(12)(i) of this section.

(iv) Method of manufacturing patent. An applicant is not required to make a certification with respect to any patent that claims only a method of manufacturing the listed drug.

(v) Licensing agreements. If the abbreviated new drug application is for a drug or method of using a drug claimed by a patent and the applicant has a licensing agreement with the patent owner, a certification under paragraph (a)(12)(i)(A)(4) of this section ("Paragraph IV Certification") as to that patent and a statement that it has been granted a patent license.

(vi) Late submission of patent information. If a patent on the listed drug is issued and the holder of the approved application for the listed drug does not submit the required information on the patent within 30 days of issuance of the patent, an applicant who submitted an abbreviated new drug application for that drug that contained an appropriate patent certification before the submission of the patent information is not required to submit an amended certification. An applicant whose abbreviated new drug application is submitted after a late submission of patent information, or whose pending abbreviated application was previously submitted but did not contain an appropriate patent certification at the time of the patent submission, shall submit a certification under paragraph (a)(12)(i) of this section or a statement under paragraph (a)(12)(iii) of this section as to that patent.
§ 314.94

(vii) Disputed patent information. If an applicant disputes the accuracy or relevance of patent information submitted to FDA, the applicant may seek a confirmation of the correctness of the patent information in accordance with the procedures under §314.93(c). Unless the patent information is withdrawn or changed, the applicant shall submit an appropriate certification for each relevant patent.

(viii) Amended certifications. A certification submitted under paragraphs (a)(12)(i) through (a)(12)(iii) of this section may be amended at any time before the effective date of the approval of the application. However, an applicant who has submitted a paragraph IV patent certification may not change it to a paragraph III certification if a patent infringement suit has been filed against another paragraph IV applicant unless the agency has determined that no applicant is entitled to 180-day exclusivity or the patent expires before the lawsuit is resolved or expires after the suit is resolved but before the end of the 180-day exclusivity period. If an applicant with a pending application voluntarily makes a patent certification for an untimely filed patent, the applicant may withdraw the patent certification for the untimely filed patent. An applicant shall submit an amended certification by letter or as an amendment to a pending application, or by letter to an approved application. Once an amendment or letter is submitted, the application will no longer be considered to contain the prior certification.

(A) After finding of infringement. An applicant who has submitted a certification under paragraph (a)(12)(i)(A)(4) of this section and is sued for patent infringement within 45 days of the receipt of notice sent under §314.95 shall amend the certification if a final judgment in the action against the applicant is entered finding the patent to be invalid and infringed. An amended certification is not required. If a final judgment finds the patent to be invalid and infringed, an amended certification is not required.

(B) After removal of a patent from the list. If a patent is removed from the list, any applicant with a pending application (including a tentatively approved application with a delayed effective date) who has made a certification with respect to such patent shall amend its certification. The applicant shall certify under paragraph (a)(12)(i)(A) of this section that no patents described in paragraph (a)(12)(i) of this section claim the drug or, if other relevant patents claim the drug, shall amend the certification to refer only to those relevant patents. In the amendment, the applicant shall state the reason for the change in certification (that the patent is or has been removed from the list). A patent that is the subject of a lawsuit under §314.107(c) shall not be removed from the list until FDA determines either that no delay in effective dates of approval is required under that section as a result of the lawsuit, that the patent has expired, or that any such period of delay in effective dates of approval is ended. An applicant shall submit an amended certification. Once an amendment or letter for the change has been submitted, the application will no longer be considered to be one containing a certification under paragraph (a)(12)(i)(A)(4) of this section.

(C) Other amendments. (1) Except as provided in paragraphs (a)(12)(vi) and (a)(12)(vii)(C)(2) of this section, an applicant shall amend a submitted certification if, at any time before the effective date of the approval of the application, the applicant learns that the submitted certification is no longer accurate.

(2) An applicant is not required to amend a submitted certification when information on a patent on the listed drug is submitted after the effective date of approval of the abbreviated application.

(13) Financial certification or disclosure statement. An abbreviated application shall contain a financial certification or disclosure statement as required by part 54 of this chapter.
§ 314.95 Drug products subject to the Drug Efficacy Study Implementation (DESI) review.

If the abbreviated new drug application is for a duplicate of a drug product that is subject to FDA’s DESI review (a review of drug products approved as safe between 1938 and 1962) or other DESI-like review and the drug product evaluated in the review is a listed drug, the applicant shall comply with the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) [Reserved]

(d) Format of an abbreviated application.

(1) The applicant shall submit a complete archival copy of the abbreviated application as required under paragraphs (a) and (c) of this section.

(2) For abbreviated new drug applications, the applicant shall submit a review copy of the abbreviated application that contains two separate sections. One section shall contain the information described under paragraphs (a)(2) through (a)(6), (a)(8), and (a)(9) of this section 505(j)(2)(A)(vii) of the act and one copy of the analytical methods and descriptive information needed by FDA’s laboratories to perform tests on samples of the proposed drug product and to validate the applicant’s analytical methods. The other section shall contain the information described under paragraphs (a)(3), (a)(7), and (a)(8) of this section. Each of the sections in the review copy is required to contain a copy of the application form described under §314.50(a).

(3) [Reserved]

(4) The applicant may obtain from FDA sufficient folders to bind the archival, the review, and the field copies of the abbreviated application.

(5) The applicant shall submit a field copy of the abbreviated application that contains the technical section described in paragraph (a)(9) of this section, a copy of the application form required under paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and a certification that the field copy is a true copy of the technical section described in paragraph (a)(9) of this section contained in the archival and review copies of the abbreviated application.

§ 314.95 Notice of certification of invalidity or noninfringement of a patent.

(a) Notice of certification. For each patent that claims the listed drug or that claims a use for such listed drug for which the applicant is seeking approval and that the applicant certifies under §314.94(a)(12) is invalid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed, the applicant shall send notice of such certification by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested to each of the following persons:

(1) Each owner of the patent which is the subject of the certification or the representative designated by the owner to receive the notice. The name and address of the patent owner or its representative may be obtained from the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and

(2) The holder of the approved application under section 505(b) of the act for the listed drug that is claimed by the patent and for which the applicant is seeking approval, or, if the application holder does not reside or maintain a place of business within the United States, the application holder’s attorney, agent, or other authorized official. The name and address of the application holder or its attorney, agent, or authorized official may be obtained from the Division of Drug Information Resources (HFD–80), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(3) This paragraph does not apply to a use patent that claims no uses for
§ 314.96

which the applicant is seeking approval.

(b) Sending the notice. The applicant shall send the notice required by paragraph (a) of this section when it receives from FDA an acknowledgment letter stating that its abbreviated new drug application is sufficiently complete to permit a substantive review. At the same time, the applicant shall amend its abbreviated new drug application to include a statement certifying that the notice has been provided to each person identified under paragraph (a) of this section and that the notice met the content requirements under paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) Contents of a notice. In the notice, the applicant shall cite section 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the act and shall include, but not be limited to, the following information:

(1) A statement that FDA has received an abbreviated new drug application submitted by the applicant containing any required bioavailability or bioequivalence data or information.

(2) The abbreviated application number.

(3) The established name, if any, as defined in section 502(e)(3) of the act, of the proposed drug product.

(4) The active ingredient, strength, and dosage form of the proposed drug product.

(5) The patent number and expiration date, as submitted to the agency or as known to the applicant, of each patent alleged to be invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed.

(6) A detailed statement of the factual and legal basis of the applicant’s opinion that the patent is not valid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed. The applicant shall include in the detailed statement:

(i) For each claim of a patent alleged not to be infringed, a full and detailed explanation of why the claim is not infringed.

(ii) For each claim of a patent alleged to be invalid or unenforceable, a full and detailed explanation of the grounds supporting the allegation.

(7) If the applicant does not reside or have a place of business in the United States, the name and address of an agent in the United States authorized to accept service of process for the applicant.

(d) Amendment to an abbreviated application. If an abbreviated application is amended to include the certification described in §314.94(a)(12)(i)(A)(4), the applicant shall send the notice required by paragraph (a) of this section at the same time that the amendment to the abbreviated application is submitted to FDA.

(e) Documentation of receipt of notice. The applicant shall amend its abbreviated application to document receipt of the notice required under paragraph (a) of this section by each person provided the notice. The applicant shall include a copy of the return receipt or other similar evidence of the date the notification was received. FDA will accept as adequate documentation of the date of receipt a return receipt or a letter acknowledging receipt by the person provided the notice. An applicant may rely on another form of documentation only if FDA has agreed to such documentation in advance. A copy of the notice itself need not be submitted to the agency.

(f) Approval. If the requirements of this section are met, FDA will presume the notice to be complete and sufficient, and it will count the day following the date of receipt of the notice by the patent owner or its representative and by the approved application holder as the first day of the 45-day period provided for in section 505(j)(4)(B)(iii) of the act. FDA may, if the applicant provides a written statement to FDA that a later date should be used, count from such later date.

[59 FR 50366, Oct. 3, 1994]

§ 314.96 Amendments to an unapproved abbreviated application.

(a) Abbreviated new drug application. (1) An applicant may amend an abbreviated new drug application that is submitted under §314.94, but not yet approved, to revise existing information or provide additional information.

(2) Submission of an amendment containing significant data or information constitutes an agreement between FDA and the applicant to extend the review period only for the time necessary to review the significant data or information and for no more than 180 days.
§ 314.101 Filing an application and receiving an abbreviated new drug application.

(a)(1) Within 60 days after FDA receives an application, the agency will
§ 314.101 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

determine whether the application may be filed. The filing of an application means that FDA has made a threshold determination that the application is sufficiently complete to permit a substantive review. 

(2) If FDA finds that none of the reasons in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section for refusing to file the application apply, the agency will file the application and notify the applicant in writing. The date of filing will be the date 60 days after the date FDA received the application. The date of filing begins the 180-day period described in section 505(c) of the act. This 180-day period is called the “filing clock.”

(3) If FDA refuses to file the application, the agency will notify the applicant in writing and state the reason under paragraph (d) or (e) of this section for the refusal. If FDA refuses to file the application under paragraph (d) of this section, the applicant may request in writing within 30 days of the date of the agency’s notification an informal conference with the agency about whether the agency should file the application. If, following the informal conference, the applicant requests that FDA file the application over protest under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, notify the applicant in writing, and review it as filed. If the application is filed over protest, the date of filing will be the date 60 days after the date the applicant requested the informal conference. The applicant need not resubmit a copy of an application that is filed over protest. If FDA refuses to file the application under paragraph (e) of this section, the applicant may amend the application and resubmit it, and the agency will make a determination under this section whether it may be filed.

(b)(1) An abbreviated new drug application will be reviewed after it is submitted to determine whether the abbreviated application may be received. Receipt of an abbreviated new drug application means that FDA has made a threshold determination that the abbreviated application is sufficiently complete to permit a substantive review. 

(2) If FDA finds that none of the reasons in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section for considering the abbreviated new drug application not to have been received applies, the agency will receive the abbreviated new drug application and notify the applicant in writing.

(3) If FDA considers the abbreviated new drug application not to have been received under paragraph (d) or (e) of this section, FDA will notify the applicant, ordinarily by telephone. The applicant may then:

(i) Withdraw the abbreviated new drug application under §314.99; or

(ii) Amend the abbreviated new drug application to correct the deficiencies; or

(iii) Take no action, in which case FDA will refuse to receive the abbreviated new drug application.

(c) [Reserved]

(d) FDA may refuse to file an application or may not consider an abbreviated new drug application to be received if any of the following applies:

(1) The application does not contain a completed application form.

(2) The application is not submitted in the form required under §314.50 or §314.94.

(3) The application or abbreviated application is incomplete because it does not on its face contain information required under section 505(b), section 505(j), or section 507 of the act and §314.50 or §314.94.

(4) The applicant fails to submit a complete environmental assessment, which addresses each of the items specified in the applicable format under §25.40 of this chapter or fails to provide sufficient information to establish that the requested action is subject to categorical exclusion under §25.30 or §25.31 of this chapter.

(5) The application or abbreviated application does not contain an accurate and complete English translation of each part of the application that is not in English.

(6) The application does not contain a statement for each nonclinical laboratory study that it was conducted in compliance with the requirements set forth in part 58 of this chapter, or, for each study not conducted in compliance with part 58 of this chapter, a
brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(7) The application does not contain a statement for each clinical study that it was conducted in compliance with the institutional review board regulations in part 56 of this chapter, or was not subject to those regulations, and that it was conducted in compliance with the informed consent regulations in part 50 of this chapter, or, if the study was subject to but was not conducted in compliance with those regulations, the application does not contain a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(8) The drug product that is the subject of the submission is already covered by an approved application or abbreviated application and the applicant of the submission:

(i) Has an approved application or abbreviated application for the same drug product; or

(ii) Is merely a distributor and/or repackager of the already approved drug product.

(9) The application is submitted as a 505(b)(2) application for a drug that is a duplicate of a listed drug and is eligible for approval under section 505(j) of the act.

(e) The agency will refuse to file an application or will consider an abbreviated new drug application not to have been received if any of the following applies:

(1) The drug product is subject to licensing by FDA under the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 201 et seq.) and subchapter F of this chapter.

(2) In the case of a 505(b)(2) application or an abbreviated new drug application, the drug product contains the same active moiety as a drug that:

(i) Was approved after September 24, 1984, in an application under section 505(b) of the act, and

(ii) Is entitled to a 5-year period of exclusivity under section 505(c)(3)(D)(i) and (j)(4)(D)(ii) of the act and §314.108(b)(2), unless the 5-year exclusivity period has elapsed or unless 4 years of the 5-year period have elapsed and the application or abbreviated application contains a certification of patent invalidity or noninfringement described in §314.50(1)(1)(A)(4) or §314.94(a)(12)(1)(A)(4).

(f)(1) Within 180 days after the date of filing, plus the period of time the review period was extended (if any), FDA will either:

(i) Approve the application; or

(ii) Issue a notice of opportunity for hearing if the applicant asked FDA to provide it an opportunity for a hearing on an application in response to an approvable letter or a not approvable letter.

(2) Within 180 days after the date of receipt, plus the period of time the review clock was extended (if any), FDA will either approve or disapprove the abbreviated new drug application. If FDA disapproves the abbreviated new drug application, FDA will issue a notice of opportunity for hearing if the applicant asked FDA to provide it an opportunity for a hearing on an abbreviated new drug application in response to a not approvable letter.

(3) This paragraph does not apply to applications or abbreviated applications that have been withdrawn from FDA review by the applicant.

§314.102 Communications between FDA and applicants.

(a) General principles. During the course of reviewing an application or an abbreviated application, FDA shall communicate with applicants about scientific, medical, and procedural issues that arise during the review process. Such communication may take the form of telephone conversations, letters, or meetings, whichever is most appropriate to discuss the particular issue at hand. Communications shall be appropriately documented in the application in accordance with §10.65 of this chapter. Further details on the procedures for communication between FDA and applicants are contained in a staff manual guide that is publicly available.

(b) Notification of easily correctable deficiencies. FDA reviewers shall make every reasonable effort to communicate promptly to applicants easily
correctable deficiencies found in an application or an abbreviated application when those deficiencies are discovered, particularly deficiencies concerning chemistry, manufacturing, and controls issues. The agency will also inform applicants promptly of its need for more data or information or for technical changes in the application or the abbreviated application needed to facilitate the agency’s review. This early communication is intended to permit applicants to correct such readily identified deficiencies relatively early in the review process and to submit an amendment before the review period has elapsed. Such early communication would not ordinarily apply to major scientific issues, which require consideration of the entire pending application or abbreviated application by agency managers as well as reviewing staff. Instead, major scientific issues will ordinarily be addressed in an action letter.

(c) Ninety-day conference. Approximately 90 days after the agency receives the application, FDA will provide applicants with an opportunity to meet with agency reviewing officials. The purpose of the meeting will be to inform applicants of the general progress and status of their applications, and to advise applicants of deficiencies that have been identified by that time and that have not already been communicated. This meeting will be available on applications for all new chemical entities and major new indications of marketed drugs. Such meetings will be held at the applicant’s option, and may be held by telephone if mutually agreed upon. Such meetings would not ordinarily be held on abbreviated applications because they are not submitted for new chemical entities or new indications.

(d) End of review conference. At the conclusion of FDA’s review of an application or an abbreviated application as designated by the issuance of an approvable or not approvable letter, FDA will provide applicants with an opportunity to meet with agency reviewing officials. The purpose of the meeting will be to discuss what further steps need to be taken by the applicant before the application or abbreviated application can be approved. This meeting will be available on all applications or abbreviated applications, with priority given to applications for new chemical entities and major new indications for marketed drugs and for the first duplicates for such drugs. Requests for such meetings shall be directed to the director of the division responsible for reviewing the application or abbreviated application.

(e) Other meetings. Other meetings between FDA and applicants may be held, with advance notice, to discuss scientific, medical, and other issues that arise during the review process. Requests for meetings shall be directed to the director of the division responsible for reviewing the application or abbreviated application. FDA will make every attempt to grant requests for meetings that involve important issues and that can be scheduled at mutually convenient times. However, “drop-in” visits (i.e., an unannounced and unscheduled visit by a company representative) are discouraged except for urgent matters, such as to discuss an important new safety issue.

[57 FR 17988, Apr. 28, 1992; 57 FR 29353, July 1, 1992]

§ 314.103 Dispute resolution.

(a) General. FDA is committed to resolving differences between applicants and FDA reviewing divisions with respect to technical requirements for applications or abbreviated applications as quickly and amicably as possible through the cooperative exchange of information and views.

(b) Administrative and procedural issues. When administrative or procedural disputes arise, the applicant should first attempt to resolve the matter with the division responsible for reviewing the application or abbreviated application, beginning with the consumer safety officer assigned to the application or abbreviated application. If resolution is not achieved, the applicant may raise the matter with the person designated as ombudsman, whose function shall be to investigate what has happened and to facilitate a timely and equitable resolution. Appropriate issues to raise with the ombudsman include resolving difficulties in scheduling meetings, obtaining timely replies to inquiries, and obtaining...
§ 314.104 Drugs with potential for abuse.

The Food and Drug Administration will inform the Drug Enforcement Administration under section 201(f) of the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 801) when an application or abbreviated application is submitted for a drug that appears to have an abuse potential.

§ 314.105 Approval of an application and an abbreviated application.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will approve an application and send the applicant an approval letter if none of the reasons in §314.125 for refusing to approve the application applies. An approval becomes effective on the date of the issuance of the approval letter, except with regard to an approval under section 505(b)(2) of the act with a delayed effective date. An approval with a delayed effective date is tentative and does not become final until the effective date. A new drug product or antibiotic approved under this paragraph may not be marketed until an approval is effective.

(b) FDA will approve an application and issue the applicant an approval letter (rather than an approvable letter under §314.110) on the basis of draft labeling if the only deficiencies in the application concern editorial or similar minor deficiencies in the draft labeling. Such approval will be conditioned upon the applicant incorporating the specified labeling changes exactly as directed, and upon the applicant submitting to FDA a copy of the final printed labeling prior to marketing.

(c) FDA will approve an application after it determines that the drug meets the statutory standards for safety and effectiveness, manufacturing and controls, labeling, and, where applicable, bioequivalence. While the statutory standards apply to all drugs, the many kinds of drugs that are subject to the statutory standards and the wide range of uses for those drugs demand flexibility in applying the standards. Thus FDA is required to
§ 314.106 Foreign data.

(a) General. The acceptance of foreign data in an application generally is governed by §312.120 of this chapter.

(b) As sole basis for marketing approval. An application based solely on foreign clinical data meeting U.S. criteria for marketing approval may be approved if: (1) The foreign data are applicable to the U.S. population and U.S. medical practice; (2) the studies have been performed by clinical investigators of recognized competence; and (3) the data may be considered valid without the need for an on-site inspection by FDA or, if FDA considers such an inspection to be necessary, FDA is able to validate the data through on-site inspection or other appropriate means. Failure of an application to meet any of these criteria will result in the application not being approved based on the foreign data alone. FDA will apply this policy in a flexible manner according to the nature of the drug and the data being considered.

(c) Consultation between FDA and applicants. Applicants are encouraged to meet with agency officials in a “pre-submission” meeting when approval based solely on foreign data will be sought.

§ 314.107 Effective date of approval of a 505(b)(2) application or abbreviated new drug application under section 505(j) of the act.

(a) General. A drug product may be introduced or delivered for introduction into interstate commerce when approval of the application or abbreviated application for the drug product becomes effective. Except as provided in this section, approval of an application or abbreviated application for a drug product becomes effective on the date FDA issues an approval letter under §314.105 for the application or abbreviated application.

(b) Effect of patent on the listed drug. If approval of an abbreviated new drug application submitted under section 505(j) of the act or of a 505(b)(2) application is granted, that approval will become effective in accordance with the following:

(1) Date of approval letter. Except as provided in paragraphs (b)(3), (b)(4), and (c) of this section, approval will become effective on the date FDA issues an approval letter under §314.105 if the applicant certifies under §314.50(i) or §314.94(a)(12) that:

(i) There are no relevant patents; or

(ii) The applicant is aware of a relevant patent but the patent information required under section 505(b) or (c) of the act has not been submitted to FDA; or

(iii) The relevant patent has expired; or

(iv) The relevant patent is invalid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed.

(2) Patent expiration. If the applicant certifies under §314.50(i) or §314.94(a)(12) that the relevant patent will expire on a specified date, approval will become effective on the specified date.

(3) Disposition of patent litigation. (i)(A) Except as provided in paragraphs (b)(3)(i), (b)(3)(ii), and (b)(3)(iv) of this section, if the applicant certifies under...
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 314.50(i) or § 314.94(a)(12) that the relevant patent is invalid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed, and the patent owner or its representative or the exclusive patent licensee brings suit for patent infringement within 45 days of receipt by the patent owner of the notice of certification from the applicant under § 314.52 or § 314.95, approval may be made effective 30 months after the date of the receipt of the notice of certification by the patent owner or by the exclusive licensee (or their representatives) unless the court has extended or reduced the period because of a failure of either the plaintiff or defendant to cooperate reasonably in expediting the action; or

(B) If the patented drug product qualifies for 5 years of exclusive marketing under § 314.108(b)(2) and the patent owner or its representative or the exclusive patent licensee brings suit for patent infringement during the 1-year period beginning 4 years after the date the patented drug was approved and within 45 days of receipt by the patent owner of the notice of certification, the approval may be made effective at the expiration of the 7 1/2 years from the date of approval of the application for the patented drug product.

(ii) If before the expiration of the 30-month period, or 7 1/2 years where applicable, the court issues a final order that the patent is invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed, approval may be made effective on the date the court enters judgment;

(iii) If before the expiration of the 30-month period, or 7 1/2 years where applicable, the court issues a final order or judgment that the patent has been infringed, approval may be made effective on the date the court determines that the patent will expire or otherwise orders;

(iv) If before the expiration of the 30-month period, or 7 1/2 years where applicable, the court grants a preliminary injunction prohibiting the applicant from engaging in the commercial manufacture or sale of the drug product until the court decides the issues of patent validity and infringement, and if the court later decides that the patent is invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed, approval may be made effective on the date the court enters a final order or judgment that the patent is invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed.

(v) In order for an approval to be made effective under paragraph (b)(3) of this section, the applicant must receive an approval letter from the agency indicating that the application has received final approval. Tentative approval of an application does not constitute “approval” of an application and cannot, absent a final approval letter from the agency, result in an effective approval under paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(4) Multiple certifications. If the applicant has submitted certifications under § 314.50(i) or § 314.94(a)(12) for more than one patent, the date of approval will be calculated for each certification, and the approval will become effective on the last applicable date.

(c) Subsequent abbreviated new drug application submission. (1) If an abbreviated new drug application contains a certification that a relevant patent is invalid, unenforceable, or will not be infringed and the application is for a generic copy of the same listed drug for which one or more substantially complete abbreviated new drug applications were previously submitted containing a certification that the same patent was invalid, unenforceable, or would not be infringed, approval of the subsequent abbreviated new drug application will be made effective no sooner than 180 days from whichever of the following dates is earlier:

(i) The date the applicant submitting the first application first commences commercial marketing of its drug product; or

(ii) The date of a decision of the court holding the relevant patent invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed.

(2) For purposes of paragraph (c)(1) of this section, the “applicant submitting the first application” is the applicant that submits an application that is both substantially complete and contains a certification that the patent was invalid, unenforceable, or not infringed prior to the submission of any other application for the same listed
§314.107

21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

drug that is both substantially complete and contains the same certification. A “substantially complete” application must contain the results of any required bioequivalence studies, or, if applicable, a request for a waiver of such studies.

(3) For purposes of paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section, if FDA concludes that the applicant submitting the first application is not actively pursuing approval of its abbreviated application, FDA will make the approval of subsequent abbreviated applications immediately effective if they are otherwise eligible for an immediately effective approval.

(4) For purposes of paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section, the applicant submitting the first application shall notify FDA of the date that it commences commercial marketing of its drug product. Commercial marketing commences with the first date of introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce outside the control of the manufacturer of a drug product, except for investigational use under part 312 of this chapter, but does not include transfer of the drug product for reasons other than sale within the control of the manufacturer or application holder. If an applicant does not promptly notify FDA of such date, the effective date of approval shall be deemed to be the date of the commencement of first commercial marketing.

(d) Delay due to exclusivity. The agency will also delay the effective date of the approval of an abbreviated new drug application under section 505(j) of the act or a 505(b)(2) application if delay is required by the exclusivity provisions in §314.108. When the effective date of an application is delayed under both this section and §314.108, the effective date will be the later of the 2 days specified under this section and §314.108.

(e) Notification of court actions. The applicant shall submit a copy of the entry of the order or judgment to the Office of Generic Drugs (HFD–600), or to the appropriate division in the Office of Drug Evaluation I (HFD–100) or Office of Drug Evaluation II (HFD–500), whichever is applicable, within 10 working days of a final judgment.

(f) Computation of 45-day time clock. (1) The 45-day clock described in paragraph (b)(3) of this section begins on the day after the date of receipt of the applicant’s notice of certification by the patent holder or its representative, and by the approved application holder. When the 45th day falls on Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday, the 45th day will be the next day that is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday.

(2) The abbreviated new drug applicant or the 505(b)(2) applicant shall notify FDA immediately of the filing of any legal action filed within 45 days of receipt of the notice of certification. If the applicant submitting the abbreviated new drug application or the 505(b)(2) application or patent holder or its representative does not notify FDA in writing before the expiration of the 45-day time period or the completion of the agency’s review of the application, whichever occurs later, that a legal action for patent infringement was filed within 45 days of receipt of the notice of certification, approval of the abbreviated new drug application or the 505(b)(2) application will be made effective immediately upon expiration of the 45 days or upon completion of the agency’s review and approval of the application, whichever is later. The notification to FDA of the legal action shall include:

(i) The abbreviated new drug application or 505(b)(2) application number.

(ii) The name of the abbreviated new drug or 505(b)(2) application applicant.

(iii) The established name of the drug product or, if no established name exists, the name(s) of the active ingredient(s), the drug product’s strength, and dosage form.

(iv) A certification that an action for patent infringement identified by number, has been filed in an appropriate court on a specified date.

The applicant of an abbreviated new drug application shall send the notification to FDA’s Office of Generic Drugs (HFD–600). A 505(b)(2) applicant shall send the notification to the appropriate division in the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research reviewing the application. A patent owner or its representative may also notify FDA
§ 314.108 New drug product exclusivity.

(a) Definitions. The following definitions of terms apply to this section:

Active moiety means the molecule or ion, excluding those appended portions of the molecule that cause the drug to be an ester, salt (including a salt with hydrogen or coordination bonds), or other noncovalent derivative (such as a complex, chelate, or clathrate) of the molecule, responsible for the physiological or pharmacological action of the drug substance.

Approved under section 505(b) means an application submitted under section 505(b) and approved on or after October 10, 1962, or an application that was "deemed approved" under section 107(c)(2) of Pub. L. 87–781.

Clinical investigation means any experiment other than a bioavailability study in which a drug is administered or dispensed to, or used on, human subjects.

Conducted or sponsored by the applicant with regard to an investigation means that before or during the investigation, the applicant was named in Form FDA–1571 filed with FDA as the sponsor of the investigational new drug application under which the investigation was conducted, or the applicant or the applicant's predecessor in interest, provided substantial support for the investigation. To demonstrate "substantial support," an applicant must either provide a certified statement from a certified public accountant that the applicant provided 50 percent or more of the cost of conducting the study or provide an explanation why FDA should consider the applicant to have conducted or sponsored the study if the applicant's financial contribution to the study is less than 50 percent or the applicant did not sponsor the investigational new drug. A predecessor in interest is an entity, e.g., a corporation, that the applicant has taken over, merged with, or purchased, or from which the applicant has purchased all rights to the drug. Purchase of non-exclusive rights to a clinical investigation after it is completed is not sufficient to satisfy this definition.

Date of approval means the date on the letter from FDA stating that the new drug application is approved, whether or not final printed labeling or other materials must yet be submitted as long as approval of such labeling or materials is not expressly required. "Date of approval" refers only to a final approval and not to a tentative approval that may become effective at a later date.

Essential to approval means, with regard to an investigation, that there are no other data available that could support approval of the application.

FDA means the Food and Drug Administration.

New chemical entity means a drug that contains no active moiety that has been approved by FDA in any other application submitted under section 505(b) of the act.
§314.110 New clinical investigation means an investigation in humans the results of which have not been relied on by FDA to demonstrate substantial evidence of effectiveness of a previously approved drug product for any indication or of safety for a new patient population and do not duplicate the results of another investigation that was relied on by the agency to demonstrate the effectiveness or safety in a new patient population of a previously approved drug product. For purposes of this section, data from a clinical investigation previously submitted for use in the comprehensive evaluation of the safety of a drug product but not to support the effectiveness of the drug product would be considered new.

(b) Submission of and effective date of approval of an abbreviated new drug application submitted under section 505(j) of the act or a 505(b)(2) application.

(1) [Reserved]

(2) If a drug product that contains a new chemical entity was approved after September 24, 1984, in an application submitted under section 505(b) of the act, no person may submit a 505(b)(2) application or abbreviated new drug application under section 506(j) of the act for a drug product that contains the same active moiety as in the new chemical entity for a period of 5 years from the date of approval of the first approved new drug application, except that the 505(b)(2) application or abbreviated application may be submitted after 4 years if it contains a certification of patent invalidity or non-infringement described in §314.50(i)(1)(A)(i)(4) or §314.94(a)(12)(i)(A)(i)(4).

(3) The approval of a 505(b)(2) application or abbreviated application described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section will become effective as provided in §314.107(b)(1) or (b)(2), unless the owner of a patent that claims the drug, the patent owner’s representative, or exclusive licensee brings suit for patent infringement against the applicant during the 1-year period beginning 48 months after the date of approval of the new drug application for the new chemical entity and within 45 days after receipt of the notice described at §314.52 or §314.95, in which case, approval of the 505(b)(2) application or abbreviated application will be made effective as provided in §314.107(b)(3).

(4) If an application:

(i) Was submitted under section 505(b) of the act;

(ii) Was approved after September 24, 1984;

(iii) Was for a drug product that contains an active moiety that has been previously approved in another application under section 505(b) of the act; and

(iv) Contained reports of new clinical investigations (other than bioavailability studies) conducted or sponsored by the applicant that were essential to approval of the application, the agency will not make effective for a period of 3 years after the date of approval of the application the approval of a 505(b)(2) application or an abbreviated new drug application for the conditions of approval of the original application, or an abbreviated new drug application submitted pursuant to an approved petition under section 505(j)(2)(C) of the act that relies on the information supporting the conditions of approval of an original new drug application.

(5) If a supplemental application:

(i) Was approved after September 24, 1984; and

(ii) Contained reports of new clinical investigations (other than bioavailability studies) that were conducted or sponsored by the applicant that were essential to approval of the supplemental application, the agency will not make effective for a period of 3 years after the date of approval of the supplemental application the approval of a 505(b)(2) application or an abbreviated new drug application for a change, or an abbreviated new drug application submitted pursuant to an approved petition under section 505(j)(2)(C) of the act that relies on the information supporting a change approved in the supplemental new drug application.

[59 FR 50368, Oct. 3, 1994]
application or abbreviated application is basically approvable providing certain issues are resolved. An approvable letter may be issued in such circumstances. FDA will send the applicant an approvable letter if the application or abbreviated application substantially meets the requirements of this part and the agency believes that it can approve the application or abbreviated application if specific additional information or material is submitted or specific conditions (for example, certain changes in labeling) are agreed to by the applicant. The approvable letter will describe the information or material FDA requires or the conditions the applicant is asked to meet. As a practical matter, the approvable letter will serve in most instances as a mechanism for resolving outstanding issues on drugs that are about to be approved and marketed. For an application, the applicant shall, within 10 days after the date of the approvable letter:

(1) Amend the application or notify FDA of an intent to file an amendment. The filing of an amendment or notice of intent to file an amendment constitutes an agreement by the applicant to extend the review period for 45 days after the date FDA receives the amendment. The extension is to permit the agency to review the amendment;

(2) Withdraw the application. FDA will consider the applicant’s failure to respond within 10 days to an approvable letter to be a request by the applicant to withdraw the application under §314.65. A decision to withdraw an application is without prejudice to a refiling;

(3) For a new drug application, ask the agency to provide the applicant an opportunity for a hearing on the question of whether there are grounds for denying approval of the application under section 505(d) of the act. The applicant shall submit the request to the Associate Director for Policy (HFD–5), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. Within 60 days of the date of the approvable letter, or within a different time period to which FDA and the applicant agree, the agency will either approve the application under §314.105 or refuse to approve the application under §314.125 and give the applicant written notice of an opportunity for a hearing under §314.200 and section 505(c)(2) of the act on the question of whether there are grounds for denying approval of the application under section 505(d) of the act;

(4) [Reserved]

(5) Notify FDA that the applicant agrees to an extension of the review period under section 505(c) of the act, so that the applicant can determine whether to respond further under paragraph (a)(1), (a)(2), or (a)(3) of this section. The applicant’s notice is required to state the length of the extension. FDA will honor any reasonable request for such an extension. FDA will consider the applicant’s failure to respond further within the extended review period to be a request to withdraw the application under §314.65. A decision to withdraw an application is without prejudice to a refiling.

(b) FDA will send the applicant of an abbreviated new drug application an approvable letter only if the application substantially meets the requirements of this part and the agency believes that it can approve the abbreviated application if minor deficiencies (e.g., labeling deficiencies) are corrected. The approvable letter will describe the deficiencies and state a time period within which the applicant must respond. Unless the applicant corrects the deficiencies by amendment within the specified time period, FDA will refuse to approve the abbreviated application under §314.127. Within 10 days after the date of the approvable letter, the applicant may also ask the agency to provide the applicant an opportunity for a hearing on the question of whether there are grounds for denying approval of the abbreviated new drug application. Applicants who request a hearing shall submit the request to the Associate Director for Policy (HFD–5), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

§ 314.120 Not approvable letter to the applicant.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will send the applicant a not approvable letter if the agency believes that the application may not be approved for one of the reasons given in §314.125 or the abbreviated new drug application may not be approved for one of the reasons given in §314.127. The not approvable letter will describe the deficiencies in the application or abbreviated application. Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, within 10 days after the date of the not approvable letter, the applicant shall:

(1) Amend the application or abbreviated application or notify FDA of an intent to file an amendment. The filing of an amendment or a notice of intent to file an amendment constitutes an agreement by the applicant to extend the review period under §314.60 or §314.96;

(2) Withdraw the application or abbreviated application. Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, FDA will consider the applicant’s failure to respond within 10 days to a not approvable letter to be a request by the applicant to withdraw the application under §314.65 or abbreviated application under §314.99. A decision to withdraw the application or abbreviated application is without prejudice to refiling;

(3) For a new drug application or an abbreviated application, ask the agency to provide the applicant an opportunity for a hearing on the question of whether there are grounds for denying approval of the application under section 505(d) or (j)(3) of the act; or

(4) [Reserved]

(5) Notify FDA that the applicant agrees to an extension of the review period under section 505(c)(1) or (j)(4)(A) of the act, so that the applicant can determine whether to respond further under paragraph (a)(1), (a)(2), or (a)(3) of this section. The applicant’s notice is required to state the length of the extension. FDA will consider the applicant’s failure to respond further within the extended review period to be a request to withdraw the application under §314.65 or abbreviated application under §314.99. A decision to withdraw an application or abbreviated application is without prejudice to a refiling.

(b) With the exception of a request for an opportunity for a hearing under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, the 10-day time period in this section for responding to a not approvable letter does not apply to abbreviated new drug applications. FDA may consider the applicant’s failure to respond within 180 days to a not approvable letter to be a request by the applicant to withdraw the abbreviated new drug application under §314.99.


§ 314.122 Submitting an abbreviated application for, or a 505(j)(2)(C) petition that relies on, a listed drug that is no longer marketed.

(a) An abbreviated new drug application that refers to, or a petition under section 505(j)(2)(C) of the act and §314.93 that relies on, a listed drug that has been voluntarily withdrawn from sale in the United States must be accompanied by a petition seeking a determination whether the listed drug was withdrawn for safety or effectiveness reasons. The petition must be submitted under §§10.25(a) and 10.30 of this chapter and must contain all evidence available to the petitioner concerning the reasons for the withdrawal from sale.
§ 314.125 Refusal to approve an application.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will refuse to approve an application and for a new drug give the applicant written notice of an opportunity for a hearing under §314.200 on the question of whether there are grounds for denying approval of the application under section 505(d) of the act, if:

(1) FDA sends the applicant an approvable or a not approvable letter under §314.110 or §314.120;

(2) The applicant requests an opportunity for hearing for a new drug on the question of whether the application is approvable; and

(3) FDA finds that any of the reasons given in paragraph (b) of this section apply.

(b) FDA may refuse to approve an application for any of the following reasons:

(1) The methods to be used in, and the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture, processing, packing, or holding of the drug substance or the drug product are inadequate to preserve its identity, strength, quality, purity, stability, and bioavailability.

(2) The investigations required under section 505(b) of the act do not include adequate tests by all methods reasonably applicable to show whether or not the drug is safe for use under the conditions prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its proposed labeling.

(3) The results of the tests show that the drug is unsafe for use under the conditions prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its proposed labeling or the results do not show that the drug product is safe for use under those conditions.

(4) There is insufficient information about the drug to determine whether the product is safe for use under the conditions prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its proposed labeling.

(5) There is a lack of substantial evidence consisting of adequate and well-controlled investigations, as defined in §314.126, that the drug product will have the effect it purports or is represented to have under the conditions of use prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its proposed labeling.

(6) The proposed labeling is false or misleading in any particular.

(7) The application contains an untrue statement of a material fact.

(8) The drug product’s proposed labeling does not comply with the requirements for labels and labeling in part 201.

(9) The application does not contain bioavailability or bioequivalence data required under part 320 of this chapter.

(10) A reason given in a letter refusing to file the application under §314.101(d), if the deficiency is not corrected.
§ 314.126 Adequate and well-controlled studies.

(a) The purpose of conducting clinical investigations of a drug is to distinguish the effect of a drug from other influences, such as spontaneous change in the course of the disease, placebo effect, or biased observation. The characteristics described in paragraph (b) of this section have been developed over a period of years and are recognized by the scientific community as the essentials of an adequate and well-controlled clinical investigation. The Food and Drug Administration considers these characteristics in determining whether an investigation is adequate and well-controlled for purposes of section 505 of the act. Reports of adequate and well-controlled investigations provide the primary basis for determining whether there is “substantial evidence” to support the claims of effectiveness for new drugs. Therefore, the study report should provide sufficient details of study design, conduct, and analysis to allow critical evaluation and a determination of whether the characteristics of an adequate and well-controlled study are present.

(b) An adequate and well-controlled study has the following characteristics:

(1) There is a clear statement of the objectives of the investigation and a summary of the proposed or actual study by a properly authorized officer or employee of the Department of Health and Human Services or refuses to submit reserve samples of the drug products used in the study when requested by FDA.

(18) For a new drug, the application failed to contain the patent information required by section 505(b)(1) of the act.

(c) For drugs intended to treat life-threatening or severely-debilitating illnesses that are developed in accordance with §§312.80 through 312.88 of this chapter, the criteria contained in paragraphs (b) (3), (4), and (5) of this section shall be applied according to the considerations contained in §312.84 of this chapter.

methods of analysis in the protocol for the study and in the report of its results. In addition, the protocol should contain a description of the proposed methods of analysis, and the study report should contain a description of the methods of analysis ultimately used. If the protocol does not contain a description of the proposed methods of analysis, the study report should describe how the methods used were selected.

(2) The study uses a design that permits a valid comparison with a control to provide a quantitative assessment of drug effect. The protocol for the study and report of results should describe the study design precisely; for example, duration of treatment periods, whether treatments are parallel, sequential, or crossover, and whether the sample size is predetermined or based upon some interim analysis. Generally, the following types of control are recognized:

(i) **Placebo concurrent control.** The test drug is compared with an inactive preparation designed to resemble the test drug as far as possible. A placebo-controlled study may include additional treatment groups, such as an active treatment control or a dose-comparison control, and usually includes randomization and blinding of patients or investigators, or both.

(ii) **Dose-comparison concurrent control.** At least two doses of the drug are compared. A dose-comparison study may include additional treatment groups, such as placebo control or active control. Dose-comparison trials usually include randomization and blinding of patients or investigators, or both.

(iii) **No treatment concurrent control.** Where objective measurements of effectiveness are available and placebo effect is negligible, the test drug is compared with no treatment. No treatment concurrent control trials usually include randomization.

(iv) **Active treatment concurrent control.** The test drug is compared with known effective therapy; for example, where the condition treated is such that administration of placebo or no treatment would be contrary to the interest of the patient. An active treatment study may include additional treatment groups, however, such as a placebo control or a dose-comparison control. Active treatment trials usually include randomization and blinding of patients or investigators, or both. If the intent of the trial is to show similarity of the test and control drugs, the report of the study should assess the ability of the study to have detected a difference between treatments. Similarity of test drug and active control can mean either that both drugs were effective or that neither was effective. The analysis of the study should explain why the drugs should be considered effective in the study, for example, by reference to results in previous placebo-controlled studies of the active control drug.

(v) **Historical control.** The results of treatment with the test drug are compared with experience historically derived from the adequately documented natural history of the disease or condition, or from the results of active treatment, in comparable patients or populations. Because historical control populations usually cannot be as well assessed with respect to pertinent variables as can concurrent control populations, historical control designs are usually reserved for special circumstances. Examples include studies of diseases with high and predictable mortality (for example, certain malignancies) and studies in which the effect of the drug is self-evident (general anaesthetics, drug metabolism).

(3) The method of selection of subjects provides adequate assurance that they have the disease or condition being studied, or evidence of susceptibility and exposure to the condition against which prophylaxis is directed.

(4) The method of assigning patients to treatment and control groups minimizes bias and is intended to assure comparability of the groups with respect to pertinent variables such as age, sex, severity of disease, duration of disease, and use of drugs or therapy other than the test drug. The protocol for the study and the report of its results should describe how subjects were assigned to groups. Ordinarily, in a concurrently controlled study, assignment is by randomization, with or without stratification.

(5) Adequate measures are taken to minimize bias on the part of the subjects, observers, and analysts of the
§ 314.127 Refusal to approve an abbreviated new drug application.

(a) FDA will refuse to approve an abbreviated application for a new drug under section 505(j) of the act for any of the following reasons:

(1) The methods used in, or the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture, processing, and packing of the drug product are inadequate to ensure and preserve its identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(2) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that each of the proposed conditions of use has been previously approved for the listed drug referred to in the application.

(3)(i) If the reference listed drug has only one active ingredient, information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredient is the same as that of the reference listed drug; 

(ii) If the reference listed drug has more than one active ingredient, information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredients are the same as the active ingredients of the reference listed drug; or

(iii) If the reference listed drug has more than one active ingredient and if the abbreviated new drug application is for a drug product that has an active ingredient different from the reference listed drug:

(A) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show:

(B) The methods used in, or the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture, processing, and packing of the drug product are inadequate to ensure and preserve its identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(C) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredient is the same as that of the reference listed drug.

(D) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredients are the same as the active ingredients of the reference listed drug.

(E) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the methods used in, or the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture, processing, and packing of the drug product are adequate to ensure and preserve its identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(F) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredient is the same as that of the reference listed drug.

(G) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredients are the same as the active ingredients of the reference listed drug.

§ 314.127 Refusal to approve an abbreviated new drug application.

(a) FDA will refuse to approve an abbreviated application for a new drug under section 505(j) of the act for any of the following reasons:

(1) The methods used in, or the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture, processing, and packing of the drug product are inadequate to ensure and preserve its identity, strength, quality, and purity.

(2) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that each of the proposed conditions of use has been previously approved for the listed drug referred to in the application.

(3)(i) If the reference listed drug has only one active ingredient, information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredient is the same as that of the reference listed drug; 

(ii) If the reference listed drug has more than one active ingredient, information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredients are the same as the active ingredients of the reference listed drug; or

(iii) If the reference listed drug has more than one active ingredient and if the abbreviated new drug application is for a drug product that has an active ingredient different from the reference listed drug:

(A) Information submitted with the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show:
(1) That the other active ingredients are the same as the active ingredients of the reference listed drug; or

(2) That the different active ingredient is an active ingredient of a listed drug or a drug that does not meet the requirements of section 201(p) of the act; or

(B) No petition to submit an abbreviated application for the drug product with the different active ingredient was approved under §314.93.

(4)(i) If the abbreviated new drug application is for a drug product whose route of administration, dosage form, or strength purports to be the same as that of the listed drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application, information submitted in the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the route of administration, dosage form, or strength is the same as that of the reference listed drug; or

(ii) If the abbreviated new drug application is for a drug product whose route of administration, dosage form, or strength is different from that of the listed drug referred to in the application, no petition to submit an abbreviated new drug application for the drug product with the different route of administration, dosage form, or strength was approved under §314.93.

(5) If the abbreviated new drug application was submitted under the approval of a petition under §314.93, the abbreviated new drug application did not contain the information required by FDA with respect to the active ingredient, route of administration, dosage form, or strength that is not the same as that of the reference listed drug.

(6)(i) Information submitted in the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the drug product is bioequivalent to the listed drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application; or

(ii) If the abbreviated new drug application was submitted under a petition approved under §314.93, information submitted in the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the active ingredients of the drug product are of the same pharmacological or therapeutic class as those of the reference listed drug and that the drug product can be expected to have the same therapeutic effect as the reference listed drug when administered to patients for each condition of use approved for the reference listed drug.

(7) Information submitted in the abbreviated new drug application is insufficient to show that the labeling proposed for the drug is the same as the labeling approved for the listed drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application except for changes required because of differences approved in a petition under §314.93 or because the drug product and the reference listed drug are produced or distributed by different manufacturers or because aspects of the listed drug’s labeling are protected by patent, or by exclusivity, and such differences do not render the proposed drug product less safe or effective than the listed drug for all remaining, non-protected conditions of use.

(8)(i) Information submitted in the abbreviated new drug application of any other information available to FDA shows that:

(A) The inactive ingredients of the drug product are unsafe for use, as described in paragraph (a)(8)(ii) of this section, under the conditions prescribed, recommended, or suggested in the labeling proposed for the drug product; or

(B) The composition of the drug product is unsafe, as described in paragraph (a)(8)(ii) of this section, under the conditions prescribed, recommended, or suggested in the proposed labeling because of the type or quantity of inactive ingredients included or the manner in which the inactive ingredients are included.

(ii)(A) FDA will consider the inactive ingredients or composition of a drug product unsafe and refuse to approve an abbreviated new drug application under paragraph (a)(8)(i) of this section if, on the basis of information available to the agency, there is a reasonable basis to conclude that one or more of the inactive ingredients of the proposed drug or its composition raises serious questions of safety. From its experience with reviewing inactive ingredients, and from other information available to it, FDA may identify changes in inactive ingredients or composition that may adversely affect a
drug product’s safety. The inactive ingredients or composition of a proposed drug product will be considered to raise serious questions of safety if the product incorporates one or more of these changes. Examples of the changes that may raise serious questions of safety include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) A change in an inactive ingredient so that the product does not comply with an official compendium.

(2) A change in composition to include an inactive ingredient that has not been previously approved in a drug product for human use by the same route of administration.

(3) A change in the composition of a parenteral drug product to include an inactive ingredient that has not been previously approved in a parenteral drug product.

(4) A change in composition of a drug product for ophthalmic use to include an inactive ingredient that has not been previously approved in a drug for ophthalmic use.

(5) The use of a delivery or a modified release mechanism never before approved for the drug.

(6) A change in composition to include a significantly greater content of one or more inactive ingredients than previously used in the drug product.

(7) If the drug product is intended for topical administration, a change in the properties of the vehicle or base that might increase absorption of certain potentially toxic active ingredients thereby affecting the safety of the drug product, or a change in the lipophilic properties of a vehicle or base, e.g., a change from an oleaginous to a water soluble vehicle or base.

(B) FDA will consider an inactive ingredient in, or the composition of, a drug product intended for parenteral use to be unsafe and will refuse to approve the abbreviated new drug application unless it contains the same inactive ingredients, other than preservatives, buffers, substances to adjust tonicity, or thickening agents, in the same concentration as the listed drug, and if it differs from the listed drug in a preservative, buffer, substance to adjust tonicity, or thickening agent, the application contains sufficient information to demonstrate that the difference does not affect the safety of the drug product and the labeling does not claim any therapeutic advantage over or difference from the listed drug.

(C) FDA will consider an inactive ingredient in, or the composition of, a drug product intended for ophthalmic or otic use unsafe and will refuse to approve the abbreviated new drug application unless it contains the same inactive ingredients, other than preservatives, buffers, substances to adjust tonicity, or thickening agents, in the same concentration as the listed drug, and if it differs from the listed drug in a preservative, buffer, substance to adjust tonicity, or thickening agent, the application contains sufficient information to demonstrate that the difference does not affect the safety of the drug product.

(9) Approval of the listed drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application has been withdrawn or suspended for grounds described in §314.150(a) or FDA has published a notice of opportunity for hearing to withdraw approval of the reference listed drug under §314.150(a).

(10) Approval of the listed drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application has been withdrawn under §314.151 or FDA has proposed to withdraw approval of the reference listed drug under §314.151(a).

(11) FDA has determined that the reference listed drug has been withdrawn from sale for safety or effectiveness reasons under §314.161, or the reference listed drug has been voluntarily withdrawn from sale and the agency has not determined whether the withdrawal is for safety or effectiveness reasons, or approval of the reference listed drug has been suspended under §314.153, or the agency has issued an initial decision proposing to suspend the reference listed drug under §314.153(a)(1).

(12) The abbreviated new drug application does not meet any other requirement under section 505(j)(2)(A) of the act.

(13) The abbreviated new drug application contains an untrue statement of material fact.

(b) FDA may refuse to approve an abbreviated application for a new drug if the applicant or contract research organization that conducted a bioavailability or bioequivalence study
§ 314.150 Withdrawal of approval of an application or abbreviated application.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will notify the applicant, and, if appropriate, all other persons who manufacture or distribute identical, related, or similar drug products as defined in §310.6 and 314.151(a) of this chapter and for a new drug afford an opportunity for a hearing on a proposal to withdraw approval of the application or abbreviated new drug application under section 505(e) of the act and under the procedure in §314.200, if any of the following apply:

(1) The Secretary of Health and Human Services has suspended the approval of the application or abbreviated application for a new drug on a finding that there is an imminent hazard to the public health. FDA will promptly afford the applicant an expedited hearing following summary suspension on a finding of imminent hazard to health.

(2) FDA finds:

(i) That clinical or other experience, tests, or other scientific data show that the drug is unsafe for use under the conditions of use upon the basis of which the application or abbreviated application was approved; or

(ii) That new evidence of clinical experience, not contained in the application or not available to FDA until after the application or abbreviated application was approved, or tests by methods not deemed reasonably applicable when the application or abbreviated application was approved, evaluated together with the evidence available when the application or abbreviated application was approved, reveal that the drug is not shown to be safe for use under the conditions of use upon the basis of which the application or abbreviated application was approved; or

(iii) Upon the basis of new information before FDA with respect to the drug, evaluated together with the evidence available when the application or abbreviated application was approved, that there is a lack of substantial evidence from adequate and well-controlled investigations as defined in §314.126, that the drug will have the effect it is purported or represented to have under the conditions of use prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its labeling; or

(iv) That the application or abbreviated application contains any untrue statement of a material fact; or

(v) That the patent information prescribed by section 505(c) of the act was not submitted within 30 days after the receipt of written notice from FDA specifying the failure to submit such information; or

(b) FDA may notify the applicant, and, if appropriate, all other persons who manufacture or distribute identical, related, or similar drug products as defined in §310.6, and for a new drug afford an opportunity for a hearing on a proposal to withdraw approval of the application or abbreviated new drug application under section 505(e) of the act and under the procedure in §314.200, if the agency finds:

(1) That the applicant has failed to establish a system for maintaining required records, or has repeatedly or deliberately failed to maintain required records or to make required reports under section 505(k) or 507(g) of the act and §314.80, §314.81, or §314.98, or that the applicant has refused to permit access to, or copying or verification of, its records.

(2) That on the basis of new information before FDA, evaluated together with the evidence available when the application or abbreviated application was approved, the methods used in, or the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture, processing, and packing of the drug are inadequate to ensure and preserve its identity, strength, quality, and purity and were not made adequate within a reasonable time.
§ 314.150 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

after receipt of written notice from the agency.

(3) That on the basis of new information before FDA, evaluated together with the evidence available when the application or abbreviated application was approved, the labeling of the drug, based on a fair evaluation of all material facts, is false or misleading in any particular, and the labeling was not corrected by the applicant within a reasonable time after receipt of written notice from the agency.

(4) That the applicant has failed to comply with the notice requirements of section 510(j)(2) of the act.

(5) That the applicant has failed to submit bioavailability or bioequivalence data required under part 320 of this chapter.

(6) The application or abbreviated application does not contain an explanation of the omission of a report of any investigation of the drug product sponsored by the applicant, or an explanation of the omission of other information about the drug pertinent to an evaluation of the application or abbreviated application that is received or otherwise obtained by the applicant from any source.

(7) That any nonclinical laboratory study that is described in the application or abbreviated application and that is essential to show that the drug is safe for use under the conditions prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its labeling was not conducted in compliance with the good laboratory practice regulations in part 58 of this chapter and no reason for the noncompliance was provided or, if it was, the differences between the practices used in conducting the study and the good laboratory practice regulations do not support the validity of the study.

(8) Any clinical investigation involving human subjects described in the application or abbreviated application, subject to the institutional review board regulations in part 56 of this chapter or informed consent regulations in part 50 of this chapter, was not conducted in compliance with those regulations such that the rights or safety of human subjects were not adequately protected.

(9) That the applicant or contract research organization that conducted a bioavailability or bioequivalence study described in §320.38 or §320.63 of this chapter that is contained in the application or abbreviated application refuses to permit an inspection of facilities or records relevant to the study by a properly authorized officer or employee of the Department of Health and Human Services or refuses to submit reserve samples of the drug products used in the study when requested by FDA.

(10) That the labeling for the drug product that is the subject of the abbreviated new drug application is no longer consistent with that for the listed drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application, except for differences approved in the abbreviated new drug application or those differences resulting from:

(i) A patent on the listed drug issued after approval of the abbreviated new drug application; or

(ii) Exclusivity accorded to the listed drug after approval of the abbreviated new drug application that do not render the drug product less safe or effective than the listed drug for any remaining, nonprotected condition(s) of use.

(c) FDA will withdraw approval of an application or abbreviated application if the applicant requests its withdrawal because the drug subject to the application or abbreviated application is no longer being marketed, provided none of the conditions listed in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section applies to the drug. FDA will consider a written request for a withdrawal under this paragraph to be a waiver of an opportunity for hearing otherwise provided for in this section. Withdrawal of approval of an application or abbreviated application under this paragraph is without prejudice to refiling.

(d) FDA may notify an applicant that it believes a potential problem associated with a drug is sufficiently serious that the drug should be removed from the market and may ask the applicant to waive the opportunity for hearing otherwise provided for under this section, to permit FDA to withdraw approval of the application or abbreviated application for the product, and to remove voluntarily the product from the market. If the applicant agrees, the
agency will not make a finding under paragraph (b) of this section, but will withdraw approval of the application or abbreviated application in a notice published in the Federal Register that contains a brief summary of the agency’s and the applicant’s views of the reasons for withdrawal.


§ 314.151 Withdrawal of approval of an abbreviated new drug application under section 505(j)(5) of the act.

(a) Approval of an abbreviated new drug application approved under §314.105(d) may be withdrawn when the agency withdraws approval, under §314.150(a) or under this section, of the approved drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application. If the agency proposed to withdraw approval of a listed drug under §314.150(a), the holder of an approved application for the listed drug has a right to notice and opportunity for hearing. The published notice of opportunity for hearing will identify all drug products approved under §314.105(d) whose applications are subject to withdrawal under this section if the listed drug is withdrawn, and will propose to withdraw such drugs. Holders of approved applications for the identified drug products will be provided notice and an opportunity to respond to the proposed withdrawal of their applications as described in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b)(1) The published notice of opportunity for hearing on the withdrawal of the listed drug will serve as notice to holders of identified abbreviated new drug applications of the grounds for the proposed withdrawal.

(2) Holders of applications for drug products identified in the notice of opportunity for hearing may submit written comments on the notice of opportunity for hearing issued on the proposed withdrawal of the listed drug. If an abbreviated new drug application holder submits comments on the notice of opportunity for hearing and a hearing is granted, the abbreviated new drug application holder may participate in the hearing as a nonparty participant as provided for in §32.89 of this chapter.

(3) Except as provided in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section, the approval of an abbreviated new drug application for a drug product identified in the notice of opportunity for hearing on the withdrawal of a listed drug will be withdrawn when the agency has completed the withdrawal of approval of the listed drug.

(c)(1) If the holder of an application for a drug identified in the notice of opportunity for hearing has submitted timely comments but does not have an opportunity to participate in a hearing because a hearing is not requested or is settled, the submitted comments will be considered by the agency, which will issue an initial decision. The initial decision will respond to the comments, and contain the agency’s decision whether there are grounds to withdraw approval of the listed drug and of the abbreviated new drug applications on which timely comments were submitted. The initial decision will be sent to each abbreviated new drug application holder that has submitted comments.

(2) Abbreviated new drug application holders to whom the initial decision was sent may, within 30 days of the issuance of the initial decision, submit written objections.

(3) The agency may, at its discretion, hold a limited oral hearing to resolve dispositive factual issues that cannot be resolved on the basis of written submissions.

(4) If there are no timely objections to the initial decision, it will become final at the expiration of 30 days.

(5) If timely objections are submitted, they will be reviewed and responded to in a final decision.

(6) The written comments received, the initial decision, the evidence relied on in the comments and in the initial decision, the objections to the initial decision, and, if a limited oral hearing has been held, the transcript of that hearing and any documents submitted therein, shall form the record upon which the agency shall make a final decision.

(7) Except as provided in paragraph (d) of this section, any abbreviated new
§ 314.152 Notice of withdrawal of approval of an application or abbreviated application for a new drug.

If the Food and Drug Administration withdraws approval of an application or abbreviated application for a new drug, FDA will publish a notice in the Federal Register announcing the withdrawal of approval. If the application or abbreviated application was withdrawn for grounds described in §314.150(a) or §314.151, the notice will announce the removal of the drug from the list of approved drugs published under section 505(j)(6) of the act and shall satisfy the requirement of §314.162(b).

[57 FR 17994, Apr. 28, 1992]

§ 314.153 Suspension of approval of an abbreviated new drug application.

(a) Suspension of approval. The approval of an abbreviated new drug application approved under §314.105(d) shall be suspended for the period stated when:

1. The Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services, under the imminent hazard authority of section 505(e) of the act or the authority of this paragraph, suspends approval of a listed drug referred to in the abbreviated new drug application, for the period of the suspension;

2. The agency, in the notice described in paragraph (b) of this section, or in any subsequent written notice given an abbreviated new drug application holder by the agency, concludes that the risk of continued marketing and use of the drug is inappropriate, pending completion of proceedings to withdraw or suspend approval under §314.151 or paragraph (b) of this section; or

3. The agency, under the procedures set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, issues a final decision stating the determination that the abbreviated new drug application is suspended because the listed drug on which the approval of the abbreviated new drug application depends has been withdrawn from sale for reasons of safety or effectiveness or has been suspended under paragraph (b) of this section. The suspension will take effect on the date stated in the decision and will remain in effect until the agency determines that the marketing of the drug has resumed or that the withdrawal is not for safety or effectiveness reasons.

(b) Procedures for suspension of abbreviated new drug applications when a listed drug is voluntarily withdrawn for safety or effectiveness reasons. (1) If a listed drug is voluntarily withdrawn from sale, and the agency determines that the withdrawal from sale was for reasons of safety or effectiveness, the agency will send each holder of an approved abbreviated new drug application that is subject to suspension as a result of this determination a copy of the agency’s initial decision setting forth the reasons for the determination. The initial decision will also be placed on file with the Dockets Management Branch (HFA–305), Food and Drug Administration, room 1–23, 12420 Parklawn Dr., Rockville, MD 20857.

(2) Each abbreviated new drug application holder will have 30 days from the issuance of the initial decision to...
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 314.160 Approval of an application or abbreviated application for which approval was previously refused, suspended, or withdrawn.

Upon the Food and Drug Administration's own initiative or upon request of an applicant, FDA may, on the basis of new data, approve an application or abbreviated application which it had previously refused, suspended, or withdrawn approval. FDA will publish a notice in the Federal Register announcing the approval.

[57 FR 17995, Apr. 28, 1992]

§ 314.161 Determination of reasons for voluntary withdrawal of a listed drug.

(a) A determination whether a listed drug that has been voluntarily withdrawn from sale was withdrawn for safety or effectiveness reasons may be made by the agency at any time after the drug has been voluntarily withdrawn from sale, but must be made:

(1) Prior to approving an abbreviated new drug application that refers to the listed drug;

(2) Whenever a listed drug is voluntarily withdrawn from sale and abbreviated new drug applications that referred to the listed drug have been approved;

(3) When a person petitions for such a determination under §§10.25(a) and 10.30 of this chapter.

(b) Any person may petition under §§10.25(a) and 10.30 of this chapter for a determination whether a listed drug has been voluntarily withdrawn for safety or effectiveness reasons. Any such petition must contain all evidence available to the petitioner concerning the reason that the drug is withdrawn from sale.

(c) If the agency determines that a listed drug is withdrawn from sale for safety or effectiveness reasons, the agency will, except as provided in paragraph (d) of this section, publish a notice of the determination in the Federal Register.

(d) If the agency determines under paragraph (a) of this section that a listed drug is withdrawn from sale for safety and effectiveness reasons and there are approved abbreviated new drug applications that are subject to suspension under section 505(j)(5) of the
§ 314.162 Removal of a drug product from the list.

(a) FDA will remove a previously approved new drug product from the list for the period stated when:

(1) The agency withdraws or suspends approval of a new drug application or an abbreviated new drug application under §314.150(a) or §314.151 or under the imminent hazard authority of section 505(e) of the act, for the same period as the withdrawal or suspension of the application; or

(2) The agency, in accordance with the procedures in §314.153(b) or §314.161, issues a final decision stating that the listed drug was withdrawn from sale for safety or effectiveness reasons, or suspended under §314.153(b), until the agency determines that the withdrawal from the market has ceased or is not for safety or effectiveness reasons.

(b) FDA will publish in the Federal Register a notice announcing the removal of a drug from the list.

[57 FR 17996, Apr. 28, 1992]

§ 314.170 Adulteration and misbranding of an approved drug.

All drugs, including those the Food and Drug Administration approves under section 505 of the act and this part, are subject to the adulteration and misbranding provisions in sections 501, 502, and 503 of the act. FDA is authorized to regulate approved new drugs by regulations issued through informal rulemaking under sections 501, 502, and 503 of the act.


Subpart E—Hearing Procedures for New Drugs


§ 314.200 Notice of opportunity for hearing; notice of participation and request for hearing; grant or denial of hearing.

(a) Notice of opportunity for hearing.

The Director of the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, will give the applicant, and all other persons who manufacture or distribute identical, related, or similar drug products as defined in §310.6 of this chapter, notice and an opportunity for a hearing on the Center’s proposal to refuse to approve an application or to withdraw the approval of an application or abbreviated application under section 505(e) of the act. The notice will state the reasons for the action and the proposed grounds for the order.

(1) The notice may be general (that is, simply summarizing in a general way the information resulting in the notice) or specific (that is, either referring to specific requirements in the statute and regulations with which there is a lack of compliance, or providing a detailed description and analysis of the specific facts resulting in the notice).
(2) FDA will publish the notice in the Federal Register and will state that the applicant, and other persons subject to the notice under §310.6, who wishes to participate in a hearing, has 30 days after the date of publication of the notice to file a written notice of participation and request for hearing. The applicant, or other persons subject to the notice under §310.6, who fails to file a written notice of participation and request for hearing within 30 days, waives the opportunity for a hearing.

(3) It is the responsibility of every manufacturer and distributor of a drug product to review every notice of opportunity for a hearing published in the Federal Register to determine whether it covers any drug product that person manufactures or distributes. Any person may request an opinion of the applicability of a notice to a specific product that may be identical, related, or similar to a product listed in a notice by writing to the Division of Drug Labeling Compliance (HFD–310), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. A person shall request an opinion within 30 days after the date of publication of the notice to be eligible for an opportunity for a hearing, the studies on which the person relies to justify a hearing as specified in paragraph (d) of this section. The applicant, or other person, may incorporate by reference the raw data underlying a study if the data were previously submitted to FDA as part of an application, abbreviated application, or other report.

(b) FDA will provide the notice of opportunity for a hearing to applicants and to other persons subject to the notice under §310.6, as follows:

(1) To any person who has submitted an application or abbreviated application, by delivering the notice in person or by sending it by registered or certified mail to the last address shown in the application or abbreviated application.

(2) To any person who has not submitted an application or abbreviated application but who is subject to the notice under §310.6 of this chapter, by publication of the notice in the Federal Register.

(c)(1) Notice of participation and request for a hearing, and submission of studies and comments. The applicant, or any other person subject to the notice under §310.6, who wishes to participate in a hearing, shall file with the Dockets Management Branch (HFA–305), Food and Drug Administration, rm. 1–23, 12420 Parklawn Dr., Rockville, MD 20857, (i) within 30 days after the date of publication of the notice (or of the date of receipt of an opinion requested under paragraph (a)(3) of this section) a written notice of participation and request for a hearing and (ii) within 60 days after the date of publication of the notice, unless a different period of time is specified in the notice of opportunity for a hearing, the studies on which the person relies to justify a hearing as specified in paragraph (d) of this section. The person requesting a hearing shall list in the request for hearing all studies in progress, the results of which the person intends later to submit in support of the request for a hearing. The person shall submit under paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section a copy of the complete protocol, a list of the participating investigators, and a brief status report of the studies.

(3) Any other interested person who is not subject to the notice of opportunity for a hearing may also submit comments on the proposal to withdraw approval of the application or abbreviated application. The comments are requested to be submitted within the time and under the conditions specified in this section.

(d) The person requesting a hearing is required to submit under paragraph
§ 314.200

(c)(1)(ii) of this section the studies (including all protocols and underlying raw data) on which the person relies to justify a hearing with respect to the drug product. Except, a person who requests a hearing on the refusal to approve an application is not required to submit additional studies and analyses if the studies upon which the person relies have been submitted in the application and in the format and containing the summaries required under §314.50.

(1) If the grounds for FDA’s proposed action concern the effectiveness of the drug, each request for hearing is required to be supported only by adequate and well-controlled clinical studies meeting all of the precise requirements of §314.126 and, for combination drug products, §300.50, or by other studies not meeting those requirements for which a waiver has been previously granted by FDA under §314.126. Each person requesting a hearing shall submit all adequate and well-controlled clinical studies on the drug product, including any unfavorable analyses, views, or judgments with respect to the studies. No other data, information, or views, or judgments with respect to the studies. No other data, information, or studies may be submitted.

(2) The submission is required to include a factual analysis of all the studies submitted. If the grounds for FDA’s proposed action concern the effectiveness of the drug, the analysis is required to specify how each study accords, on a point-by-point basis, with each criterion required for an adequate well-controlled clinical investigation established under §314.126 and, if the product is a combination drug product, with each of the requirements for a combination drug established in §300.50, or the study is required to be accompanied by an appropriate waiver previously granted by FDA. If a study concerns a drug or dosage form or condition of use or mode of administration other than the one in question, that fact is required to be clearly stated. Any study conducted on the final marketed form of the drug product is required to be clearly identified.

(3) Each person requesting a hearing shall submit an analysis of the data upon which the person relies, except that the required information relating either to safety or to effectiveness may be omitted if the notice of opportunity for hearing does not raise any issue with respect to that aspect of the drug; information on compliance with §300.50 may be omitted if the drug product is not a combination drug product. A financial certification or disclosure statement or both as required by part 54 of this chapter must accompany all clinical data submitted. FDA can most efficiently consider submissions made in the following format.

I. Safety data.
A. Animal safety data.
   1. Individual active components.
      a. Controlled studies.
      b. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
   2. Combinations of the individual active components.
      a. Controlled studies.
      b. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
   c. Documented case reports.
   d. Pertinent marketing experiences that may influence a determination about the safety of each individual active component.

II. Effectiveness data.
A. Individual active components: Controlled studies, with an analysis showing clearly how each study satisfies, on a point-by-point basis, each of the criteria required by §314.126.
   1. Controlled studies.
   2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
   c. Documented case reports.
   d. Pertinent marketing experiences that may influence a determination about the safety of each individual active component.

B. Combinations of individual active components.
   1. Controlled studies with an analysis showing clearly how each study satisfies on a point-by-point basis, each of the criteria required by §314.126.

   2. An analysis showing clearly how each requirement of §300.50 has been satisfied.

   III. A summary of the data and views setting forth the medical rationale and purpose for the drug and its ingredients and the scientific basis for the conclusion that the drug and its ingredients have been proven safe and/or effective for the intended use. If there is an absence of controlled studies in the material submitted or the requirements of any element of §300.50 or §314.126 have not been fully met, that fact is required to be stated.
§ 314.200

A statement signed by the person responsible for such submission that it includes in full (or incorporates by reference as permitted in §314.200(c)(2)) all studies and information specified in §314.200(d).

(Warning: A willfully false statement is a criminal offense, 18 U.S.C. 1001.)

(e) Contentions that a drug product is not subject to the new drug requirements.

A notice of appearance and request for a hearing under paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section is required to contain any contention that the product is not a new drug because it is generally recognized as safe and effective within the meaning of section 201(p) of the act, or because it is exempt from part or all of the new drug provisions of the act under the exemption for products marketed before June 25, 1938, contained in section 201(p) of the act, or under section 107(c) of the Drug Amendments of 1962, or for any other reason.

Each contention is required to be supported by a submission under paragraph (d) of this section and the Commissioner of Food and Drugs will make an administrative determination on each contention. The failure of any person subject to a notice of opportunity for a hearing, including any person who manufactures or distributes an identical, related, or similar drug product, to submit a notice of appearance and request for a hearing under paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section is required to contain any contention that the product is not a new drug because it is generally recognized as safe and effective within the meaning of section 201(p) of the act, or because it is exempt from part or all of the new drug provisions of the act under the exemption for products marketed before June 25, 1938, contained in section 201(p) of the act, or under section 107(c) of the Drug Amendments of 1962, or for any other reason.

1. Formulation.

A. A copy of each pertinent document or record to establish the exact quantitative formulation of the drug (both active and inactive ingredients) on the date of initial marketing of the drug.

B. A statement whether such formulation has at any subsequent time been changed in any manner. If any such change has been made, the exact date, nature, and rationale for each change in formulation, including any deletion or change in the concentration of any active ingredient and/or inactive ingredient, should be stated, together with a copy of each pertinent document or record to establish the date and nature of each such change, including, but not limited to, the formula which resulted from such change. If no such change has been made, a copy of representative documents or records showing the formula at representative points in time should be submitted to support the statement.

II. Labeling.

A. A copy of each pertinent document or record to establish the identity of each item of written, printed, or graphic matter used as labeling on the date the drug was initially marketed.

B. A statement whether such labeling has at any subsequent time been discontinued or changed in any manner. If such discontinuance or change has been made, the exact date, nature, and rationale for such discontinuance or change and a copy of each pertinent document or record to establish each such discontinuance or change should be submitted, including, but not limited to, the labeling which resulted from such discontinuance or change. If no such discontinuance or change has been made, a copy of representative documents or records showing labeling at representative points in time.
§ 314.200

should be submitted to support the statement.

III. Marketing.
A. A copy of each pertinent document or record to establish the exact date the drug was initially marketed.
B. A statement whether such marketing has at any subsequent time been discontinued. If such marketing has been discontinued, the exact date of each such discontinuance should be submitted, together with a copy of each pertinent document or record to establish each such date.

IV. Verification.
A statement signed by the person responsible for such submission, that all appropriate records have been searched and to the best of that person’s knowledge and belief it includes a true and accurate presentation of the facts.

(WARNING: A willfully false statement is a criminal offense, 18 U.S.C. 1001.)

(3) The Food and Drug Administration will not find a drug product, including any active ingredient, which is identical, related, or similar, as described in §310.6, to a drug product, including any active ingredient for which an application is or at any time has been effective or deemed approved, or approved under section 505 of the act, to be exempt from part or all of the new drug provisions of the act.

(4) A contention that a drug product is not a new drug for any other reason is required to be supported by submission of the factual records, data, and information that are necessary and appropriate to support the contention.

(5) It is the responsibility of every person who manufactures or distributes a drug product in reliance upon a “grandfather” provision of the act to maintain files that contain the data and information necessary fully to document and support that status.

(g) Separation of functions. Separation of functions commences upon receipt of a request for hearing. The Director of the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, will prepare an analysis of the request and a proposed order ruling on the matter. The analysis and proposed order, the request for hearing, and any proposed order denying a hearing and response under paragraph (g) (2) or (3) of this section will be submitted to the Office of the Commissioner of Food and Drugs for review and decision. When the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research recommends denial of a hearing on all issues on which a hearing is requested, no representative of the Center will participate or advise in the review and decision by the Commissioner. When the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research recommends that a hearing be granted on one or more issues on which a hearing is requested, separation of functions terminates as to those issues, and representatives of the Center may participate or advise in the review and decision by the Commissioner on those issues. The Commissioner may modify the text of the issues, but may not deny a hearing on those issues. Separation of functions continues with respect to issues on which the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research has recommended denial of a hearing. The Commissioner will neither evaluate nor rule on the Center’s recommendation on such issues and such issues will not be included in the notice of hearing. Participants in the hearing may make a motion to the presiding officer for the inclusion of any such issue in the hearing. The ruling on such a motion is subject to review in accordance with §12.35(b). Failure to so move constitutes a waiver of the right to a hearing on such an issue. Separation of functions on all issues resumes upon issuance of a notice of hearing. The Office of the General Counsel, Department of Health and Human Services, will observe the same separation of functions.

(1) Where a specific notice of opportunity for hearing (as defined in paragraph (a)(1) of this section) is used, the Commissioner will enter summary judgment against a person who requests a hearing, making findings and conclusions, denying a hearing, if it conclusively appears from the face of the data, information, and factual analyses in the request for the hearing that there is no genuine and substantial issue of fact that requires a hearing with respect to a particular drug product specified in the request for hearing.

(2) Where a motion to modify the text of a hearing is made under paragraph (g) (3) of this section, the Commissioner will enter summary judgment against a person who requests a hearing, making findings and conclusions, denying a hearing, if it conclusively appears from the face of the data, information, and factual analyses in the request for the hearing that there is no genuine and substantial issue of fact which precludes the refusal to approve the application or
abbreviated application or the withdrawal of approval of the application or abbreviated application; for example, no adequate and well-controlled clinical investigations meeting each of the precise elements of §314.126 and, for a combination drug product, §300.50 of this chapter, showing effectiveness have been identified. Any order entering summary judgment is required to set forth the Commissioner's findings and conclusions in detail and is required to specify why each study submitted fails to meet the requirements of the statute and regulations or why the request for hearing does not raise a genuine and substantial issue of fact.

(2) When following a general notice of opportunity for a hearing (as defined in paragraph (a)(1) of this section) the Director of the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research concludes that summary judgment against a person requesting a hearing should be considered, the Director will serve upon the person requesting a hearing by registered mail a proposed order denying a hearing. This person has 60 days after receipt of the proposed order to respond with sufficient data, information, and analyses to demonstrate that there is a genuine and substantial issue of fact which justifies a hearing.

(3) When following a general or specific notice of opportunity for a hearing a person requesting a hearing submits data or information of a type required by the statute and regulations, and the Director of the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research concludes that summary judgment against the person should be considered, the Director will serve upon the person by registered mail a proposed order denying a hearing. The person has 60 days after receipt of the proposed order to respond with sufficient data, information, and analyses to demonstrate that there is a genuine and substantial issue of fact which justifies a hearing.

(4) If review of the data, information, and analyses submitted show that the grounds cited in the notice are not valid, for example, that substantial evidence of effectiveness exists, the Commissioner will enter summary judgment for the person requesting the hearing and rescind the notice of opportunity for hearing.

(5) If the Commissioner grants a hearing, it will begin within 90 days after the expiration of the time for requesting the hearing unless the parties otherwise agree in the case of denial of approval, and as soon as practicable in the case of withdrawal of approval.

(6) The Commissioner will grant a hearing if there exists a genuine and substantial issue of fact or if the Commissioner concludes that a hearing would otherwise be in the public interest.

(7) If the manufacturer or distributor of an identical, related, or similar drug product requests and is granted a hearing, the hearing may consider whether the product is in fact identical, related, or similar to the drug product named in the notice of opportunity for a hearing.

(8) A request for a hearing, and any subsequent grant or denial of a hearing, applies only to the drug products named in such documents.

(h) FDA will issue a notice withdrawing approval and declaring all products unlawful for drug products subject to a notice of opportunity for a hearing, including any identical, related, or similar drug product under §310.6, for which an opportunity for a hearing is waived or for which a hearing is denied. The Commissioner may defer or stay the action pending a ruling on any related request for a hearing or pending any related hearing or other administrative or judicial proceeding.


§ 314.201 Procedure for hearings.

Parts 10 through 16 apply to hearings relating to new drugs under section 505 (d) and (e) of the act.

§ 314.235 Judicial review.

(a) The Commissioner of Food and Drugs will certify the transcript and record. In any case in which the Commissioner enters an order without a hearing under §314.200(g), the record
§ 314.410 Imports and exports of new drugs.

(a) Imports. (1) A new drug may be imported into the United States if: (i) It is the subject of an approved application under this part; or (ii) it complies with the regulations pertaining to investigational new drugs under part 312; and it complies with the general regulations pertaining to imports under subpart E of part 1.

(2) A drug substance intended for use in the manufacture, processing, or repacking of a new drug may be imported into the United States if it complies with the labeling exemption in §201.122 pertaining to shipments of drug substances in domestic commerce.

(b) Exports. (1) A new drug may be exported if it is the subject of an approved application under this part or it complies with the regulations pertaining to investigational new drugs under part 312.

(2) A new drug substance that is covered by an application approved under this part for use in the manufacture of an approved drug product may be exported by the applicant or any person listed as a supplier in the approved application, provided the drug substance intended for export meets the specifications of, and is shipped with a copy of the labeling required for, the approved drug product.

(3) Insulin or an antibiotic drug may be exported without regard to the requirements in section 802 of the act if the insulin or antibiotic drug meets the requirements of section 801(e)(1) of the act.

§ 314.420 Drug master files.

(a) A drug master file is a submission of information to the Food and Drug Administration by a person (the drug master file holder) who intends it to be used for one of the following purposes: To permit the holder to incorporate the information by reference when the holder submits an investigational new drug application under part 312 or submits an application or an abbreviated application or an amendment or supplement to them under this part, or to permit the holder to authorize other persons to rely on the information to support a submission to FDA without the holder having to disclose the information to the person. FDA ordinarily neither independently reviews drug master files nor approves or disapproves submissions to a drug master file. Instead, the agency customarily reviews the information only in the context of an application under part 312 or submits an application or an abbreviated application or an amendment or supplement to them under this part, or to permit the holder to authorize other persons to rely on the information to support a submission to FDA without the holder having to disclose the information to the person. FDA ordinarily neither independently reviews drug master files nor approves or disapproves submissions to a drug master file. Instead, the agency customarily reviews the information only in the context of an application under part 312 or submits an application or an abbreviated application or an amendment or supplement to them under this part, or to permit the holder to authorize other persons to rely on the information to support a submission to FDA without the holder having to disclose the information to the person. FDA ordinarily neither independently reviews drug master files nor approves or disapproves submissions to a drug master file. Instead, the agency customarily reviews the information only in the context of an application under part 312 or submits an application or an abbreviated application or an amendment or supplement to them under this part, or to permit the holder to authorize other persons to rely on the information to support a submission to FDA without the holder having to disclose the information to the person. FDA ordinary

Subpart F [Reserved]

Subpart G—Miscellaneous Provisions


§ 314.410 Imports and exports of new drugs.

(a) Imports. (1) A new drug may be imported into the United States if: (i) It is the subject of an approved application under this part; or (ii) it complies with the regulations pertaining to investigational new drugs under part 312; and it complies with the general regulations pertaining to imports under subpart E of part 1.

(2) A drug substance intended for use in the manufacture, processing, or repacking of a new drug may be imported into the United States if it complies with the labeling exemption in §201.122 pertaining to shipments of drug substances in domestic commerce.

(b) Exports. (1) A new drug may be exported if it is the subject of an approved application under this part or it complies with the regulations pertaining to investigational new drugs under part 312.

(2) A new drug substance that is covered by an application approved under this part for use in the manufacture of an approved drug product may be exported by the applicant or any person listed as a supplier in the approved application, provided the drug substance intended for export meets the specifications of, and is shipped with a copy of the labeling required for, the approved drug product.

(3) Insulin or an antibiotic drug may be exported without regard to the requirements in section 802 of the act if the insulin or antibiotic drug meets the requirements of section 801(e)(1) of the act.

[50 FR 7493, Feb. 22, 1985, unless otherwise noted. Redesignated at 57 FR 17983, Apr. 28, 1992, and amended at 64 FR 402, Jan. 5, 1999]
§ 314.430 Availability for public disclosure of data and information in an application or abbreviated application.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will determine the public availability of any part of an application or abbreviated application under this section and part 20 of this chapter. For purposes of this section, the application or abbreviated application includes all data and information submitted with or incorporated by reference in the application or abbreviated application, including investigational new drug applications, drug master files under §314.420, supplements submitted under §314.70 or §314.97, reports under §314.80 or §314.98, and other submissions. For purposes of this section, safety and effectiveness data include all studies and tests of a drug on animals and humans and all studies and tests of the drug for identity, stability, purity, potency, and bioavailability.

(b) FDA will not publicly disclose the existence of an application or abbreviated application before an approvable letter is sent to the applicant under §314.110, unless the existence of the application or abbreviated application has been previously publicly disclosed or acknowledged. The Center for Drug Evaluation and Research will maintain and make available for public disclosure a list of applications or abbreviated applications for which the agency has sent an approvable letter to the applicant.

(c) If the existence of an unapproved application or abbreviated application has not been publicly disclosed or acknowledged, no data or information in the application or abbreviated application is available for public disclosure.

(d)(1) If the existence of an application or abbreviated application has been publicly disclosed or acknowledged before the agency sends an approval letter, no data or information contained in the application or abbreviated application is available for public disclosure before the agency sends an approval letter, but the Commissioner may, in his or her discretion, disclose a summary of...
§ 314.430

selected portions of the safety and effectiveness data that are appropriate for public consideration of a specific pending issue; for example, for consideration of an open session of an FDA advisory committee.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (d)(1) of this section, FDA will make available to the public upon request the information in the investigational new drug application that was required to be filed in Docket Number 95S-0158 in the Dockets Management Branch (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, 12420 Parklawn Dr., rm. 1-23, Rockville, MD 20857, for investigations involving an exception from informed consent under § 50.24 of this chapter. Persons wishing to request this information shall submit a request under the Freedom of Information Act.

(e) After FDA sends an approval letter to the applicant, the following data and information in the application or abbreviated application are immediately available for public disclosure, unless the applicant shows that extraordinary circumstances exist. A list of approved applications and abbreviated applications, entitled “Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations,” is available from the Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402. This list is updated monthly.

(1) [Reserved]

(2) If the application applies to a new drug, all safety and effectiveness data previously disclosed to the public as set forth in § 20.81 and a summary or summaries of the safety and effectiveness data and information submitted with or incorporated by reference in the application. The summaries do not constitute the full reports of investigations under section 505(b)(1) of the act (21 U.S.C. 355(b)(1)) on which the safety or effectiveness of the drug may be approved. The summaries consist of the following:

(i) For an application approved before July 1, 1975, internal agency records that describe safety and effectiveness data and information, for example, a summary of the basis for approval or internal reviews of the data and information, after deletion of the following:

(a) Names and any information that would identify patients or test subjects or investigators.

(b) Any inappropriate gratuitous comments unnecessary to an objective analysis of the data and information.

(ii) For an application approved on or after July 1, 1975, a Summary Basis of Approval (SBA) document that contains a summary of the safety and effectiveness data and information evaluated by FDA during the drug approval process. The SBA is prepared in one of the following ways:

(a) Before approval of the application, the applicant may prepare a draft SBA which the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research will review and may revise. The draft may be submitted with the application or as an amendment.

(b) The Center for Drug Evaluation and Research may prepare the SBA.

(3) A protocol for a test or study, unless it is shown to fall within the exemption established for trade secrets and confidential commercial information in § 20.61.

(4) Adverse reaction reports, product experience reports, consumer complaints, and other similar data and information after deletion of the following:

(i) Names and any information that would identify the person using the product.

(ii) Names and any information that would identify any third party involved with the report, such as a physician or hospital or other institution.

(5) A list of all active ingredients and any inactive ingredients previously disclosed to the public as set forth in § 20.81.

(6) An assay method or other analytical method, unless it serves no regulatory or compliance purpose and is shown to fall within the exemption established for trade secrets and confidential commercial information in § 20.61.

(7) All correspondence and written summaries of oral discussions between FDA and the applicant relating to the application, under the provisions of part 20.

(i) All safety and effectiveness data and information which have been submitted in an application and which
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 314.440 Addresses for applications and abbreviated applications.

(a) Applicants shall send applications, abbreviated applications, and other correspondence relating to matters covered by this part, except for products listed in paragraph (b) of this section, to the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857, and directed to the appropriate office identified below:

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (a)(4) of this section, an application under § 314.50 or § 314.54 submitted for filing should be directed to the Document and Records Section, 12420 Parklawn Dr., Rockville, MD 20852. Applicants may obtain folders for binding applications from the Consolidated Forms and Publications Distribution Center, Washington Commerce Center, 3222 Hubbard Rd., Landover, MD 20785. After FDA has filed the application, the agency will inform the applicant which division is responsible for the application. Amendments, supplements, resubmissions, requests for waivers, and other correspondence about an application that has been filed should be directed to the appropriate division.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (a)(4) of this section, an abbreviated application under § 314.94, and amendments, supplements, and resubmissions should be directed to the Office of Generic Drugs (HFD–600), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. Items sent by parcel post or overnight courier service should be directed to the Office of Generic Drugs (HFD–600), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, Metro Park North II, 7500 Standish Place, rm. 150, Rockville, MD 20855. Correspondence not associated with an application should be addressed specifically to the intended office or division and to the

(b) The compilations of information specified in § 20.117 are available for public disclosure.

§ 314.445 Guidance documents.

(a) FDA has made available guidance documents under §10.115 of this chapter to help you to comply with certain requirements of this part.

(b) The Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER) maintains a list of guidance documents that apply to CDER’s regulations. The list is maintained on the Internet and is published annually in the FEDERAL REGISTER. A request for a copy of the CDER list should be directed to the Office of Training and Communications, Division of Communications Management, Drug Information Branch (HFD–210), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

[65 FR 56480, Sept. 19, 2000]

Subpart H—Accelerated Approval of New Drugs for Serious or Life-Threatening Illnesses

SOURCE: 57 FR 58958, Dec. 11, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

§ 314.500 Scope.

This subpart applies to certain new drug products that have been studied for their safety and effectiveness in treating serious or life-threatening illnesses and that provide meaningful therapeutic benefit to patients over existing treatments (e.g., ability to treat patients unresponsive to, or intolerant of, available therapy, or improved patient response over available therapy).

[57 FR 58958, Dec. 11, 1992, as amended at 64 FR 402, Jan. 5, 1999]

§ 314.510 Approval based on a surrogate endpoint or on an effect on a clinical endpoint other than survival or irreversible morbidity.

FDA may grant marketing approval for a new drug product on the basis of adequate and well-controlled clinical trials establishing that the drug product has an effect on a surrogate endpoint that is reasonably likely, based on epidemiologic, therapeutic, pathophysiologic, or other evidence, to predict clinical benefit or on the basis of an effect on a clinical endpoint other than survival or irreversible morbidity. Approval under this section will be
subject to the requirement that the applicant study the drug further, to verify and describe its clinical benefit, where there is uncertainty as to the relation of the surrogate endpoint to clinical benefit, or of the observed clinical benefit to ultimate outcome. Postmarketing studies would usually be studies already underway. When required to be conducted, such studies must also be adequate and well-controlled. The applicant shall carry out any such studies with due diligence.

§ 314.520 Approval with restrictions to assure safe use.

(a) If FDA concludes that a drug product shown to be effective can be safely used only if distribution or use is restricted, FDA will require such postmarketing restrictions as are needed to assure safe use of the drug product, such as:

(1) Distribution restricted to certain facilities or physicians with special training or experience; or

(2) Distribution conditioned on the performance of specified medical procedures.

(b) The limitations imposed will be commensurate with the specific safety concerns presented by the drug product.

§ 314.530 Withdrawal procedures.

(a) For new drugs approved under §§314.510 and 314.520, FDA may withdraw approval, following a hearing as provided in part 15 of this chapter, as modified by this section, if:

(1) A postmarketing clinical study fails to verify clinical benefit;

(2) The applicant fails to perform the required postmarketing study with due diligence;

(3) Use after marketing demonstrates that postmarketing restrictions are inadequate to assure safe use of the drug product;

(4) The applicant fails to adhere to the postmarketing restrictions agreed upon;

(5) The promotional materials are false or misleading; or

(6) Other evidence demonstrates that the drug product is not shown to be safe or effective under its conditions of use.

(b) Notice of opportunity for a hearing. The Director of the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research will give the applicant notice of an opportunity for a hearing on the Center’s proposal to withdraw the approval of an application approved under §314.510 or §314.520. The notice, which will ordinarily be a letter, will state generally the reasons for the action and the proposed grounds for the order.

(c) Submission of data and information.

(1) If the applicant fails to file a written request for a hearing within 15 days of receipt of the notice, the applicant waives the opportunity for a hearing.

(2) If the applicant files a timely request for a hearing, the agency will publish a notice of hearing in the Federal Register in accordance with §§12.32(e) and 15.20 of this chapter.

(3) An applicant who requests a hearing under this section must, within 30 days of receipt of the notice of opportunity for a hearing, submit the data and information upon which the applicant intends to rely at the hearing.

(d) Separation of functions. Separation of functions (as specified in §10.55 of this chapter) will not apply at any point in withdrawal proceedings under this section.

(e) Procedures for hearings. Hearings held under this section will be conducted in accordance with the provisions of part 15 of this chapter, with the following modifications:

(1) An advisory committee duly constituted under part 14 of this chapter will be present at the hearing. The committee will be asked to review the issues involved and to provide advice and recommendations to the Commissioner of Food and Drugs.

(2) The presiding officer, the advisory committee members, up to three representatives of the applicant, and up to three representatives of the Center may question any person during or at the conclusion of the person’s presentation. No other person attending the hearing may question a person making a presentation. The presiding officer may, as a matter of discretion, permit questions to be submitted to the presiding officer for response by a person making a presentation.

(f) Judicial review. The Commissioner’s decision constitutes final
§ 314.540 Postmarketing safety reporting.

Drug products approved under this program are subject to the postmarketing recordkeeping and safety reporting applicable to all approved drug products, as provided in §§314.80 and 314.81.

§ 314.550 Promotional materials.

For drug products being considered for approval under this subpart, unless otherwise informed by the agency, applicants must submit to the agency for consideration during the preapproval review period copies of all promotional materials, including promotional labeling as well as advertisements, intended for dissemination or publication within 120 days following marketing approval. After 120 days following marketing approval, unless otherwise informed by the agency, the applicant must submit promotional materials at least 30 days prior to the intended time of initial dissemination of the labeling or initial publication of the advertisement.

§ 314.560 Termination of requirements.

If FDA determines after approval that the requirements established in §314.520, §314.530, or §314.550 are no longer necessary for the safe and effective use of a drug product, it will so notify the applicant. Ordinarily, for drug products approved under §314.510, these requirements will no longer apply when FDA determines that the required postmarketing study verifies and describes the drug product’s clinical benefit and the drug product would be appropriate for approval under traditional procedures. For drug products approved under §314.520, the restrictions would no longer apply when FDA determines that safe use of the drug product can be assured through appropriate labeling. FDA also retains the discretion to remove specific post-approval requirements upon review of a petition submitted by the sponsor in accordance with §10.30.

PART 315—DIAGNOSTIC RADIOPHARMACEUTICALS

§ 315.1 Scope.

The regulations in this part apply to radiopharmaceuticals intended for in vivo administration for diagnostic and monitoring use. They do not apply to radiopharmaceuticals intended for therapeutic purposes. In situations where a particular radiopharmaceutical is proposed for both diagnostic and therapeutic uses, the radiopharmaceutical must be evaluated taking into account each intended use.

§ 315.2 Definition.

For purposes of this part, diagnostic radiopharmaceutical means:

(a) An article that is intended for use in the diagnosis or monitoring of a disease or a manifestation of a disease in humans and that exhibits spontaneous disintegration of unstable nuclei with the emission of nuclear particles or photons; or

(b) Any nonradioactive reagent kit or nuclide generator that is intended to be used in the preparation of such article as defined in paragraph (a) of this section.

§ 315.3 General factors relevant to safety and effectiveness.

FDA’s determination of the safety and effectiveness of a diagnostic radiopharmaceutical includes consideration of the following:

(a) The proposed use of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical in the practice of medicine,
§ 315.6 Evaluation of safety.

(a) Factors considered in the safety assessment of a diagnostic radiopharmaceutical include, among others, the following:
(1) The radiopharmaceutical and toxicological activity of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical (including any carrier or ligand component of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical), and
(2) The estimated absorbed radiation dose of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical.

(b) The pharmacological and toxicological activity of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical (including any carrier or ligand component of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical), and
(c) The estimated absorbed radiation dose of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical.

§ 315.4 Indications.

(a) For diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals, the categories of proposed indications for use include, but are not limited to, the following:
(1) Structure delineation;
(2) Functional, physiological, or biochemical assessment;
(3) Disease or pathology detection or assessment; and
(4) Diagnostic or therapeutic patient management.

(b) Where a diagnostic radiopharmaceutical is not intended to provide disease-specific information, the proposed indications for use may refer to a biochemical, physiological, anatomical, or pathological process or to more than one disease or condition.

§ 315.5 Evaluation of effectiveness.

(a) The effectiveness of a diagnostic radiopharmaceutical is assessed by evaluating its ability to provide useful clinical information related to its proposed indications for use. The method of this evaluation varies depending upon the proposed indication(s) and may use one or more of the following criteria:
(1) The claim of structure delineation is established by demonstrating in a defined clinical setting the ability to locate anatomical structures and to characterize their anatomy.
(2) The claim of functional, physiological, or biochemical assessment is established by demonstrating in a defined clinical setting reliable measurement of function(s) or physiological, biochemical, or molecular process(es).
(3) The claim of disease or pathology detection or assessment is established by demonstrating in a defined clinical setting that the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical has sufficient accuracy in identifying or characterizing the disease or pathology.
(4) The claim of diagnostic or therapeutic patient management is established by demonstrating in a defined clinical setting that the test is useful in diagnostic or therapeutic patient management.

(b) The accuracy and usefulness of the diagnostic information is determined by comparison with a reliable assessment of actual clinical status. A reliable assessment of actual clinical status may be provided by a diagnostic standard or standards of demonstrated accuracy. In the absence of such diagnostic standard(s), the actual clinical status must be established in another manner, e.g., patient followup.

§ 315.6 Evaluation of safety.

(a) Factors considered in the safety assessment of a diagnostic radiopharmaceutical include, among others, the following:
(1) The radiation dose;
(2) The pharmacology and toxicology of the radiopharmaceutical, including any radionuclide, carrier, or ligand;
(3) The risks of an incorrect diagnostic determination;
(4) The adverse reaction profile of the drug;
(5) Results of human experience with the radiopharmaceutical for other uses; and
(6) Results of any previous human experience with the carrier or ligand of the radiopharmaceutical when the same chemical entity as the carrier or ligand has been used in a previously studied product.

(b) The assessment of the adverse reaction profile includes, but is not limited to, an evaluation of the potential of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical, including the carrier or ligand, to elicit the following:
(1) Allergic or hypersensitivity responses,
(2) Immunologic responses,
(3) Changes in the physiologic or biochemical function of the target and nontarget tissues, and
(4) Clinically detectable signs or symptoms.
(c)(1) To establish the safety of a diagnostic radiopharmaceutical, FDA may require, among other information, the following types of data:
(i) Pharmacology data,
(ii) Toxicology data,
(iii) Clinical adverse event data, and
(iv) Radiation safety assessment.
(2) The amount of new safety data required will depend on the characteristics of the product and available information regarding the safety of the diagnostic radiopharmaceutical, and its carrier or ligand, obtained from other studies and uses. Such information may include, but is not limited to, the dose, route of administration, frequency of use, half-life of the ligand or carrier, half-life of the radionuclide, and results of clinical and preclinical studies. FDA will establish categories of diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals based on defined characteristics relevant to risk and will specify the amount and type of safety data that are appropriate for each category (e.g., required safety data may be limited for diagnostic radiopharmaceuticals with a well established, low-risk profile). Upon reviewing the relevant product characteristics and safety information, FDA will place each diagnostic radiopharmaceutical into the appropriate safety risk category.

(d) Radiation safety assessment. The radiation safety assessment must establish the radiation dose of a diagnostic radiopharmaceutical by radiation dosimetry evaluations in humans and appropriate animal models. The maximum tolerated dose need not be established.

PART 316—ORPHAN DRUGS

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 316.1 Scope of this part.
316.2 Purpose.
316.3 Definitions.
316.4 Address for submissions.

Subpart B—Written Recommendations for Investigations of Orphan Drugs

§ 316.10 Content and format of a request for written recommendations.
316.12 Providing written recommendations.
316.14 Refusal to provide written recommendations.
(i) Requests for recommendations for investigations of drugs for rare diseases or conditions;
(ii) Requests for designation of a drug for a rare disease or condition; and
(iii) Requests for gaining exclusive approval for a drug product for a rare disease or condition.

(2) Allowing a sponsor to provide an investigational drug product under a treatment protocol to patients who need the drug for treatment of a rare disease or condition.

(b) This part does not apply to food, medical devices, or drugs for veterinary use.

(c) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21, unless otherwise noted.

§ 316.2 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to establish standards and procedures for determining eligibility for the benefits provided for in section 2 of the Orphan Drug Act, including written recommendations for investigations of orphan drugs, a 7-year period of exclusive marketing, and treatment use of investigational orphan drugs. This part is also intended to satisfy Congress’ requirements that FDA promulgate procedures for the implementation of sections 525(a) and 526(a) of the act.

§ 316.3 Definitions.

(a) The definitions and interpretations contained in section 201 of the act apply to those terms when used in this part.

(b) The following definitions of terms apply to this part:

(2) Active moiety means the molecule or ion, excluding those appended portions of the molecule that cause the drug to be an ester, salt (including a salt with hydrogen or coordination bonds), or other noncovalent derivative (such as a complex, chelate, or clathrate) of the molecule, responsible for the physiological or pharmacological action of the drug substance.

(3) Clinically superior means that a drug is shown to provide a significant therapeutic advantage over and above that provided by an approved orphan drug (that is otherwise the same drug) in one or more of the following ways:
(i) Greater effectiveness than an approved orphan drug (as assessed by effect on a clinically meaningful endpoint in adequate and well controlled clinical trials). Generally, this would represent the same kind of evidence needed to support a comparative effectiveness claim for two different drugs; in most cases, direct comparative clinical trials would be necessary; or
(ii) Greater safety in a substantial portion of the target populations, for example, by the elimination of an ingredient or contaminant that is associated with relatively frequent adverse effects. In some cases, direct comparative clinical trials will be necessary; or
(iii) In unusual cases, where neither greater safety nor greater effectiveness has been shown, a demonstration that the drug otherwise makes a major contribution to patient care.

(4) Director means the Director of FDA’s Office of Orphan Products Development.

(5) FDA means the Food and Drug Administration.

(6) Holder means the sponsor in whose name an orphan drug is designated and approved.

(7) IND means an investigational new drug application under part 312 of this chapter.

(8) Manufacturer means any person or agency engaged in the manufacture of a drug that is subject to investigation and approval under the act or the biologics provisions of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 262–263).

(9) Marketing application means an application for approval of a new drug filed under section 505(b) of the act or an application for a biologics license submitted under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 262).

(10) Orphan drug means a drug intended for use in a rare disease or condition as defined in section 526 of the act.

(11) Orphan-drug designation means FDA’s act of granting a request for designation under section 526 of the act.

(12) Orphan-drug exclusive approval or exclusive approval means that, effective on the date of FDA approval as stated
in the approval letter of a marketing application for a sponsor of a designated orphan drug, no approval will be given to a subsequent sponsor of the same drug product for the same indication for 7 years, except as otherwise provided by law or in this part.

(13) **Same drug** means:

(i) If it is a drug composed of small molecules, a drug that contains the same active moiety as a previously approved drug and is intended for the same use as the previously approved drug, even if the particular ester or salt (including a salt with hydrogen or coordination bonds) or other noncovalent derivative such as a complex, chelate or clathrate has not been previously approved, except that if the subsequent drug can be shown to be clinically superior to the first drug, it will not be considered to be the same drug.

(ii) If it is a drug composed of large molecules (macromolecules), a drug that contains the same principal molecular structural features (but not necessarily all of the same structural features) and is intended for the same use as a previously approved drug, except that, if the subsequent drug can be shown to be clinically superior, it will not be considered to be the same drug.

(14) **Sponsor** means the entity that assumes responsibility for a clinical or nonclinical investigation of a drug, including the responsibility for compliance with applicable provisions of the act and regulations. A sponsor may be an individual, partnership, corporation, or Government agency and may be a manufacturer, scientific institution, or an investigator regularly and lawfully engaged in the investigation of drugs. For purposes of the Orphan Drug Act, FDA considers the real party or parties in interest to be a sponsor.

\[57 \text{ FR } 62085, \text{ Dec. 29, 1992, as amended at } 64 \text{ FR } 402, \text{ Jan. 5, 1999; } 64 \text{ FR } 56449, \text{ Oct. 20, 1999}\]

§ 316.4 Address for submissions.

All correspondence and requests for FDA action pursuant to the provisions of this rule should be addressed as follows: Office of Orphan Products Development (HF–35), Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

Subpart B—Written Recommendations for Investigations of Orphan Drugs

§ 316.10 Content and format of a request for written recommendations.

(a) A sponsor’s request for written recommendations from FDA concerning the nonclinical and clinical investigations necessary for approval of a marketing application shall be submitted in the form and contain the information required in this section. FDA may require the sponsor to submit information in addition to that specified in paragraph (b) of this section if FDA determines that the sponsor’s initial request does not contain...
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 316.10

adequate information on which to base recommendations.

(b) A sponsor shall submit two copies of a completed, dated, and signed request for written recommendations that contains the following:

(1) The sponsor’s name and address.

(2) A statement that the sponsor is requesting written recommendations on orphan-drug development under section 525 of the act.

(3) The name of the sponsor’s primary contact person and/or resident agent, and the person’s title, address, and telephone number.

(4) The generic name and trade name, if any, of the drug and a list of the drug product’s components or description of the drug product’s formulation, and chemical and physical properties.

(5) The proposed dosage form and route of administration.

(6) A description of the disease or condition for which the drug is proposed to be investigated and the proposed indication or indications for use for such disease or condition.

(7) Current regulatory and marketing status and history of the drug product, including:

(i) Whether the product is the subject of an IND or a marketing application (if the product is the subject of an IND or a marketing application, the IND or marketing application numbers should be stated and the investigational or approved indication or indications for use specified);

(ii) Known marketing experience or investigational status outside the United States;

(iii) So far as is known or can be determined, all indications previously or currently under investigation anywhere;

(iv) All adverse regulatory actions taken by the United States or foreign authorities.

(8) The basis for concluding that the drug is for a disease or condition that is rare in the United States, including the following:

(i) The size and other known demographic characteristics of the patient population affected and the source of this information.

(ii) For drugs intended for diseases or conditions afflicting 200,000 or more people in the United States, or for a vaccine, diagnostic drug, or preventive drug that would be given to 200,000 or more persons per year, a summary of the sponsor’s basis for believing that the disease or condition described in paragraph (b)(6) of this section occurs so infrequently that there is no reasonable expectation that the costs of drug development and marketing will be recovered in future sales of the drug in the United States. The estimated costs and sales data should be submitted as provided for in §316.21(c).

(9) A summary and analysis of available data on the pharmacologic effects of the drug.

(10) A summary and analysis of available nonclinical and clinical data pertinent to the drug and the disease to be studied including copies of pertinent published reports. When a drug proposed for orphan drug designation is intended to treat a life-threatening or severely debilitating illness, especially where no satisfactory alternative therapy exists, the sponsor may wish voluntarily to provide this information. A sponsor of such a drug may be entitled to expeditious development, evaluation, and marketing under 21 CFR part 312, subpart E.

(11) An explanation of how the data summarized and analyzed under paragraphs (b)(9) and (b)(10) of this section support the rationale for use of the drug in the rare disease or condition.

(12) A definition of the population from which subjects will be identified for clinical trials, if known.

(13) A detailed outline of any protocols under which the drug has been or is being studied for the rare disease or condition and a summary and analysis of any available data from such studies.

(14) The sponsor’s proposal as to the scope of nonclinical and clinical investigations needed to establish the safety and effectiveness of the drug.

(15) Detailed protocols for each proposed United States or foreign clinical investigation, if available.

(16) Specific questions to be addressed by FDA in its recommendations for nonclinical laboratory studies and clinical investigations.

§ 316.12 Providing written recommendations.

(a) FDA will provide the sponsor with written recommendations concerning the nonclinical laboratory studies and clinical investigations necessary for approval of a marketing application if none of the reasons described in § 316.14 for refusing to do so applies.

(b) When a sponsor seeks written recommendations at a stage of drug development at which advice on any clinical investigations, or on particular investigations would be premature, FDA’s response may be limited to written recommendations concerning only nonclinical laboratory studies, or only certain of the clinical studies (e.g., Phase 1 studies as described in § 312.21 of this chapter). Prior to providing written recommendations for the clinical investigations required to achieve marketing approval, FDA may require that the results of the nonclinical laboratory studies or completed early clinical studies be submitted to FDA for agency review.

§ 316.14 Refusal to provide written recommendations.

(a) FDA may refuse to provide written recommendations concerning the nonclinical laboratory studies and clinical investigations necessary for approval of a marketing application for any of the following reasons:

1. The information required to be submitted by §316.10(b) has not been submitted, or the information submitted is incomplete.

2. There is insufficient information about:
   (i) The drug to identify the active moiety and its physical and chemical properties, if these characteristics can be determined; or
   (ii) The disease or condition to determine that the disease or condition is rare in the United States; or
   (iii) The reasons for believing that the drug may be useful for treating the rare disease or condition with that drug; or
   (iv) The regulatory and marketing history of the drug to determine the scope and type of investigations that have already been conducted on the drug for the rare disease or condition; or

3. The specific questions for which the sponsor seeks the advice of the agency are unclear or are not sufficiently specific.

4. On the basis of the information submitted and on other information available to the agency, FDA determines that the disease or condition for which the drug is intended is not rare in the United States.

5. On the basis of the information submitted and on other information available to the agency, FDA determines that there is an inadequate basis for permitting investigational use of the drug under part 312 of this chapter for the rare disease or condition.

6. The request for information contains an untrue statement of material fact.

(b) A refusal to provide written recommendations will be in writing and will include a statement of the reason for FDA’s refusal. Where practicable, FDA will describe the information or material it requires or the conditions the sponsor must meet for FDA to provide recommendations.

(c) Within 90 days after the date of a letter from FDA requesting additional information or material or setting forth the conditions that the sponsor is asked to meet, the sponsor shall either:

1. Provide the information or material or amend the request for written recommendations to meet the conditions sought by FDA; or

2. Withdraw the request for written recommendations. FDA will consider a sponsor’s failure to respond within 90 days to an FDA letter requesting information or material or setting forth conditions to be met to be a withdrawal of the request for written recommendations.

Subpart C—Designation of an Orphan Drug

§ 316.20 Content and format of a request for orphan-drug designation.

(a) A sponsor that submits a request for orphan-drug designation of a drug for a specified rare disease or condition shall submit each request in the form.
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 316.21 Verification of orphan-drug status.

(a) So that FDA can determine whether a drug qualifies for orphan-drug designation under section 526(a) of
§316.21 the act, the sponsor shall include in its request to FDA for orphan-drug designation under §316.20 either:

(1) Documentation as described in paragraph (b) of this section that the number of people affected by the disease or condition for which the drug product is indicated is fewer than 200,000 persons; or

(2) Documentation as described in paragraph (c) of this section that demonstrates that there is no reasonable expectation that the sales of the drug will be sufficient to offset the costs of developing the drug for the U.S. market and the costs of making the drug available in the United States.

(b) For the purpose of documenting that the number of people affected by the disease or condition for which the drug product is indicated is less than 200,000 persons, “prevalence” is defined as the number of persons in the United States who have been diagnosed as having the disease or condition at the time of the submission of the request for orphan-drug designation. To document the number of persons in the United States who have the disease or condition for which the drug is to be indicated, the sponsor shall submit to FDA evidence showing:

(1) The estimated prevalence of the disease or condition for which the drug is being developed, together with a list of the sources (including dates of information provided and literature citations) for the estimate;

(2) Upon request by FDA, the estimated prevalence of any other disease or condition for which the drug has already been approved or for which the drug is currently being developed, together with an explanation of the bases of these estimates; and

(3) The estimated number of people to whom the drug will be administered annually if the drug is a vaccine or is a drug intended for diagnosis or prevention of a rare disease or condition, together with an explanation of the bases of these estimates (including dates of information provided and literature citations).

(c) When submitting documentation that there is no reasonable expectation that costs of research and development of the drug for the disease or condition can be recovered by sales of the drug in the United States, the sponsor shall submit to FDA:

(1) Data on all costs that the sponsor has incurred in the course of developing the drug for the U.S. market. These costs shall include, but are not limited to, nonclinical laboratory studies, clinical studies, dosage form development, record and report maintenance, meetings with FDA, determination of patentability, preparation of designation request, IND/marketing application preparation, distribution of the drug under a “treatment” protocol, licensing costs, liability insurance, and overhead and depreciation. Furthermore, the sponsor shall demonstrate the reasonableness of the cost data. For example, if the sponsor has incurred costs for clinical investigations, the sponsor shall provide information on the number of investigations, the years in which they took place, and on the scope, duration, and number of patients that were involved in each investigation.

(2) If the drug was developed wholly or in part outside the United States, in addition to the documentation listed in paragraph (c)(1) of this section:

(i) Data on and justification for all costs that the sponsor has incurred outside of the United States in the course of developing the drug for the U.S. market. The justification, in addition to demonstrating the reasonableness of the cost data, must also explain the method that was used to determine which portion of the foreign development costs should be applied to the U.S. market, and what percent these costs are of total worldwide development costs. Any data submitted to foreign government authorities to support drug pricing determinations must be included with this information.

(ii) Data that show which foreign development costs were recovered through cost recovery procedures that are allowed during drug development in some foreign countries. For example, if the sponsor charged patients for the drug during clinical investigations, the revenues collected by the sponsor must be reported to FDA.

(3) In cases where the drug has already been approved for marketing for any indication or in cases where the drug is currently under investigation...
for one or more other indications (in addition to the indication for which orphan-drug designation is being sought), a clear explanation of and justification for the method that is used to apportion the development costs among the various indications.

(4) A statement of and justification for any development costs that the sponsor expects to incur after the submission of the designation request. In cases where the extent of these future development costs are not clear, the sponsor should request FDA’s advice and assistance in estimating the scope of nonclinical laboratory studies and clinical investigations and other data that are needed to support marketing approval. Based on these recommendations, a cost estimate should be prepared.

(5) A statement of and justification for production and marketing costs that the sponsor has incurred in the past and expects to incur during the first 7 years that the drug is marketed.

(6) An estimate of and justification for the expected revenues from sales of the drug in the United States during its first 7 years of marketing. The justification should assume that the total market for the drug is equal to the prevalence of the disease or condition that the drug will be used to treat. The justification should include:

(i) An estimate of the expected market share of the drug in each of the first 7 years that it is marketed, together with an explanation of the basis for that estimate;

(ii) A projection of and justification for the price at which the drug will be sold; and

(iii) Comparisons with sales of similarly situated drugs, where available.

(7) The name of each country where the drug has already been approved for marketing for any indication, the dates of approval, the indication for which the drug is approved, and the annual sales and number of prescriptions in each country since the first approval date.

(8) A report of an independent certified public accountant in accordance with Statement on Standards for Attestation established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants on agreed upon procedures performed with respect to the data estimates and justifications submitted pursuant to this section. Cost data shall be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

(d) A sponsor that is requesting orphan-drug designation for a drug designed to treat a disease or condition that affects 200,000 or more persons shall, at FDA’s request, allow FDA or FDA-designated personnel to examine at reasonable times and in a reasonable manner all relevant financial records and sales data of the sponsor and manufacturer.

§ 316.22 Permanent-resident agent for foreign sponsor.

Every foreign sponsor that seeks orphan-drug designation shall name a permanent resident of the United States as the sponsor’s agent upon whom service of all processes, notices, orders, decisions, requirements, and other communications may be made on behalf of the sponsor. Notifications of changes in such agents or changes of address of agents should preferably be provided in advance, but not later than 60 days after the effective date of such changes. The permanent-resident agent may be an individual, firm, or domestic corporation and may represent any number of sponsors. The name of the permanent-resident agent shall be provided to: Office of Orphan Products Development (HF–35), Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

§ 316.23 Timing of requests for orphan-drug designation; designation of already approved drugs.

(a) A sponsor may request orphan-drug designation at any time in the drug development process prior to the submission of a marketing application for the drug product for the orphan indication.

(b) A sponsor may request orphan-drug designation of an already approved drug product for an unapproved use without regard to whether the prior marketing approval was for an orphan-drug indication.
§ 316.24 Granting orphan-drug designation.

(a) FDA will grant the request for orphan-drug designation if none of the reasons described in §316.25 for requiring or permitting refusal to grant such a request applies.

(b) When a request for orphan-drug designation is granted, FDA will notify the sponsor in writing and will publicize the orphan-drug designation in accordance with §316.28.

§ 316.25 Refusal to grant orphan-drug designation.

(a) FDA will refuse to grant a request for orphan-drug designation if any of the following reasons apply:

(1) The drug is not intended for a rare disease or condition because:

(i) There is insufficient evidence to support the estimate that the drug is intended for treatment of a disease or condition in fewer than 200,000 people in the United States, or that the drug is intended for use in prevention or in diagnosis in fewer than 200,000 people annually in the United States; or

(ii) Where the drug is intended for prevention, diagnosis, or treatment of a disease or condition affecting 200,000 or more people in the United States, the sponsor has failed to demonstrate that there is no reasonable expectation that development and production costs will be recovered from sales of the drug for the orphan indication in the United States. A sponsor’s failure to comply with §316.21 shall constitute a failure to make the demonstration required in this paragraph.

(2) There is insufficient information about the drug, or the disease or condition for which it is intended, to establish a medically plausible basis for expecting the drug to be effective in the prevention, diagnosis, or treatment of that disease or condition.

(3) A drug that is otherwise the same drug as one that already has orphan-drug exclusive approval for the same rare disease or condition and the sponsor has not submitted a medically plausible hypothesis for the possible clinical superiority of the subsequent drug.

(b) FDA may refuse to grant a request for orphan-drug designation if the request for designation contains an untrue statement of material fact or omits material information.

§ 316.26 Amendment to orphan-drug designation.

(a) At any time prior to approval of a marketing application for a designated orphan drug, the sponsor holding designation may apply for an amendment to the indication stated in the orphan-drug designation if the proposed change is due to new and unexpected findings in research on the drugs, information arising from FDA recommendations, or unforeseen developments in treatment or diagnosis of the disease or condition.

(b) FDA will grant the amendment if it finds that the initial designation request was made in good faith and that the amendment is intended to conform the orphan-drug designation indication to the results of unanticipated research findings, to unforeseen developments in the treatment or diagnosis of the disease or condition, or to changes based on FDA recommendations, and that, as of the date of the submission of the amendment request, the amendment would not result in exceeding the prevalence or cost recovery thresholds in §316.21 (a)(1) or (a)(2) upon which the drug was originally designated.

§ 316.27 Change in ownership of orphan-drug designation.

(a) A sponsor may transfer ownership of or any beneficial interest in the orphan-drug designation of a drug to a new sponsor. At the time of the transfer, the new and former owners are required to submit the following information to FDA:

(1) The former owner or assignor of rights shall submit a letter or other document that states that all or some rights to the orphan-drug designation of the drug have been transferred to the new owner or assignee and that a complete copy of the request for orphan-drug designation, including any amendments to the request, supplements to the granted request, and correspondence relevant to the orphan-drug designation, has been provided to the new owner or assignee.

untrue statement of material fact or omits material information.
§ 316.30 Annual reports of holder of orphan-drug designation.

Within 14 months after the date on which a drug was designated as an orphan drug and annually thereafter until marketing approval, the sponsor of a designated drug shall submit a brief progress report to the FDA Office of Orphan Products Development on the drug that includes:

(a) A short account of the progress of drug development including a review of preclinical and clinical studies initiated, ongoing, and completed and a short summary of the status or results of such studies.

(b) A description of the investigational plan for the coming year, as well as any anticipated difficulties in development, testing, and marketing; and

(c) A brief discussion of any changes that may affect the orphan-drug status of the product. For example, for products nearing the end of the approval process, sponsors should discuss any

§ 316.29 Revocation of orphan-drug designation.

(a) FDA may revoke orphan-drug designation for any drug if the agency finds that:

(1) The request for designation contained an untrue statement of material fact; or

(2) The request for designation omitted material information required by this part; or

(3) FDA subsequently finds that the drug in fact had not been eligible for orphan-drug designation at the time of submission of the request therefor.

(b) For an approved drug, revocation of orphan-drug designation also suspends or withdraws the sponsor’s exclusive marketing rights for the drug but not the approval of the drug’s marketing application.

(c) Where a drug has been designated as an orphan drug because the prevalence of a disease or condition (or, in the case of vaccines, diagnostic drugs, or preventive drugs, the target population) is under 200,000 in the United States at the time of designation, its designation will not be revoked on the ground that the prevalence of the disease or condition (or the target population) becomes more than 200,000 persons.

§ 316.28 Publication of orphan-drug designations.

Each month FDA will update a publicly available list of drugs designated as orphan drugs. A cumulative, updated list of all designated drugs will be provided annually. These will be placed on file at the FDA Dockets Management Branch, and will contain the following information:

(a) The name and address of the manufacturer and sponsor;

(b) The generic name and trade name, if any, of the drug and the date of the granting of orphan-drug designation;

(c) The rare disease or condition for which orphan-drug designation was granted; and

(d) The proposed indication for use of the drug.
§ 316.31 Scope of orphan-drug exclusive approval.

(a) After approval of a sponsor’s marketing application for a designated orphan-drug product for treatment of the rare disease or condition concerning which orphan-drug designation was granted, FDA will not approve another sponsor’s marketing application for the same drug before the expiration of 7 years from the date of such approval as stated in the approval letter from FDA, except that such a marketing application can be approved sooner if, and such time as, any of the following occurs:

(1) Withdrawal of exclusive approval or revocation of orphan-drug designation by FDA under any provision of this part; or

(2) Withdrawal for any reason of the marketing application for the drug in question; or

(3) Consent by the holder of exclusive approval to permit another marketing application to gain approval; or

(4) Failure of the holder of exclusive approval to assure a sufficient quantity of the drug under section 527 of the act and §316.36.

(b) If a sponsor’s marketing application for a drug product is determined not to be approvable because approval is barred under section 527 of the act until the expiration of the period of exclusive marketing of another drug product, FDA will so notify the sponsor in writing.

§ 316.34 FDA recognition of exclusive approval.

(a) FDA will send the sponsor (or, the permanent-resident agent, if applicable) timely written notice recognizing exclusive approval once the marketing application for a designated orphan-drug product has been approved. The written notice will inform the sponsor of the requirements for maintaining orphan-drug exclusive approval for the full 7-year term of exclusive approval.

(b) When a marketing application is approved for a designated orphan drug that qualifies for exclusive approval, FDA will publish in its publication entitled “Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations” information identifying the sponsor, the drug, and the date of termination of the orphan-drug exclusive approval.

A subscription to this publication and its monthly cumulative supplements is available from the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325.

§ 316.36 Insufficient quantities of orphan drugs.

(a) Under section 527 of the act, whenever the Director has reason to believe that the holder of exclusive approval cannot assure the availability of sufficient quantities of an orphan drug to meet the needs of patients with the disease or condition for which the drug was designated, the Director will so notify the holder of this possible insufficiency and will offer the holder one of the following options, which must be exercised by a time that the Director specifies:

(1) Provide the Director in writing, or orally, or both, at the Director’s discretion, views and data as to how the holder can assure the availability of sufficient quantities of the orphan drug within a reasonable time to meet the needs of patients with the disease or condition for which the drug was designated; or

(2) Provide the Director in writing the holder’s consent for the approval of other marketing applications for the same drug before the expiration of the 7-year period of exclusive approval.

(b) If, within the time that the Director specifies, the holder fails to consent to the approval of other marketing applications and if the Director finds that the holder has not shown that it can assure the availability of sufficient quantities of the orphan drug to meet the needs of patients with the disease or condition for which the drug was designated, the Director will issue a written order withdrawing the drug product’s exclusive approval. This
order will embody the Director’s findings and conclusions and will constitute final agency action. An order withdrawing the sponsor’s exclusive marketing rights may issue whether or not there are other sponsors that can assure the availability of alternative sources of supply. Once withdrawn under this section, exclusive approval may not be reinstated for that drug.

Subpart E—Open Protocols for Investigations

§ 316.40 Treatment use of a designated orphan drug.

Prospective investigators seeking to obtain treatment use of designated orphan drugs may do so as provided in §312.34 of this chapter.

Subpart F—Availability of Information

§ 316.50 Guidance documents.

FDA’s Office of Orphan Products Development will maintain and make publicly available a list of guidance documents that apply to the regulations in this part. The list is maintained on the Internet and is published annually in the FEDERAL REGISTER. A request for a copy of the list should be directed to the Office of Orphan Products Development (HF–35), Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

[65 FR 56480, Sept. 19, 2000]

§ 316.52 Availability for public disclosure of data and information in requests and applications.

(a) FDA will not publicly disclose the existence of a request for orphan-drug designation under section 526 of the act prior to final FDA action on the request unless the existence of the request has been previously publicly disclosed or acknowledged.

(b) Whether or not the existence of a pending request for designation has been publicly disclosed or acknowledged, no data or information in the request are available for public disclosure prior to final FDA action on the request.

(c) Upon final FDA action on a request for designation, FDA will determine the public availability of data and information in the request in accordance with part 20 and §314.430 of this chapter and other applicable statutes and regulations.

(d) In accordance with §316.28, FDA will make a cumulative list of all orphan drug designations available to the public and update such list monthly.

(e) FDA will not publicly disclose the existence of a pending marketing application for a designated orphan drug for the use for which the drug was designated unless the existence of the application has been previously publicly disclosed or acknowledged.

(f) FDA will determine the public availability of data and information contained in pending and approved marketing applications for a designated orphan drug for the use for which the drug was designated in accordance with part 20 and §314.430 of this chapter and other applicable statutes and regulations.

PART 320—BIOAVAILABILITY AND BIOEQUIVALENCE REQUIREMENTS

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

320.1 Definitions.

Subpart B—Procedures for Determining the Bioavailability or Bioequivalence of Drug Products

320.21 Requirements for submission of in vivo bioavailability and bioequivalence data.

320.22 Criteria for waiver of evidence of in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence.

320.23 Basis for demonstrating in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence.

320.24 Types of evidence to establish bioavailability or bioequivalence.

320.25 Guidelines for the conduct of an in vivo bioavailability study.

320.26 Guidelines on the design of a single-dose in vivo bioavailability study.

320.27 Guidelines on the design of a multiple-dose in vivo bioavailability study.

320.28 Correlation of bioavailability with an acute pharmacological effect or clinical evidence.

320.29 Analytical methods for an in vivo bioavailability study.

320.30 Inquiries regarding bioavailability and bioequivalence requirements and review of protocols by the Food and Drug Administration.
§ 320.1 Definitions.
(a) Bioavailability means the rate and extent to which the active ingredient or active moiety is absorbed from a drug product and becomes available at the site of action. For drug products that are not intended to be absorbed into the bloodstream, bioavailability may be assessed by measurements intended to reflect the rate and extent to which the active ingredient or active moiety becomes available at the site of action.
(b) Drug product means a finished dosage form, e.g., tablet, capsule, or solution, that contains the active drug ingredient, generally, but not necessarily, in association with inactive ingredients.
(c) Pharmaceutical equivalents means drug products that contain identical amounts of the identical active drug ingredient, i.e., the same salt or ester of the same therapeutic moiety, in identical dosage forms, but not necessarily containing the same inactive ingredients, and that meet the identical compendial or other applicable standard of identity, strength, quality, and purity, including potency and, where applicable, content uniformity, disintegration times and/or dissolution rates.
(d) Pharmaceutical alternatives means drug products that contain the identical therapeutic moiety, or its precursor, but not necessarily in the same amount or dosage form or as the same salt or ester. Each such drug product individually meets either the identical or its own respective compendial or other applicable standard of identity, strength, quality, and purity, including potency and, where applicable, content uniformity, disintegration times and/or dissolution rates.
(e) Bioequivalence means the absence of a significant difference in the rate and extent to which the active ingredient or active moiety in pharmaceutical equivalents or pharmaceutical alternatives becomes available at the site of drug action when administered at the same molar dose under similar conditions in an appropriately designed study. Where there is an intentional difference in rate (e.g., in certain controlled release dosage forms), certain pharmaceutical equivalents or alternatives may be considered bioequivalent if there is no significant difference in the extent to which the active ingredient or moiety becomes available at the site of drug action. This applies only if the difference in the rate at which the active ingredient or moiety becomes available at the site of drug action is intentional and is reflected in the proposed labeling, is not essential to the attainment of effective body drug concentrations on chronic use, and is considered medically insignificant for the drug.
(f) Bioequivalence requirement means a requirement imposed by the Food and Drug Administration for in vitro and/or in vivo testing of specified drug products which must be satisfied as a condition of marketing.

Subpart B—Procedures for Determining the Bioavailability or Bioequivalence of Drug Products

§ 320.21 Requirements for submission of in vivo bioavailability and bioequivalence data.
(a) Any person submitting a full new drug application to the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) shall include in the application either:
(1) Evidence demonstrating the in vivo bioavailability of the drug product
that is the subject of the application; or
(2) Information to permit FDA to waive the submission of evidence demonstrating in vivo bioavailability.

(b) Any person submitting an abbreviated new drug application to FDA shall include in the application either:
(1) Evidence demonstrating that the drug product that is the subject of the abbreviated new drug application is bioequivalent to the reference listed drug (defined in §314.3(b)); or
(2) Information to show that the drug product is bioequivalent to the reference listed drug which would permit FDA to waive the submission of evidence demonstrating bioequivalence as provided in paragraph (f) of this section.

(c) Any person submitting a supplemental application to FDA shall include in the supplemental application the evidence or information set forth in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section if the supplemental application proposes any of the following changes:
(1) A change in the manufacturing process, including a change in product formulation or dosage strength, beyond the variations provided for in the approved application.
(2) A change in the labeling to provide for a new indication for use of the drug product, if clinical studies are required to support the new indication for use.
(3) A change in the labeling to provide for a new dosage regimen or for an additional dosage regimen for a special patient population, e.g., infants, if clinical studies are required to support the new or additional dosage regimen.

(d) FDA may approve a full new drug application, or a supplemental application proposing any of the changes set forth in paragraph (c) of this section, that does not contain evidence of in vivo bioavailability or information to permit waiver of the requirement for in vivo bioavailability data, if all of the following conditions are met.
(1) The application was under review by FDA on July 7, 1977.
(2) The application is otherwise approvable.
(3) The application agrees to submit, within the time specified by FDA, either:
(i) Evidence demonstrating the in vivo bioavailability of the drug product that is the subject of the application; or
(ii) Information to permit FDA to waive demonstration of in vivo bioavailability.

(e) Evidence demonstrating the in vivo bioavailability and bioequivalence of a drug product shall be obtained using one of the approaches for determining bioavailability set forth in §320.24.

(f) Information to permit FDA to waive the submission of evidence demonstrating the in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence shall meet the criteria set forth in §320.24.

(g) Any person holding an approved full or abbreviated new drug application shall submit to FDA a supplemental application containing new evidence demonstrating the in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence of the drug product that is the subject of the application if notified by FDA that:
(1) There are data demonstrating that the dosage regimen in the labeling is based on incorrect assumptions or facts regarding the pharmacokinetics of the drug product and that following this dosage regimen could potentially result in subtherapeutic or toxic levels; or
(2) There are data demonstrating significant intra-batch and batch-to-batch variability, e.g., plus or minus 25 percent, in the bioavailability of the drug product.

(h) The requirements of this section regarding the submission of evidence demonstrating in vivo bioavailability and bioequivalence apply only to a full or abbreviated new drug application or a supplemental application for a finished dosage formulation.

[57 FR 17998, Apr. 28, 1992]
§ 320.22

drug product that is the subject of the application. An applicant shall submit a request for waiver with the application. Except as provided in paragraph (g) of this section, FDA shall waive the requirement for the submission of evidence of in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence if the drug product meets any of the provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), (d), or (e) of this section.

(b) For certain drug products, the in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence of the drug product may be self-evident. FDA shall waive the requirement for the submission of evidence obtained in vivo demonstrating the bioavailability or bioequivalence of these drug products. A drug product’s in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence may be considered self-evident based on other data in the application if the product meets one of the following criteria:

(1) The drug product:

(i) Is a parenteral solution intended solely for administration by injection, or an ophthalmic or otic solution; and

(ii) Contains the same active and inactive ingredients in the same concentration as a drug product that is the subject of an approved full new drug application.

(2) The drug product:

(i) Is administered by inhalation as a gas, e.g., a medicinal or an inhalation anesthetic; and

(ii) Contains an active ingredient in the same dosage form as a drug product that is the subject of an approved full new drug application.

(3) The drug product:

(i) Is a solution for application to the skin, an oral solution, elixir, syrup, tincture, or similar other solubilized form.

(ii) Contains an active drug ingredient in the same concentration and dosage form as a drug product that is the subject of an approved full new drug application; and

(iii) Contains no inactive ingredient or other change in formulation from the drug product that is the subject of the approved full new drug application that may significantly affect absorption of the active drug ingredient or active moiety.

(c) FDA shall waive the requirement for the submission of evidence demonstrating the in vivo bioavailability of a solid oral dosage form (other than an enteric coated or controlled release dosage form) of a drug product determined to be effective for at least one indication in a Drug Efficacy Study Implementation notice or which is identical, related, or similar to such a drug product under §310.6 of this chapter unless FDA has evaluated the drug product under the criteria set forth in §320.32, included the drug product in the Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations List, and rated the drug product as having a known or potential bioequivalence problem. A drug product so rated reflects a determination by FDA that an in vivo bioequivalence study is required.

(d) For certain drug products, bioavailability or bioequivalence may be demonstrated by evidence obtained in vitro in lieu of in vivo data. FDA shall waive the requirement for the submission of evidence obtained in vivo demonstrating the bioavailability of the drug product if the drug product meets one of the following criteria:

(1) [Reserved]

(2) The drug product is in the same dosage form, but in a different strength, and is proportionally similar in its active and inactive ingredients to another drug product for which the same manufacturer has obtained approval and the conditions in paragraphs (d)(2)(i) through (d)(2)(iii) of this section are met:

(i) The bioavailability of this other drug product has been demonstrated;

(ii) Both drug products meet an appropriate in vitro test approved by FDA; and

(iii) The applicant submits evidence showing that both drug products are proportionally similar in their active and inactive ingredients.

(iv) This subparagraph does not apply to enteric coated or controlled release dosage forms.

(3) The drug product is, on the basis of scientific evidence submitted in the application, shown to meet an in vitro test that has been correlated with in vivo data.

(4) The drug product is a reformulated product that is identical, except
for a different color, flavor, or preservative that could not affect the bioavailability of the reformulated product, to another drug product for which the same manufacturer has obtained approval and the following conditions are met:

(i) The bioavailability of the other product has been demonstrated; and

(ii) Both drug products meet an appropriate in vitro test approved by FDA.

(e) FDA, for good cause, may waive a requirement for the submission of evidence of in vivo bioavailability if waiver is compatible with the protection of the public health. For full new drug applications, FDA may defer a requirement for the submission of evidence of in vivo bioavailability if deferral is compatible with the protection of the public health.

(f) FDA, for good cause, may require evidence of in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence for any drug product if the agency determines that any difference between the drug product and a listed drug may affect the bioavailability or bioequivalence of the drug product.

§ 320.23 Basis for demonstrating in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence.

(a)(1) The in vivo bioavailability of a drug product is demonstrated if the product’s rate and extent of absorption, as determined by comparison of measured parameters, e.g., concentration of the active drug ingredient in the blood, urinary excretion rates, or pharmacological effects, do not indicate a significant difference from the reference material’s rate and extent of absorption. For drug products that are not intended to be absorbed into the bloodstream, bioavailability may be assessed by measurements intended to reflect the rate and extent to which the active ingredient or active moiety becomes available at the site of action.

(2) Statistical techniques used shall be of sufficient sensitivity to detect differences in rate and extent of absorption that are not attributable to subject variability.

(3) A drug product that differs from the reference material in its rate of absorption, but not in its extent of absorption, may be considered to be bioavailable if the difference in the rate of absorption is intentional, is appropriately reflected in the labeling, is not essential to the attainment of effective body drug concentrations on chronic use, and is considered medically insignificant for the drug product.

(b) Two drug products will be considered bioequivalent drug products if they are pharmaceutical equivalents or pharmaceutical alternatives whose rate and extent of absorption do not show a significant difference when administered at the same molar dose of the active moiety under similar experimental conditions, either single dose or multiple dose. Some pharmaceutical equivalents or pharmaceutical alternatives may be equivalent in the extent of their absorption but not in their rate of absorption and yet may be considered bioequivalent because such differences in the rate of absorption are intentional and are reflected in the labeling, are not essential to the attainment of effective body drug concentrations on chronic use, and are considered medically insignificant for the particular drug product studied.

§ 320.24 Types of evidence to establish bioavailability or bioequivalence.

(a) Bioavailability or bioequivalence may be determined by several in vivo and in vitro methods. FDA may require in vivo or in vitro testing, or both, to establish the bioavailability of a drug product or the bioequivalence of specific drug products. Information on bioequivalence requirements for specific products is included in the current edition of FDA’s publication “Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations” and any current supplement to the publication. The selection of the method used to meet an in vivo or in vitro testing requirement depends upon the purpose of the study, the analytical methods available, and the nature of the drug product. Applicants shall conduct bioavailability and bioequivalence testing using the most accurate, sensitive, and reproducible approach available among those set forth in paragraph (b) of this
section. The method used must be capable of demonstrating bioavailability or bioequivalence, as appropriate, for the product being tested.

(b) The following in vivo and in vitro approaches, in descending order of accuracy, sensitivity, and reproducibility, are acceptable for determining the bioavailability or bioequivalence of a drug product.

(1)(i) An in vivo test in humans in which the concentration of the active ingredient or active moiety, and, when appropriate, its active metabolite(s), in whole blood, plasma, serum, or other appropriate biological fluid is measured as a function of time. This approach is particularly applicable to dosage forms intended to deliver the active moiety to the bloodstream for systemic distribution within the body; or

(ii) An in vitro test that has been correlated with and is predictive of human in vivo bioavailability data; or

(iii) An in vivo test in animals that has been correlated with and is predictive of human bioavailability data.

(2) An in vivo test in humans in which the urinary excretion of the active moiety, and, when appropriate, its active metabolite(s), are measured as a function of time. The intervals at which measurements are taken should ordinarily be as short as possible so that the measure of the rate of elimination is as accurate as possible. Depending on the nature of the drug product, this approach may be applicable to the category of dosage forms described in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section. This method is not appropriate where urinary excretion is not a significant mechanism of elimination.

(3) An in vivo test in humans in which an appropriate acute pharmacological effect of the active moiety, and, when appropriate, its active metabolite(s), are measured as a function of time if such effect can be measured with sufficient accuracy, sensitivity, and reproducibility. This approach is applicable to the category of dosage forms described in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section only when appropriate methods are not available for measurement of the concentration of the moiety, and, when appropriate, its active metabolite(s), in biological fluids or excretory products but a method is available for the measurement of an appropriate acute pharmacological effect. This approach may be particularly applicable to dosage forms that are not intended to deliver the active moiety to the bloodstream for systemic distribution.

(4) Well-controlled clinical trials in humans that establish the safety and effectiveness of the drug product, for purposes of establishing bioavailability, or appropriately designed comparative clinical trials, for purposes of demonstrating bioequivalence. This approach is the least accurate, sensitive, and reproducible of the general approaches for determining bioavailability or bioequivalence. For dosage forms intended to deliver the active moiety to the bloodstream for systemic distribution, this approach may be considered acceptable only when analytical methods cannot be developed to permit use of one of the approaches outlined in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) and (b)(2) of this section, when the approaches described in paragraphs (b)(1)(ii), (b)(1)(iii), and (b)(3) of this section are not available. This approach may also be considered sufficiently accurate for determining the bioavailability or bioequivalence of dosage forms intended to deliver the active moiety locally, e.g., topical preparations for the skin, eye, and mucous membranes; oral dosage forms not intended to be absorbed, e.g., an antacid or radiopaque medium; and bronchodilators administered by inhalation if the onset and duration of pharmacological activity are defined.

(5) A currently available in vitro test acceptable to FDA (unusually a dissolution rate test) that ensures human in vivo bioavailability.

(6) Any other approach deemed adequate by FDA to establish bioavailability or bioequivalence.

(c) FDA may, notwithstanding prior requirements for establishing bioavailability or bioequivalence, require in vivo testing in humans of a product at any time if the agency has evidence that the product:

(1) May not produce therapeutic effects comparable to a pharmaceutical equivalent or alternative with which it is intended to be used interchangeably;
§ 320.25 Guidelines for the conduct of an in vivo bioavailability study.

(a) Guiding principles. (1) The basic principle in an in vivo bioavailability study is that no unnecessary human research should be done.

(2) An in vivo bioavailability study shall not be conducted in humans if an appropriate animal model exists and correlation of results in animals and humans has been demonstrated. If an appropriate animal model does not exist, however, an in vivo bioavailability study shall ordinarily be done in normal adults under standardized conditions.

(3) In some situations, an in vivo bioavailability study in humans may preferably and more properly be done in suitable patients. Critically ill patients shall not be included in an in vivo bioavailability study unless the attending physician determines that there is a potential benefit to the patient.

(b) Basic design. The basic design of an in vivo bioavailability study is determined by the following:

(1) The scientific questions to be answered.

(2) The nature of the reference material and the dosage form to be tested.

(3) The availability of analytical methods.

(4) Benefit-risk considerations in regard to testing in humans.

(c) Comparison to a reference material. In vivo bioavailability testing of a drug product shall be in comparison to an appropriate reference material unless some other approach is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons.

(d) Previously unmarketed active drug ingredients or therapeutic moieties. (1) The purpose of an in vivo bioavailability study involving a drug product containing an active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety that has not been approved for marketing is to determine:

(i) The bioavailability of the formulation proposed for marketing; and

(ii) The essential pharmacokinetic characteristics of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, such as the rate of absorption, the extent of absorption, the half-life of the therapeutic moiety in vivo, and the rate of excretion and/or metabolism. Dose proportionality of the active drug ingredient or the therapeutic moiety needs to be established after single-dose administration and in certain instances after multiple-dose administration. This characterization is a necessary part of the investigation of the drug to support drug labeling.

(2) The reference material in such a bioavailability study should be a solution or suspension containing the same quantity of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety as the formulation proposed for marketing.

(3) The reference material should be administered by the same route as the formulation proposed for marketing unless an alternative or additional route is necessary to answer the scientific question under study. For example, in the case of an active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety that is poorly absorbed after oral administration, it may be necessary to compare the oral dosage form proposed for marketing with the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety administered in solution both orally and intravenously.

(e) New formulations of active drug ingredients or therapeutic moieties approved for marketing. (1) The purpose of an in vivo bioavailability study involving a drug product that is a new formulation, a new dosage form, or a new salt or ester of an active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety that has been approved for marketing is to:

(i) Determine the bioavailability of the new formulation, new dosage form, or new salt or ester relative to an appropriate reference material; and

(ii) Define the pharmacokinetic parameters of the new formulation, new dosage form, or new salt or ester to establish dosage recommendation.

(2) The selection of the reference material(s) in such a bioavailability study depends upon the scientific questions to be answered, the data needed to establish comparability to a currently
§ 320.25

marketed drug product, and the data needed to establish dosage recommendations.

(3) The reference material should be taken from a current batch of a drug product that is the subject of an approved new drug application and that contains the same active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, if the new formulation, new dosage form, or new salt or ester is intended to be comparable to or to meet any comparative labeling claims made in relation to the drug product that is the subject of an approved new drug application.

(f) Controlled release formulations. (1) The purpose of an in vivo bioavailability study involving a drug product for which a controlled release claim is made is to determine if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) The drug product meets the controlled release claims made for it.

(ii) The bioavailability profile established for the drug product rules out the occurrence of any dose dumping.

(iii) The drug product’s steady-state performance is equivalent to a currently marketed noncontrolled release or controlled release drug product that contains the same active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety and that is subject to an approved full new drug application.

(iv) The drug product’s formulation provides consistent pharmacokinetic performance between individual dosage units.

(2) The reference material(s) for such a bioavailability study shall be two or more currently marketed, single-ingredient drug products each of which contains one of the active drug ingredients or therapeutic moieties in the combination drug product. The Food and Drug Administration may, for valid scientific reasons, specify that the reference material shall be a combination drug product that is the subject of an approved new drug application.

(3) The Food and Drug Administration may permit a bioavailability study involving a combination drug product to determine the rate and extent of absorption of each active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety in the combination drug product. The Food and Drug Administration may permit this determination if the pharmacokinetics and the interactions of the active drug ingredients or therapeutic moieties in the combination drug product are well known and the therapeutic activity of the combination drug product is generally recognized to reside in only one of the active drug ingredients or therapeutic moieties, e.g., ampicillin in an ampicillin-probenecid combination drug product.

(h) Use of a placebo as the reference material. Where appropriate or where necessary to demonstrate the sensitivity of the test, the reference material in a bioavailability study may be a placebo if:
(1) The study measures the therapeutic or acute pharmacological effect of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety; or

(2) The study is a clinical trial to establish the safety and effectiveness of the drug product.

(i) Standards for test drug product and reference material. (1) Both the drug product to be tested and the reference material, if it is another drug product, shall be shown to meet all compendial or other applicable standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity, including potency and, where applicable, content uniformity, disintegration times, and dissolution rates.

(2) Samples of the drug product to be tested shall be manufactured using the same equipment and under the same conditions as those used for full-scale production.

§ 320.26 Guidelines on the design of a single-dose in vivo bioavailability study.

(a) Basic principles. (1) An in vivo bioavailability study should be a single-dose comparison of the drug product to be tested and the appropriate reference material conducted in normal adults.

(2) The test product and the reference material should be administered to subjects in the fasting state, unless some other approach is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons.

(b) Study design. (1) A single-dose study should be crossover in design, unless a parallel design or other design is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons, and should provide for a drug elimination period.

(2) Unless some other approach is appropriate for valid scientific reasons, the drug elimination period should be either:

(i) At least three times the half-life of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), measured in the blood or urine; or

(ii) At least three times the half-life of decay of the acute pharmacological effect.

(c) Collection of blood samples. (1) When comparison of the test product and the reference material is to be based on blood concentration time curves, unless some other approach is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons, blood samples should be taken with sufficient frequency to permit an estimate of both:

(i) The peak concentration in the blood of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), measured; and

(ii) The total area under the curve for a time period at least three times the half-life of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), measured.

(2) In a study comparing oral dosage forms, the sampling times should be identical.

(3) In a study comparing an intravenous dosage form and an oral dosage form, the sampling times should be those needed to describe both:

(i) The distribution and elimination phase of the intravenous dosage form; and

(ii) The absorption and elimination phase of the oral dosage form.

(4) In a study comparing drug delivery systems other than oral or intravenous dosage forms with an appropriate reference standard, the sampling times should be based on valid scientific reasons.

(d) Collection of urine samples. When comparison of the test product and the reference material is to be based on cumulative urinary excretion-time curves, unless some other approach is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons, samples of the urine should be collected with sufficient frequency to permit an estimate of the rate and extent of urinary excretion of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), measured.

(e) Measurement of an acute pharmacological effect. (1) When comparison of the test product and the reference material is to be based on acute pharmacological effect-time curves, measurements of this effect should be made with sufficient frequency to permit a reasonable estimate of the total area under the curve for a time period at least three times the half-life of decay of the pharmacological effect, unless some other approach is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons.

(2) The use of an acute pharmacological effect to determine bioavailability may further require demonstration of dose-related response.
such a case, bioavailability may be determined by comparison of the dose-response curves as well as the total area under the acute pharmacological effect-time curves for any given dose.

§ 320.27 Guidelines on the design of a multiple-dose in vivo bioavailability study.

(a) Basic principles. (1) In selected circumstances it may be necessary for the test product and the reference material to be compared after repeated administration to determine steady-state levels of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety in the body.

(2) The test product and the reference material should be administered to subjects in the fasting or nonfasting state, depending upon the conditions reflected in the proposed labeling of the test product.

(3) A multiple-dose study may be required to determine the bioavailability of a drug product in the following circumstances:

(i) There is a difference in the rate of absorption but not in the extent of absorption.

(ii) There is excessive variability in bioavailability from subject to subject.

(iii) The concentration of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), in the blood resulting from a single dose is too low for accurate determination by the analytical method.

(iv) The drug product is a controlled release dosage form.

(b) Study design. (1) A multiple-dose study should be crossover in design, unless a parallel design or other design is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons, and should provide for a drug elimination period if steady-state conditions are not achieved.

(2) A multiple-dose study is not required to be of crossover design if the study is to establish dose proportionality under a multiple-dose regimen or to establish the pharmacokinetic profile of a new drug product, a new drug delivery system, or a controlled release dosage form.

(3) If a drug elimination period is required, unless some other approach is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons, the drug elimination period should be either:

(i) At least five times the half-life of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), measured in the blood or urine; or

(ii) At least five times the half-life of decay of the acute pharmacological effect.

(c) Achievement of steady-state conditions. Whenever a multiple-dose study is conducted, unless some other approach is more appropriate for valid scientific reasons, sufficient doses of the test product and reference material should be administered in accordance with the labeling to achieve steady-state conditions.

(d) Collection of blood or urine samples. (1) Whenever comparison of the test product and the reference material is to be based on blood concentration-time curves at steady-state, sufficient samples of blood should be taken to define adequately the maximum (Cmax) and minimum (Cmin) blood concentrations on 2 or more consecutive days to establish that steady-state conditions are achieved.

(2) Whenever comparison of the test product and the reference material is to be based on cumulative urinary excretion-time curves at steady-state, sufficient samples of urine should be taken to define the rate and extent of urinary excretion on 2 or more consecutive days to establish that steady-state conditions are achieved.

(3) A more complete characterization of the blood concentration or urinary excretion rate during the absorption and elimination phases of a single dose administered at steady-state is encouraged to permit estimation of the total area under concentration-time curves or cumulative urinary excretion-time curves and to obtain pharmacokinetic information, e.g., half-life or blood clearance, that is essential in preparing adequate labeling for the drug product.

(e) Steady-state parameters. (1) In certain instances, e.g., in a study involving a new drug entity, blood clearances at steady-state obtained in a multiple-dose study should be compared to blood clearances obtained in a single-dose study to support adequate dosage recommendations.

(2) In a linear system, the area under the blood concentration-time curve
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 320.31 Applicability of requirements regarding an "Investigational New Drug Application."

(a) Any person planning to conduct an in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence study in humans shall submit an "Investigational New Drug Application" (IND) if:

1. The design of the proposed bioavailability or bioequivalence study is appropriate.

2. The reference material to be used in the bioavailability or bioequivalence study is appropriate.

3. The proposed chemical and statistical analytical methods are adequate.

(c)(1) General inquiries relating to in vivo bioavailability requirements and methodology shall be submitted to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Division of Biopharmaceutics (HFD-420), 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(2) General inquiries relating to bioequivalence requirements and methodology shall be submitted to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Division of Bioequivalence (HFD-650), 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

§ 320.30 Inquiries regarding bioavailability and bioequivalence requirements and review of protocols by the Food and Drug Administration.

(a) The Commissioner of Food and Drugs strongly recommends that, to avoid the conduct of an improper study and unnecessary human research, any person planning to conduct a bioavailability or bioequivalence study submit the proposed protocol for the study to FDA for review prior to the initiation of the study.

(b) FDA may review a proposed protocol for a bioavailability or bioequivalence study and will offer advice with respect to whether the following conditions are met:

1. The design of the proposed bioavailability or bioequivalence study is appropriate.

2. The reference material to be used in the bioavailability or bioequivalence study is appropriate.

3. The proposed chemical and statistical analytical methods are adequate.

§ 320.28 Correlation of bioavailability with an acute pharmacological effect or clinical evidence.

Correlation of in vivo bioavailability data with an acute pharmacological effect or clinical evidence of safety and effectiveness may be required if needed to establish the clinical significance of a special claim, e.g., in the case of a controlled release preparation.

§ 320.29 Analytical methods for an in vivo bioavailability study.

(a) The analytical method used in an in vivo bioavailability study to measure the concentration of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), in body fluids or excretory products, or the method used to measure an acute pharmacological effect shall be demonstrated to be accurate and of sufficient sensitivity to measure, with appropriate precision, the actual concentration of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), achieved in the body.

(b) When the analytical method is not sensitive enough to measure accurately the concentration of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety, or its metabolite(s), in body fluids or excretory products produced by a single dose of the test product, two or more single doses may be given together to produce higher concentration if the requirements of §320.31 are met.

§ 320.31 Applicability of requirements regarding an "Investigational New Drug Application."

(a) Any person planning to conduct a multiple-dose steady-state study is directly proportional to the fraction of the dose absorbed and is equal to the corresponding "zero to infinity" area under the curve for a single-dose study. Therefore, when steady-state conditions are achieved, a comparison of blood concentrations during a dosing interval may be used to define the fraction of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety absorbed.

(3) Other methods based on valid scientific reasons should be used to determine the bioavailability of a drug product having dose-dependent kinetics (non-linear system).

(f) Measurement of an acute pharmacological effect. When comparison of the test product and the reference material is to be based on acute pharmacological effect-time curves, measurements of this effect should be made with sufficient frequency to demonstrate a maximum effect and a lack of significant difference between the test product and the reference material.
§ 320.32 Procedures for establishing or amending a bioequivalence requirement.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration, on its own initiative or in response to a petition by an interested person, may propose and promulgate a regulation to establish a bioequivalence requirement for a product not subject to section 505(j) of the act if it finds there is well-documented evidence that specific pharmaceutical equivalents or pharmaceutical alternatives intended to be used interchangeably for the same therapeutic effect:

(1) Are not bioequivalent drug products; or

(2) May not be bioequivalent drug products based on the criteria set forth in §320.33; or

(3) May not be bioequivalent drug products because they are members of a class of drug products that have close structural similarity and similar physicochemical or pharmacokinetic properties to other drug products in the same class that FDA finds are not bioequivalent drug products.

(b) FDA shall include in a proposed rule to establish a bioequivalence requirement the evidence and criteria set forth in §320.33 that are to be considered in determining whether to issue the proposal. If the rulemaking is proposed in response to a petition, FDA shall include in the proposal a summary and analysis of the relevant information that was submitted in the petition as well as other available information to support the establishment of a bioequivalence requirement.

(c) FDA, on its own initiative or in response to a petition by an interested person, may propose and promulgate an amendment to a bioequivalence requirement established under this subpart.

[57 FR 18000, Apr. 28, 1992]
§ 320.33 Criteria and evidence to assess actual or potential bioequivalence problems.

The Commissioner of Food and Drugs shall consider the following factors, when supported by well-documented evidence, to identify specific pharmaceutical equivalents and pharmaceutical alternatives that are not or may not be bioequivalent drug products.

(a) Evidence from well-controlled clinical trials or controlled observations in patients that such drug products do not give comparable therapeutic effects.

(b) Evidence from well-controlled bioequivalence studies that such products are not bioequivalent drug products.

(c) Evidence that the drug products exhibit a narrow therapeutic ratio, e.g., there is less than a 2-fold difference in median lethal dose (LD50) and median effective dose (ED50) values, or have less than a 2-fold difference in the minimum toxic concentrations and minimum effective concentrations in the blood, and safe and effective use of the drug products requires careful dosage titration and patient monitoring.

(d) Competent medical determination that a lack of bioequivalence would have a serious adverse effect in the treatment or prevention of a serious disease or condition.

(e) Physicochemical evidence that:

(1) The active drug ingredient has a low solubility in water, e.g., less than 5 milligrams per 1 milliliter, or, if dissolution in the stomach is critical to absorption, the volume of gastric fluids required to dissolve the recommended dose far exceeds the volume of fluids present in the stomach (taken to be 100 milliliters for adults and prorated for infants and children).

(2) The dissolution rate of one or more such products is slow, e.g., less than 50 percent in 30 minutes when tested using either a general method specified in an official compendium or a paddle method at 50 revolutions per minute in 900 milliliters of distilled or deionized water at 37° C, or differs significantly from that of an appropriate reference material such as an identical drug product that is the subject of an approved full new drug application.

(3) The particle size and/or surface area of the active drug ingredient is critical in determining its bioavailability.

(4) Certain physical structural characteristics of the active drug ingredient, e.g., polymorphic forms, conformers, solvates, complexes, and crystal modifications, dissolve poorly and this poor dissolution may affect absorption.

(5) Such drug products have a high ratio of excipients to active ingredients, e.g., greater than 5 to 1.

(6) Specific inactive ingredients, e.g., hydrophilic or hydrophobic excipients and lubricants, either may be required for absorption of the active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety or, alternatively, if present, may interfere with such absorption.

(f) Pharmacokinetic evidence that:

(1) The active drug ingredient, therapeutic moiety, or its precursor is absorbed in large part in a particular segment of the gastrointestinal tract or is absorbed from a localized site.

(2) The degree of absorption of the active drug ingredient, therapeutic moiety, or its precursor is poor, e.g., less than 50 percent, ordinarily in comparison to an intravenous dose, even when it is administered in pure form, e.g., in solution.

(3) There is rapid metabolism of the therapeutic moiety in the intestinal wall or liver during the process of absorption (first-class metabolism) so the therapeutic effect and/or toxicity of such drug product is determined by the rate as well as the degree of absorption.

(4) The therapeutic moiety is rapidly metabolized or excreted so that rapid dissolution and absorption are required for effectiveness.

(5) The active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety is unstable in specific portions of the gastrointestinal tract and requires special coatings or formulations, e.g., buffers, enteric coatings, and film coatings, to assure adequate absorption.

(6) The drug product is subject to dose dependent kinetics in or near the
therapeutic range, and the rate and extent of absorption are important to bioequivalence.

§ 320.34 Requirements for batch testing and certification by the Food and Drug Administration.

(a) If the Commissioner determines that individual batch testing by the Food and Drug Administration is necessary to assure that all batches of the same drug product meet an appropriate in vitro test, he shall include in the bioequivalence requirement a requirement for manufacturers to submit samples of each batch to the Food and Drug Administration and to withhold distribution of the batch until notified by the Food and Drug Administration that the batch may be introduced into interstate commerce.

(b) The Commissioner will ordinarily terminate a requirement for a manufacturer to submit samples for batch testing on a finding that the manufacturer has produced four consecutive batches that were tested by the Food and Drug Administration and found to meet the bioequivalence requirement, unless the public health requires that batch testing be extended to additional batches.

§ 320.35 Requirements for in vitro testing of each batch.

If a bioequivalence requirement specifies a currently available in vitro test or an in vitro bioequivalence standard comparing the drug product to a reference standard, the manufacturer shall conduct the test on a sample of each batch of the drug product to assure batch-to-batch uniformity.

§ 320.36 Requirements for maintenance of records of bioequivalence testing.

(a) All records of in vivo or in vitro tests conducted on any marketed batch of a drug product to assure that the product meets a bioequivalence requirement shall be maintained by the manufacturer for at least 2 years after the expiration date of the batch and submitted to the Food and Drug Administration on request.

(b) Any person who contracts with another party to conduct a bioequivalence study from which the data are intended to be submitted to FDA as part of an application submitted under part 314 of this chapter shall obtain from the person conducting the study sufficient accurate financial information to allow the submission of complete and accurate financial certifications or disclosure statements required under part 54 of this chapter for 2 years after the date of approval of the application. The person maintaining these records shall, upon request for any properly authorized officer or employee of the Food and Drug Administration, at reasonable time, permit such officer or employee to have access to and copy and verify these records.

§ 320.38 Retention of bioavailability samples.

(a) The applicant of an application or supplemental application submitted under section 505 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or, if bioavailability testing was performed under contract, the contract research organization shall retain an appropriately identified reserve sample of the drug product for which the applicant is seeking approval (test article) and of the reference standard used to perform an in vivo bioavailability study in accordance with and for the studies described in paragraph (b) of this section that is representative of each sample of the test article and reference standard provided by the applicant for the testing.

(b) Reserve samples shall be retained for the following test articles and reference standards and for the studies described:

(1) If the formulation of the test article is the same as the formulation(s)
§ 320.38 Reserve samples for in vivo bioavailability or bioequivalence studies

A reserve sample is required under paragraphs (b) and (c) of §320.37 for each study required under paragraph (b) of §320.37 and for a new formulation, new dosage form, or a new salt or ester of an active drug ingredient or therapeutic moiety that has been approved for marketing.

(b) A contract research organization conducting a bioavailability or bioequivalence study that requires reserve sample retention under this section or §320.63 goes out of business, it shall transfer its reserve samples to an appropriate, independent third party and shall notify in writing the sponsor of the study of the transfer and provide the study sponsor with the name and address of the facility to which the reserve samples have been transferred.

[58 FR 25927, Apr. 28, 1993, as amended at 64 FR 402, Jan. 5, 1999]
§ 320.63 Retention of bioequivalence samples.

The applicant of an abbreviated application or a supplemental application submitted under section 505 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or, if bioequivalence testing was performed under contract, the contract research organization shall retain reserve samples of any test article and reference standard used in conducting an in vivo or in vitro bioequivalence study required for approval of the abbreviated application or supplemental application. The applicant or contract research organization shall retain the reserve samples in accordance with, and for the period specified in, § 320.38 and shall release the reserve samples to FDA upon request in accordance with § 320.38.

[58 FR 25928, Apr. 28, 1993, as amended at 64 FR 402, Jan. 5, 1999]

PART 328—OVER-THE-COUNTER DRUG PRODUCTS INTENDED FOR ORAL INGESTION THAT CONTAIN ALCOHOL

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
328.1 Scope.
328.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Ingredients

328.10 Alcohol.

Subpart C—Labeling

328.50 Principal display panel of all OTC drug products intended for oral ingestion that contain alcohol.


SOURCE: 60 FR 13595, Mar. 13, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 328.1 Scope.

Reference in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.
Subpart C—Labeling
§ 328.50 Principal display panel of all OTC drug products intended for oral ingestion that contain alcohol.
(a) The amount (percentage) of alcohol present in a product shall be stated in terms of percent volume of absolute alcohol at 60 °F (15.56 °C) in accordance with §201.10(d)(2) of this chapter.
(b) A statement expressing the amount (percentage) of alcohol present in a product shall appear prominently and conspicuously on the “principal display panel,” as defined in §201.60 of this chapter. For products whose principal display panel is on the immediate container label and that are not marketed in another retail package (e.g., an outer box), the statement of the percentage of alcohol present in the product shall appear prominently and conspicuously on the “principal display panel” of the immediate container label.
(c) For products whose principal display panel is on the retail package and the retail package is not the immediate container, the statement of the percentage of alcohol present in the product shall also appear on the immediate container label; it may appear anywhere on that label in accord with section 502(e) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.
(d) The statement expressing the amount (percentage) of alcohol present in the product shall be in a size reasonably related to the most prominent printed matter on the panel or label on which it appears, and shall be in lines generally parallel to the base on which the package rests as it is designed to be displayed.
(e) For a product to state in its labeling that it is “alcohol free,” it must contain no alcohol (0 percent).
(f) For any OTC drug product intended for oral ingestion containing over 5 percent alcohol and labeled for use by adults and children 12 years of age and over, the labeling shall contain the following statement in the directions section: “Consult a physician for use in children under 12 years of age.”
(g) For any OTC drug product intended for oral ingestion containing over 0.5 percent alcohol and labeled for use by children ages 6 to under 12 years of age, the labeling shall contain the following statement in the directions section: “Consult a physician for use in children under 6 years of age.”

Subpart A—Derivatives Designated as Habit Forming
Sec. 329.1 Habit-forming drugs which are chemical derivatives of substances specified in section 502(d) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

Subpart B—Labeling
329.10 Labeling requirements for habit-forming drugs.

Subpart C—Exemptions
329.20 Exemption of certain habit-forming drugs from prescription requirements.

Source: 39 FR 11736, Mar. 29, 1974, unless otherwise noted.
Effective date note: At 67 FR 4907, Feb. 1, 2002, part 329 was removed, effective Apr. 2, 2002.
### §329.1 21 CFR Ch. I (4-1-02 Edition)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical description of derivative</th>
<th>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
<th>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARENT SUBSTANCE—BARBITURIC ACID</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Allyl-5-sec-butylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Talbutal</td>
<td>Lutusate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Allyl-5-cyclopentenylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Allybarbituric acid</td>
<td>Cyclopentalon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Allyl-5-isobutyrlbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Aprobarbital</td>
<td>Numal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Allyl-5-isopropylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Allyisopropylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Numal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Allyl-5-isopropyl-1-methylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Secobarbital sodium</td>
<td>Seconal Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Allyl-5-(1-methylbutyl)barbituric acid</td>
<td>Sodium thiamylal</td>
<td>Surital Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Allyl-5-(1-methylbutyl)-2-thiobarbituric acid</td>
<td>Sodium methylohexital</td>
<td>Breval Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-(2-Bromoallyl)-5-isoprophyl-1-methylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Sodium thiamylal</td>
<td>Surital Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-(2-Bromoallyl)-5-(1-methylbutyl)-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Sodium methylohexital</td>
<td>Breval Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-sec Butyl-5-(2-bromoallyl)-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Butallyloneal</td>
<td>Pernoston.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-(1-Cyclohepten-1-yl)-5-ethylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Heptabarbital</td>
<td>Medomin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Dialylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Dial</td>
<td>Dibo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,5-Diethylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Metharbital</td>
<td>Gemonil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,5-Dimethyl-5-(1-cyclohexenyl)-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Metharbital</td>
<td>Gemonil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,5-Dipropylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Dipropylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Proponal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-butylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Butethal</td>
<td>Etoval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-sec-butylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Butabarbital sodium</td>
<td>Butisol Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-(1-cyclohexenyl)-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Butabarbital sodium</td>
<td>Butisol Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-cyclopentenyl-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Butabarbital sodium</td>
<td>Butisol Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-hexylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Butabarbital sodium</td>
<td>Butisol Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-isopropylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Pentobarbital sodium</td>
<td>844.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-(1-methylbutyl)-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Pentobarbital sodium</td>
<td>844.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-(1-methylbutyl)-2-thiobarbituric acid</td>
<td>Thiopental sodium</td>
<td>Intraval Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-(1-methyl-1-butenyl)-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Thiopental sodium</td>
<td>Intraval Sodium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-phenylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Phenobarbital</td>
<td>Barbenyl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical description of derivative</td>
<td>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</td>
<td>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenobarbitone</td>
<td>Barbiphenyl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylethylmalonylurea</td>
<td>Dorminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Euneryl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gardenal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Luminal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nuxtid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neurobarb.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phenonyl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somonal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mepobaral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylethylmalonylurea</td>
<td>Dormiral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euneryl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gardenal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuxtid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurobarb.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenonyl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somonal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-phenyl-1-methylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Mepobaral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phemitone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prominal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Ethyl-5-(1-piperidyl)-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Phemitone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Isopropyl-5-(2-bromoallyl)-barbituric acid</td>
<td>Propallylon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-(1-Methylbutyl)-5-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]-2-thiobarbituric acid</td>
<td>Methitural (sodium salt)</td>
<td>Methioturiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Methyl-5-phenylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Phenyimethylbarbituric acid</td>
<td>Rutonal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARENT SUBSTANCE—CANNABIS (MARIHUANA)**

- Extract of cannabis.
- Fluid extract of cannabis.
- Tincture of cannabis.

**PARENT SUBSTANCE—BROMAL**

- Tribromoacetalddehyde hydrate
- Tribromomethane
- 2-(Tribromomethyl)-2-propanol

**PARENT SUBSTANCE—CARBROMAL**

- α-Bromo-α-ethylbutyln-acetylamide
- α-Bromoisovalerylurea
- α-Bromo-α-diethylacetamide
- α-Allylisovaleryl-urea

**PARENT SUBSTANCE—CHLORAL**

- Trichloroacetalddehyde hydrate
- Trichloroethylendineine
- N-(β-Trichloro-α-hydroxyethyl)-formamide
- α-(β-Trichloro-α-hydroxyethyl)-D-glucoside

- Chloral
- Chloridromalide
- Chloralformamide
- Chloralamide
- Chloramid.
- Chloramidal.
- Chloramid.
- Chloridromalide.
- Chloridromalide.
- Chloridromalide.
- 1,3-D-Glucochloralose.
- Anhydro-Glucochloral.
- Glucochloral.
- Chloralose.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical description of derivative</th>
<th>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
<th>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-(Trichloromethyl)-2-propanol</td>
<td>Chlorbutanol</td>
<td>Acetone chloroform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlorbutol</td>
<td>Chloretone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlorobutanol</td>
<td>Methaform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sestaform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1,1,1-trichloro-2-methyl 2-propanol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[3,3]-trichloro-tert-butylalcohol.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARENT SUBSTANCE—COCAINE

All salts of cocaine obtained by combining cocaine with any acid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical description of derivative</th>
<th>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
<th>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cocaine hydrochloride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cocainium chloride..</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARENT SUBSTANCE—CODEINE

Codeine methylbromide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical description of derivative</th>
<th>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
<th>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eucodin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eucodal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dicodid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Oxycodone hydrochloride.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14-hydroxydihydrocodeinone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARENT SUBSTANCE—HEROIN

All salts of heroin obtained by combining heroin with any acid.

PARENT SUBSTANCE—MORPHINE

Dihydromorphine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical description of derivative</th>
<th>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
<th>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paramorphan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dihydromorphine hydrochloride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dihydromorphinonium chloride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethylmorphine hydrochloride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ethylmorphinium chloride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARENT SUBSTANCE—OPIUM

Extract of opium.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical description of derivative</th>
<th>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
<th>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fluidextract of opium.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camphorated opium tincture.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deodorized opium tincture.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laudanum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opium tincture.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paregoric.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tincture of opium.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARENT SUBSTANCE—PARALDEHYDE

Metaldehyde.

PARENT SUBSTANCE—SULFONMETHANE

2,2-Diethylsulfonylbutane

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical description of derivative</th>
<th>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
<th>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sulfonemethylmethane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Diethylsulfonmethylethyl-methane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ethylsulfonal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2,2-bis-(Ethylsulfonyl)-butane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Methylosulfonal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sulfonemethylmethanum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Trional.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3,3-Diethylsulfonylpentane

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical description of derivative</th>
<th>Common or official name of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
<th>Some trade or other names of chemical derivative or its salts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sulfonediethylmethane.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 This list of trade or other names is not a complete list of the many proprietary names under which the designated habit-forming chemical derivatives are distributed.

2 The name “butalbital” is obsolete for this compound; “butalbital” is the nonproprietary name assigned by the United States Adopted Name Council and the World Health Organization for 5-allyl-5-isobutylbarbituric acid.
Subpart B—Labeling

§ 329.10 Labeling requirements for habit-forming drugs.

(a)(1) The name of a substance or derivative required to be borne on the label of a drug by section 502(d) of the act shall be the common or usual name of such substance or derivative, unless it is designated solely by a name recognized in an official compendium and such designation complies with the provisions of section 502(c).

(2) A statement on the label of a drug of the name of a constituent, which constituent is a chemical derivative of a substance named in section 502(d) of the act, shall show the substance from which such constituent is derived and that such constituent is a derivative thereof.

(b) If the drug is in tablet, capsule, ampul, or other unit form, the statement of the quantity or proportion of such substance or derivative contained therein shall express the weight or measure of such substance or derivative in each such unit. If the drug is not in such unit form the statement shall express the weight or measure of such substance or derivative in a specified unit of weight or measure of the drug. Such statement shall be in terms which are informative to the ordinary consumer and user of the drug.

(c) The names and quantities or proportions of all such substances and derivatives, and the statement “Warning—May be habit forming”, shall immediately follow (without intervening written, printed, or graphic matter) the name by which such drug is titled in the part or panel of the label thereof which is presented or displayed under customary conditions of purchase.

(d) A drug shall not be considered to be misbranded by reason of failure of its label to bear the statement “Warning—May be habit forming”:

(1) If such drug is not suitable for internal use, and is distributed and sold exclusively for such external use as involves no possibility of habit formation; or

(2) If the only substance or derivative subject to section 502(d) of the act contained in such drug is chlorobutanol which is present as an analgesic or as an analgesic and a preservative in a quantity not more than 3.0 percent, and such drug contains one or more other active ingredients and is for parenteral use only.

Cross Reference: For the Spanish-language version of the required labeling statement, see §201.16(b) of this chapter.

[39 FR 11736, Mar. 29, 1974, as amended at 40 FR 13496, Mar. 27, 1975]

Subpart C—Exemptions

§ 329.20 Exemption of certain habit-forming drugs from prescription requirements.

The prescription-dispensing requirements of section 503(b)(1)(A) of the act are not necessary for the protection of the public health with respect to the following drugs subject to section 502(d):

(a) The following exempt narcotic preparations:

(1) Pharmaceutical preparations containing not more than 100 milligrams of opium per 100 milliliters or per 100 grams.

(2) Pharmaceutical preparations containing not more than 16.2 milligrams (1/4 grain) morphine, or any of its salts, per 29.5729 cubic centimeters (1 fluid ounce) or per 28.3 grams (1 avoirdupois ounce);

(3) Pharmaceutical preparations containing not more than 64.8 milligrams (1 grain) codeine, or any of its salts, per 29.5729 cubic centimeters (1 fluid ounce) or per 28.3 grams (1 avoirdupois ounce);

(4) Pharmaceutical preparations containing not more than 32.4 milligrams (1/2 grain) dihydrocodeine, or any of its salts, per 29.5729 cubic centimeters (1 fluid ounce) or per 28.3 grams (1 avoirdupois ounce);

(5) Pharmaceutical preparations containing not more than 16.2 milligrams (1/4 grain) ethylmorphine, or any of its salts, per 29.5729 cubic centimeters (1 fluid ounce) or per 28.3 grams (1 avoirdupois ounce);
Provided, That the preparations described in this paragraph contain one or more nonnarcotic active medicinal ingredients in sufficient proportion to confer upon the preparation valuable medicinal qualities other than those possessed by the narcotic drug alone.

(b) Drugs containing chlorobutanol, intended for external use only.

(c) Epinephrine solution, 1 percent, preserved with chlorobutanol and intended for use solely as a spray.

(d) Combination drugs listed in part 329 as exempted from section 511 of the act.


PART 330—OVER-THE-COUNTER (OTC) HUMAN DRUGS WHICH ARE GENERALLY RECOGNIZED AS SAFE AND EFFECTIVE AND NOT MISBRANDED

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 330.1 General conditions for general recognition as safe, effective, and not misbranded.

An over-the-counter (OTC) drug listed in this subchapter is generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions contained in this part and each of the conditions contained in any applicable monograph. Any product which fails to conform to each of the conditions contained in this part and in any applicable monograph is liable to regulatory action.

(a) The product is manufactured in compliance with current good manufacturing practices, as established by parts 210 and 211 of this chapter.

(b) The establishment(s) in which the drug product is manufactured is registered, and the drug product is listed, in compliance with part 207 of this chapter. It is requested but not required that the number assigned to the product pursuant to part 207 of this chapter appear on all drug labels and in all drug labeling. If this number is used, it shall be placed in the manner set forth in part 207 of this chapter.

(c) (1) The product is labeled in compliance with chapter V of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) and subchapter C et seq. of this chapter, including the format and content requirements in §201.66 of this chapter. An OTC drug product that is not in compliance with chapter V and subchapter C, including §201.66 of this chapter, is subject to regulatory action. For purposes of §201.61(b) of this chapter, the statement of identity of the product shall be the term or phrase used in the applicable OTC drug monograph established in this part.

(c)(2) The “Uses” section of the label and labeling of the product shall contain the labeling describing the “Indications” that have been established in an applicable OTC drug monograph or alternative truthful and nonmisleading statements describing only those indications for use that have been established in an applicable monograph, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for


Source: 39 FR 11741, Mar. 29, 1974, unless otherwise noted.
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 330.1

introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act. Any other labeling under this subchapter and subchapter C et seq. of this chapter shall be stated in the exact language where exact language has been established and identified by quotation marks in an applicable OTC drug monograph or by regulation (e.g., § 201.63 of this chapter), except as provided in paragraphs (i) and (j) of this section.

(d) The advertising for the product prescribes, recommends, or suggests its use only under the conditions stated in the labeling.

(e) The product contains only suitable inactive ingredients which are safe in the amounts administered and do not interfere with the effectiveness of the preparation or with suitable tests or assays to determine if the product meets its professed standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity. Color additives may be used only in accordance with section 721 of the act and subchapter A of this chapter.

(f) The product container and container components meet the requirements of §211.94 of this chapter.

(g) The labeling for all drugs contains the general warning: ‘’Keep out of reach of children.’’ [highlighted in bold type]. The labeling of drugs shall also state as follows: For drugs used by oral administration, ‘’In case of overdose, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away’’; for drugs used topically, rectally, or vaginally and not intended for oral ingestion, ‘’If swallowed, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away’’; and for drugs used topically and intended for oral use, ‘’If more than used for’’ (insert intended use, e.g., pain) ‘’is accidentally swallowed, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away.’’ The Food and Drug Administration will grant an exemption from these general warnings where appropriate upon petition, which shall be maintained in a permanent file for public review by the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration, rm. 1–23, 12240 Parklawn Dr., Rockville, MD 20857.

(h) Where no maximum daily dosage limit for an active ingredient is established in this part, it is used in a product at a level that does not exceed the amount reasonably required to achieve its intended effect.

(i) The following terms may be used interchangeably in the labeling of OTC drug products, provided such use does not alter the meaning of the labeling that has been established and identified in an applicable monograph or by regulation. The following terms shall not be used to change in any way the title, headings, and subheadings required under §201.60(c)(1) through (c)(9) of this chapter:

1. ‘’Abdominal’’ or ‘’stomach’’ (in context only).
2. ‘’Administer’’ or ‘’give’’.
3. ‘’Aggravate(s)’’ or ‘’make(s) worse’’.
4. ‘’Application of this product’’ or ‘’applying’’.
5. ‘’Are uncertain’’ or ‘’do not know’’.
6. ‘’Ask’’ or ‘’consult’’ or ‘’contact’’.
7. ‘’Asking’’ or ‘’consulting’’.
8. ‘’Assistance’’ or ‘’help’’ or ‘’aid’’.
9. ‘’Associated with’’ or ‘’due to’’ or ‘’caused by’’.
10. ‘’Avoid contact with eyes’’ or ‘’do not get into eyes’’.
11. ‘’Avoid inhaling’’ or ‘’do not inhale’’.
12. ‘’Before a doctor is consulted’’ or ‘’without first consulting your doctor’’ or ‘’consult your doctor before’’.
13. ‘’Beverages’’ or ‘’drinks’’.
14. ‘’Clean’’ or ‘’cleanse’’.
15. ‘’Consulting’’ or ‘’advising’’.
16. ‘’Continue(s)’’ or ‘’persist(s)’’ or ‘’is persistent’’ or ‘’do(es) not go away’’ or ‘’last(s)’’.
17. ‘’Daily’’ or ‘’every day’’.
18. ‘’Develop(s)’’ or ‘’begin(s)’’ or ‘’occur(s)’’.
19. ‘’Difficulty’’ or ‘’trouble’’.
20. ‘’Difficulty in urination’’ or ‘’trouble urinating’’.
21. ‘’Discard’’ or ‘’throw away’’.
22. ‘’Discontinue’’ or ‘’stop’’ or ‘’quit’’.
23. ‘’Doctor’’ or ‘’physician’’.
24. ‘’Drowsiness’’ or ‘’the drowsiness effect’’.
25. ‘’Drowsiness may occur’’ or ‘’you may get drowsy’’.
26. ‘’Enlargement of the’’ or ‘’an enlarged’’.
27. ‘’Especially in children’’ or ‘’especially children’’.
§ 330.1

(28) “Exceed” or “use more than” or “go beyond”.
(29) “Exceed recommended dosage” or “use more than directed”.
(30) “Excessive” or “too much”.
(31) “Excitability may occur” or “you may get excited”.
(32) “Experience” or “feel”.
(33) “For relief of” or “relieves”.
(34) “For temporary reduction of” or “temporarily reduces”.
(35) “For the temporary relief of” or “temporarily relieves”.
(36) “For the treatment of” or “treats”.
(37) “Frequently” or “often”.
(38) “Give to” or “use in”.
(39) “Immediately” or “right away” or “directly”.
(40) “Immediately” or “as soon as”.
(41) “Immediately following” or “right after”.
(42) “Improve(s)” or “get(s) better” or “make(s) better”.
(43) “Increased” or “more”.
(44) “Increase your risk of” or “cause”.
(45) “Indication(s)” or “Use(s)”.
(46) “Inhalation” or “puff”.
(47) “In persons who” or “if you” or “if the child”.
(48) “Instill” or “put”.
(49) “Is (are) accompanied by” or “you also have” (in context only) or “(optional: that) occur(s) with”.
(50) “ Longer” or “more”.
(51) “Lung” or “pulmonary”.
(52) “Medication(s)” or “medication(s) or “drug(s)”.
(53) “Nervousness, dizziness, or sleeplessness occurs” or “you get nervous, dizzy, or sleepless”.
(54) “Not to exceed” or “do not exceed” or “not more than”.
(55) “Obtain(s)” or “get(s)”.
(56) “Passages” or “passageways” or “tubes”.
(57) “Perforation of” or “hole in”.
(58) “Persistent” or “that does not go away” or “that continues” or “that lasts”.
(59) “Per day” or “daily”.
(60) “Presently” or “now”.
(61) “Produce(s)” or “cause(s)”.
(62) “Prompt(ly)” or “quick(ly)” or “right away”.
(63) “Reduce” or “minimize”.
(64) “Referred to as” or “of”.
(65) “Sensation” or “feeling”.
(66) “Solution” or “liquid”.
(67) “Specifically” or “definitely”.
(68) “Take” or “use” or “give”.
(69) “Tend(s) to recur” or “recurrence” or “return(s)” or “come(s) back”.
(70) “To avoid contamination” or “avoid contamination” or “do not contaminate”.
(71) “To help” or “helps”.
(72) “Unless directed by a doctor” or “except under the advice of a doctor” or “unless told to do so by a doctor”.
(73) “Use caution” or “be careful”.
(74) “Usually” or “generally” (in context only).
(75) “You” (“Your”) or “the child” (“the child’s”).
(76) “You also have” or “occurs with”.
(77) “When practical” or “if possible”.
(78) “Whether” or “if”.
(79) “Worsen(s)” or “get(s) worse” or “make(s) worse”.
(j) The following connecting terms may be deleted from the labeling of OTC drug products, provided such deletion does not alter the meaning of the labeling that has been established and identified in an applicable monograph or by regulation. The following terms shall not be used to change in any way the specific title, headings, and subheadings required under § 201.66(c)(1) through (c)(9) of this chapter:
(1) “And”.
(2) “As may occur with”.
(3) “Associated” or “to be associated”.
(4) “Consult a doctor”.
(5) “Discontinue use”.
(6) “Drug Interaction Precaution”.
(7) “Due to”.
(8) “Except under the advice and supervision of a physician”.
(9) “If this occurs”.
(10) “In case of”.
(11) “Notice”.
(12) “Or”.
(13) “Occurring with”.
(14) “Or as directed by a doctor”.
(15) “Such as”.
(16) “Such as occurs with”.
(17) “Tends to”.
(18) “This product”.
(19) “Unless directed by a doctor”.
(20) “While taking this product” or “before taking this product”.

208
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 330.10

(21) “Within”.

§ 330.2 Pregnancy-nursing warning.

A pregnancy-nursing warning for OTC drugs is set forth under § 201.63 of this chapter.

§ 330.3 Imprinting of solid oral dosage form drug products.

A requirement to imprint an identification code on solid oral dosage form drug products is set forth under part 206 of this chapter.

§ 330.5 Drug categories.

Monographs promulgated pursuant to the provisions of this part shall be established in this part 330 and following parts and shall cover the following designated categories:

(a) Antacids.
(b) Laxatives.
(c) Antidiarrheal products.
(d) Emetics.
(e) Antiemetics.
(f) Antiperspirants.
(g) Sunburn prevention and treatment products.
(h) Vitamin-mineral products.
(i) Antimicrobial products.
(j) Dandruff products.
(k) Oral hygiene aids.
(l) Hemorrhoidal products.
(m) Hematinics.
(n) Bronchodilator and antiasthmatic products.
(o) Analgesics.
(p) Sedatives and sleep aids.
(q) Stimulants.
(r) Antitussives.
(s) Allergy treatment products.
(t) Cold remedies.
(u) Antirheumatic products.
(v) Ophthalmic products.
(w) Contraceptive products.
(x) Miscellaneous dermatologic products.
(y) Dentifrices and dental products such as analgesics, antiseptics, etc.
(z) Miscellaneous (all other OTC drugs not falling within one of the above therapeutic categories).

Subpart B—Administrative Procedures

§ 330.10 Procedures for classifying OTC drugs as generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded, and for establishing monographs.

For purposes of classifying over-the-counter (OTC) drugs as drugs generally recognized among qualified experts as safe and effective for use and as not misbranded drugs, the following regulations shall apply:

(a) Procedure for establishing OTC drug monographs—(1) Advisory review panels. The Commissioner shall appoint advisory review panels of qualified experts to evaluate the safety and effectiveness of OTC drugs, to review OTC drug labeling, and to advise him on the promulgation of monographs establishing conditions under which OTC drugs are generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded. A single advisory review panel shall be established for each designated category of OTC drugs and every OTC drug category will be considered by a panel. The members of a panel shall be qualified experts (appointed by the Commissioner) and may include persons from lists submitted by organizations representing professional, consumer, and industry interests. The Commissioner shall designate the chairman of each panel. Summary minutes of all meetings shall be made.

(2) Request for data and views. The Commissioner will publish a notice in the Federal Register requesting interested persons to submit, for review and evaluation by an advisory review panel, published and unpublished data and information pertinent to a designated category of OTC drugs. Data and information submitted pursuant to a published notice, and falling within the confidentiality provisions of 18 U.S.C. 1905, 5 U.S.C. 552(b), or 21 U.S.C. 331(j), shall be handled by the advisory review panel and the Food and Drug Administration as confidential until publication of a proposed monograph and the full report(s) of the panel or
until the Commissioner places the panel’s recommendations on public display at the office of the Dockets Management Branch. Thirty days thereafter such data and information shall be made publicly available and may be viewed at the office of the Dockets Management Branch of the Food and Drug Administration, except to the extent that the person submitting it demonstrates that it still falls within the confidentiality provisions of one or more of those statutes. To be considered, eight copies of the data and/or views on any marketed drug within the class must be submitted, preferably bound, indexed, and on standard sized paper (approximately 8½ x 11 inches).

When requested, abbreviated submissions should be sent. All submissions must be in the following format:

**OTC Drug Review Information**

I. Label(s) and all labeling (preferably mounted and filed with the other data—facsimile labeling is acceptable in lieu of actual container labeling).

II. A statement setting forth the quantities of active ingredients of the drug.

III. Animal safety data.
   A. Individual active components.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
   B. Combinations of the individual active components.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
   C. Finished drug product.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.

IV. Human safety data.
   A. Individual active components.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
   B. Combinations of the individual active components.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
   C. Finished drug product.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.

V. Efficacy data.
   A. Individual active components.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
      3. Documented case reports. Identify expected or frequently reported side effects.
      4. Pertinent marketing experiences that may influence a determination as to the safety of the finished drug product.
   B. Combinations of the individual active components.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
      3. Documented case reports. Identify expected or frequently reported side effects.
      4. Pertinent marketing experiences that may influence a determination as to the efficacy of the finished drug product.
   C. Finished drug product.
      1. Controlled studies.
      2. Partially controlled or uncontrolled studies.
      3. Documented case reports. Identify expected or frequently reported side effects.
      4. Pertinent marketing experiences that may influence a determination as to the efficacy of the finished drug product.

VI. A summary of the data and views setting forth the medical rationale and purpose (or lack thereof) for the drug and its ingredients and the scientific basis (or lack thereof) for the conclusion that the drug and its ingredients have been proven safe and effective for the intended use. If there is an absence of controlled studies in the material submitted, an explanation as to why such studies are not considered necessary must be included.

VII. An official United States Pharmacopeia (USP)–National Formulary (NF) drug monograph for the active ingredients(s) or botanical drug substance(s), or a proposed
§ 330.10

standard for inclusion in an article to be recognized in an official USP–NF drug monograph for the active ingredient(s) or botanical drug substance(s). Include information showing that the official or proposed compendial monograph for the active ingredient or botanical drug substance is consistent with the active ingredient or botanical drug substance used in the studies establishing safety and effectiveness and with the active ingredient or botanical drug substance marketed in the OTC product(s) to a material extent and for a material time. If differences exist, explain why.

(3) Deliberations of an advisory review panel. An advisory review panel will meet as often and for as long as is appropriate to review the data submitted to it and to prepare a report containing its conclusions and recommendations to the Commissioner with respect to the safety and effectiveness of the drugs in a designated category of OTC drugs. A panel may consult any individual or group. Any interested person may request an opportunity to present oral views to the panel; such request may be granted or denied by the panel. Such requests for oral presentations should be in written form including a summarization of the data to be presented to the panel. Any interested person may present written data and views which shall be considered by the panel. This information shall be presented to the panel in the format set forth in paragraph (a)(2) of this section and within the time period established for the drug category in the notice for review by a panel.

(4) Standards for safety, effectiveness, and labeling. The advisory review panel, in reviewing the data submitted to it and preparing its conclusions and recommendations, and the Commissioner, in reviewing the conclusions and recommendations of the panel and the published proposed, tentative, and the final monographs, shall apply the following standards to determine general recognition that a category of OTC drugs is safe and effective and not misbranded:

(i) Safety means a low incidence of adverse reactions or significant side effects under adequate directions for use and warnings against unsafe use as well as low potential for harm which may result from abuse under conditions of widespread availability. Proof of safety shall consist of adequate tests by methods reasonably applicable to show the drug is safe under the prescribed, recommended, or suggested conditions of use. This proof shall include results of significant human experience during marketing. General recognition of safety shall ordinarily be based upon published studies which may be corroborated by unpublished studies and other data.

(ii) Effectiveness means a reasonable expectation that, in a significant proportion of the target population, the pharmacological effect of the drug, when used under adequate directions for use and warnings against unsafe use, will provide clinically significant relief of the type claimed. Proof of effectiveness shall consist of controlled clinical investigations as defined in §314.126(b) of this chapter, unless this requirement is waived on the basis of a showing that it is not reasonably applicable to the drug or essential to the validity of the investigation and that an alternative method of investigation is adequate to substantiate effectiveness. Investigations may be corroborated by partially controlled or uncontrolled studies, documented clinical studies by qualified experts, and reports of significant human experience during marketing. Isolated case reports, random experience, and reports lacking the details which permit scientific evaluation will not be considered. General recognition of effectiveness shall ordinarily be based upon published studies which may be corroborated by unpublished studies and other data.

(iii) The benefit-to-risk ratio of a drug shall be considered in determining safety and effectiveness.

(iv) An OTC drug may combine two or more safe and effective active ingredients and may be generally recognized as safe and effective when each active ingredient makes a contribution to the claimed effect(s); when combining of the active ingredients does not decrease the safety or effectiveness of any of the individual active ingredients; and when the combination, when used under adequate directions for use and warnings against unsafe use, provides rational concurrent therapy for a significant proportion of the target population.
(v) Labeling shall be clear and truthful in all respects and may not be false or misleading in any particular. It shall state the intended uses and results of the product; adequate directions for proper use; and warnings against unsafe use, side effects, and adverse reactions in such terms as to render them likely to be read and understood by the ordinary individual, including individuals of low comprehension, under customary conditions of purchase and use.

(vi) A drug shall be permitted for OTC sale and use by the laity unless, because of its toxicity or other potential for harmful effect or because of the method or collateral measures necessary to its use, it may safely be sold and used only under the supervision of a practitioner licensed by law to administer such drugs.

(5) Advisory review panel report to the Commissioner. An advisory review panel may submit to the Commissioner a report containing its conclusions and recommendations with respect to the conditions under which OTC drugs falling within the category covered by the panel are generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded. Included within this report shall be:

(i) A recommended monograph or monographs covering the category of OTC drugs and establishing conditions under which the drugs involved are generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded. Included within this report shall be:

(ii) A statement of active ingredients, labeling claims or other statements or other conditions reviewed and excluded from the monograph on the basis of the panel’s determination that the available data are insufficient to classify such condition under either paragraph (a)(5) (i) or (ii) of this section and for which further testing is therefore required (Category III). The report may recommend the type of further testing required and the time period within which it might reasonably be concluded.

(6) Proposed monograph. After reviewing the conclusions and recommendations of the advisory review panel, the Commissioner shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a proposed order containing:

(i) A monograph or monographs establishing conditions under which a category of OTC drugs or a specific or specific OTC drugs are generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded (Category I).

(ii) A statement of the conditions excluded from the monograph on the basis of the Commissioner’s determination that they would result in the drug’s not being generally recognized as safe and effective or would result in misbranding (Category II).

(iii) A statement of the conditions excluded from the monograph on the basis of the Commissioner’s determination that the available data are insufficient to classify such conditions under either paragraph (a)(6)(i) or (ii) of this section (Category III).

(iv) The full report(s) of the panel to the Commissioner. The proposed order shall specify a reasonable period of time within which conditions falling within paragraph (a)(6)(iii) of this section may be continued in marketed products while the data necessary to support them are being obtained for evaluation by the Food and Drug Administration. The summary minutes of the panel meetings shall be made available to interested persons upon request. Any interested person may, within 90 days after publication of the proposed order in the FEDERAL REGISTER, file with the Dockets Management Branch of the Food and Drug Administration written comments in triplicate. Comments may be accompanied by a memorandum or brief in support thereof. All comments may be reviewed at the office of the Dockets Management Branch between the hours of 9
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 330.10

a.m. and 4 p.m., Monday through Friday. Within 30 days after the final day for submission of comments, reply comments may be filed with the Docket Management Branch; these comments shall be utilized to reply to comments made by other interested persons and not to reiterate a position. The Commissioner may satisfy this requirement by publishing in the Federal Register a proposed order summarizing the full report of the advisory review panel, containing its conclusions and recommendations, to obtain full public comment before undertaking his own evaluation and decision on the matters involved.

(7) Tentative final monograph.

(i) After reviewing all comments, reply comments, and any new data and information or, alternatively, after reviewing a panel’s recommendations, the Commissioner shall publish in the Federal Register a tentative order containing a monograph establishing conditions under which a category of OTC drugs or specific OTC drugs are generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded. Within 90 days, any interested person may file with the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration, written comments or written objections specifying with particularity the omissions or additions requested. These objections are to be supported by a brief statement of the grounds therefor. A request for an oral hearing may accompany such objections.

(ii) The Commissioner may also publish in the Federal Register a separate tentative order containing a statement of those active ingredients reviewed and proposed to be excluded from the monograph on the basis of the Commissioner’s determination that they would result in a drug product not being generally recognized as safe and effective or would result in misbranding. This order may be published when no substantive comments in opposition to the panel report or new data and information were received by the Food and Drug Administration under paragraph (a)(6)(iv) of this section or when the Commissioner has evaluated and concurs with a panel’s recommendation that a condition be excluded from the monograph. Within 90 days, any interested person may file with the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration, written objections specifying with particularity the provision of the tentative order to which objection is made. These objections are to be supported by a brief statement of the grounds therefor. A request for an oral hearing may accompany such objections.

(iii) Within 12 months after publishing a tentative order pursuant to paragraph (a)(7)(i) of this section, any interested person may file with the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration, new data and information to support a condition excluded from the monograph in the tentative order.

(iv) Within 60 days after the final day for submission of new data and information, comments on the new data and information may be filed with the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration.

(v) New data and information submitted after the time specified in this paragraph but prior to the establishment of a final monograph will be considered as a petition to amend the monograph and will be considered by the Commissioner only after a final monograph has been published in the Federal Register unless the Commissioner finds that good cause has been shown that warrants earlier consideration.

(8) Oral hearing before the Commissioner. After reviewing objections filed in response to the tentative final monograph, the Commissioner, if he finds reasonable grounds in support thereof, shall by notice in the Federal Register schedule an oral hearing. The notice scheduling an oral hearing shall specify the length of the hearing and how the time shall be divided among the parties requesting the hearing. The hearing shall be conducted by the Commissioner and may not be delegated.

(9) Final monograph. After reviewing the objections, the entire administrative record including all new data and information and comments, and considering the arguments made at any oral hearing, the Commissioner shall publish in the Federal Register a final
§ 330.10

order containing a monograph establishing conditions under which a category of OTC drugs or a specific or specific OTC drugs are generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded. The monograph shall become effective as specified in the order.

(10) **Administrative record.** (i) All data and information to be considered in any proceeding pursuant to this section shall be submitted in response to the request for data and views pursuant to paragraph (a)(2) of this section, in response to any other notice published in the Federal Register, or accepted by the panel during its deliberations pursuant to paragraph (a)(3) of this section or submitted to the Dockets Management Branch as part of the comments during the 90-day period and 30-day rebuttal comment period permitted pursuant to paragraph (a)(6) of this section or submitted to the Dockets Management Branch during the 12-month period or as part of the comments during the 60-day period permitted pursuant to paragraph (a)(7) of this section.

(ii) The Commissioner shall make all decisions and issue all orders pursuant to this section solely on the basis of the administrative record, and shall not consider data or information not included as part of the administrative record.

(iii) The administrative record shall consist solely of the following material: All notices and orders published in the Federal Register, all data and views submitted in response to the request published pursuant to paragraph (a)(2) of this section, in response to any other notice published in the Federal Register, or accepted by the panel during its deliberations pursuant to paragraph (a)(3) of this section, all minutes of panel meetings, the panel report(s), all comments and rebuttal comments submitted on the proposed monograph and all new data and information submitted pursuant to paragraph (a)(6) of this section, all objections submitted on the tentative final monograph and all new data and information and comments submitted pursuant to paragraph (a)(7) of this section, the complete record of any oral public hearing conducted pursuant to paragraph (a)(8) of this section, all other comments requested at any time by the Commissioner, all data and information for which the Commissioner has reopened the administrative record, and all other material that the Commissioner includes in the administrative record as part of the basis for the Commissioner’s decision.

(11) **Court appeal.** The monograph contained in the final order constitutes final agency action from which appeal lies to the courts. The Food and Drug Administration will request consolidation of all appeals in a single court. Upon court appeal, the Commissioner may, at his discretion, stay the effective date for part or all of the monograph pending appeal and final court adjudication.

(12) **Amendment of monographs.** (i) The Commissioner may propose on the Commissioner’s own initiative to amend or repeal any monograph established pursuant to this section. Any interested person may petition the Commissioner for such proposal pursuant to §10.30 of this chapter. The Commissioner may deny the petition if the Commissioner finds a lack of safety or effectiveness employing the standards in paragraph (a)(4) of this section (in which case the appeal provisions of paragraph (a)(11) of this section shall apply), or the Commissioner may publish a proposed amendment or repeal in the Federal Register if the Commissioner finds general recognition of safety and effectiveness employing the standards in paragraph (a)(4) of this section. Any interested person may, within 90 days after publication of the proposed order in the Federal Register, file with the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration, written comments in triplicate. Comments may be accompanied by a memorandum or brief in support thereof. All comments may be reviewed in the Dockets Management Branch between the hours of 9 a.m. and 4 p.m., Monday through Friday. After reviewing the comments, the Commissioner shall publish a final order amending the monograph established under the provisions of paragraph (a)(9) of this section or withdraw the proposal if comments opposing the amendment are persuasive. A new drug application
(ii) A new drug application may be submitted in lieu of a petition to amend the OTC drug monograph only if the product with the condition that is the subject of the new drug application has not been marketed on an interim basis (such as under the provisions of paragraph (a)(6)(iii) of this section), all clinical testing has been conducted pursuant to a new drug application plan, and no marketing of the product with the condition for which approval is sought is undertaken prior to approval of the new drug application. The Food and Drug Administration shall handle a new drug application as a petition for amendment of a monograph, and shall review it on that basis, if the provisions of this paragraph preclude approval of a new drug application but permit the granting of such a petition.

(b) Regulatory action. Any product which fails to conform to an applicable monograph after its effective date is liable to regulatory action.

(c) Information and data submitted under this section shall include, with respect to each nonclinical laboratory study contained in the application, either a statement that the study was conducted in compliance with the good laboratory practice regulations set forth in part 58 of this chapter, or, if the study was not conducted in compliance with such regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(d) [Reserved]

(e) Institutional review and informed consent. Information and data submitted under this section after July 27, 1981, shall include statements regarding each clinical investigation involving human subjects, from which the information and data are derived, that it was conducted in compliance with the requirements for institutional review set forth in part 56 of this chapter, or was not subject to such requirements in accordance with §§56.104 or 56.105, and that it was conducted in compliance with the requirements for informed consent set forth in part 50 of this chapter.

(f) Financial certification or disclosure statement. Any clinical data submitted under this section must be accompanied by financial certifications or disclosure statements or both as required by part 54 of this chapter.

§ 330.11 NDA deviations from applicable monograph.

A new drug application requesting approval of an OTC drug deviating in any respect from a monograph that has become final shall be in the form required by §314.50 of this chapter, but shall include a statement that the product meets all conditions of the applicable monograph except for the deviation for which approval is requested and may omit all information except that pertinent to the deviation.

§ 330.12 Status of over-the-counter (OTC) drugs previously reviewed under the Drug Efficacy Study (DESI).

(a) There were 420 OTC drugs reviewed in the Drug Efficacy Study (a review of drugs introduced to the market through new drug procedures between 1938 and 1962). A careful review has been made of the reports on these drugs to determine those drugs for which implementation may be deferred without significant risk to the public health, pending review by appropriate OTC drug advisory review panels and promulgation of a monograph.

(b) On and after April 20, 1972, a number of notices were published in the Federal Register concerning previously unpublished OTC drugs reviewed by the National Academy of Sciences-National Research Council Drug Efficacy Study Group. Only the evaluations and comments of the panels were published, with no conclusions of the Commissioner of Food and Drugs. Those publications were for the purpose of giving interested persons...
§ 330.12  21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

the benefit of the Academy’s opinions. For those products, and also for OTC drug products previously published with the Commissioner’s conclusions (except for the products listed in paragraphs (b) (1) and (2) of this section, all requests for data, revised labeling, requests for new drug applications, abbreviated new drug applications, updating supplements, data to support less than effective claims, if any, etc., are deferred, and such OTC drug products are instead subject to the OTC drug review in their appropriate classes pursuant to the procedures established in this subpart.

(1) The requirements of the following DESI announcements are not deferred (the reference document may also pertain to prescription drugs):


(iii) Certain Insulin Preparations (DESI 4286), published in the Federal Register of April 9, 1971 (36 FR 6842).


(v) Antiperspirants and Deodorants Containing Neomycin Sulfate (DESI 11048) for which an order revoking provisions for certification or release was published in the Federal Register of December 5, 1972 (37 FR 25820) and has been stayed by the filing of objections.

(vi) Thorexin Cough Medicine (DESI 11160) for which notice of opportunity for hearing was published in the Federal Register of February 2, 1973 (38 FR 3210).

(vii) Antibiotic susceptibility discs (DESI 90235) for which an order providing for certain discs to be certified and removing provisions for certification of other discs was published in the Federal Register of September 30, 1972 (37 FR 25825) and has been stayed by the filing of objections notice of which was published in the Federal Register of March 15, 1973 (38 FR 7007).

(2) Deferral of requirements is not appropriate when an announcement has been published and has been followed by a final order classifying a drug either as lacking substantial evidence of effectiveness or as not shown to be safe. These products will be removed from the market, if they have not already been removed. Regulatory action will also be undertaken against identical, similar and related products (21 CFR 310.6). Deferral of requirements is not appropriate for the following (the referenced document may also pertain to prescription drugs):

(i) Certain Sulfonamide-Decongestant Nasal Preparation (DESI 4850), for which notice of withdrawal of approval of new drug applications was published in the Federal Register of October 24, 1970 (35 FR 16605, 16606).

(ii) Eskay’s Theranates, containing strychnine, sodium, and calcium glycercophosphates, thiamine hydrochloride, alcohol, and phosphoric acid (DESI 2220), for which notice of withdrawal of approval of the new drug application was published in the Federal Register of February 18, 1971 (36 FR 3152).

(iii) The following topical drugs (DESI 1726), for which notice of withdrawal of new drug applications was published in the Federal Register of August 28, 1971 (36 FR 17368):

(a) Rhulitol Solution, containing tannic acid, chlorobutanol, phenol, camphor, alum, and isopropyl alcohol.

(b) Zirnox Topical Lotion, containing phenyltoloxamine citrate and zirconium oxide.

(iv) Menacyl Tablets, containing aspirin, menadione, and ascorbic acid (DESI 6363), for which notice of withdrawal of approval of the new drug application was published in the Federal Register of July 23, 1970 (35 FR 11827).

(v) Curad Medicated Adhesive Bandage containing sulfathiazole (DESI 4964), for which notice of withdrawal of approval of the new drug application was published in the Federal Register of December 31, 1969 (34 FR 20441).

(vi) Drugs Containing Rutin, Quercetin, Hesperidin, or any Bioflavonoids (DESI 5960), for which notice of withdrawal of approval of new drug applications was published in the Federal Register of July 3, 1970 (35 FR 10872, 10873) and October 17, 1970 (35 FR 16332). A further notice of opportunity for hearing with respect to the drugs covered by the October 17, 1970 Federal
§ 330.12

Food and Drug Administration, HHS

REGISTER notice will be published at a later date.

(vii) Antibiotics in Combination with Other Drugs for Nasal Use (DESI 7561), for which an order revoking provision for certification was published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of August 6, 1971 (36 FR 14469) and confirmed in the FEDERAL REGISTER of October 28, 1971 (36 FR 20686).

(viii) Antibiotic Troches (DESI 8328), for which an order revoking provision for certification was published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of July 14, 1971 (36 FR 13089) and confirmed in the FEDERAL REGISTER of October 9, 1971 (36 FR 19695).

(ix) Certain Drugs Containing Oxyphenisatin or Oxyphenisatin Acetate (DESI 10732), for which notices of withdrawal of approval of new drug applications were published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of February 1, 1972 (37 FR 2460), and March 9, 1973 (38 FR 6419).

(x) Curad Medicated Adhesive Bandage containing tyrothricin-nitrofurazone (DESI 6898), for which an order revoking provision for certification was published March 14, 1972 (37 FR 5294), and confirmed in the FEDERAL REGISTER of July 6, 1972 (37 FR 13254).

(xi) Candette Cough Gel (DESI 11562), for which notice of withdrawal of approval of the new drug application was published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of November 19, 1972 (37 FR 25249).

(xii) Certain OTC Multiple-Vitamin Preparations for Oral Use containing excessive amounts of vitamin D and/or vitamin A (DESI 97), for which notice of withdrawal of approval of the new drug applications was published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of November 29, 1972 (37 FR 25249).

(xiii) Certain Sulfonamide-Containing Preparations for Topical Ophthalmic or Otic Use (DESI 368, for which a notice of withdrawal of approval was published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of February 2, 1973 (38 FR 3208).

(xiv) Those parts of the publication entitled "Certain Mouthwash and Garble Preparations" (DESI 2855) pertaining to Tyrolaris Mouthwash, containing tyrothricin, panthenol, and alcohol, for which an order revoking provision for certification was published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of February 2, 1967 (32 FR 1172) prior to the drug efficacy study implementation.

(c) Manufacturers and distributors should take notice that the information on OTC drugs provided by the Drug Efficacy Study review is valuable information as to the deficiencies in the data available to support indications for use. They are encouraged to perform studies to obtain adequate evidence of effectiveness for the review of OTC drugs which is already in progress. In the interim it is in the public interest that manufacturers and distributors of all OTC drugs effect changes in their formulations and/or labeling to bring the products into conformity with current medical knowledge and experience.

(d) Manufacturers and distributors of OTC drugs may be reluctant to make appropriate formulation and/or labeling changes for fear of losing the protection of the so-called "grandfather" provisions of the 1938 Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (sec. 201(p)(1)) and the 1962 amendments to the act (sec. 107(c) of those amendments). To encourage and facilitate prompt changes, the Food and Drug Administration will not take legal action against any OTC drug, other than those not deferred, based on a charge that the product is a new drug and not grandfathered under the act as a result of the changes if the changes in formulation and/or labeling are of the following kind:

1. The addition to the labeling of warning, contraindications, side effects, and/or precaution information.

2. The deletion from the labeling of false, misleading, or unsupported indications for use or claims of effectiveness.

3. Changes in the components or composition of the drug that will give increased assurance that the drug will have its intended effect, yet not raise or contribute any added safety questions.

4. Changes in the components or composition of the drug which may reasonably be concluded to improve the safety of the drug, without diminishing its effectiveness.

(e) The forbearance from legal action for lack of grandfather protection is an
§ 330.13 Conditions for marketing ingredients recommended for over-the-counter (OTC) use under the OTC drug review.

(a) Before the publication in the Federal Register of an applicable proposed monograph, an OTC drug product that contains: (1) An active ingredient limited, on or after May 11, 1972, to prescription use for the indication and route of administration under consideration by an OTC advisory review panel, and not thereafter exempted from such limitation pursuant to §310.200 of this chapter, or

(2) An active ingredient at a dosage level higher than that available in an OTC drug product on December 4, 1975, shall be regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the act for which an approved new drug application is required.

(b)(1) An OTC drug product that contains: (i) An active ingredient limited, on or after May 11, 1972, to prescription use for the indication and route of administration under consideration by an OTC advisory review panel, and not thereafter exempted from such limitation pursuant to §310.200 of this chapter, or

(ii) An active ingredient at a dosage level higher than that available in an OTC drug product on December 4, 1975, which ingredient and/or dosage level is classified by the panel in category I (conditions subject to §330.10(a)(6)(i)) shall be regarded as a new drug within the meaning of section 201(p) of the act for which an approved new drug application is required if marketed for OTC use prior to the date of publication in the Federal Register of a proposed monograph.

(2) An OTC drug product covered by paragraph (b)(1) of this section which is marketed after the date of publication in the Federal Register of a proposed monograph but prior to the effective date of a final monograph shall be subject to the risk that the Commissioner may not accept the panel’s recommendation and may instead adopt a different position that may require relabeling, recall, or other regulatory action. The Commissioner may state such position at any time by notice in the Federal Register, either separately or as part of another document; appropriate regulatory action will commence immediately and will not await publication of a final monograph. Marketing of such a product with a formulation or labeling not in accord with a proposed monograph or tentative final monograph also may result in regulatory action against the product, the marketer, or both.

(c) An OTC drug product that contains: (1) An active ingredient limited, on or after May 11, 1972, to prescription use for the indication and route of administration under consideration by an OTC advisory review panel, and not thereafter exempted from such limitation pursuant to §310.200 of this chapter, or

(2) An active ingredient at a dosage level higher than that available in any OTC drug product on December 4, 1975, which ingredient and/or dosage level is classified by the panel in category II (conditions subject to §330.10(a)(6)(ii)), may be marketed only after:

(i) The Center for Drug Evaluation and Research or the Commissioner tentatively determines that the ingredient is generally recognized as safe and effective, and the Commissioner states by notice in the Federal Register (separately or as part of another document) that marketing under specified conditions will be permitted;

(ii) The ingredient is determined by the Commissioner to be generally recognized as safe and effective and is included in the appropriate published OTC drug final monograph; or

(iii) A new drug application for the product has been approved.

(d) An OTC drug product that contains: (1) An active ingredient limited, on or after May 11, 1972, to prescription use for the indication and route of administration under consideration by an OTC advisory review panel, and not
219

Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 330.14 Additional criteria and procedures for classifying OTC drugs as generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded.

(a) Introduction. This section sets forth additional criteria and procedures by which over the counter (OTC) drugs initially marketed in the United States after the OTC drug review began in 1972 and OTC drugs without any U.S. marketing experience can be considered for inclusion in the OTC drug monograph system. The following information must be provided in the format of a time and extent application (TEA):

(1) Basic information about the condition that includes a description of the active ingredient(s) or botanical drug substance(s), pharmacologic class(es), intended OTC use(s), route(s) of administration, directions for use, and the applicable existing OTC drug monograph(s) under which the condition would be marketed or the request

thereafter exempted from such limitation pursuant to §310.200 of this chapter, or

(2) An active ingredient at a dosage level higher than that available in any OTC drug product on December 4, 1975, which ingredient and/or dosage level is classified by the panel in category III (conditions subject to §330.10(a)(6)(iii)), may be marketed only after:

(i) The Center for Drug Evaluation and Research or the Commissioner tentatively determines that the ingredient is generally recognized as safe and effective, and the Commissioner states by notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER (separately or as part of another document) that marketing under specified conditions will be permitted;

(ii) The ingredient is determined by the Commissioner to be generally recognized as safe and effective and is included in the appropriate published OTC drug final monograph; or

(iii) A new drug application for the product has been approved.

c) This section applies only to conditions under consideration as part of the OTC drug review initiated on May 11, 1972, and evaluated under the procedures set forth in §330.10. Section 330.14(h) applies to the marketing of all conditions under consideration and evaluated using the criteria and procedures set forth in §330.14.

§ 330.14 Additional criteria and procedures for classifying OTC drugs as generally recognized as safe and effective and not misbranded.

(a) Introduction. This section sets forth additional criteria and procedures by which over the counter (OTC) drugs initially marketed in the United States after the OTC drug review began in 1972 and OTC drugs without any U.S. marketing experience can be considered for inclusion in the OTC drug monograph system. The following information must be provided in the format of a time and extent application (TEA):

(1) Basic information about the condition that includes a description of the active ingredient(s) or botanical drug substance(s), pharmacologic class(es), intended OTC use(s), route(s) of administration, directions for use, and the applicable existing OTC drug monograph(s) under which the condition would be marketed or the request

thereafter exempted from such limitation pursuant to §310.200 of this chapter, or

(2) An active ingredient at a dosage level higher than that available in any OTC drug product on December 4, 1975, which ingredient and/or dosage level is classified by the panel in category III (conditions subject to §330.10(a)(6)(iii)), may be marketed only after:

(i) The Center for Drug Evaluation and Research or the Commissioner tentatively determines that the ingredient is generally recognized as safe and effective, and the Commissioner states by notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER (separately or as part of another document) that marketing under specified conditions will be permitted;

(ii) The ingredient is determined by the Commissioner to be generally recognized as safe and effective and is included in the appropriate published OTC drug final monograph; or

(iii) A new drug application for the product has been approved.

c) This section applies only to conditions under consideration as part of the OTC drug review initiated on May 11, 1972, and evaluated under the procedures set forth in §330.10. Section 330.14(h) applies to the marketing of all conditions under consideration and evaluated using the criteria and procedures set forth in §330.14.

§ 330.14 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

and rationale for creation of a new OTC drug monograph(s).

(i) A detailed chemical description of the active ingredient(s) that includes a full description of the drug substance, including its physical and chemical characteristics, the method of synthesis (or isolation) and purification of the drug substance, and any specifications and analytical methods necessary to ensure the identity, strength, quality, and purity of the drug substance.

(ii) For a botanical drug substance(s), a detailed description of the botanical ingredient (including proper identification of the plant, plant part(s), alga, or macroscopic fungus used; a certificate of authenticity; and information on the grower/supplier, growing conditions, harvest location and harvest time); a qualitative description (including the name, appearance, physical/chemical properties, chemical constituents, active constituent(s) (if known), and biological activity (if known)); a quantitative description of the chemical constituents, including the active constituent(s) or other chemical marker(s) (if known and measurable); the type of manufacturing process (e.g., aqueous extraction, pulverization); and information on any further processing of the botanical substance (e.g., addition of excipients or blending).

(iii) Reference to the current edition of the U.S. Pharmacopeia (USP)–National Formulary (NF) or foreign compendiums may help satisfy the requirements in this section.

(2) A list of all countries in which the condition has been marketed. Include the following information for each country. (For a condition that has been marketed OTC in 5 or more countries with a minimum of 5 continuous years of marketing in at least one country, the sponsor may submit information in accordance with this section):

(i) How the condition has been marketed (e.g., OTC general sales direct-to-consumer; sold only in a pharmacy, with or without the personal involvement of a pharmacist; dietary supplement; or cosmetic). If the condition has been marketed as a nonprescription pharmacy-only product, establish that this marketing restriction does not indicate safety concerns about its toxicity or other potentiality for harmful effect, the method of its use, or the collateral measures necessary to its use.

(ii) The cumulative total number of dosage units (e.g., tablets, capsules, ounces) sold for each dosage form of the condition. Manufacturers or suppliers of OTC active ingredients may provide dosage unit information as the total weight of active ingredient sold. List the various package sizes for each dosage form in which the condition is marketed OTC. Provide an estimate of the minimum number of potential consumer exposures to the condition using one of the following calculations:

(A) Divide the total number of dosage units sold by the number of dosage units in the largest package size marketed.

(B) Divide the total weight of the active ingredient sold by the total weight of the active ingredient in the largest package size marketed.

(iii) A description of the population demographics (percentage of various racial/ethnic groups) and the source(s) from which this information has been compiled, to ensure that the condition’s use(s) can be reasonably extrapolated to the U.S. population.

(iv) If the use pattern (i.e., how often it is to be used (according to the label) and for how long) varies between countries based on the condition’s packaging and labeling, or changes in use pattern have occurred over time in one or more countries, describe the use pattern for each country and explain why there are differences or changes.

(v) A description of the country’s system for identifying adverse drug experiences, especially those found in OTC marketing experience, including method of collection if applicable.

(3) A statement of how long the condition has been marketed in each country and how long the current product labeling has been in use, accompanied by a copy of the current product labeling. All labeling that is not in English must be translated to English in accordance with §10.20(c)(2) of this chapter. State whether the current product labeling has or has not been authorized, accepted, or approved by a regulatory body in each country where the condition is marketed.
(4) For a condition that has been marketed OTC in five or more countries with a minimum of 5 continuous years of marketing in at least one country, the sponsor may select at least five of these countries from which to submit information in accord with paragraphs (c)(2)(i) through (c)(2)(iv) of this section. Selected countries must include the country with a minimum of 5 continuous years of OTC marketing, countries that have the longest duration of marketing, and countries having the most support for extent of marketing, i.e., a large volume of sales with cultural diversity among users of the product. If the condition meets these criteria in countries listed in section 802(b)(1)(A) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, some of these countries should be included among the five selected. Sponsors should provide information from more than five countries if they believe that it is needed to support eligibility. Sponsors should explain the basis for the countries selected in the TEA.

(5) A list of all countries where the condition is marketed only as a prescription drug and the reasons why its marketing is restricted to prescription in these countries.

(6) A list of all countries in which the condition has been withdrawn from marketing or in which an application for OTC marketing approval has been denied. Include the reasons for such withdrawal or application denial.

(7) The information requested in paragraphs (c)(2), (c)(2)(i) through (c)(2)(iv), and (c)(3) of this section must be provided in a table format. The labeling required by paragraph (c)(3) of this section must be attached to the table.

(8) For OTC drugs that have been marketed for more than 5 years in the United States under a new drug application, the information requested in paragraphs (c)(2)(i), (c)(2)(iii), (c)(2)(v), (c)(3), and (c)(5) of this section need not be provided.

(d) Submission of information; confidentiality. The sponsor must submit three copies of the TEA to the Central Document Room, 5630 Fishers Lane, rm. 1061, Rockville, MD 20852. The Food and Drug Administration will handle the TEA as confidential until such time as a decision is made on the eligibility of the condition for consideration in the OTC drug monograph system. If the condition is found eligible, the TEA will be placed on public display in the Dockets Management Branch after deletion of information deemed confidential under 18 U.S.C. 1905, 5 U.S.C. 552(b), or 21 U.S.C. 331(j). Sponsors must identify information that is considered confidential under these statutory provisions. If the condition is not found eligible, the TEA will not be placed on public display, but a letter from the agency to the sponsor stating why the condition was not found acceptable will be placed on public display in the Dockets Management Branch.

(e) Notice of eligibility. If the condition is found eligible, the agency will publish a notice of eligibility in the Federal Register and provide the sponsor and other interested parties an opportunity to submit data to demonstrate safety and effectiveness. When the notice of eligibility is published, the agency will place the TEA on public display in the Dockets Management Branch.

(f) Request for data and views. The notice of eligibility shall request interested persons to submit published and unpublished data to demonstrate the safety and effectiveness of the condition for its intended OTC use(s). These data shall be submitted to a docket established in the Dockets Management Branch and shall be publicly available for viewing at that office, except data deemed confidential under 18 U.S.C. 1905, 5 U.S.C. 552(b), or 21 U.S.C. 331(j). Data considered confidential under these provisions must be clearly identified. Any proposed compendial standards for the condition shall not be considered confidential. The safety and effectiveness submissions shall include the following:

(1) All data and information listed in §330.16(a)(2) under the outline ‘‘OTC Drug Review Information,’’ items III through VII.

(2) All serious adverse drug experiences as defined in §§310.305 and 314.80 of this chapter, from each country where the condition has been or is currently marketed as a prescription drug or as an OTC drug or product. Provide
individual adverse drug experience reports (FDA Form 3500A or equivalent) along with a summary of all serious adverse drug experiences and expected or frequently reported side effects for the condition. Individual reports that are not in English must be translated to English in accordance with §10.20(c)(2) of this chapter.

(g) Administrative procedures. The agency may use an advisory review panel to evaluate the safety and effectiveness data in accord with the provisions of §330.10(a)(3). Alternatively, the agency may evaluate the data in conjunction with the advisory review panel or on its own without using an advisory review panel. The agency will use the safety, effectiveness, and labeling standards in §330.10(a)(4)(i) through (a)(4)(vi) in evaluating the data.

(1) If the agency uses an advisory review panel to evaluate the data, the panel may submit its recommendations in its official minutes of meeting(s) or by a report under the provisions of §330.10(a)(5).

(2) The agency may act on an advisory review panel’s recommendations using the procedures in §§330.10(a)(2) and 330.10(a)(6) through (a)(10).

(3) If the condition is initially determined to be generally recognized as safe and effective for OTC use in the United States, the agency will propose to include it in an appropriate OTC drug monograph(s), either by amending an existing monograph(s) or establishing a new monograph(s), if necessary.

(4) If the condition is initially determined not to be generally recognized as safe and effective for OTC use in the United States, the agency will inform the sponsor and other interested parties who have submitted data of its determination by letter, a copy of which will be placed on public display in the docket established in the Dockets Management Branch. The agency will publish a notice of proposed rulemaking to include the condition in §310.502 of this chapter.

(5) Interested parties will have an opportunity to submit comments and new data. The agency will subsequently publish a final rule (or reproposal if necessary) in the Federal Register.

(h) Marketing. A condition submitted under this section for consideration in the OTC drug monograph system may be marketed in accordance with an applicable final OTC drug monograph(s) only after the agency determines that the condition is generally recognized as safe and effective and includes it in the appropriate OTC drug final monograph(s), and the condition complies with paragraph (i) of this section. When an OTC drug monograph has not been finalized and finalization is not imminent, after the agency has evaluated the comments to a proposed rule to include a new condition in a tentative final monograph as generally recognized as safe and effective and the agency has not changed its position as a result of the comments, and the condition complies with paragraph (i) of this section, the agency may publish a notice of enforcement policy that allows marketing to begin pending completion of the final monograph subject to the risk that the agency may, prior to or in the final monograph, adopt a different position that could require relabeling, recall, or other regulatory action.

(i) Compendial monograph. Any active ingredient or botanical drug substance included in a final OTC drug monograph or the subject of an enforcement notice described in paragraph (h) of this section must be recognized in an official USP-NF drug monograph that sets forth its standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity. Sponsors must include an official or proposed compendial monograph as part of the safety and effectiveness data submission listed in §330.10(a)(2) under item VII of the outline entitled “OTC DRUG REVIEW INFORMATION.”

[67 FR 3074, Jan. 23, 2002]
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 331.15 Combination with nonantacid active ingredients.

Subpart C—Testing Procedures

§ 331.20 Determination of percent contribution of active ingredients.

§ 331.21 Test Modifications.

Subpart D—Labeling

§ 331.30 Labeling of antacid products.

§ 331.80 Professional labeling.


SOURCE: 39 FR 19874, June 4, 1974, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 331.1 Scope.

An over-the-counter antacid product in a form suitable for oral administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the following conditions and each of the general conditions established in § 330.1 of this chapter.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

§ 331.10 Antacid active ingredients.

(a) The active antacid ingredients of the product consist of one or more of the ingredients permitted in § 331.11 within any maximum daily dosage limit established, each ingredient is included at a level that contributes at least 25 percent of the total acid neutralizing capacity of the product, and the finished product contains at least 5 meq of acid neutralizing capacity as measured by the procedure provided in the United States Pharmacopeia 23-National Formulary 18. The method established in § 331.20 shall be used to determine the percent contribution of each antacid active ingredient.

(b) This section does not apply to an antacid ingredient specifically added as a corrective to prevent a laxative or constipating effect.


§ 331.11 Listing of specific active ingredients.

(a) Aluminum-containing active ingredients:

(1) Basic aluminum carbonate gel.

(2) Aluminum hydroxide (or as aluminum hydroxide-hexitol stabilized polymer, aluminum hydroxide-magnesium carbonate codried gel, aluminum hydroxide-magnesium trisilicate codried gel, aluminum-hydroxide sucrose powder hydrated).

(3) Dihydroxyaluminum aminoacetate and dihydroxyaluminum aminoaetic acid.

(4) Aluminum phosphate gel when used as part of an antacid combination product and contributing at least 25 percent of the total acid neutralizing capacity; maximum daily dosage limit is 8 grams.

(5) Dihydroxyaluminum sodium carbonate.

(b) Bicarbonate-containing active ingredients: Bicarbonate ion; maximum daily dosage limit 200 mEq. for persons up to 60 years old and 100 mEq. for persons 60 years or older.

(c) Bismuth-containing active ingredients:

(1) Bismuth aluminate.

(2) Bismuth carbonate.

(3) Bismuth subcarbonate.

(4) Bismuth subgallate.

(5) Bismuth subnitrate.

(d) Calcium-containing active ingredients: Calcium, as carbonate or phosphate; maximum daily dosage limit 160 mEq. calcium (e.g., 8 grams calcium carbonate).

(e) Citrate-containing active ingredients: Citrate ion, as citric acid or salt; maximum daily dosage limit 8 grams.

(f) Glycine (aminoacetic acid).

(g) Magnesium-containing active ingredients:

(1) Hydrate magnesium aluminate activated sulfate.

(2) Magaldrate.

(3) Magnesium aluminosilicates.

(4) Magnesium carbonate.

(5) Magnesium glycinate.

(6) Magnesium hydroxide.

(7) Magnesium oxide.

(8) Magnesium trisilicate.

(h) Milk solids, dried.

(i) Phosphate-containing active ingredients:

(1) Phosphate-containing active ingredients:

(1) Aluminum phosphate; maximum daily dosage limit 8 grams.

(2) Mono or dibasic calcium salt; maximum daily dosage limit 2 grams.

(3) Tricalcium phosphate; maximum daily dosage limit 24 grams.
§ 331.15 Combination with nonantacid active ingredients.

(a) An antacid may contain any generally recognized as safe and effective nonantacid laxative ingredient to correct for constipation caused by the antacid. No labeling claim of the laxative effect may be used for such a product.

(b) An antacid may contain any generally recognized as safe and effective analgesic ingredient(s), if it is indicated for use solely for the concurrent symptoms of gas associated with heartburn, sour stomach or acid indigestion.

§ 331.20 Determination of percent contribution of active ingredients.

To determine the percent contribution of an antacid active ingredient, place an accurately weighed amount of the antacid active ingredient equal to the amount present in a unit dose of the product into a 250-milliliter (mL) beaker. If wetting is desired, add not more than 5 mL of alcohol (neutralized to an apparent pH of 3.5), and mix to wet the sample thoroughly. Add 70 mL of water, and mix on a magnetic stirrer at 300±30 r.p.m. for 1 minute. Analyze the acid neutralizing capacity of the sample according to the procedure provided in the United States Pharmacopeia 23/National Formulary 18 and calculate the percent contribution of the antacid active ingredient in the total product as follows:

Percent contribution = \( \frac{(\text{Total mEq. Antacid Active Ingredient \times 100})}{(\text{Total mEq. Antacid Product})} \)

§ 331.21 Test modifications.

The formulation or mode of administration of certain products may require a modification of the United States Pharmacopeia 23/National Formulary 18 acid neutralizing capacity test. Any proposed modification and the data to support it shall be submitted as a petition under the rules established in §10.30 of this chapter. All information submitted will be subject to the disclosure rules in part 20 of this chapter.

§ 331.30 Labeling of antacid products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “antacid.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the following: “For the relief of” (optional, any or all of the following:) “heartburn,” “sour stomach,”
and/or “acid indigestion” (which may be followed by the optional statement:)
and upset stomach associated with"
(optional, as appropriate) “this symptom” or “these symptoms.” Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 506(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings, under the heading “Warnings”, which may be combined but not rearranged to eliminate duplicative words or phrases if the resulting warning is clear and understandable:

(1) “Do not take more than (maximum recommended daily dosage, broken down by age groups if appropriate, expressed in units such as tablets or teaspoons) in a 24-hour period, or use the maximum dosage of this product for more than 2 weeks, except under the advice and supervision of a physician.”

(2) For products which cause constipation in 5 percent or more of persons who take the maximum recommended dosage: “May cause constipation.”

(3) For products which cause laxation in 5 percent or more of persons who take the maximum recommended dosage: “May have laxative effect.”

(4) For products containing more than 50 mEq. of magnesium in the recommended daily dosage: “Do not use this product except under the advice and supervision of a physician if you have kidney disease.”

(5) For products containing more than 25 mEq. of potassium in the maximum recommended daily dose: “Do not use this product except under the advice and supervision of a physician if you have kidney disease.”

(6) For products containing more than 5 gm per day lactose in a maximum daily dosage: “Do not use this product except under advice and supervision of a physician if you are allergic to milk or milk products.”

(d) Drug interaction precaution. The labeling of the product contains the following statement “Ask a doctor or pharmacist before use if you are [bullet] presently taking a prescription drug. Antacids may interact with certain prescription drugs.”

(e) Directions for use. The labeling of the product contains the recommended dosage, under the heading “Directions”, per time interval (e.g., every 4 hours) or time period (e.g., 4 times a day) broken down by age groups if appropriate, followed by “or as directed by a physician.”

(f) Exemption from the general accidental overdose warning. The labeling of antacid drug products containing the active ingredients identified in §331.11(a), (b), and (d) through (m); permitted combinations of these ingredients provided for in §331.10; and any of these ingredients or combinations of these ingredients in combination with simethicone (identified in §332.10 of this chapter and provided for in §331.15(c)), are exempt from the requirement in §330.1(g) of this chapter that the labeling bear the general warning statement “In case of accidental overdose, seek professional assistance or contact a poison control center immediately.” With the exception of sodium bicarbonate powder products identified in §331.11(k)(1), the labeling must continue to bear the first part of the general warning in §330.1(g) of this chapter, which states, “Keep this and all drugs out of the reach of children.”

(g) [Reserved]

(h) The word “doctor” may be substituted for the word “physician” in any of the labeling statements in this section.


1 See §201.66(b)(4) of this chapter.
§ 331.80 Professional labeling.

(a) The labeling of the product provided to health professionals (but not to the general public):

(1) Shall contain the neutralizing capacity of the product as calculated using the procedure set forth in United States Pharmacopeia 23/National Formulary 18 expressed in terms of the dosage recommended per minimum time interval or, if the labeling recommends more than one dosage, in terms of the minimum dosage recommended per minimum time interval.

(2) May contain an indication for the symptomatic relief of hyperacidity associated with the diagnosis of peptic ulcer, gastritis, peptic esophagitis, gastric hyperacidity, and hiatal hernia.

(3) For products containing basic aluminum carbonate gel identified in § 331.11(a)(1)—Indication. “For the treatment, control, or management of hyperphosphatemia, or for use with a low phosphate diet to prevent formation of phosphate urinary stones, through the reduction of phosphates in the serum and urine.”

(4) For products containing aluminum identified in § 331.11(a)—Warnings. (i) Prolonged use of aluminum-containing antacids in patients with renal failure may result in or worsen dialysis osteomalacia. Elevated tissue aluminum levels contribute to the development of the dialysis encephalopathy and osteomalacia syndromes. Small amounts of aluminum are absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and renal excretion of aluminum is impaired in renal failure. Aluminum is not well removed by dialysis because it is bound to albumin and transferrin, which do not cross dialysis membranes. As a result, aluminum is deposited in bone, and dialysis osteomalacia may develop when large amounts of aluminum are ingested orally by patients with impaired renal function.

(ii) Aluminum forms insoluble complexes with phosphate in the gastrointestinal tract, thus decreasing phosphate absorption. Prolonged use of aluminum-containing antacids by normophosphatemic patients may result in hypophosphatemia if phosphate intake is not adequate. In its more severe forms, hypophosphatemia can lead to anorexia, malaise, muscle weakness, and osteomalacia.

(b) Professional labeling for an antacid-antiflatulent combination may contain the information allowed for health professionals for antacids and antiflatulents.


PART 332—ANTIFLATULENT PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec. 332.1 Scope.
332.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

332.10 Antiflatulent active ingredients.
332.15 Combination with non-antiflatulent active ingredients.

Subpart C—Labeling

332.30 Labeling of antiflatulent products.
332.31 Professional labeling.

SOURCE: 39 FR 19877, June 4, 1974, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A General Provisions

§ 332.1 Scope.

An over-the-counter antiflatulent product in a form suitable for oral administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the following conditions and each of the general conditions established in § 330.1 of this chapter.

§ 332.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

Antigas. A term that may be used interchangeably with the term antiflatulent. Neither term should be considered as describing the mechanism of action of the active ingredient contained in the product.

[61 FR 8838, Mar. 5, 1996]
Subpart B—Active Ingredients

§ 332.10 Antiflatulent active ingredients.
Simethicone; maximum daily dose 500 mg. There is no dosage limitation at this time for professional labeling.

§ 332.15 Combination with non-antiflatulent active ingredients.
An antiflatulent may contain any generally recognized as safe and effective antacid ingredient(s) if it is indicated for use solely for the concurrent symptoms of gas associated with heartburn, sour stomach or acid indigestion.

Subpart C—Labeling

§ 332.30 Labeling of antiflatulent drug products.
(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “antiflatulent,” “antigas,” or “antiflatulent (antigas).”
(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” one or more of the phrases listed in this paragraph (b), as appropriate. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in § 330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.
(1) (Select one of the following: “Alleviates or Relieves”) “the symptoms referred to as gas.”
(2) (Select one of the following: “Alleviates” or “Relieves”) (select one or more of the following: “bloating,” “pressure,” “fullness,” or “stuffed feeling”): “commonly referred to as gas.”
(c) Exemption from the general accidental overdose warning. The labeling for antiflatulent drug products containing simethicone identified in § 332.10 and antacid/antiflatulent combination drug products provided for in § 332.15, containing the active ingredients identified in § 331.11(a), (b), and (d) through (m) of this chapter are exempt from the requirement in § 330.1(g) of this chapter that the labeling bear the general warning statement “In case of accidental overdose, seek professional assistance or contact a poison control center immediately.” The labeling must continue to bear the first part of the general warning in § 330.1(g) of this chapter, which states, “Keep this and all drugs out of the reach of children.”

§ 332.31 Professional labeling.
(a) The labeling of the product provided to health professionals (but not to the general public) may contain as additional indications postoperative gas pain or for use in endoscopic examination.
(b) Professional labeling for an antiflatulent-antacid combination may contain information allowed for health professionals for antacids and antiflatulents.

PART 333—TOPICAL ANTIMICROBIAL DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A [Reserved]

Subpart B—First Aid Antibiotic Drug Products

Sec.
333.101 Scope.
333.103 Definitions.
333.110 First aid antibiotic active ingredients.
333.120 Permitted combinations of active ingredients.
333.150 Labeling of first aid antibiotic drug products.
333.160 Labeling of permitted combinations of active ingredients.

Subpart C—Topical Antifungal Drug Products

333.201 Scope.
333.203 Definitions.
333.210 Antifungal active ingredients.
333.250 Labeling of antifungal drug products.
333.280 Professional labeling.
§ 333.101 Scope.

Subpart A [Reserved]

Subpart B—First Aid Antibiotic Drug Products

§ 333.103 Definitions.

As used in this subpart:

First aid antibiotic. An antibiotic-containing drug product applied topically to the skin to help prevent infection in minor cuts, scrapes, and burns.

§ 333.110 First aid antibiotic active ingredients.

The product consists of any of the following active ingredients within the specified concentration established for each ingredient and in the specified dosage form:

(a) Bacitracin ointment containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin in a suitable ointment base.

(b) Bacitracin zinc ointment containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin zinc in a suitable ointment base.

(c) Chlortetracycline hydrochloride ointment containing, in each gram, 30 milligrams of chlortetracycline hydrochloride in a suitable ointment base.

(d) Neomycin sulfate containing, in each gram, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin in a suitable water soluble or oleaginous ointment base.

(e) Neomycin sulfate cream containing, in each gram, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin in a suitable cream base.

(f) Tetracycline hydrochloride ointment containing, in each gram, 30 milligrams of tetracycline hydrochloride in a suitable ointment base.

§ 333.120 Permitted combinations of active ingredients.

The following combinations are permitted provided each active ingredient is present within the established concentration and in the specified dosage form, and the product is labeled in accordance with § 333.160.

(a) Combinations of antibiotic active ingredients. (1) Bacitracin-neomycin sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin and 3.5 milligrams of neomycin in a suitable ointment base.

(2) Bacitracin-neomycin sulfate-polymyxin B sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, in a suitable ointment base the following:

(i) 500 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, and 5,000 units of polymyxin B; or

(ii) 400 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, and 5,000 units of polymyxin B;

(3) Bacitracin-polymyxin B sulfate topical aerosol containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin and 5,000 units of polymyxin B in a suitable vehicle, packaged in a pressurized container with suitable inert gases.

(4) Bacitracin zinc-neomycin sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin and 3.5 milligrams of neomycin in a suitable ointment base.

(5) Bacitracin zinc-neomycin sulfate-polymyxin B sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, in a suitable ointment base the following:

(i) 400 units of bacitracin, 3 milligrams of neomycin, and 8,000 units of polymyxin B; or

(ii) 400 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, and 5,000 units of polymyxin B; or

(iii) 500 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, and 5,000 units of polymyxin B; or
(iv) 500 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, and 10,000 units of polymyxin B;
(6) Bacitracin zinc-polymyxin B sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin and 10,000 units of polymyxin B in a suitable ointment base.
(7) Bacitracin zinc-polymyxin B sulfate topical aerosol containing, in each gram, 120 units of bacitracin and 2,350 units of polymyxin B in a suitable vehicle, packaged in a pressurized container with suitable inert gases.
(8) Bacitracin zinc-polymyxin B sulfate topical powder containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin and 10,000 units of polymyxin B in a suitable base.
(9) Neomycin sulfate-polymyxin B sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin and 5,000 units of polymyxin B in a suitable water miscible base.
(10) Neomycin sulfate-polymyxin B sulfate cream containing, in each gram, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin and 10,000 units of polymyxin B in a suitable vehicle.
(11) Oxytetracycline hydrochloride-polymyxin B sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, 30 milligrams of oxytetracycline and 10,000 units of polymyxin B in a suitable ointment base.
(12) Oxytetracycline hydrochloride-polymyxin B sulfate topical powder containing, in each gram, 30 milligrams of oxytetracycline and 10,000 units of polymyxin B with a suitable filler.
(b) Combinations of first aid antibiotic active ingredients and local anesthetic active ingredients.
(1) Bacitracin ointment containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient;
(2) Bacitracin-neomycin sulfate-polymyxin B sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, in a suitable ointment base the following:
(i) 500 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, 5,000 units of polymyxin B, and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient;
(ii) 400 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, 5,000 units of polymyxin B, and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient;
(3) Bacitracin-polymyxin B sulfate topical aerosol containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin and 5,000 units of polymyxin B and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient in a suitable vehicle, packaged in a pressurized container with suitable inert gases.
(4) Bacitracin-zinc-neomycin sulfate-polymyxin B sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, in a suitable ointment base containing:
(i) 400 units of bacitracin, 3 milligrams of neomycin, 8,000 units of polymyxin B, and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient;
(ii) 400 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, 5,000 units of polymyxin B, and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient;
(iii) 500 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, 5,000 units of polymyxin B, and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient;
(iv) 500 units of bacitracin, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, 10,000 units of polymyxin B, and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient;
(5) Bacitracin zinc-polymyxin B sulfate ointment containing, in each gram, 500 units of bacitracin, 10,000 units of polymyxin B, and any single generally recognized as safe and effective amine or "caine"-type local anesthetic active ingredient in a suitable ointment base.
(6) Neomycin sulfate-polymyxin B sulfate cream containing, in each gram, 3.5 milligrams of neomycin, 10,000 units of polymyxin B, and any
§ 333.150 Labeling of first aid antibiotic drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “first aid antibiotic.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the following: “First aid to” [select one of the following: “prevent,” (“decrease” (“the risk of” or “the chance of”)), (“reduce” (“the risk of” or “the chance of”)), “guard against,” or “protect against”] [select one of the following: “infection,” “bacterial contamination,” or “skin infection”] “in minor cuts, scrapes, and burns.” Other truthful and nonmisleading statements describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 505(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

1. “For external use only. Do not use in the eyes or apply over large areas of the body. In case of deep or puncture wounds, animal bites, or serious burns, consult a doctor.”

2. “For products containing chlortetracycline hydrochloride or tetracycline hydrochloride: Stop use and consult a doctor if the condition persists or gets worse. Do not use longer than 1 week unless directed by doctor.”

3. “For any product containing bacitracin, bacitracin zinc, neomycin, neomycin sulfate, polymyxin B, and/or polymyxin B sulfate: Stop use and consult a doctor if the condition persists or gets worse, or if a rash or other allergic reaction develops. Do not use if you are allergic to any of the ingredients. Do not use longer than 1 week unless directed by a doctor.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following statements under the heading “Directions”:

1. “For ointment and cream products. “Clean the affected area. Apply a small amount of this product (an amount equal to the surface area of the tip of a finger) on the area 1 to 3 times daily. May be covered with a sterile bandage.”

2. “For powder products. “Clean the affected area. Apply a light dusting of the powder on the area 1 to 3 times daily. May be covered with a sterile bandage.”

3. “For aerosol products. “Clean the affected area. Spray a small amount of this product on the area 1 to 3 times daily. May be covered with a sterile bandage.”

(e) The word “doctor” may be substituted for the word “physician” in any of the labeling statements in this subpart.

§ 333.160 Labeling of permitted combinations of active ingredients.

Statements of identity, indications, warnings, and directions for use, respectively, applicable to each ingredient in the product may be combined to eliminate duplicative words or phrases so that the resulting information is clear and understandable.

(a) Statement of identity. For a combination drug product that has an established name, the labeling of the product states the established name of the combination drug product, followed by the statement of identity for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the statement of identity sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs. For a combination drug product that does not have an established name, the labeling of the product states the statement of identity for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the statement of identity sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs.
(b) **Indications.** The labeling of the product states, under the heading “**Indications,**” the indication(s) for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the “**Indications**” sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs, unless otherwise stated in this paragraph. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) For permitted combinations identified in §333.120(a). The indications in §333.150 should be used.

(2) For permitted combinations identified in §333.120(b). In addition to the required indication identified in §333.150, the labeling of the product may state, under the heading “**Indications,**” the following additional indication: “**First aid for the temporary relief of** (select one of the following: **‘pain,**” “**discomfort,**” “**pain or discomfort** or **‘pain and itching’**) “in minor cuts, scrapes, and burns.”

(c) **Warnings.** The labeling of the product states, under the heading “**Warnings,**” the warning(s) for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the warnings sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs.

(d) **Directions.** The labeling of the product states, under the heading “**Directions,**” directions that conform to the directions established for each ingredient in the directions sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs. When the time intervals or age limitations for administrations of the individual ingredients differ, the directions for the combination product may not exceed any maximum dosage limits established for the individual ingredients in the applicable OTC drug monograph.

**Subpart C—Topical Antifungal Drug Products**

**§333.201 Scope.**

(a) An over-the-counter antifungal drug product in a form suitable for topical administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions in this subpart and each general condition established in §330.1 of this chapter.

(b) Reference in this subpart to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

**§333.203 Definitions.**

As used in this subpart:

(a) **Antifungal.** A drug which inhibits the growth and reproduction of fungal cells and decreases the number of fungi present.

(b) **Athlete’s foot.** An infection of the feet caused by certain dermatophytic fungi.

(c) **Dermatophyte.** A fungus that invades and lives upon the skin or in the hair or nails.

(d) **Fungus.** Any of a large division of plants, including dermatophytes, yeasts, and molds, characterized by a simple cell structure and the absence of chlorophyll.

(e) **Jock itch.** A chronic and recurrent infection caused by certain dermatophytic fungi; affects the upper, inner thighs and sometimes extends to the groin and the pubic area; the condition most frequently occurs in men, but may also occur in women.

(f) **Ringworm.** A skin infection caused by certain dermatophytic fungi.

**§333.210 Antifungal active ingredients.**

The active ingredient of the product consists of any one of the following within the specified concentration established for each ingredient:

(a) Clioquinol 3 percent.

(b) Haloprogin 1 percent.

(c) Miconazole nitrate 2 percent.

(d) Povidone-iodine 10 percent.

(e) Tolnaftate 1 percent.

(f) Undecylenic acid, calcium undecylenate, copper undecylenate, and zinc undecylenate may be used individually or in any ratio that provides a total undecylenate concentration of 10 to 25 percent.
§ 333.250 Labeling of antifungal drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “antifungal.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the phrase listed in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section and may contain the additional phrase listed in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established in paragraph (b) of this section, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §333.210 labeled for the treatment of athlete’s foot, jock itch, and ringworm. (i) Select one of the following: “Treats,” “For the treatment of,” “For effective treatment of,” “Cures,” “For the cure of,” “Clears up,” or “Proven clinically effective in the treatment of”) (select one condition from any one or more of the following groups of conditions:

(A) “Athlete’s foot,” athlete’s foot (dermatophytosis), “athlete’s foot (tinea pedis),” or “tinea pedis (athlete’s foot);”

(B) “Jock itch,” “jock itch (tinea cruris),” or “tinea cruris (jock itch);” or

(C) “Ringworm,” “ringworm (tinea corporis),” or “tinea corporis (ringworm).”

(ii) In addition to the information identified in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section, the labeling of the product may contain the following statement: (Select one of the following: “Relieves,” “For relief of,” “For effective relief of,” or “Soothes”) (select one or more of the following: “Itching,” “scaling,” “cracking,” “burning,” “redness,” “soreness,” “irritation,” “discomfort,” “chafing associated with jock itch,” “itchy, scaly skin between the toes,” or “itching, burning feet”).

(2) For products containing the ingredient identified in §333.210(e) labeled for the prevention of athlete’s foot. (i) Select one of the following: “Clinically proven to prevent,” “Prevents,” “Proven effective in the prevention of,” “Helps prevent,” “For the prevention of,” “For the prophylaxis (prevention) of,” “Guards against,” or “Prevents the recurrence of”) (select one of the following: “Athlete’s foot,” “athlete’s foot (dermatophytosis),” “athlete’s foot (tinea pedis),” or “tinea pedis (athlete’s foot)” with daily use.

(ii) In addition to the information identified in paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, the labeling of the product may contain the following statement: “Clears up athlete’s foot infection and with daily use helps keep it from coming back.”

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §332.210. (i) “Do not use on children under 2 years of age unless directed by a doctor.”

(ii) “For external use only.”

(iii) “Avoid contact with the eyes.”

(2) For products labeled according to paragraph (b)(1) of this section for the treatment of athlete’s foot and ringworm. “If irritation occurs or if there is no improvement within 4 weeks, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

(3) For products labeled according to paragraph (b)(1) of this section for the treatment of jock itch. “If irritation occurs or if there is no improvement within 2 weeks, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

(4) For products labeled according to paragraph (b)(2) of this section for the prevention of athlete’s foot. “If irritation occurs, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

(5) For products containing the ingredient identified in §333.210(a) labeled according to paragraph (b)(1) of this section. The following statements must appear in boldface type as the first

232
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 333.301

Warnings under the “Warnings” heading. (i) “Do not use on children under 2 years of age.” (This warning is to be used in place of the warning in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section.) (ii) “Do not use for diaper rash.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following statements under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For products labeled according to paragraph (b)(1) of this section for the treatment of athlete’s foot, jock itch, and ringworm. [Select one of the following: “Clean” or “Wash”] “the affected area and dry thoroughly.” Apply “(the word “spray” may be used to replace the word “apply” for aerosol products) a thin layer of the product over affected area twice daily (morning and night) or as directed by a doctor. Supervise children in the use of this product. Pay special attention to spaces between the toes; wear well-fitting, ventilated shoes, and change shoes and socks at least once daily. For athlete’s foot: Pay special attention to spaces between the toes; wear well-fitting, ventilated shoes, and change shoes and socks at least once daily. For athlete’s foot and ringworm, use daily for 4 weeks; for jock itch, use daily for 2 weeks. If condition persists longer, consult a doctor. This product is not effective on the scalp or nails.”

(2) For products labeled according to paragraph (b)(2) of this section for the prevention of athlete’s foot. “To prevent athlete’s foot.” “(select one of the following: “clean” or “wash”) the feet and dry thoroughly.” Apply “(the word “spray” may be used to replace the word “apply” for aerosol products) a thin layer of the product to the feet once or twice daily (morning and/or night). Supervise children in the use of this product. Pay special attention to spaces between the toes; wear well-fitting, ventilated shoes, and change shoes and socks at least once daily.”

(e) The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.

Effective Date Note: At 67 FR 52305, Aug. 29, 2002, §333.250 was amended by revising the introductory texts of paragraphs (b)(1)(i) and (b)(2)(i) and by revising paragraph (b)(2)(ii), effective May 16, 2002. For the convenience of the user, the revised text is set for as follows:

(b) * * *

(1) * * * (i) (Select one of the following: “Treats,” “For the treatment of,” “For effective treatment of,” “Cures,” “For the cure of,” “Clears up,” or “Proven clinically effective in the treatment of”) “most” (select one condition from any one or more of the following groups of conditions:

* * * * *

(ii) In addition to the information identified in paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, the labeling of the product may contain the following statement: “Clears up most athlete’s foot infection and with daily use helps keep it from coming back.”

§ 333.280 Professional labeling.

The labeling provided to health professionals (but not to the general public) may contain the following additional indication:

(a) For products containing haloprogin or miconazole nitrate identified in §333.210 (a) and (c). “For the treatment of superficial skin infections caused by yeast (Candida albicans).”

(b) [Reserved]

Subpart D—Topical Acne Drug Products

Source: 56 FR 41019, Aug. 16, 1991, unless otherwise noted.

§ 333.301 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter acne drug product in a form suitable for topical application is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions in this subpart and each general condition established in §330.1 of this chapter.

(b) References in this subpart to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.
§ 333.303 Definitions.

As used in this subpart:

(a) Acne. A disease involving the oil glands and hair follicles of the skin which is manifested by blackheads, whiteheads, acne pimples, and acne blemishes.

(b) Acne blemish. A flaw in the skin resulting from acne.

(c) Acne drug product. A drug product used to reduce the number of acne blemishes, acne pimples, blackheads, and whiteheads.

(d) Acne pimple. A small, prominent, inflamed elevation of the skin resulting from acne.

(e) Blackhead. A condition of the skin that occurs in acne and is characterized by a black tip.

(f) Whitehead. A condition of the skin that occurs in acne and is characterized by a small, firm, whitish elevation of the skin.

§ 333.310 Acne active ingredients.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when labeled according to §333.350:

(a) Resorcinol 2 percent when combined in accordance with §333.320(a).

(b) Resorcinol monoacetate 3 percent when combined in accordance with §333.320(b).

(c) Salicylic acid 0.5 to 2 percent.

(d) Sulfur 3 to 10 percent.

(e) Sulfur 3 to 8 percent when combined in accordance with §333.320.

§ 333.320 Permitted combinations of active ingredients.

(a) Resorcinol identified in §333.310(a) when combined with sulfur identified in §333.310(e) provided the product is labeled according to §333.350.

(b) Resorcinol monoacetate identified in §333.310(b) when combined with sulfur identified in §333.310(e) provided the product is labeled according to §333.350.

§ 333.350 Labeling of acne drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an "acne medication," "acne treatment," "acne medication" (insert dosage form, e.g., "cream," "gel," "lotion," or "ointment"), or "acne treatment" (insert dosage form, e.g., "cream," "gel," "lotion," or "ointment").

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading "Indications," the phrase listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section and may contain any of the additional phrases listed in paragraph (b)(2) of this section. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in paragraph (b) of this section, may also be used, as provided in §333.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) "For the" (select one of the following: "management" or "treatment") "of acne.

(2) In addition to the information identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the labeling of the product may contain any one or more of the following statements:

(i) (Select one of the following: "Clears," "Clears up," "Clears up most," "Dries," "Dries up," "Dries and clears," "Helps clear," "Helps clear up," "Reduces the number of," or "Reduces the severity of") (select one or more of the following: "acne blemishes," "acne pimples," "blackheads," or "whiteheads") which may be followed by "and allows skin to heal."

(ii) "Penetrates pores to" (select one of the following: "eliminate most," "control," "clear most," or "reduce the number of") (select one or more of the following: "acne blemishes," "acne pimples," "blackheads," or "whiteheads").

(iii) "Helps keep skin clear of new" (select one or more of the following: "acne blemishes," "acne pimples," "blackheads," or "whiteheads").

(iv) "Helps prevent new" (select one or more of the following: "acne blemishes," "acne pimples," "blackheads," or "whiteheads") which may be followed by "from forming."
(v) “Helps prevent the development of new” (select one or more of the following: “acne blemishes,” “acne pimples,” “blackheads,” or “whiteheads”).

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §333.310. (i) “For external use only.”

(ii) “Using other topical acne medications at the same time or immediately following use of this product may increase dryness or irritation of the skin. If this occurs, only one medication should be used unless directed by a doctor.”

(2) For products containing sulfur identified in §§333.310 (d) and (e). “Do not get into eyes. If excessive skin irritation develops or increases, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

(3) For products containing any combination identified in §333.320. “Apply to affected areas only. Do not use on broken skin or apply to large areas of the body.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) “Cleanse the skin thoroughly before applying medication. Cover the entire affected area with a thin layer one to three times daily. Because excessive drying of the skin may occur, start with one application daily, then gradually increase to two or three times daily if needed or as directed by a doctor. If bothersome dryness or peeling occurs, reduce application to once a day or every other day.”

(2) The directions described in paragraph (d)(1) of this section are intended for products that are applied and left on the skin. Other products, such as soaps or masks, may be applied and removed and should have appropriate directions.

(3) Optional directions. In addition to the required directions in paragraphs (d)(1) and (d)(2) of this section, the product may contain the following optional labeling: “Sensitivity Test for a New User. Apply product sparingly to one or two small affected areas during the first 3 days. If no discomfort occurs, follow the directions stated: (select one of the following: ‘elsewhere on this label,’ ‘above,’ or ‘below.’)”

(e) The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.

PART 336—ANTIEMETIC DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec. 336.1 Scope.
336.3 Definition.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

336.10 Antiemetic active ingredients.

Subpart C—Labeling

336.50 Labeling of antiemetic drug products.
336.80 Professional labeling.

SOURCE: 52 FR 15892, Apr. 30, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 336.1 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter antiemetic drug product in a form suitable for oral administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions in this part and each of the general conditions established in §330.1.

(b) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 336.3 Definition.

As used in this part: Antiemetic. An agent that prevents or treats nausea and vomiting.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

§ 336.10 Antiemetic active ingredients.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used within the dosage limits established for each ingredient in §336.50(d):

(a) Cyclizine hydrochloride.

(b) Dimenhydrinate.

(c) Diphenhydramine hydrochloride.
§ 336.50 Labeling of antiemetic drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “antiemetic.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states the following under the heading “Indications.” “For the prevention and treatment of the nausea, vomiting, or dizziness associated with motion sickness.” Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §336.10—(i) When labeled for use in adults and for those products that can be and are labeled for use in children under 12 years of age. “Do not take this product, unless directed by a doctor, if you have a breathing problem such as emphysema or chronic bronchitis, or if you have glaucoma or difficulty in urination due to enlargement of the prostate gland.”

(ii) For those products that can be and are labeled only for children under 12 years of age. “Do not give this product to children who have a breathing problem such as chronic bronchitis or who have glaucoma, without first consulting the child’s doctor.”

(2) For products containing cyclizine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(a). “Do not give to children under 2 years of age unless directed by a doctor.”

(3) For products containing dimenhydrinate identified in §336.10(b). “Do not give to children under 2 years of age unless directed by a doctor.”

(4) For products containing meclizine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(c). “Do not give to children under 6 years of age unless directed by a doctor.”

(5) For products containing meclizine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(d). “Do not give to children under 12 years of age unless directed by a doctor.”

(6) For products containing cyclizine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(a) or meclizine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(d). “May cause drowsiness; alcohol, sedatives, and tranquilizers may increase the drowsiness effect. Avoid alcoholic beverages while taking this product. Do not take this product if you are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting your doctor. Use caution when driving a motor vehicle or operating machinery.”

(7) For products containing dimenhydrinate identified in §336.10(b) or diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(c). “May cause marked drowsiness; alcohol, sedatives, and tranquilizers may increase the drowsiness effect. Avoid alcoholic beverages while taking this product. Do not take this product if you are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting your doctor. Use caution when driving a motor vehicle or operating machinery.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For products containing cyclizine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(a). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 50 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 200 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: Oral dosage is 25 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 75 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor.

(2) For products containing dimenhydrinate identified in §336.10(b). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 50 to 100 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 400 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: Oral dosage is 25 to 50 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 150 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 2 to
under 6 years of age: Oral dosage is 12.5 to 25 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 75 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor.

(3) For products containing diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(c). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 25 to 50 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 300 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: Oral dosage is 12.5 to 25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 150 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor.

(4) For products containing meclizine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(d).

Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 25 to 50 milligrams once daily, or as directed by a doctor.

(e) The word ‘‘physician’’ may be substituted for the word ‘‘doctor’’ in any of the labeling statements in this section.


§ 336.80 Professional labeling.

The labeling provided to health professionals (but not to the general public) may contain the following additional indications.

(a) For products containing cyclizine hydrochloride, dimenhydrinate, and diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §336.10 (a), (b), and (c). ‘‘For the treatment of vertigo of motion sickness.’’

(b) For products containing meclizine hydrochloride identified in §336.10(d). ‘‘For the treatment of vertigo.’’

PART 338—NIGHTTIME SLEEP-AID DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
338.1 Scope.
338.3 Definition.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

338.10 Nighttime sleep-aid active ingredients.

§ 338.50 Labeling of nighttime sleep-aid drug products.


SOURCE: 54 FR 6626, Feb. 14, 1989, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 338.1 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter nighttime sleep-aid drug product in a form suitable for oral administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each condition in this part and each general condition established in §330.1 of this chapter.

(b) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 338.3 Definition.

As used in this part:

Nighttime sleep-aid. A drug that is useful for the relief of occasional sleeplessness by individuals who have difficulty falling asleep.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

§ 338.10 Nighttime sleep-aid active ingredients.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used within the dosage limits established for each ingredient in §338.50(d):

(a) Diphenhydramine hydrochloride.

(b) Diphenhydramine citrate.

Subpart C—Labeling

§ 338.50 Labeling of nighttime sleep-aid drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “nighttime sleep-aid.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” one or more of the phrases listed in this paragraph. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in
this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) ("Helps you" or "Reduces time to") “fall asleep if you have difficulty falling asleep.”

(2) “For relief of occasional sleeplessness.”

(3) “Helps to reduce difficulty falling asleep.”

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) “Do not give to children under 12 years of age.”

(2) “If sleeplessness persists continuously for more than 2 weeks, consult your doctor. Insomnia may be a symptom of serious underlying medical illness.”

(3) “Do not take this product, unless directed by a doctor, if you have a breathing problem such as emphysema or chronic bronchitis, or if you have glaucoma or difficulty in urination due to enlargement of the prostate gland.”

(4) “Avoid alcoholic beverages while taking this product. Do not take this product if you are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting your doctor.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For products containing diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §338.10(a). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 50 milligrams at bedtime if needed, or as directed by a doctor.

(2) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate identified in §338.10(b). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 76 milligrams at bedtime if needed, or as directed by a doctor.

(e) The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.

the product as an "alertness aid" or a "stimulant."

(b) *Indications.* The labeling of the product states, under the heading "Indications," the following: "Helps restore mental alertness or wakefulness when experiencing fatigue or drowsiness." Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the Act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the Act.

(c) *Warnings.* The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading "Warnings":

(1) "The recommended dose of this product contains about as much caffeine as a cup of coffee. Limit the use of caffeine-containing medications, foods, or beverages while taking this product because too much caffeine may cause nervousness, irritability, sleeplessness, and, occasionally, rapid heart beat."

(2) "For occasional use only. Not intended for use as a substitute for sleep. If fatigue or drowsiness persists or continues to recur, consult a physician or doctor."

(3) "Do not give to children under 12 years of age."

(d) *Directions.* The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading "Directions": Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 100 to 200 milligrams not more often than every 3 to 4 hours.

PART 341—COLD, COUGH, ALLERGY, BRONCHODILATOR, AND ANTIASTHMATIC DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
341.1 Scope.
341.3 Definitions.

§ 341.3 Subpart B—Active Ingredients

341.12 Antihistamine active ingredients.
341.14 Antitussive active ingredients.
341.16 Bronchodilator active ingredients.
341.18 Expectorant active ingredient.
341.20 Nasal decongestant active ingredients.

Subpart C—Labeling

341.70 Labeling of OTC drug products containing ingredients that are used for treating concurrent symptoms (in either a single-ingredient or combination drug product).
341.72 Labeling of antihistamine drug products.
341.74 Labeling of antitussive drug products.
341.76 Labeling of bronchodilator drug products.
341.78 Labeling of expectorant drug products.
341.80 Labeling of nasal decongestant drug products.
341.90 Professional labeling.


Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 341.1 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter cold, cough, allergy, bronchodilator, or antiallergic drug product in a form suitable for oral, inhalant, or topical administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions in this part and each of the general conditions established in §330.1.

(b) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

[51 FR 33339, Oct. 2, 1986]

§ 341.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) *Bronchodilator drug.* A drug used to overcome spasms that cause narrowing of the bronchial air tubes, such as in the symptomatic treatment of the wheezing and shortness of breath of asthma.

(b) *Oral antitussive drug.* A drug that either is taken by mouth or is dissolved in the mouth in the form of a lozenge and acts systemically to relieve cough.
§ 341.12 Topical antitussive drug. A drug that relieves cough when inhaled after being applied topically to the throat or chest in the form of an ointment or from a steam vaporizer, or when dissolved in the mouth in the form of a lozenge for a local effect.

(d) Expectorant drug. A drug taken orally to promote or facilitate the removal of secretions from the respiratory airways.

(e) Antihistamine drug. A drug used for the relief of the symptoms of hay fever and upper respiratory allergies (allergic rhinitis).

(f) Oral nasal decongestant drug. A drug that is taken by mouth and acts systemically to reduce nasal congestion caused by acute or chronic rhinitis.

(g) Topical nasal decongestant drug. A drug that when applied topically inside the nose, in the form of drops, jellies, or sprays, or when inhaled intranasally reduces nasal congestion caused by acute or chronic rhinitis.

(h) Calibrated dropper. A dropper calibrated such that the volume error incurred in measuring any liquid does not exceed 15 percent under normal use conditions.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

§ 341.12 Antihistamine active ingredients.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used within the dosage limits established for each ingredient:

(a) Brompheniramine maleate.
(b) Chlorcyclizine hydrochloride.
(c) Chlorpheniramine maleate.
(d) Dexbrompheniramine maleate.
(e) Dexchlorpheniramine maleate.
(f) Diphenhydramine hydrochloride.
(g) Diphenhydramine citrate.
(h) Doxylamine succinate.
(i) Phenindamine tartrate.
(j) Pheniramine maleate.
(k) Pyrilamine maleate.
(l) Thonzylamine hydrochloride.
(m) Triprolidine hydrochloride.


§ 341.14 Antitussive active ingredients.

The active ingredients of the product consist of any of the following when used within the dosage limits and in the dosage forms established for each ingredient in § 341.74(d):

(a) Oral antitussives. (1) Chlophedianol hydrochloride.
(b) Codeine ingredients. The following ingredients may be used only in combination in accordance with §§ 329.20(a) and 341.40 and 21 CFR 1308.15(c).

(i) Codeine.
(ii) Codeine phosphate.
(iii) Codeine sulfate.
(iv) Dextramethorphan.
(v) Dextromethorphan hydrobromide.
(vi) Diphenhydramine citrate.
(vii) Diphenhydramine hydrochloride.
(b) Topical antitussives.

(1) Camphor.
(2) Menthol.


EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 67 FR 4907, Feb. 1, 2002, § 341.14 was amended in paragraph (a)(2) by removing “§§ 329.20(a) and 341.40” and by adding in its place “§ 290.2”, effective Apr. 2, 2002.

§ 341.16 Bronchodilator active ingredients.

The active ingredients of the product consist of any of the following when used within the dosage limits established for each ingredient:

(a) Ephedrine.
(b) Ephedrine hydrochloride.
(c) Ephedrine sulfate.
(d) Epinephrine.
(e) Epinephrine bitartrate.
(f) Racephedrine hydrochloride.
(g) Racepinephrine hydrochloride.

[51 FR 35338, Oct. 2, 1986]

§ 341.18 Expectorant active ingredient.

The active ingredient of the product is guaifenesin when used within the dosage limits established in § 341.78(d).

[54 FR 8509, Feb. 28, 1989]

§ 341.20 Nasal decongestant active ingredients.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used within the dosage limits and in the dosage forms established for each ingredient:
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 341.72 Labeling of antihistamine drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “antihistamine.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” any of the phrases listed in paragraph (b) of this section, as appropriate. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) “Temporarily” (select one of the following: “relieves,” “alleviates,” “decreases,” “reduces,” or “dries”) “runny nose and” (select one of the following: “relieves,” “alleviates,” “decreases,” or “reduces”) “sneezing, itching of the nose or throat, and itchy, watery eyes due to hay fever” (which may be followed by one or both of the following: “or other upper respiratory allergies” or “(allergic rhinitis)”).

(2) “For the temporary relief of runny nose, sneezing, itching of the nose or throat, and itchy, watery eyes due to hay fever” (which may be followed by one or both of the following: “or other upper respiratory allergies” or “(allergic rhinitis)”).

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings, under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) “May cause excitability especially in children.”

(2) “Do not take this product, unless directed by a doctor, if you have a breathing problem such as emphysema or chronic bronchitis, or if you have glaucoma or difficulty in urination due to enlargement of the prostate gland.”

(3) For products containing brompheniramine maleate, chlorcyclizine hydrochloride, chlorpheniramine maleate, dexbrompheniramine maleate, dexchlorpheniramine maleate, phenindamine tartrate, pheniramine maleate, pyrilamine maleate, thonzylamine hydrochloride, or triprolidine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(a), (b), (c), (d), (e),
§ 341.72  21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

(i), (j), (k), (l), and (m). “May cause drowsiness; alcohol, sedatives, and tranquilizers may increase the drowsiness effect. Avoid alcoholic beverages while taking this product. Do not take this product if you are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting your doctor. Use caution when driving a motor vehicle or operating machinery.”

(4) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate, diphenhydramine hydrochloride, or doxylamine succinate identified in §341.12(f), (g), and (h). “May cause marked drowsiness; alcohol, sedatives, and tranquilizers may increase the drowsiness effect. Avoid alcoholic beverages while taking this product. Do not take this product if you are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting your doctor. Use caution when driving a motor vehicle or operating machinery.”

(5) For products containing phenindamine tartrate identified in §341.12(i). “May cause nervousness and insomnia in some individuals.”

(6) For products that are labeled only for use by children under 12 years of age. The labeling of the product contains only the warnings identified in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(5) of this section as well as the following:

(i) “Do not give this product to children who have a breathing problem such as chronic bronchitis, or who have glaucoma, without first consulting the child’s doctor.”

(ii) For products containing brompheniramine maleate, chlorpheniramine maleate, dexbrompheniramine maleate, dexchlorpheniramine maleate, phendimetrazine tartrate, pheniramine maleate, pyrilamine maleate, thonzylamine hydrochloride, or triprolidine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(a), (c), (d), (e), (i), (j), (k), (l), and (m). “May cause drowsiness. Sedatives and tranquilizers may increase the drowsiness effect. Do not give this product to children who are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting the child’s doctor.”

(iii) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate, diphenhydramine hydrochloride, or doxylamine succinate identified in §341.12(f), (g), and (h). “May cause marked drowsiness. Sedatives and tranquilizers may increase the drowsiness effect. Do not give this product to children who are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting the child’s doctor.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For products containing brompheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(a). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 4 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 24 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 2 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 12 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(2) For products containing chlorcyclizine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(b). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 25 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 75 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 12 years of age: consult a doctor.

(3) For products containing chlorpheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(c). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 4 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 24 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 2 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 12 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(4) For products containing dexbrompheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(d). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 2 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 12 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 1 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 6 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(5) For products containing dexchlorpheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(e). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 2 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 12 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 1 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 6 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.
12 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 1 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 6 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(6) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate identified in §341.12(f). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 38 to 76 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 456 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 19 to 38 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 228 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(7) For products containing diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(g). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 25 to 50 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 300 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 12.5 to 25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 150 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(8) For products containing doxylamine succinate identified in §341.12(h). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 7.5 to 12.5 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 75 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 3.75 to 6.25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 37.5 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(9) For products containing phenindamine tartrate identified in §341.12(i). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 150 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 12.5 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 75 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(10) For products containing phenylamine maleate identified in §341.12(j). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 12.5 to 25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 150 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 6.25 to 12.5 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 75 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(11) For products containing pyrilamine maleate identified in §341.12(k). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 25 to 50 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 200 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 12.5 to 25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 100 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(12) For products containing thonzylamine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(l). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 50 to 100 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 600 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 25 to 50 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 300 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(13) For products containing triprolidine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(m). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 2.5 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 10 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 1.25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 5 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(e) The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.


§341.74 Labeling of antitussive drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “cough suppressant.”
or an “antitussive (cough suppressant).”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” any of the phrases listed in this paragraph (b), as appropriate. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) “Temporarily” (select one of the following: “alleviates,” “calms,” “controls,” “decreases,” “quiets,” “reduces,” “relieves,” or “suppresses”) “cough due to” (select one of the following: “minor bronchial irritation” or “minor throat and bronchial irritation”) (select one of the following: “as may occur with,” “associated with,” or “occurring with”) (select one of the following: “A cold” or “the common cold” or “inhaled irritants.”

(2) “Temporarily” (select one of the following: “alleviates,” “calms,” “controls,” “decreases,” “quiets,” “reduces,” “relieves,” or “suppresses”) “cough” (select one of the following: “as may occur with,” “associated with,” or “occurring with”) (select one of the following: “A cold,” “the common cold,” or “inhaled irritants”).

(3) In addition to the required information identified in paragraphs (b) (1) and (2) of this section, the labeling of the product may contain any (one or more) of the following statements:

(i) “Cough suppressant which temporarily” (select one of the following: “Alleviates,” “controls,” “decreases,” “reduces,” “relieves,” or “suppresses”) “the impulse to cough.”

(ii) “Temporarily helps you cough less.”

(iii) “Temporarily helps to” (select one of the following: “Alleviate,” “control,” “decrease,” “reduce,” “relieve,” or “suppress”) “the cough reflex that causes coughing.”

(iv) “Temporarily” (select one of the following: “Alleviates,” “controls,” “decreases,” “reduces,” “relieves,” or “suppresses”) “the intensity of coughing.”

(v) (Select one of the following: “Alleviates,” “Controls,” “Decreases,” “Reduces,” “Relieves,” or “Suppresses”) (select one of the following: “Cough,” “the impulse to cough, or your cough”) “to help you” (select one of the following: “Get to sleep,” “sleep,” or “rest”).

(vi) For products containing chlorpheniramine maleate, codeine ingredients, dextromethorphan, or dextromethorphan hydrobromide identified in §341.14(a) (1), (2), (3), and (4). “Calm the cough control center and relieves coughing.”

(vii) For products containing chlorpheniramine hydrochloride, dextromethorphan, dextromethorphan hydrobromide, camphor, or menthol identified in §341.14(a) (1), (2), (3), and (4). “Cough suppressant for the temporary” (select one of the following: “alleviation,” “control,” “decrease,” “reduction,” “relief,” or “suppression”) “of cough.”

(b) (Select one of the following: “Alleviates,” “Controls,” “Decreases,” “Reduces,” “Relieves,” or “ Suppresses”) “cough impulses without narcotics.”

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) For oral and topical antitussives. “A persistent cough may be a sign of a serious condition. If cough persists for more than 1 week, tends to recur, or is accompanied by fever, rash, or persistent headache, consult a doctor.”

(2) For oral and topical antitussives labeled for adults or for adults and children under 12 years of age. “Do not take this product for persistent or chronic cough such as occurs with smoking, asthma, or emphysema, or if cough is accompanied by excessive phlegm (mucus) unless directed by a doctor.”

(3) For oral and topical antitussives labeled only for children under 12 years of age. “Do not give this product for persistent or chronic cough such as occurs with smoking, asthma, or emphysema, or if cough is accompanied by excessive phlegm (mucus) unless directed by a doctor.”

(4) Oral antitussives—(1) For products containing codeine ingredients identified
in §341.14(a)(2). “May cause or aggravate constipation.”
(ii) For products containing codeine ingredients identified in §341.14(a)(2) when labeled only for adults. “Do not take this product if you have a chronic pulmonary disease or shortness of breath unless directed by a doctor.”
(iii) For products containing codeine ingredients identified in §341.14(a)(2) when labeled only for children under 12 years of age. “Do not give this product to children who have a chronic pulmonary disease, shortness of breath, or who are taking other drugs unless directed by a doctor.”
(iv) For products containing codeine ingredients identified in §341.14(a)(2) when labeled for use in adults and children under 12 years of age. “Adults and children who have a chronic pulmonary disease or shortness of breath, or children who are taking other drugs, should not take this product unless directed by a doctor.”
(v) For products containing dextromethorphan or dextromethorphan hydrobromide as identified in §341.14(a)(3) and (a)(4) when labeled for adults or for adults and children under 12 years of age. Drug interaction precaution. “Do not use if you are now taking a prescription monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI) (certain drugs for depression, psychiatric, or emotional conditions, or Parkinson’s disease), or for 2 weeks after stopping the MAOI drug. If you do not know if your prescription drug contains an MAOI, ask a doctor or pharmacist before taking this product.”
(vi) For products containing dextromethorphan or dextromethorphan hydrobromide as identified in §341.14(a)(3) and (a)(4) when labeled only for children under 12 years of age. Drug interaction precaution. “Do not use in a child who is taking a prescription monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI) (certain drugs for depression, psychiatric, or emotional conditions, or Parkinson’s disease), or for 2 weeks after stopping the MAOI drug. If you do not know if your child’s prescription drug contains an MAOI, ask a doctor or pharmacist before giving this product.”
(vii) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate or diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §341.14(a)(5) and (a)(6). “May cause excitability especially in children.”
(viii) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate or diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §341.14(a)(5) and (a)(6) when labeled only for children under 12 years of age—(A) “Do not give this product to children who have a breathing problem such as chronic bronchitis, or who have glaucoma, without first consulting the child’s doctor.”
(B) “May cause marked drowsiness. Sedatives and tranquilizers may increase the drowsiness effect. Do not give this product to children who are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting the child’s doctor.”
(ix) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate or diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §341.14(a)(5) and (a)(6) when labeled for use in adults and children under 12 years of age—(A) “Do not take this product, unless directed by a doctor, if you have a breathing problem such as emphysema or chronic bronchitis, or if you have glaucoma or difficulty in urination due to enlargement of the prostate gland.”
(B) “May cause marked drowsiness; alcohol, sedatives, and tranquilizers may increase the drowsiness effect. Avoid alcoholic beverages while taking this product. Do not take this product if you are taking sedatives or tranquilizers, without first consulting your doctor. Use caution when driving a motor vehicle or operating machinery.”
(5) Topical antitussives—(i) For products containing camphor or menthol identified in §341.14(b)(1) and (2) in a suitable ointment vehicle. “For external use only. Do not take by mouth or place in nostrils.”
(ii) For products containing camphor or menthol identified in §341.14(b)(1) and (2) for steam inhalation use. “For steam inhalation only. Do not take by mouth.”
(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:
(1) Oral antitussives—(i) For products containing chlophedianol hydrochloride identified in §341.14(a)(1). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 25 milligrams every 6 to 8
hours, not to exceed 100 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: Oral dosage is 12.5 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 50 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: Consult a doctor.

(ii) For products containing codeine ingredients identified in §341.14(a)(2). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 10 to 20 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 120 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: Oral dosage is 5 to 10 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 60 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: Consult a doctor. A special measuring device should be used to give an accurate dose of this product to children under 6 years of age. Giving a higher dose than recommended by a doctor could result in serious side effects for your child.

(iii) For products containing dextromethorphan or dextromethorphan hydrobromide identified in §341.14(a)(3) and (4). The dosage is equivalent to dextromethorphan hydrobromide. Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 10 to 20 milligrams every 4 hours or 15 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 120 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: Oral dosage is 5 to 10 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 60 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 2 to under 6 years of age: Oral dosage is 2.5 to 5 milligrams every 4 hours or 7.5 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 30 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 2 years of age: Consult a doctor.

(iv) For products containing diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §341.14(a)(5). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 38 milligrams every 4 hours, not to exceed 228 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 19 milligrams every 4 hours, not to exceed 114 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(v) For products containing dextromethorphan hydrobromide identified in §341.14(a)(6). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: oral dosage is 25 milligrams every 4 hours, not to exceed 150 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 12.5 milligrams every 4 hours, not to exceed 75 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(2) Topical antitussives—(i) For products containing camphor identified in §341.14(b)(1) in a suitable ointment vehicle. The product contains 4.7 to 5.3 percent camphor. Adults and children 2 to under 12 years of age: Rub on the throat and chest as a thick layer. The area of application may be covered with a warm, dry cloth if desired. However, clothing should be left loose about the throat and chest to help the vapors rise to reach the nose and mouth. Applications may be repeated up to three times daily or as directed by a doctor. Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(ii) For products containing menthol identified in §341.14(b)(2) in a suitable ointment vehicle. The product contains 2.6 to 2.8 percent menthol. Adults and children 2 to under 12 years of age: Rub on the throat and chest as a thick layer. The area of application may be covered with a warm, dry cloth if desired. However, clothing should be left loose about the throat and chest to help the vapors rise to reach the nose and mouth. Applications may be repeated up to three times daily or as directed by a doctor. Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(iii) For products containing menthol identified in §341.14(b)(2) in a lozenge. The product contains 5 to 10 milligrams menthol. Adults and children 2 to under 12 years of age: Allow lozenge to dissolve slowly in the mouth. May be repeated every hour as needed or as directed by a doctor. Children under 2 years of age: Consult a doctor.

(iv) For products containing camphor identified in §341.14(b)(1) for steam inhalation use. The product contains 6.2 percent camphor. Adults and children 2 to under 12 years of age: Add 1 tablespoonful of solution, for each quart of water,
directly to the water in a hot steam vaporizer, bowl, or wash basin; or add 1½ teaspoonsful of solution, for each pint of water, to an open container of boiling water. Breathe in the medicated vapors. May be repeated up to three times daily or as directed by a doctor. Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(c) For products containing camphor identified in §341.14(b)(2) for steam inhalation use. The product contains 3.2 percent menthol. Adults and children 2 to under 12 years of age: Add 1 tablespoonful of solution, for each quart of water, directly to the water in a hot steam vaporizer, bowl, or wash basin; or add 1½ teaspoonsful of solution, for each pint of water, to an open container of boiling water. Breathe in the medicated vapors. May be repeated up to three times daily or as directed by a doctor. Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(e) The word "physician" may be substituted for the word "doctor" in any of the labeling statements in this section.

(f) Exemption from the general accidental overdose warning. The labeling for antitussive drug products containing the active ingredient identified in §341.14(b)(2) marketed in accordance with §341.74(d)(2)(iii) is exempt from the requirement in §330.1(g) of this chapter that the labeling bear the general warning statement "In case of accidental overdose, seek professional assistance or contact a poison control center immediately." The labeling must continue to bear the first part of the general warning in §329.1(g) of this chapter, which states, "Keep this and all drugs out of the reach of children."

§341.74 Labeling of antitussive drug products.

* * * * *

(c) * * *

(iv) For any product containing camphor or menthol in a suitable ointment vehicle and for steam inhalation use and meets the definition of one of the signal words ("extremely flammable," "flammable," "combustible") as described in 16 CFR 1500.3(b)(10). The labeling contains the appropriate flammability signal word(s) followed by a colon and the statement "Keep away from fire or flame." [Information highlighted in bold type.]

(v) For any product containing camphor or menthol in a suitable ointment vehicle and that does not contain a flammability signal word as described in 16 CFR 1500.3(b)(10). "When using this product, do not heat [bullet] microwave [bullet] add to hot water or any container where heating water. May cause splattering and result in burns." [Information highlighted in bold type.]

(vi) For any product containing camphor or menthol for steam inhalation use. "When using this product, do not heat [bullet] microwave [bullet] use near an open flame [bullet] clothing should be kept away from fire or flame. [bullet] use up to three times daily or as directed by a doctor. Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(vii) For any product formulated in a volatile vehicle. The labeling contains the following statement under the heading "Other information": "Close container tightly and store at room temperature away from heat."

* * * *

(i) For products containing camphor identified in §341.14(b)(1) in a suitable ointment vehicle. The product contains 4.7 to 5.3 percent camphor. "[bullet] see important warnings under "When using this product" [appears as the first statement under the heading "Directions" and is highlighted in bold type] [bullet] adults and children 2 years and older: [bullet] rub on the throat and chest in a thick layer [bullet] cover with a warm, dry cloth if desired [bullet] clothing should be loose about throat and chest to help vapors reach the nose and mouth [bullet] use up to **

1For a definition of the term "bullet," see §201.66(b)(4) of this chapter.
three times daily or as directed by a doctor [bullet] children under 2 years of age: Ask a doctor.

(ii) For products containing menthol identified in §341.14(b)(1) for steam inhalation use. The product contains 2.6 to 2.8 percent menthol. “[bullet] see important warnings under ‘When using this product’” [appears as the first statement under the heading “Directions” and is highlighted in bold type] [bullet] adults and children 2 years and older: (select one of the following, as appropriate: For products formulated to be added directly to cold water or 1 tablespoonful of solution for each quart of water) use up to three times daily or as directed by a doctor [bullet] children under 2 years of age: Ask a doctor.

* * * * *

(iv) For products containing camphor identified in §341.76 for steam inhalation use. The product contains 6.2 percent camphor. “[bullet] see important warnings under ‘When using this product’” [appears as the first statement under the heading “Directions” and is highlighted in bold type] [bullet] adults and children 2 years and older: (select one of the following, as appropriate: For products formulated to be added directly to cold water inside a hot steam vaporizer. [bullet] place water in the vaporizer and follow manufacturer’s directions for using vaporizer or For products formulated to be placed in the medication chamber of a hot steam vaporizer. [bullet] place solution in the medication chamber only) [bullet] breathe in the medicated vapors [bullet] use up to three times daily or as directed by a doctor [bullet] children under 2 years of age: Ask a doctor.

§341.76 Labeling of bronchodilator drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “bronchodilator.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the phrase listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) “For temporary relief of shortness of breath, tightness of chest, and wheezing due to bronchial asthma.”

(2) In addition to the required information identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the labeling of the product may contain one or more of the following statements:

(i) “For the” (select one of the following: “temporary relief” or “symptomatic control”) “of bronchial asthma.”

(ii) “Eases breathing for asthma patients” (which may be followed by: “by reducing spasms of bronchial muscles”).

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) “Do not use this product unless a diagnosis of asthma has been made by a doctor.”

(2) “Do not use this product if you have heart disease, high blood pressure, thyroid disease, diabetes, or difficulty in urination due to enlargement of the prostate gland unless directed by a doctor.”
§ 341.16 (d), (e), and (g).

(3) “Do not use this product if you have ever been hospitalized for asthma or if you are taking any prescription drug for asthma unless directed by a doctor.”

(4) Drug interaction precaution. “Do not use if you are now taking a prescription monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI) (certain drugs for depression, psychiatric, or emotional conditions, or Parkinson’s disease), or for 2 weeks after stopping the MAOI drug. If you do not know if your prescription drug contains an MAOI, ask a doctor or pharmacist before taking this product.”

(5) For products containing ephedrine, ephedrine hydrochloride, ephedrine sulfate, or racephedrine hydrochloride identified in § 341.16 (a), (b), (c), and (f). (i) “Do not continue to use this product, but seek medical assistance immediately if symptoms are not relieved within 1 hour or become worse.”

(ii) “Some users of this product may experience nervousness, tremor, sleeplessness, nausea, and loss of appetite. If these symptoms persist or become worse, consult your doctor.”

(6) For products containing epinephrine, epinephrine bitartrate, or racepinephrine hydrochloride identified in § 341.16 (d), (e), and (g). (i) “Do not use this product more frequently or at higher doses than recommended unless directed by a doctor. [first sentence in boldface type] Excessive use may cause nervousness and rapid heart beat, and, possibly, adverse effects on the heart.”

(ii) “Do not continue to use this product, but seek medical assistance immediately if symptoms are not relieved within 20 minutes or become worse.” [sentence in boldface type]

(iii) For products intended for use in a hand-held rubber bulb nebulizer. “Do not use this product if it is brown in color or cloudy.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For products containing ephedrine, ephedrine hydrochloride, ephedrine sulfate, or racephedrine hydrochloride identified in § 341.16 (a), (b), (c), and (f). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 12.5 to 25 milligrams every 4 hours, not to exceed 150 milligrams in 24 hours, or as directed by a doctor. Do not exceed recommended dose unless directed by a doctor. Children under 12 years of age: Consult a doctor.

(2) For products containing epinephrine, epinephrine bitartrate, and racepinephrine hydrochloride identified in § 341.16(d), (e), and (g) for use in a hand-held rubber bulb nebulizer. The ingredient is used in an aqueous solution at a concentration equivalent to 1 percent epinephrine. Inhalation dosage for adults, children 12 years of age and over, and children 4 to under 12 years of age: 1 to 3 inhalations not more often than every 3 hours. The use of this product by children should be supervised by an adult. Children under 4 years of age: Consult a doctor.

(Collection of information requirement approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0910–0237)

§ 341.78 Labeling of expectorant drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “expectorant.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the following: “Helps loosen phlegm (mucus) and thin bronchial secretions to” (select one or more of the following: “rid the bronchial passageways of bothersome mucus,” “drain bronchial tubes,” and “make coughs more productive”). Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings, under the heading “Warnings”:
§ 341.80 Labeling of nasal decongestant drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “nasal decongestant.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the phrase listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, as appropriate, and may contain any additional phrases listed in paragraph (b)(2) of this section. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) (Select one of the following: “For the temporary relief of nasal congestion” or “Temporarily relieves nasal congestion”) (which may be followed by any of the following in paragraphs (b)(1) (i), (ii), and (iii) of this section):

(i) “due to” (select one of the following: “the common cold” or “a cold”).

(ii) “due to” (select one of the following: “hay fever,” “hay fever (allergic rhinitis),” “hay fever or other upper respiratory allergies,” or “hay fever or other upper respiratory allergies (allergic rhinitis)”).

(iii) “associated with sinusitis.”

(2) In addition to the information identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the labeling of the product may contain any (one or more) of the following statements:

(i) (Select one of the following: “For the temporary relief of nasal congestion” or “Temporarily relieves nasal congestion”)

(ii) (Select one of the following: “stuffy nose,” “stopped up nose,” “nasal stuffiness,” or “clogged up nose.”)

(iii) “Temporarily restores freer breathing through the nose.”

(iv) “Helps decongest sinus openings and passages; temporarily relieves sinus congestion and pressure.”

(v) “Promotes nasal and/or sinus drainage; temporarily relieves sinus congestion and pressure.”

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) Oral nasal decongestants—(i) For products containing phenylephrine hydrochloride, pseudoephedrine hydrochloride, or pseudoephedrine sulfate identified in

[54 FR 8509, Feb. 28, 1989, as amended at 57 FR 29177, June 30, 1992]
§ 341.20 (a)(1), (a)(2), and (a)(3) when labeled for adults. (A) “Do not exceed recommended dosage. [first sentence in boldface type] If nervousness, dizziness, or sleeplessness occur, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

(B) “If symptoms do not improve within 7 days or are accompanied by fever, consult a doctor.”

(C) “Do not take this product if you have heart disease, high blood pressure, thyroid disease, diabetes, or difficulty in urination due to enlargement of the prostate gland unless directed by a doctor.”

(D) Drug interaction precaution. “Do not use if you are now taking a prescription monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI) (certain drugs for depression, psychiatric, or emotional conditions, or Parkinson’s disease), or for 2 weeks after stopping the MAOI drug. If you do not know if your prescription drug contains an MAOI, ask a doctor or pharmacist before taking this product.”

(ii) For products containing phenylephrine hydrochloride, pseudoephedrine hydrochloride, or pseudoephedrine sulfate identified in §341.20 (a)(1), (a)(2), and (a)(3) when labeled for children under 12 years of age. (A) “Do not exceed recommended dosage. [first sentence in boldface type] If nervousness, dizziness, or sleeplessness occur, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

(B) “If symptoms do not improve within 7 days or are accompanied by fever, consult a doctor.”

(C) “Do not give this product to a child who has heart disease, high blood pressure, thyroid disease, or diabetes unless directed by a doctor.”

(D) Drug interaction precaution. “Do not use in a child who is taking a prescription monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI) (certain drugs for depression, psychiatric, or emotional conditions, or Parkinson’s disease), or for 2 weeks after stopping the MAOI drug. If you do not know if your child’s prescription drug contains an MAOI, ask a doctor or pharmacist before giving this product.”

(iii) For oral nasal decongestant products labeled for both adults and children under 12 years of age. The labeling of the product contains the warnings identified in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section.

(2) Topical nasal decongestants—(1) For products containing any topical nasal decongestant identified in §341.20(b) when labeled for adults. (A) “Do not exceed recommended dosage.” [sentence in boldface type]

(B) “This product may cause temporary discomfort such as burning, stinging, sneezing, or an increase in nasal discharge.”

(C) “The use of this container by more than one person may spread infection.”

(i) For products containing levmetamfetamine identified in §341.20(b)(1) when used in an inhalant dosage form and when labeled for adults. “Do not use this product for more than 7 days. Use only as directed. Frequent or prolonged use may cause nasal congestion to recur or worsen. If symptoms persist, ask a doctor.”

(ii) For products containing ephedrine, ephedrine hydrochloride, ephedrine sulfate, naphazoline hydrochloride, oxymetazoline hydrochloride, phenylephrine hydrochloride, or xylometazoline hydrochloride identified in §341.20 (b)(2), (b)(3), (b)(4), (b)(6), (b)(7), (b)(8), and (b)(10) when used as nasal sprays, drops, or jellies and when labeled for adults. (A) “Do not use this product for more than 3 days. Use only as directed. Frequent or prolonged use may cause nasal congestion to recur or worsen. If symptoms persist, consult a doctor.”

(B) “Do not use this product if you have heart disease, high blood pressure, thyroid disease, diabetes, or difficulty in urination due to enlargement of the prostate gland unless directed by a doctor.”

(iv) For products containing naphazoline hydrochloride identified in §341.20(b)(6) at a concentration of 0.05 percent. “Do not use this product in children under 12 years of age because it may cause sedation if swallowed.

((v) For products containing propylhexedrine identified in §341.20(b)(9) when used in an inhalant dosage form and when labeled for adults. “Do not use this product for more than 3 days. Use only as directed. Frequent or prolonged use may cause nasal congestion to recur or worsen. If symptoms persist, consult a doctor.”

(vi) For products containing any topical nasal decongestant identified in §341.20(b)
when labeled for children under 12 years of age. The labeling of the product contains the warnings identified in paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section.

(vii) For products containing levmetamfetamine identified in §341.20(b)(1) when used in an inhalant dosage form and when labeled for children under 12 years of age. “Do not use this product for more than 7 days. Use only as directed. Frequent or prolonged use may cause nasal congestion to recur or worsen. If symptoms persist, consult a doctor.”

(B) “Do not use this product in a child who has heart disease, high blood pressure, thyroid disease, or diabetes unless directed by a doctor.”

(ix) For products containing propylhexedrine identified in §341.20(b)(9) when used in an inhalant dosage form and when labeled for children under 12 years of age. “Do not use this product for more than 3 days. Use only as directed. Frequent or prolonged use may cause nasal congestion to recur or worsen. If symptoms persist, consult a doctor.”

(x) For topical nasal decongestant products labeled for both adults and for children under 12 years of age. The labeling of the product contains the applicable warnings identified in paragraphs (c)(2)(i), (c)(2)(ii), (c)(2)(iii), and (c)(2)(v) of this section.

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) Oral nasal decongestants—(i) For products containing phenylephrine hydrochloride identified in §341.20(a)(1). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: 10 milligrams every 4 hours not to exceed 60 milligrams in 24 hours. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: 5 milligrams every 4 hours not to exceed 30 milligrams in 24 hours. Children 2 to under 6 years of age: 2.5 milligrams every 4 hours not to exceed 15 milligrams in 24 hours. Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(ii) For products containing pseudoephedrine hydrochloride or pseudoephedrine sulfate identified in §341.20(a)(2) and (a)(3). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: 60 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours not to exceed 240 milligrams in 24 hours. Children 6 to under 12 years of age: 30 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours not to exceed 120 milligrams in 24 hours. Children 2 to under 6 years of age: 15 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours not to exceed 60 milligrams in 24 hours. Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(2) Topical nasal decongestants—(i) For products containing levmetamfetamine identified in §341.20(b)(1) when used in an inhalant dosage form. The product delivers in each 800 milliliters of air 0.04 to 0.150 milligrams of levmetamfetamine. Adults: 2 inhalations in each nostril not more often than every 2 hours. Children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): 1 inhalation in each nostril not more often than every 2 hours. Children under 6 years of age: ask a doctor.

(ii) For products containing ephedrine, ephedrine hydrochloride, or ephedrine sulfate identified in §341.20(b)(2), (3), and (4)—(A) Nasal drops or sprays—For a 0.5-percent aqueous solution. Adults and children 12 years of age and over: 2 or 3 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 4 hours. Children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): 1 or 2 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 4 hours. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(B) Nasal jelly—For a 0.5-percent water-based jelly. Adults and children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): place a small amount in each nostril and inhale well back into the nasal passages. Use not more often than every 4 hours.

(iii) For products containing naphazoline hydrochloride identified in §341.20(b)(6)—(A) Nasal drops or sprays—For a 0.05-percent aqueous solution.
Adults and children 12 years of age and over: 1 or 2 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 6 hours. Do not give to children under 12 years of age unless directed by a doctor.

(2) For a 0.025-percent aqueous solution. Children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): 1 or 2 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 6 hours. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(B) Nasal jelly—(1) For a 0.05-percent water-based jelly. Adults and children 12 years of age and over: place a small amount in each nostril and inhale well back into the nasal passages. Use not more often than every 6 hours. Do not give to children under 12 years of age unless directed by a doctor.

(2) For a 0.025-percent water-based jelly. Children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): place a small amount in each nostril and inhale well back into the nasal passages. Use not more often than every 6 hours. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(iv) For products containing oxymetazoline hydrochloride identified in §341.80(b)(7)—(A) Nasal drops or sprays—(1) For a 0.05-percent aqueous solution. Adults and children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): 2 or 3 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 10 to 12 hours. Do not exceed 2 doses in any 24-hour period. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(2) A 0.025-percent aqueous solution in a container having either a calibrated dropper or a metered-dose spray that delivers no more than 0.027 milligrams of oxymetazoline per three drops or three sprays. Children 2 to under 6 years of age (with adult supervision): 2 or 3 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 10 to 12 hours. Use only recommended amount. Do not exceed 2 doses in any 24-hour period. Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(B) Nasal jelly—(1) For a 0.05-percent water-based jelly. Adults and children 12 years of age and over: place a small amount in each nostril and inhale well back into the nasal passages. Use not more often than every 4 hours. Do not give to children under 12 years of age unless directed by a doctor.

(2) For a 0.5-percent water-based jelly. Adults and children 12 years of age and over: place a small amount in each nostril and inhale well back into the nasal passages. Use not more often than every 4 hours. Do not give to children under 12 years of age unless directed by a doctor.

(3) For a 0.25-percent water-based jelly. Adults and children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): place a small amount in each nostril and inhale well back into the nasal passages. Use not more often than every 4 hours.
§ 341.90

Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(vi) For products containing propylhexedrine identified in §341.20(b)(9) when used in an inhalant dosage form. The product delivers in each 800 milliliters of air 0.40 to 0.50 milligrams of propylhexedrine. Adults and children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): 2 inhalations in each nostril not more often than every 2 hours. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(vii) For products containing xylometazoline hydrochloride identified in §341.20(b)(10)—(A) Nasal drops or sprays—(1) For a 0.1-percent aqueous solution. Adults and children 12 years of age and over: 2 or 3 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 8 to 10 hours. Do not give to children under 12 years of age unless directed by a doctor.

(2) A 0.05-percent aqueous solution in a container having either a calibrated dropper or a metered-dose spray that delivers no more than 0.054 milligrams of xylometazoline per three drops or three sprays. Children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): 2 or 3 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 8 to 10 hours. Children 2 to under 6 years of age (with adult supervision): 2 or 3 drops or sprays in each nostril not more often than every 8 to 10 hours. Use only recommended amount. Do not exceed 3 doses in any 24-hour period. [previous two sentences in boldface type] Children under 2 years of age: consult a doctor.

(B) Nasal jelly—(1) For a 0.1-percent water-based jelly. Adults and children 12 years of age and over: place a small amount in each nostril and inhale well back into the nasal passages. Use not more often than every 8 to 10 hours. Do not give to children under 12 years of age unless directed by a doctor.

(2) For a 0.05-percent water-based jelly. Children 6 to under 12 years of age (with adult supervision): place a small amount in each nostril and inhale well back into the nasal passages. Use not more often than every 8 to 10 hours. Children under 6 years of age: consult a doctor.

(viii) Other required statements—For products containing levmetamfetamine or propylhexedrine identified in §341.20(b)(1) or (b)(9) when used in an inhalant dosage form. (A) “This inhaler is effective for a minimum of 3 months after first use.”

(B) “Keep inhaler tightly closed.”


§ 341.90 Professional labeling.

The labeling of the product provided to health professionals (but not to the general public) may contain the following additional dosage information for products containing the active ingredients identified below:

(a) For products containing ephedrine, ephedrine hydrochloride, ephedrine sulfate, or roracephedrine hydrochloride identified in §341.16 (a), (b), (c), and (f). Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 6.25 to 12.5 milligrams every 4 hours, not to exceed 75 milligrams in 24 hours. Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 0.3 to 0.5 milligram per kilogram of body weight every 4 hours, not to exceed 2 milligrams per kilogram of body weight in 24 hours.

(b) For products containing chlorphedianol hydrochloride identified in §341.16(a)(1). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 12.5 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 50 milligrams in 24 hours.

(c) For products containing codeine ingredients identified in §341.14(a)(2). (1) Children 2 to under 6 years of age: Oral dosage is 1 milligram per kilogram body weight per day administered in four equal divided doses. The average body weight for each age may also be used to determine dosage as follows: For children 2 years of age (average body weight, 12 kilograms), the oral dosage is 3 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 12 milligrams in 24 hours; for children 3 years of age (average body weight, 16 kilograms), the oral dosage is 4 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 16 milligrams in 24 hours; for children 4 years of age (average body weight, 20 kilograms), the oral dosage is 5 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 18 milligrams in
24 hours. The manufacturer must relate these dosages for its specific product dosages for its specific product to the use of the calibrated measuring device discussed in paragraph (c)(3) of this section. If age is used to determine the dose, the directions must include instructions to reduce the dose for low-weight children.

(2) Parents should be instructed to obtain and use a calibrated measuring device for administering the drug to the child, to use extreme care in measuring the dosage, and not exceed the recommended daily dosage.

(3) A dispensing device (such as a dropper calibrated for age or weight) should be dispensed along with the product when it is intended for use in children 2 to under 6 years of age to prevent possible overdose due to improper measuring of the dose.

(4) Codeine is not recommended for use in children under 2 years of age. Children under 2 years may be more susceptible to the respiratory depressant effects of codeine, including respiratory arrest, coma, and death.

(d) The following labeling indication may be used for products containing guaifenesin identified in §341.18 when used as a single ingredient product.

“Helps loosen phlegm and thin bronchial secretions in patients with stable chronic bronchitis.”

(e) For products containing brompheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(a). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 1 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 6 milligrams in 24 hours.

(f) For products containing chlorcyclizine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(b). Children 6 to under 12 years of age: oral dosage is 12.5 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 37.5 milligrams in 24 hours. Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 6.25 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 18.75 milligrams in 24 hours.

(g) For products containing chlorpheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(c). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 1 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 6 milligrams in 24 hours.

(h) For products containing dexchlorpheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(d). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 0.5 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 3 milligrams in 24 hours.

(i) For products containing dexchlorpheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(e). Children 2 to under 6 years: oral dosage is 0.5 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 3 milligrams in 24 hours.

(j) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate identified in §341.12(f). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 1 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 6 milligrams in 24 hours.

(k) For products containing diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(g). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 6.25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 37.5 milligrams in 24 hours.

(l) For products containing doxylamine succinate identified in §341.12(h). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 1.9 to 3.125 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 18.75 milligrams in 24 hours.

(m) For products containing phenindamine tartrate identified in §341.12(i). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 6.25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 37.5 milligrams in 24 hours.

(n) For products containing pheniramine maleate identified in §341.12(j). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 3.125 to 6.25 milligrams every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 37.5 milligrams in 24 hours.

(o) For products containing pyrilamine maleate identified in §341.12(k). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 6.25 to 12.5 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 50 milligrams in 24 hours.

(p) For products containing triprolidine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(l). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 6.25 to 12.5 milligrams every 6 to 8 hours, not to exceed 50 milligrams in 24 hours.

(q) For products containing thonzylamine hydrochloride identified in §341.12(m). Children 4 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 0.938 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 3.744 milligrams in 24 hours. Children 2 to under 4 years of age: oral dosage is 0.625 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 2.5
milligrams in 24 hours. Infants 4 months to under 2 years of age: oral dosage is 0.313 milligram every 4 to 6 hours, not to exceed 1.252 milligrams in 24 hours.

(r) For products containing diphenhydramine citrate identified in §341.14(a)(5). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 9.5 milligrams every 4 hours, not to exceed 57 milligrams in 24 hours.

(s) For products containing diphenhydramine hydrochloride identified in §341.14(a)(6). Children 2 to under 6 years of age: oral dosage is 6.25 milligrams every 4 hours, not to exceed 37.5 milligrams in 24 hours.


PART 343—INTERNAL ANALGESIC, ANTIPYRETIC, AND ANTIARHEUMATIC DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

§343.1 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter analgesic-antipyretic drug product in a form suitable for oral administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions in this part in addition to each of the general conditions established in §330.1 of this chapter.

(b) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§343.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

Analgesic—antipyretic drug. An agent used to alleviate pain and to reduce fever.

Cardiovascular drug. An agent used to prevent ischemic events.

Rheumatologic drug. An agent used for the treatment of rheumatologic disorders.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

§343.10 [Reserved]

§343.12 Cardiovascular active ingredients.

(a) Aspirin.

(b) Buffered aspirin. Aspirin identified in paragraph (a) of this section may be buffered with any antacid ingredient(s) identified in §331.11 of this chapter provided that the finished product contains at least 1.9 milliequivalents of acid-neutralizing capacity per 325 milligrams of aspirin as measured by the procedure provided in the United States Pharmacopeia 23/National Formulary 18.

§343.13 Rheumatologic active ingredients.

(a) Aspirin.

(b) Buffered aspirin. Aspirin identified in paragraph (a) of this section may be buffered with any antacid ingredient(s) identified in §331.11 of this chapter provided that the finished product contains at least 1.9 milliequivalents of acid-neutralizing capacity per 325 milligrams of aspirin as measured by the procedure provided in
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 343.80 

COMPREHENSIVE PRESCRIBING INFORMATION

DESCRIPTION

(Insert the proprietary name and the established name (if any) of the drug, type of dosage form (followed by the phrase “for oral administration”), the established name(s) and quantity of the active ingredient(s) per dosage unit, the total sodium content in milligrams per dosage unit if the sodium content of a single recommended dose is 5 milligrams or more, the established name(s) (in alphabetical order) of any inactive ingredient(s) which may cause an allergic hypersensitivity reaction, the pharmacological or therapeutic class of the drug, and the chemical name(s) and structural formula(s) of the drug.) Aspirin is an odorless white, needle-like crystalline or powdery substance. When exposed to moisture, aspirin hydrolyzes into salicylic and acetic acids, and gives off a vinegary-odor. It is highly lipid soluble and slightly soluble in water.

CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

Mechanism of Action: Aspirin is a more potent inhibitor of both prostaglandin synthesis and platelet aggregation than other salicylic acid derivatives. The differences in activity between aspirin and salicylic acid are thought to be due to the acetyl group on the aspirin molecule. This acetyl group is responsible for the inactivation of cyclooxygenase via acetylation.

PHARMACOKINETICS

Absorption: In general, immediate release aspirin is well and completely absorbed from the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. Following absorption, aspirin is hydrolyzed to salicylic acid with peak plasma levels of salicylic acid occurring within 1–2 hours of dosing (see Pharmacokinetics—Metabolism). The rate of absorption from the GI tract is dependent upon the dosage form, the presence or absence of food, gastric pH (the presence or absence of GI antacids or buffering agents), and other physiologic factors. Enteric coated aspirin products are erratically absorbed from the GI tract.

Distribution: Salicylic acid is widely distributed to all tissues and fluids in the body including the central nervous system (CNS), breast milk, and fetal tissues. The highest concentrations are found in the plasma, liver, renal cortex, heart, and lungs. The protein binding of salicylate is concentration-dependent, i.e., nonlinear. At low concentrations (< 100 micrograms/milliliter (µg/mL)), approximately 90 percent of plasma salicylate is bound to albumin while at higher concentrations (> 400 µg/mL), only about 75 percent is bound. The early signs of salicylic acid overdose (salicylism), including tinnitus...
(ringing in the ears), occur at plasma concentrations approximating 200 μg/mL. Severe toxic effects are associated with levels > 400 μg/mL. (See ADVERSE REACTIONS and OVERDOSE.)

Metabolism: Aspirin is rapidly hydrolyzed in the plasma to salicylic acid such that plasma levels of aspirin are essentially undetectable 1–2 hours after dosing. Salicylic acid is primarily conjugated in the liver to form salicyluric acid, a phenolic glucuronide, and a number of minor metabolites. Salicylic acid has a plasma half-life of approximately 6 hours. Salicylate metabolism is saturable and total body clearance decreases at higher serum concentrations due to the limited ability of the liver to form both salicyluric acid and phenolic glucuronide. Following toxic doses (10–20 grams (g)), the plasma half-life may be increased to over 20 hours.

Elimination: The elimination of salicylic acid follows zero order pharmacokinetics; (i.e., the rate of drug elimination is constant in relation to plasma concentration). Renal excretion of unchanged drug depends upon urine pH. As urinary pH rises above 6.5, the renal clearance of free salicylate increases from < 5 percent to > 80 percent. Alkalinization of the urine is a key concept in the management of salicylate overdose. (See OVERDOSE.) Following therapeutic doses, approximately 10 percent is found excreted in the urine as salicylic acid, 75 percent as salicyluric acid, and 10 percent phenolic and 5 percent acetyl glucuronides of salicylic acid.

Pharmacodynamics Aspirin affects platelet aggregation by irreversibly inhibiting prostaglandin cyclo-oxygenase. This effect lasts for the life of the platelet and prevents the formation of the platelet aggregating factor thromboxane A2. Nonacetylated salicylates do not inhibit this enzyme and have no effect on platelet aggregation. At somewhat higher doses, aspirin reversibly inhibits the formation of prostaglandin I2 (prostacyclin), which is an arterial vasodilator and inhibits platelet aggregation. At higher doses aspirin is an effective antiinflammatory agent, partially due to inhibition of inflammatory mediators via cyclooxygenase inhibition in peripheral tissues. In vitro studies suggest that other mediators of inflammation may also be suppressed by aspirin administration, although the precise mechanism of action has not been elucidated. It is this nonspecific suppression of cyclooxygenase activity in peripheral tissues following large doses that leads to its primary side effect of gastric irritation. (See ADVERSE REACTIONS.)

CLINICAL STUDIES

Ischemic Stroke and Transient Ischemic Attack (TIA): In clinical trials of subjects with TIA’s due to fibrin platelet emboli or ischemic stroke, aspirin has been shown to significantly reduce the risk of the combined endpoint of stroke or death and the combined endpoint of TIA, stroke, or death by about 13-18 percent.

Suspected Acute Myocardial Infarction (MI): In a large, multi-center study of aspirin, streptokinase, and the combination of aspirin and streptokinase in 17,187 patients with suspected acute MI, aspirin treatment produced a 25-percent reduction in the risk of vascular mortality. Aspirin also appears to have an additional benefit in patients given a thrombolytic agent.

Prevention of Recurrent MI and Unstable Angina Pectoris: These indications are supported by the results of six large, randomized, multi-center, placebo-controlled trials of predominantly male post-MI subjects and one randomized placebo-controlled study of men with unstable angina pectoris. Aspirin therapy in MI subjects was associated with a significant reduction (about 20 percent) in the risk of the combined endpoint of subsequent death and/or nonfatal reinfarction in these patients. In aspirin-treated unstable angina patients the event rate was reduced to 5 percent from the 10 percent rate in the placebo group.

Chronic Stable Angina Pectoris: In a randomized, multi-center, double-blind trial designed to assess the role of aspirin for prevention of MI in patients with chronic stable angina pectoris, aspirin significantly reduced the primary combined endpoint of nonfatal MI, fatal MI, and sudden death by 34 percent. The secondary endpoint for vascular events (first occurrence of MI, stroke, or vascular death) was also significantly reduced (32 percent).

Revascularization Procedures: Most patients who undergo coronary artery revascularization procedures have already had symptomatic coronary artery disease for which aspirin is indicated. Similarly, patients with lesions of the carotid bifurcation sufficient to require carotid endarterectomy are likely to have had a precedent event. Aspirin is recommended for patients who undergo revascularization procedures if there is a preexisting condition for which aspirin is already indicated.

Rheumatologic Diseases: In clinical studies in patients with rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis and osteoarthritis, aspirin has been shown to be effective in controlling various indices of clinical disease activity.

ANIMAL TOXICOLOGY

The acute oral 50 percent lethal dose in rats is about 1.5 gram/kilogram (g/kg). Renal papillary necrosis and decreased urinary concentrating ability occur in rodents chronically administered high doses. Dose-dependent gastric mucosal injury occurs in rats and humans. Mammals...
may develop aspirin toxicity associated with GI symptoms, circulatory effects, and central nervous system depression. (See OVERDOSAGE.)

INDICATIONS AND USAGE

Vascular Indications (Ischemic Stroke, TIA, Acute MI, Prevention of Recurrent MI, Unstable Angina Pectoris, and Chronic Stable Angina Pectoris): Aspirin is indicated to: (1) Reduce the combined risk of death and nonfatal stroke in patients who have had ischemic stroke or transient ischemia of the brain due to fibrin platelet emboli, (2) reduce the risk of vascular mortality in patients with a suspected acute MI, (3) reduce the combined risk of death and nonfatal MI in patients with a previous MI or unstable angina pectoris, and (4) reduce the combined risk of MI and sudden death in patients with chronic stable angina pectoris.

Revascularization Procedures (Coronary Artery Bypass Graft (CABG), Percutaneous Transluminal Coronary Angioplasty (PTCA), and Carotid Endarterectomy): Aspirin is indicated in patients who have undergone revascularization procedures (i.e., CABG, PTCA, or carotid endarterectomy) when there is a preexisting condition for which aspirin is already indicated.

Rheumatologic Disease Indications (Rheumatoid Arthritis, Juvenile Rheumatoid Arthritis, Spondyloarthropathies, Osteoarthritis, and the Arthritis and Pleurisy of Systemic Lupus Erythematosus (SLE)): Aspirin is indicated for the relief of the signs and symptoms of rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, spondyloarthropathies, and arthritis and pleurisy associated with SLE.

CONTRAINDICATIONS

Allergy: Aspirin is contraindicated in patients with known allergy to nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug products and in patients with the syndrome of asthma, rhinitis, and nasal polyps. Aspirin may cause severe urticaria, angioedema, or bronchoconstriction (asthma).

Reye’s Syndrome: Aspirin should not be used in children or teenagers for viral infections, with or without fever, because of the risk of Reye’s syndrome with concomitant use of aspirin in certain viral illnesses.

WARNINGS

Alcohol Warning: Patients who consume three or more alcoholic drinks every day should be counseled about the bleeding risks involved with chronic, heavy alcohol use while taking aspirin.

Coagulation Abnormalities: Even low doses of aspirin can inhibit platelet function leading to an increase in bleeding time. This can adversely affect patients with inherited hemophilia or acquired (liver disease or vitamin K deficiency) bleeding disorders.

GI Side Effects: GI side effects include stomach pain, heartburn, nausea, vomiting, and gross GI bleeding. Although minor upper GI symptoms, such as dyspepsia, are common and can occur anytime during therapy, physicians should remain alert for signs of ulceration and bleeding, even in the absence of previous GI symptoms. Physicians should inform patients about the signs and symptoms of GI side effects and what steps to take if they occur.

Peptic Ulcer Disease: Patients with a history of active peptic ulcer disease should avoid using aspirin, which can cause gastric mucosal irritation and bleeding.

PRECAUTIONS

General

Renal Failure: Avoid aspirin in patients with severe renal failure (glomerular filtration rate less than 10 mL/minute).

Hepatic Insufficiency: Avoid aspirin in patients with severe hepatic insufficiency.

Sodium Restricted Diets: Patients with sodium-retaining states, such as congestive heart failure or renal failure, should avoid sodium-containing buffered aspirin preparations because of their high sodium content.

Laboratory Tests

Aspirin has been associated with elevated hepatic enzymes, blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine, hyperkalemia, proteinuria, and prolonged bleeding time.

Drug Interactions

Angiotensin Converting Enzyme (ACE) Inhibitors: The hyponatremic and hypotensive effects of ACE inhibitors may be diminished by the concomitant administration of aspirin due to its indirect effect on the renin-angiotensin conversion pathway.

Acetazolamide: Concurrent use of aspirin and acetazolamide can lead to high serum concentrations of acetazolamide (and toxicity) due to competition at the renal tubule for secretion.

Anticoagulant Therapy (Heparin and Warfarin): Patients on anticoagulation therapy are at increased risk for bleeding because of drug-drug interactions and the effect on platelets. Aspirin can displace warfarin from protein binding sites, leading to prolongation of both the prothrombin time and the bleeding time. Aspirin can increase the anticoagulant activity of heparin, increasing bleeding risk.

Anticonvulsants: Salicylate can displace protein-bound phenytoin and valproic acid, leading to a decrease in the total concentration of phenytoin and an increase in serum valproic acid levels.
§ 343.80 21 CFR Ch. I (4–1–02 Edition)

Beta Blockers: The hypotensive effects of beta blockers may be diminished by the concomitant administration of aspirin due to inhibition of renal prostaglandins, leading to decreased renal blood flow, and salt and fluid retention.

Diuretics: The effectiveness of diuretics in patients with underlying renal or cardiovascular disease may be diminished by the concomitant administration of aspirin due to inhibition of renal prostaglandins, leading to decreased renal blood flow and salt and fluid retention.

Methotrexate: Salicylate can inhibit renal clearance of methotrexate, leading to bone marrow toxicity, especially in the elderly or renal impaired.

Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Drugs (NSAID's): The concurrent use of aspirin with other NSAID's should be avoided because this may increase bleeding or lead to decreased renal function.

Oral Hypoglycemics: Moderate doses of aspirin may increase the effectiveness of oral hypoglycemic drugs, leading to hypoglycemia.

Uricosuric Agents (Probeneide and Sulfinpyrazone): Salicylates antagonize the uricosuric action of uricosuric agents.

Carcinogenesis, Mutagenesis, Impairment of Fertility: Administration of aspirin for 68 weeks at 0.5 percent in the feed of rats was not carcinogenic. In the Ames Salmonella assay, aspirin was not mutagenic; however, aspirin did induce chromosome aberrations in cultured human fibroblasts. Aspirin inhibits ovulation in rats. (See Pregnancy.)

Pregnancy: Pregnant women should only take aspirin if clearly needed. Because of the known effects of NSAID's on the fetal cardiovascular system (closure of the ductus arteriosus), use during the third trimester of pregnancy should be avoided. Salicylate products have also been associated with alterations in maternal and neonatal hemostasis mechanisms, decreased birth weight, and with perinatal mortality.

Labor and Delivery: Aspirin should be avoided 1 week prior to and during labor and delivery because it can result in excessive blood loss at delivery. Prolonged gestation and prolonged labor due to prostaglandin inhibition have been reported.

Nursing Mothers: Nursing mothers should avoid using aspirin because salicylate is excreted in breast milk. Use of high doses may lead to rashes, platelet abnormalities, and bleeding in nursing infants.

Pediatric Use: Pediatric dosing recommendations for juvenile rheumatoid arthritis are based on well-controlled clinical studies. An initial dose of 90-130 mg/kg/day in divided doses, with an increase as needed for anti-inflammatory efficacy (target plasma salicylate levels of 150-300 µg/mL) are effective. At high doses (i.e., plasma levels of greater than 200 µg/mL), the incidence of toxicity increases.

ADVERSE REACTIONS

Many adverse reactions due to aspirin ingestion are dose-related. The following is a list of adverse reactions that have been reported in the literature. (See WARNING.)

Body as a Whole: Fever, hypothermia, thirst.

Cardiovascular: Dysrhythmias, hypotension, tachycardia.

Central Nervous System: Agitation, cerebral edema, coma, confusion, dizziness, headache, subdural or intracranial hemorrhage, lethargy, seizures.

Fluid and Electrolyte: Dehydration, hyperkalemia, metabolic acidosis, respiratory alkalosis.

Gastrointestinal: Dyspepsia, GI bleeding, ulceration and perforation, nausea, vomiting, transient elevations of hepatic enzymes, hepatitis, Reye's Syndrome, pancreatitis.

Hematologic: Prolongation of the prothrombin time, disseminated intravascular coagulation, coagulopathy, thrombocytopenia.

Hypersensitivity: Acute anaphylaxis, angioedema, asthma, bronchospasm, laryngeal edema, urticaria.

Musculoskeletal: Rhabdomyolysis.

Metabolism: Hypoglycemia (in children), hyperglycemia.

Reproductive: Prolonged pregnancy and labor, stillbirths, lower birth weight infants, antepartum and postpartum bleeding.

Respiratory: Hyperpnea, pulmonary edema, tachypnea.

Special Senses: Hearing loss, tinnitus. Patients with high frequency hearing loss may have difficulty perceiving tinnitus. In these patients, tinnitus cannot be used as a clinical indicator of salicylism.

Urogenital: Interstitial nephritis, papillary necrosis, proteinuria, renal insufficiency and failure.

DRUG ABUSE AND DEPENDENCE

Aspirin is nonnarcotic. There is no known potential for addiction associated with the use of aspirin.

OVERDOSAGE

Salicylate toxicity may result from acute ingestion (overdose) or chronic intoxication. The early signs of salicylic overdose (salicylism), including tinnitus (ringing in the ears), occur at plasma concentrations approaching 200 µg/mL. Plasma concentrations of aspirin above 300 µg/mL are clearly toxic. Severe toxic effects are associated with levels above 400 µg/mL. (See CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY.) A single lethal dose of aspirin in adults is not known with certainty but death may be expected at 30 g. For real or suspected overdose, a Poison Control Center...
should be contacted immediately. Careful medical management is essential. 

**Signs and Symptoms:** In acute overdose, severe acid-base and electrolyte disturbances may occur and are complicated by hyperthermia and dehydration. Respiratory alkalosis occurs early while hyperventilation is present, but is quickly followed by metabolic acidosis.

**Treatment:** Treatment consists primarily of supporting vital functions, increasing salicylate elimination, and correcting the acid-base disturbance. Gastric emptying and/or lavage is recommended as soon as possible after ingestion, even if the patient has vomited spontaneously. After lavage and/or emesis, administration of activated charcoal, as a slurry, is beneficial, if less than 3 hours have passed since ingestion. Charcoal adsorption should not be employed prior to emesis and lavage.

Severity of aspirin intoxication is determined by measuring the blood salicylate level. Acid-base status should be closely followed with serial blood gas and serum pH measurements. Fluid and electrolyte balance should also be maintained.

In severe cases, hyperthermia and hypovolemia are the major immediate threats to life. Children should be sponged with tepid water. Replacement fluid should be administered intravenously and augmented with correction of acidosis. Plasma electrolytes and pH should be monitored to promote alkaline diuresis of salicylate if renal function is normal. Infusion of glucose may be required to control hypoglycemia.

Hemodialysis and peritoneal dialysis can be performed to reduce the body drug content. In patients with renal insufficiency or in cases of life-threatening intoxication, dialysis is usually required. Exchange transfusion may be indicated in infants and young children.

**DOSAGE AND ADMINISTRATION**

Each dose of aspirin should be taken with a full glass of water unless patient is fluid restricted. Anti-inflammatory and analgesic dosages should be individualized. When aspirin is used in high doses, the development of tinnitus may be used as a clinical sign of elevated plasma salicylate levels except in patients with high frequency hearing loss.

**Ischemic Stroke and TIA:** 50–325 mg once a day. Continue therapy indefinitely.

**Suspected Acute MI:** The initial dose of 160–162.5 mg is administered as soon as an MI is suspected. The maintenance dose of 160–162.5 mg a day is continued for 30 days post-infarction. After 30 days, consider further therapy based on dosage and administration for prevention of recurrent MI.

**Prevention of Recurrent MI:** 75–325 mg once a day. Continue therapy indefinitely.

**Unstable Angina Pectoris:** 75–325 mg once a day. Continue therapy indefinitely.

**Chronic Stable Angina Pectoris:** 75–325 mg once a day. Continue therapy indefinitely.

**CABG:** 325 mg daily starting 6 hours postprocedure. Continue therapy for 1 year postprocedure.

**PTCA:** The initial dose of 325 mg should be given 2 hours pre-surgery. Maintenance dose is 160–325 mg daily. Continue therapy indefinitely.

**Carotid Endarterectomy:** Doses of 80 mg once daily to 650 mg twice daily, started presurgery, are recommended. Continue therapy indefinitely.

**Rheumatoid Arthritis:** The initial dose is 3 g a day in divided doses. Increase as needed for anti-inflammatory efficacy with target plasma salicylate levels of 150–300 µg/mL. At high doses (i.e., plasma levels of greater than 200 µg/mL), the incidence of toxicity increases.

**Juvenile Rheumatoid Arthritis:** Initial dose is 90–130 mg/kg/day in divided doses. Increase as needed for anti-inflammatory efficacy with target plasma salicylate levels of 150–300 µg/mL. At high doses (i.e., plasma levels of greater than 200 µg/mL), the incidence of toxicity increases.

**Osteoarthropathies:** Up to 4 g per day in divided doses.

**Osteoarthritis:** Up to 3 g per day in divided doses.

**Arthritis and Pleurisy of SLE:** The initial dose is 3 g a day in divided doses. Increase as needed for anti-inflammatory efficacy with target plasma salicylate levels of 150–300 µg/mL. At high doses (i.e., plasma levels of greater than 200 µm/mL), the incidence of toxicity increases.

**HOW SUPPLIED**

(Insert specific information regarding strength of dosage form, units in which the dosage form is generally available, and information to facilitate identification of the dosage form as required under § 201.57(k)(1), (k)(2), and (k)(3).) Store in a tight container at 25 °C (77 °F); excursions permitted to 15–30 °C (59–86 °F).


(2) In addition to, and immediately preceding, the labeling required under paragraph (a)(1) of this section, the professional labeling may contain the following highlights of prescribing information in the exact language and exact format provided, but only when accompanied by the comprehensive prescribing information required in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

261
### § 343.90

**Subpart D—Testing Procedures**

#### § 343.90 Dissolution and drug release testing.

(a) [Reserved]

(b) [Reserved]


---

### Vascular Indications
- **Thrombus and TIA**
  - **Dissolution and drug release testing.**
  - **Recommended Daily Dose:** 30-325 mg/mg daily
  - **Duration of Therapy:** Indefinitely

### Revascularization Procedures in Select Patients:
- **CABG**
  - **Recommended Daily Dose:** 325 mg daily, postprocedure
  - **Duration of Therapy:** 1 year

### Rheumatologic Disease Indications:
- **Rheumatoid Arthritis**
  - **Recommended Daily Dose:** Initial dose 3 g daily, Target plasma salicylate levels 150-300 mg/mg daily
  - **Duration of Therapy:** As indicated

### Drug Interactions
- **NSAIDs**
- **Anticoagulants**
- **Thrombolytics**
- **Antihypertensives**
- **Hypoglycemics**
- **Corticosteroids**

### WARNINGS
- **Overdose Warning**
- **Coagulation Reactions**
- **Gastrointestinal Side Effects**
- **Peptic Ulcer Disease**

### CONTRAINDICATIONS
- **Aspirin sensitivity in patients with a known allergy to nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and in patients with the syndromes of asthma, rhinosinusitis, and nasal polyps.**
- **Aspirin should not be used in children or teenagers for viral infections, with or without fever, because of the risk of Reye’s syndrome with concomitant use of aspirin in certain viral illnesses.**

### PRECAUTIONS
- **Renal Failure**
- **Hepatic Insufficiency**
- **Renal Reactions**
- **Laboratory Tests**
- **Drug Interactions**
- **Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drug (NSAID) Enzyme (ACE) Inhibitors**
- **Acetylsalicylic Acid (ASA)**
- **Anticoagulants**
- **Antihypertensives**
- **Diuretics**
- **N-Acetyltransferase-2 (NAT2)**
- **Carcinogenic, Mutagenic, Impairment of Fertility**
- **Pregnancy, Labor and Delivery, Nursing Mothers**
- **Pediatric Use**
(b) Aspirin capsules. Aspirin capsules must meet the dissolution standard for aspirin capsules as contained in the United States Pharmacopeia (USP) 23 at page 132.

(c) Aspirin delayed-release capsules and aspirin delayed-release tablets. Aspirin delayed-release capsules and aspirin delayed-release tablets must meet the drug release standard for aspirin delayed-release capsules and aspirin delayed-release tablets as contained in USP 23 at pages 133 and 136 respectively.

(d) Aspirin tablets. Aspirin tablets must meet the dissolution standard for aspirin tablets as contained in USP 23 at page 134.

(e) Aspirin, alumina, and magnesia tablets. Aspirin in combination with alumina and magnesia in a tablet dosage form must meet the dissolution standard for aspirin, alumina, and magnesia tablets as contained in USP 23 at page 138.

(f) Aspirin, alumina, and magnesium oxide tablets. Aspirin in combination with alumina, and magnesium oxide in a tablet dosage form must meet the dissolution standard for aspirin, alumina, and magnesium oxide tablets as contained in USP 23 at page 139.

(g) Aspirin effervescent tablets for oral solution. Aspirin effervescent tablets for oral solution must meet the dissolution standard for aspirin effervescent tablets for oral solution as contained in USP 23 at page 137.

(h) Buffered aspirin tablets. Buffered aspirin tablets must meet the dissolution standard for buffered aspirin tablets as contained in USP 23 at page 135.

PART 344—TOPICAL OTIC DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 344.10 Earwax removal aid active ingredient.

344.10 Earwax removal aid active ingredient.
§ 344.12 Ear drying aid active ingredient.

The active ingredient of the product consists of isopropyl alcohol 95 percent in an anhydrous glycerin 5 percent base.

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At FR 65 48905, Aug. 10, 2000, §344.12 was added, effective May 17, 2002.

Subpart C—Labeling

§ 344.50 Labeling of earwax removal aid drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “earwax removal aid.”

(b) Indication. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indication,” the following: “For occasional use as an aid to” (which may be followed by: “soften, loosen, and”) “remove excessive earwax.” Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) “Do not use if you have ear drainage or discharge, ear pain, irritation, or rash in the ear or are dizzy; consult a doctor.”

(2) “Do not use if you have an injury or perforation (hole) of the ear drum or after ear surgery unless directed by a doctor.”

(3) “Do not use for more than 4 days; if excessive earwax remains after use of this product, consult a doctor.”

(4) “Avoid contact with the eyes.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following statement under the heading “Directions”: FOR USE IN THE EAR ONLY. Adults and children over 12 years of age: tilt head sideways and place 5 to 10 drops into ear. Tip of applicator should not enter ear canal. Keep drops in ear for several minutes by keeping head tilted or placing cotton in the ear. Use twice daily for up to 4 days if needed, or as directed by a doctor. Any wax remaining after treatment may be removed by gently flushing the ear with warm water, using a soft rubber bulb ear syringe. Children under 12 years of age: consult a doctor.

(e) Optional wording. The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.

§ 344.52 Labeling of ear drying aid drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “ear drying aid.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Use,” the following: “dries water in the ears” (optional, which may be followed by: “and relieves water-clogged ears”) (which may be followed by any or all of the following: “after: [bullet] swimming [bullet] showering [bullet] bathing [bullet] washing the hair”). Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in paragraph (b) of this section, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) “Flammable [in bold type]: Keep away from fire or flame.”

2 See §201.66(b)(4) of this chapter.

264
§ 346.10 Local anesthetic active ingredients.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used in the concentration or within the
§ 346.12 Concentration range established for each ingredient:
(a) Benzocaine 5 to 20 percent.
(b) Benzyl alcohol 1 to 4 percent.
(c) Dibucaine 0.25 to 1 percent.
(d) Dibucaine hydrochloride 0.25 to 1 percent.
(e) Dyclonine hydrochloride 0.5 to 1 percent.
(f) Lidocaine 2 to 5 percent.
(g) Pramoxine hydrochloride 1 percent.
(h) Tetracaine 0.5 to 1 percent.
(i) Tetracaine hydrochloride 0.5 to 1 percent.

§ 346.12 Vasoconstrictor active ingredients.
The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used in the concentration or within the concentration range established for each ingredient:
(a) Ephedrine sulfate 0.1 to 1.25 percent.
(b) Epinephrine 0.005 to 0.01 percent.
(c) Epinephrine hydrochloride 0.005 to 0.01 percent.
(d) Phenylephrine hydrochloride 0.25 percent.

§ 346.14 Protectant active ingredients.
(a) The following active ingredients may be used as the sole protectant active ingredient in a product if the ingredient as identified constitutes 50 percent or more by weight of the final product. In addition, the following active ingredients may be used in concentrations of less than 50 percent by weight only when used in combinations in accordance with §346.22 (a), (b), or (n).
(1) Aluminum hydroxide gel.
(2) Cocoa butter.
(3) Glycerin in a 20- to 45-percent (weight/weight) aqueous solution so that the final product contains not less than 10 and not more than 45 percent glycerin (weight/weight). Any combination product containing glycerin must contain at least this minimum amount of glycerin.
(4) Hard fat.
(5) Kaolin.
(6) Lanolin.
(7) Mineral oil.
(8) Petrolatum.
(9) Topical starch.
(10) White petrolatum.
(b) The following active ingredients may not be used as a sole protectant ingredient but may be used in combination with one, two, or three other protectant active ingredients in accordance with §346.22 (a), (b), (n), and (o) and with the following limitations:
(1) Calamine not to exceed 25 percent by weight per dosage unit (based on the zinc oxide content of calamine).
(2) Cod liver oil, provided that the product is labeled so that the amount of the product that is used in a 24-hour period represents a quantity that provides 10,000 U.S.P. units of vitamin A and 400 U.S.P. units of cholecalciferol.
(3) Shark liver oil, provided that the product is labeled so that the amount of the product that is used in a 24-hour period represents a quantity that provides 10,000 U.S.P. units of vitamin A and 400 U.S.P. units of cholecalciferol.
(4) Zinc oxide not to exceed 25 percent by weight per dosage unit.

§ 346.16 Analgesic, anesthetic, and antipruritic active ingredients.
The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used within the concentration range established for each ingredient:
(a) Camphor 0.1 to 3 percent.
(b) Juniper tar 1 to 5 percent.
(c) Menthol 0.1 to 1 percent.

§ 346.18 Astringent active ingredients.
The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used within the concentration range established for each ingredient:
(a) Calamine, within a concentration range of 5 to 25 percent by weight per dosage unit (based on the zinc oxide content of calamine).
(b) Witch hazel, 10 to 50 percent.
(c) Zinc oxide, within a concentration range of 5 to 25 percent by weight per dosage unit.

§ 346.20 Keratolytic active ingredients.
The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used within the concentration range established for each ingredient:
(a) Alcloxa 0.2 to 2 percent.
(b) Resorcinol 1 to 3 percent.
§ 346.22 Permitted combinations of anorectal active ingredients. 

(a) Any two, three, or four protectants identified in §346.14(a) may be combined, except aluminum hydroxide gel in §346.14(a)(1) and kaolin in §346.14(a)(5) may not be combined with any ingredient in §346.14(a)(2), (4), (6), (7), (8) and (10), and (b) (2) and (3), provided that the combined percentage by weight of all protectants in the combination is at least 50 percent of the final product (e.g., 1 gram of a 2-gram dosage unit). Any protectant ingredient included in the combination must be present at a level that contributes at least 12.5 percent by weight (e.g., 0.25 gram of a 2-gram dosage unit), except cod liver oil and shark liver oil. If an ingredient in §346.14(b) is included in the combination, it must not exceed the concentration limit specified in §346.14(b).

(b) Any single anorectal ingredient identified in §346.10, 346.12, 346.16, 346.18, or 346.20 may be combined with up to four protectants in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) Any single local anesthetic identified in §346.10 may be combined with any single vasoconstrictor identified in §346.12.

(d) Any single local anesthetic identified in §346.10 may be combined with any single astringent identified in §346.18.

(e) Any single local anesthetic identified in §346.10 may be combined with any single keratolytic identified in §346.20.

(f) Any single vasoconstrictor identified in §346.12 may be combined with any single astringent identified in §346.18.

(g) Any single analgesic, anesthetic, and antipruritic identified in §346.16 may be combined with any single keratolytic identified in §346.20.

(h) Any single analgesic, anesthetic, and antipruritic identified in §346.16 may be combined with any single astringent identified in §346.18.

(i) Any single astringent identified in §346.18 may be combined with any single keratolytic identified in §346.20.

(j) Any single local anesthetic identified in §346.10 may be combined with any single vasoconstrictor identified in §346.12 and with any single astringent identified in §346.18.

(k) Any single local anesthetic identified in §346.10 may be combined with any single astringent identified in §346.18 and with any single keratolytic identified in §346.20.

(l) Any single vasoconstrictor identified in §346.12 may be combined with any single analgesic, anesthetic, and antipruritic identified in §346.16 and with any single astringent identified in §346.18.

(m) Any single analgesic, anesthetic, and antipruritic identified in §346.16 may be combined with any single astringent identified in §346.18 and with any single keratolytic identified in §346.20.

(n) Any combination of ingredients listed in paragraphs (c) through (m) of this section may be combined with up to four protectants in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section.

(o) Any product containing calamine for use as a protectant and/or as an astringent and/or containing zinc oxide for use as a protectant and/or as an astringent may not have a total weight of zinc oxide exceeding 25 percent by weight per dosage unit.

Subpart C—Labeling

§ 346.50 Labeling of anorectal drug products.

The labeling of the product contains the following information for anorectal ingredients identified in §§346.10, 346.12, 346.14, 346.16, 346.18, and 346.20, and for combinations of anorectal ingredients identified in §346.22. Unless otherwise specified, the labeling in this subpart is applicable to anorectal drug products for both external and intrarectal use.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as “anorectal (hemorrhoidal),” “hemorrhoidal,” “hemorrhoidal (anorectal) (insert dosage form, e.g., cream, lotion, or ointment).”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” any of the phrases listed in paragraph (b) of this section, as appropriate. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the
indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph, may also be used, as provided in §301(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) (“For the temporary relief of,” “Gives temporary relief of,” or “Helps relieve the”) (As an option, select one or both of the following: “local” or “anorectal”) [select one or more of the following: “discomfort,” “itching,” or “itching and discomfort,” followed by: “in the perianal area” or “associated with” (select one or more of the following: “hemorrhoids,” “anorectal disorders,” “inflamed hemorrhoidal tissues,” “anorectal inflammation,” “hemorrhoidal tissues,” or “piles (hemorrhoids),”)]

(2) Additional indications. Indications applicable to each active ingredient of the product may be combined to eliminate duplicative words or phrases so that the resulting indication is clear and understandable. In addition to the indication identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the labeling of the product intended for external or intrarectal use may also contain the following indications, as appropriate.

(i) For products for external use only containing any ingredient identified in §346.10. “For the temporary relief of” (select one or more of the following: “pain,” “soreness,” or “burning”).

(ii) For products containing epinephrine or epinephrine hydrochloride identified in §346.12(b) and (c) for external use only, and for products containing ephedrine sulfate or phenylephrine hydrochloride identified in §346.12 (a) and (d).

(A) “Temporarily reduces the swelling associated with” (select one of the following: “irritated hemorrhoidal tissue and other anorectal disorders” or “irritation in hemorrhoids and other anorectal disorders”).

(B) “Temporarily shrinks hemorrhoidal tissue.”

(iii) For products for external use only containing glycerin identified in §346.14(a)(3) and for products for external and/or intrarectal use containing any protectant identified in §346.14(a) (2), (4), (6) through (10), and (b) (1) through (4).

(A) “Temporarily forms a protective coating over inflamed tissues to help prevent drying of tissues.”

(B) “Temporarily protects irritated areas.”

(C) “Temporarily protects inflamed perianal skin.”

(D) “Temporarily relieves burning.”

(E) “Temporarily provides temporary relief from skin irritations.”

(F) “Temporarily protects the inflamed, irritated anorectal surface” (select one of the following: “to help make bowel movements less painful” or “from irritation and abrasion during bowel movement”).

(G) “Temporarily protects inflamed perianal skin.”

(H) “Temporarily relieves the symptoms of perianal skin irritation.”

(iv) For products containing aluminum hydroxide gel identified in §346.14(a)(1) and for products containing kaolin identified in §346.14(a)(5). “For the temporary relief of itching associated with moist anorectal conditions.”

(v) For products for external use only containing any analgesic, anesthetic, and antipruritic identified in §346.16.

(A) “For the temporary relief of” (select one or both of the following: “pain” or “burning”).

(B) “Can help distract from pain.”

(C) “May provide a cooling sensation.”

(vi) For products for external use only containing witch hazel identified in §346.18(b), and for products for external use and/or intrarectal use containing calamine or zinc oxide identified in §346.18 (a) and (c).

(A) “Aids in protecting irritated anorectal areas.”

(B) “Temporary relief of” (select one or both of the following: “irritation” or “burning”).

(vii) For products for external use only containing any ingredient identified in §346.20. The indication in paragraph (b)(1) of this section applies.

(c) Warnings. Warnings applicable to each active ingredient of the product.
may be combined to eliminate duplicative words or phrases so that the resulting warning is clear and understandable. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

1. “If condition worsens or does not improve within 7 days, consult a doctor.”

2. “Do not exceed the recommended daily dosage unless directed by a doctor.”

3. “In case of bleeding, consult a doctor promptly.”

4. “For products for external use only. Do not put this product into the rectum by using fingers or any mechanical device or applicator.”

5. “For products for intrarectal use to be used with a special applicator such as a pile pipe or other mechanical device. Do not use this product with an applicator if the introduction of the applicator into the rectum causes additional pain. Consult a doctor promptly.”

6. “For products for external use only containing any local anesthetic identified in §346.10, menthol identified in §346.16(c), or resorcinol identified in §346.20(b). Certain persons can develop allergic reactions to ingredients in this product. If the symptom being treated does not subside or if redness, irritation, swelling, pain, or other symptoms develop or increase, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

7. “For products containing any vasoconstrictor identified in §346.12. (1) “Do not use this product if you have heart disease, high blood pressure, thyroid disease, diabetes, or difficulty in urination due to enlargement of the prostate gland unless directed by a doctor.”

   (i) “Ask a doctor or pharmacist before use if you are [bullet] presently taking a prescription drug for high blood pressure or depression.”

   (ii) “For products containing ephedrine sulfate identified in §346.12(a). Some users of this product may experience nervousness, tremor, sleeplessness, nausea, and loss of appetite. If these symptoms persist or become worse, consult your doctor.”

8. “For products containing aluminum hydroxide gel identified in §346.14(a)(1) and for products containing kaolin identified in §346.14(a)(5). “Remove potted ointment or greasy ointment before using this product because they interfere with the ability of this product to adhere properly to the skin area.”

9. “For products for external use only containing resorcinol identified in §346.20(b). “Do not use on open wounds near the anus.”

(d) Directions. Directions applicable to each active ingredient of the product may be combined to eliminate duplicative words or phrases so that the resulting information is clear and understandable. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

1. “Adults: When practical, cleanse the affected area” (select one or both of the following: “with mild soap and warm water and rinse thoroughly” or “by patting or blotting with an appropriate cleansing pad”). “Gently dry by patting or blotting with toilet tissue or a soft cloth before application of this product.” [Other appropriate directions in this section may be inserted here.] “Children under 12 years of age: consult a doctor.”

2. “For products for external use only. “Apply externally to the affected area” (insert appropriate time interval of administration as identified in paragraphs (d)(6), (7), (8), or (9) of this section).

3. “For products for external use that are pads containing anorectal ingredients. “Gently apply to the affected area by patting and then discard.”

4. “For products for intrarectal use that are wrapped suppositories. “Remove wrapper before inserting into the rectum.”

5. “For products for intrarectal use that are to be used with a special applicator such as a pile pipe or other mechanical device. “FOR INTRARECTAL USE: Attach applicator to tube. Lubricate applicator well, then gently insert applicator into the rectum.”

6. “For products for external use only containing any of the local anesthetics identified in §346.10; analgesics, anesthetics, and antipruritics identified in §346.16; or alcloxa or resorcinol identified in §346.20. Apply to the affected area up to 6 times daily.”
§ 346.52 Labeling of permitted combinations of anorectal active ingredients.

Indications, warnings, and directions for use, respectively, applicable to each ingredient in the product may be combined to eliminate duplicative words or phrases so that the resulting information is clear and understandable.

(a) Statement of identity. For a combination drug product that has an established name, the labeling of the product states the established name of the combination drug product, followed by the statement of identity established in §346.50(a). For a combination drug product that does not have an established name, the labeling of the product states the statement of identity established in §346.50(a).

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the indication(s) for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the indications sections of this subpart.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Warnings,” the warning(s) for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the warnings sections of this subpart.

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Directions,” directions that conform to the directions established for each ingredient in the directions sections of this subpart. Where applicable in this part, time intervals or age limitations for administration of the individual ingredients differ, the directions for the combination product may not exceed any maximum dosage limits established for the individual ingredients in the applicable OTC drug monograph.
§ 347.10 Astringent active ingredients.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any one of the following within the specified concentration established for each ingredient:

(a) Aluminum acetate, 0.13 to 0.5 percent (depending on the formulation and concentration of the marketed product, the manufacturer must provide adequate directions so that the resulting solution to be used by the consumer contains 0.13 to 0.5 percent aluminum acetate).

(b) Aluminum sulfate, 46 to 63 percent (the concentration is based on the anhydrous equivalent).

(c) Witch hazel identified in §347.10(b) for use as a compress or wet dressing.

(3) For products containing witch hazel identified in §347.10(c), (1) “For relief of minor skin irritations due to” (select one or more of the following: “insect bites,” “minor cuts,” or “minor scrapes”).

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) “For external use only. Avoid contact with the eyes.”

(2) For products containing aluminum acetate identified in §347.10(a) or witch hazel identified in §347.10(c). “If condition worsens or symptoms persist for more than 7 days, discontinue use of the product and consult a physician or doctor”.

(3) For products containing aluminum acetate identified in §347.10(a) used as a compress or wet dressing. “Do not cover compress or wet dressing with plastic to prevent evaporation.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For products containing aluminum acetate identified in §347.10(a) used as a compress or wet dressing. “For use as a compress or wet dressing: saturate a clean, soft, white cloth (such as a diaper or torn sheet) in the solution, gently squeeze, and apply loosely to the affected area. Discard the cloth in the solution every 15 to 30 minutes and apply to the affected area. Discard solution after each use. Repeat as often as necessary.”

(2) For products containing aluminum sulfate identified in §347.10(b) for use as a stptic pencil. “Moisten tip of pencil with water and apply to the affected area. Dry pencil after use.”

(3) For products containing witch hazel identified in §347.10(c). “Apply to the affected area as often as necessary.”

§ 347.50 Labeling of astringent drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an “astringent.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications” any of the phrases listed in this paragraph (b), as appropriate. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b) may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) For products containing aluminum acetate identified in §347.10(a). “For temporary relief of minor skin irritations due to” (select one or more of the following: “poison ivy,” “poison oak,” “poison sumac,” “insect bites,” “athlete’s foot,” or “rashes caused by soaps, detergents, cosmetics, or jewelry”).

(2) For products containing aluminum sulfate identified in §347.10(b) for use as a stptic pencil. “Stops bleeding caused by minor surface cuts and abrasions as may occur during shaving.”

(3) For products containing witch hazel identified in §347.10(c). (1) “For relief of minor skin irritations due to” (select one or more of the following: “insect bites,” “minor cuts,” or “minor scrapes”).
PART 348—EXTERNAL ANALGESIC DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
348.1 Scope.
348.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

348.10 Analgesic, anesthetic, and antipruritic active ingredients.

Subpart C—Labeling

348.50 Labeling of external analgesic drug products.


SOURCE: 57 FR 27656, June 19, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 348.1 Scope.
(a) An over-the-counter external analgesic drug product in a form suitable for topical administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each condition in this part and each general condition established in §330.1 of this chapter.
(b) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 348.3 Definitions.
As used in this part:
(a) Male genital desensitizing drug product: A drug product applied to the penis to help in temporarily slowing the onset of ejaculation.
(b) [Reserved]

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

§ 348.10 Analgesic, anesthetic, and antipruritic active ingredients.
The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following within the specified concentration established for each ingredient:
(a) Male genital desensitizers. (1) Benzocaine, 3 to 7.5 percent in a water-soluble base.
(2) Lidocaine in a metered spray with approximately 10 milligrams per spray.
(b) [Reserved]

Subpart C—Labeling

§ 348.50 Labeling of external analgesic drug products.
(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as follows:
(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §348.10(a). “Male genital desensitizer.”
(2) [Reserved]
(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” any of the phrases listed in paragraph (b) of this section. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in paragraph (b) of this section, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.
(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §348.10(a). (i) Helps in the prevention of premature ejaculation.”
(ii) “For temporary male genital desensitization, helping to slow the onset of ejaculation.”
(iii) “Helps in temporarily” (select one of the following: “retarding the onset of,” “slowing the onset of,” or “prolonging the time until”) followed by “ejaculation.”
(iv) “For reducing oversensitivity in the male in advance of intercourse.”
(2) [Reserved]
(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:
(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §348.10(a). (i) “Premature ejaculation may be due to a condition requiring medical supervision. If this product, used as directed, does not provide relief, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”
Avoid contact with the eyes.

If you or your partner develop a rash or irritation, such as burning or itching, discontinue use. If symptoms persist, consult a doctor.

Directions

For products containing any ingredient identified in §348.10(a)—

(i) For products containing benzocaine identified in §348.10(a)(1). “Apply a small amount to head and shaft of penis before intercourse, or use as directed by a doctor. Wash product off after intercourse.”

(ii) For products containing lidocaine identified in §348.10(a)(2). “Apply 3 or more sprays, not to exceed 10, to head and shaft of penis before intercourse, or use as directed by a doctor. Wash product off after intercourse.”

The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.
from the body tissues and fluids across semipermeable membranes. Applied topically to the eye, a hypertonicity agent creates an osmotic gradient which draws water out of the cornea.

(h) Isotonicity. A state or quality in which the osmotic pressure in two fluids is equal.

(i) Vasoconstrictor. A pharmacologic agent which, when applied topically to the mucous membranes of the eye, causes transient constriction of conjunctival blood vessels.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

§ 349.10 Ophthalmic astringent.

The active ingredient and its concentration in the product is as follows: Zinc sulfate, 0.25 percent.

§ 349.12 Ophthalmic demulcents.

The active ingredients of the product consist of any of the following, within the established concentrations for each ingredient:

(a) Cellulose derivatives:

(1) Carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 0.2 to 2.5 percent.

(2) Hydroxyethyl cellulose, 0.2 to 2.5 percent.

(3) Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, 0.2 to 2.5 percent.

(4) Methylcellulose, 0.2 to 2.5 percent.

(b) Dextran 70, 0.1 percent when used with another polymeric demulcent agent in this section.

(c) Gelatin, 0.01 percent.

(d) Polyols, liquid:

(1) Glycerin, 0.2 to 1 percent.

(2) Polyethylene glycol 300, 0.2 to 1 percent.

(3) Polyethylene glycol 400, 0.2 to 1 percent.

(4) Polysorbate 80, 0.2 to 1 percent.

(5) Propylene glycol, 0.2 to 1 percent.

(e) Polyvinyl alcohol, 0.1 to 4 percent.

(f) Povidone, 0.1 to 2 percent.

§ 349.14 Ophthalmic emollients.

The active ingredients of the product consist of any of the following:

(a) Lanolin preparations:

(1) Anhydrous lanolin, 1 to 10 percent in combination with one or more oleaginous emollient agents included in the monograph.

(2) Lanolin, 1 to 10 percent in combination with one or more oleaginous emollient agents included in the monograph.

(b) Oleaginous ingredients:

(1) Light mineral oil, up to 50 percent in combination with one or more other emollient agents included in the monograph.

(2) Mineral oil, up to 50 percent in combination with one or more other emollient agents included in the monograph.

(3) Paraffin, up to 5 percent in combination with one or more other emollient agents included in the monograph.

(4) Petrolatum, up to 100 percent.

(5) White ointment, up to 100 percent.

(6) White petrolatum, up to 100 percent.

(7) White wax, up to 5 percent in combination with one or more other emollient agents included in the monograph.

(8) Yellow wax, up to 5 percent in combination with one or more other emollient agents included in the monograph.

§ 349.16 Ophthalmic hypertonicity agent.

The active ingredient and its concentration in the product is as follows: Sodium chloride, 2 to 5 percent.

§ 349.18 Ophthalmic vasoconstrictors.

The active ingredient of the product consists of one of the following, within the established concentration for each ingredient:

(a) Ephedrine hydrochloride, 0.123 percent.

(b) Naphazoline hydrochloride, 0.01 to 0.03 percent.

(c) Phenylephrine hydrochloride, 0.08 to 0.2 percent.

(d) Tetrahydrozoline hydrochloride, 0.01 to 0.05 percent.

§ 349.20 Eyewashes.

These products contain water, tonicity agents to establish isotonicity with tears, agents for establishing pH and buffering to achieve the same pH as tears, and a suitable preservative agent.
§ 349.30 Permitted combinations of active ingredients.

The following combinations are permitted provided each active ingredient is present within the established concentration, and the product is labeled in accordance with §349.79.

(a) Any single ophthalmic astringent active ingredient identified in §349.10 may be combined with any single ophthalmic vasoconstrictor active ingredient identified in §349.18.

(b) Any two or three ophthalmic demulcent active ingredients identified in §349.12 may be combined.

(c) Any single ophthalmic demulcent active ingredient identified in §349.12 or any ophthalmic demulcent combination identified in paragraph (b) of this section may be combined with any single ophthalmic vasoconstrictor identified in §349.18.

(d) Any single ophthalmic astringent active ingredient identified in §349.10 may be combined with any single ophthalmic vasoconstrictor active ingredient identified in §349.18 and any single ophthalmic demulcent identified in §349.12 or ophthalmic demulcent combination identified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(e) Any two or more emollient active ingredients identified in §349.14 may be combined as necessary to give the product proper consistency for application to the eye.

Subpart C—Labeling

§ 349.50 Labeling of ophthalmic drug products.

(a) The word "physician" may be substituted for the word "doctor" in any of the labeling statements in this part.

(b) Where applicable, indications in this part applicable to each ingredient in the product may be combined to eliminate duplicative words or phrases so that the resulting information is clear and understandable. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this part, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(c) The labeling of the product contains the following warnings, under the heading "Warnings":

(1) For ophthalmic drug products packaged in multi-use containers. "To avoid contamination, do not touch tip of container to any surface. Replace cap after using."

(2) For ophthalmic drug products packaged in single-use containers. "To avoid contamination, do not touch tip of container to any surface. Do not reuse. Once opened, discard."

(3) For ophthalmic drug products containing mercury compounds used as a preservative. "This product contains (name and quantity of mercury-containing ingredient) as a preservative. Do not use this product if you are sensitive to" (select one of the following: "mercury" or "(insert name of mercury-containing ingredient) or any other ingredient containing mercury)."

§ 349.55 Labeling of ophthalmic astringent drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as an "astringent" (select one of the following: "eye" or "ophthalmic") "(insert dosage form, e.g., drops)."

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading "Indications," the following phrase: "For the temporary relief of discomfort from minor eye irritations."

(c) Warnings. In addition to the warnings in §349.50, the labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading "Warnings" for products containing any ingredient identified in §349.10:

(1) "If you experience eye pain, changes in vision, continued redness or irritation of the eye, or if the condition worsens or persists for more than 72 hours, discontinue use and consult a doctor."

(2) "If solution changes color or becomes cloudy, do not use."
§ 349.60 Labeling of ophthalmic demulcent drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug(s), if any, and identifies the product as a “lubricant” or “demulcent (lubricant)” (select one of the following: “eye” or “ophthalmic”) “(insert dosage form, e.g., drops).”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” one or more of the following phrases:

(1) “For the temporary relief of burning and irritation due to dryness of the eye.”

(2) “For the temporary relief of discomfort due to minor irritations of the eye or to exposure to wind or sun.”

(3) “For use as a protectant against further irritation or to relieve dryness of the eye.”

(4) “For use as a lubricant to prevent further irritation or to relieve dryness of the eye.”

(c) Warnings. In addition to the warnings in §349.50, the labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings” for products containing any ingredient identified in §349.12:

(1) “If you experience eye pain, changes in vision, continued redness or irritation of the eye, or if the condition worsens or persists for more than 72 hours, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

(2) “If solution changes color or becomes cloudy, do not use.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”: Instill 1 or 2 drops in the affected eye(s) as needed.

§ 349.65 Labeling of ophthalmic emollient drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug(s), if any, and identifies the product as a “lubricant” or “emollient (lubricant)” (select one of the following: “eye” or “ophthalmic”) “(insert dosage form, e.g., ointment).”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” one or more of the following phrases:

(1) “For the temporary relief of burning and irritation due to dryness of the eye.”

(2) “For the temporary relief of discomfort due to minor irritations of the eye or to exposure to wind or sun.”

(3) “For use as a protectant against further irritation or to relieve dryness of the eye.”

(4) “For use as a lubricant to prevent further irritation or to relieve dryness of the eye.”

(c) Warnings. In addition to the warnings in §349.50, the labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings” for products containing any ingredient identified in §349.14: “If you experience eye pain, changes in vision, continued redness or irritation of the eye, or if the condition worsens or persists for more than 72 hours, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”: Pull down the lower lid of the affected eye and apply a small amount (one-fourth inch) of ointment to the inside of the eyelid.

§ 349.70 Labeling of ophthalmic hypertonicity drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “hypertonicity” (select one of the following: “eye” or “ophthalmic”) “(insert dosage form, e.g., drops).”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the following phrase: “For the temporary relief of corneal edema.”

(c) Warnings. In addition to the warnings in §349.50, the labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings” for products containing any ingredient identified in §349.16:

(1) “Do not use this product except under the advice and supervision of a
doctor. If you experience eye pain, changes in vision, continued redness or irritation of the eye, or if the condition worsens or persists, consult a doctor.

(2) “This product may cause temporary burning and irritation on being instilled into the eye.”

(3) “If solution changes color or becomes cloudy, do not use.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”: Instill 1 or 2 drops in the affected eye(s) every 3 or 4 hours, or as directed by a doctor.

§349.75 Labeling of ophthalmic vasoconstrictor drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug(s), if any, and identifies the product as a “redness reliever” or “vasoconstrictor (redness reliever)” (select one of the following: “eye” or “ophthalmic”) “(insert dosage form, e.g., drops).”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the following phrase: “Relieves redness of the eye due to minor eye irritations.”

(c) Warnings. In addition to the warnings in §349.50, the labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings” for products containing any ingredient identified in §349.18:

1. “If you experience eye pain, changes in vision, continued redness or irritation of the eye, or if the condition worsens or persists for more than 72 hours, discontinue use and consult a doctor.”

2. “If you have glaucoma, do not use this product except under the advice and supervision of a doctor.”

3. “Overuse of this product may produce increased redness of the eye.”

4. “If solution changes color or becomes cloudy, do not use.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”: Instill 1 to 2 drops in the affected eye(s) up to four times daily.

Effective Date Note. At 65 FR 38428, June 21, 2000, §349.75 was amended by revising paragraph (c)(2) and by adding paragraph (c)(5), effective May 16, 2002. For the convenience of the user the revised and added text is set forth as follows:

(c) * * *

(2) “Ask a doctor before use if you have [in bold type] narrow angle glaucoma.”

* * * * *

(5) “When using this product [in bold type] pupils may become enlarged temporarily.”

§349.78 Labeling of eyewash drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product identifies the product with one or more of the following terms: “eyewash,” “eye lotion,” or “eye irrigating solution.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” one of the following phrases:

1. “For” (select one of the following: “flushing,” “irrigating,” “cleansing,” “washing,” or “bathing”) “the eye to remove” (select one or more of the following: “loose foreign material,” “air pollutants (smog or pollen),” or “chlorinated water”).

2. “For” (select one of the following: “flushing,” “irrigating,” “cleansing,” “washing,” or “bathing”) “the eye to help relieve” (select one or more of the following: “irritation,” “discomfort,” “burning,” “stinging,” “smarting,” or “itching”) “by removing” (select one or more of the following: “loose foreign material,” “air pollutants (smog or pollen),” or “chlorinated water”).

(c) Warnings. In addition to the warnings in §349.50, the labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings” for all eyewash products:

1. “If you experience eye pain, changes in vision, continued redness or irritation of the eye, or if the condition worsens or persists, consult a doctor.”

2. “Obtain immediate medical treatment for all open wounds in or near the eyes.”

3. “If solution changes color or becomes cloudy, do not use.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

1. For eyewash products intended for use with an eyecup. Rinse cup with
§ 349.79 Labeling of permitted combinations of active ingredients.

Statements of identity, indications, warnings, and directions for use, respectively, applicable to each ingredient in the product may be combined to eliminate duplicative words or phrases so that the resulting information is clear and understandable.

(a) Statement of identity. For a combination drug product that has an established name, the labeling of the product states the established name of the combination drug product, followed by the statement of identity for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the statement of identity sections of this part. For a combination drug product that does not have an established name, the labeling of the product states the statement of identity for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the statement of identity sections of this part.

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the indication(s) for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the indications sections of this part.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Warnings,” the warning(s) for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the warnings sections of this part.

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Directions,” directions that conform to the directions established for each ingredient in the directions sections of this part. When the time intervals or age limitations for administration of the individual ingredients differ, the directions for the combination product may not exceed any maximum dosage limits established for the individual ingredients in the applicable OTC drug monograph.

§ 349.80 Professional labeling.

The labeling of any OTC ophthalmic demulcent drug product provided to health professionals (but not to the general public) may contain instructions for the use of these products in professional eye examinations (i.e. gonioscopy, electroretinography).
Subpart A—General Provisions
§ 352.1 Scope.
(a) An over-the-counter sunscreen drug product in a form suitable for topical administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each condition in this part and each general condition established in §330.1 of this chapter.
(b) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 352.3 Definitions.
As used in this part:
(a) Minimal erythema dose (MED). The quantity of erythema-effective energy (expressed as Joules per square meter) required to produce the first perceptible, redness reaction with clearly defined borders.
(b) Product category designation (PCD). A labeling designation for sunscreen drug products to aid in selecting the type of product best suited to an individual’s complexion (pigmentation) and desired response to ultraviolet (UV) radiation.
   (1) Minimal sun protection product. A sunscreen product that provides a sun protection factor (SPF) value of 2 to under 12.
   (2) Moderate sun protection product. A sunscreen product that provides an SPF value of 12 to under 30.
   (3) High sun protection product. A sunscreen product that provides an SPF value of 30 or above.
   (c) Sunscreen active ingredient. An active ingredient listed in §352.10 that absorbs, reflects, or scatters radiation in the UV range at wavelengths from 290 to 400 nanometers.
   (d) Sun protection factor (SPF) value. The UV energy required to produce an MED on protected skin divided by the UV energy required to produce an MED on unprotected skin, which may also be defined by the following ratio: SPF value = MED (protected skin (PS))/MED (unprotected skin (US)), where MED (PS) is the minimal erythema dose for protected skin after application of 2 milligrams per square centimeter of the final formulation of the sunscreen product, and MED (US) is the minimal erythema dose for unprotected skin, i.e., skin to which no sunscreen product has been applied. In effect, the SPF value is the reciprocal of the effective transmission of the product viewed as a UV radiation filter.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients
§ 352.10 Sunscreen active ingredients.
The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following, within the concentration specified for each ingredient, and the finished product provides a minimum SPF value of not less than 2 as measured by the testing procedures established in subpart D of this part:
(a) Aminobenzoic acid (PABA) up to 15 percent.
(b) Avobenzone up to 3 percent.
(c) Cinexate up to 3 percent.
(d) [Reserved]
(e) Dioxybenzone up to 3 percent.
(f) Homosalate up to 15 percent.
(g) [Reserved]
(h) Menthyl anthranilate up to 5 percent.
   (i) Octocrylene up to 10 percent.
   (j) Octyl methoxycinnamate up to 7.5 percent.
   (k) Octyl salicylate up to 5 percent.
   (l) Oxybenzone up to 6 percent.
   (m) Padimate O up to 8 percent.
   (n) Phenylbenzimidazole sulfonic acid up to 4 percent.
   (o) Sulisobenzone up to 10 percent.
   (p) Titanium dioxide up to 25 percent.
   (q) Trolamine salicylate up to 12 percent.
   (r) Zinc oxide up to 25 percent.

§ 352.20 Permitted combinations of active ingredients.
The SPF of any combination product is measured by the testing procedures established in subpart D of this part.
(a) Combinations of sunscreen active ingredients. (1) Two or more sunscreen active ingredients identified in §352.10(a), (c), (e), (f), and (h) through (r) may be combined with each other in a single product when used in the concentrations established for each ingredient in §352.10. The concentration of each active ingredient must be sufficient to contribute a minimum SPF of not less than 2 to the finished product. The finished product must have a minimum SPF of not less than the number of...
§ 352.50 Principal display panel of all sunscreen drug products.

In addition to the statement of identity required in §352.52, the following labeling statements shall be prominently placed on the principal display panel:

(a) For products that do not satisfy the water resistant or very water resistant sunscreen product testing procedures in §352.76. (1) For products with SPF values up to 30, “SPF (insert tested SPF value of the product up to 30).”

(2) For products with SPF values over 30, “SPF 30” (select one of the following: “plus” or “+”). Any statement accompanying the marketed product that states a specific SPF value above 30 or similar language indicating a person can stay in the sun more than 30 times longer than without sunscreen will cause the product to be misbranded under section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act).

(b) For products that satisfy the water resistant sunscreen product testing procedures in §352.76. (1) (Select one of the following: “Water,” “Water/Sweat,” or “Water/Perspiration”). “Resistant.”

(2) “SPF (insert SPF value of the product, as stated in paragraph (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section, after it has been tested using the water resistant sunscreen product testing procedures in §352.76).”

(c) For products that satisfy the very water resistant sunscreen product testing procedures in §352.76. (1) “Very” (select one of the following: “Water,” “Water/Sweat,” or “Water/Perspiration”) “Resistant.”

(2) “SPF (insert SPF value of the product, as stated in paragraph (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section, after it has been tested using the very water resistant sunscreen product testing procedures in §352.76).”

§ 352.52 Labeling of sunscreen drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “sunscreen.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Uses,” all of the phrases listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section that are applicable to the product and may contain any of the additional phrases listed in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, as appropriate. Other truthful and non-misleading statements, describing only the uses that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) For products containing any ingredient in §352.10. (i) “[bullet] helps prevent sunburn”.

(ii) For products that satisfy the water resistant testing procedures identified in §352.76. “[bullet] retains SPF after 40 minutes of” (select one or more of the following: “activity in the water,” “sweating,” or “perspiring”).

(iii) For products that satisfy the very water resistant testing procedures identified in §352.76. “[bullet] retains SPF after 80 minutes of” (select one or more of the following: “activity in the water,” “sweating,” or “perspiring”).

(2) Additional indications. In addition to the indications provided in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the following may be used for products containing any ingredient in §352.10:

1 See §201.66(b)(4) of this chapter.
(i) For products that provide an SPF of 2 to under 12. Select one or both of the following: [bullet] (select one of the following: “provides minimal,” “provides minimum,” “minimal,” or “minimum”) “protection against” [select one of the following: “sunburn” or “sunburn and tanning”]), or [bullet] for skin that sunburns minimally.”

(ii) For products that provide an SPF of 12 to under 30. Select one or both of the following: [bullet] (select one of the following: “provides moderate” or “moderate”) “protection against” [select one of the following: “sunburn” or “sunburn and tanning”]), or “[bullet] for skin that sunburns easily”.

(iii) For products that provide an SPF of 30 or above. Select one or both of the following: [bullet] (select one of the following: “provides high” or “high”) “protection against” [select one of the following: “sunburn” or “sunburn and tanning”]), or “[bullet] for skin highly sensitive to sunburn”.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings:”

(1) The labeling shall meet the requirements of §201.66(c)(5)(i) of this chapter and the warning in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section are not required.

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following statements, as appropriate, under the heading “Directions.” More detailed directions applicable to a particular product formulation (e.g., cream, gel, lotion, oil, spray, etc.) may also be included.

(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §352.10, the following may be used for products containing any ingredient in §352.10. “[bullet] reapply as needed or after towel drying, swimming, or” (select one of the following: “sweating” or “perspiring”).

(2) In addition to the directions provided in §352.10(d)(2) are used, the phrase “and as needed” in §352.10(d)(1) is not required.

(3) If the additional directions provided in §352.10(d)(2) are used, the phrase “and as needed” in §352.10(d)(1) is not required.

(4) For products marketed as a lipstick. The directions in paragraphs (d)(1) and (d)(2) of this section are not required.

(e) Statement on product performance—

(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §352.10, the following PCD labeling claims may be used under the heading “Other information” or anywhere outside of the “Drug Facts” box or enclosure.

(2) In addition to the directions provided in §352.10(d)(1), the following may be used for products containing any ingredient in §352.10. “[bullet] reapply as needed or after towel drying, swimming, or” (select one of the following: “sweating” or “perspiring”).

(3) If the additional directions provided in §352.10(d)(2) are used, the phrase “and as needed” in §352.10(d)(1) is not required.

(4) For products marketed as a lipstick. The directions in paragraphs (d)(1) and (d)(2) of this section are not required.

(5) Statement on product performance—

(1) For products containing any ingredient(s) that provide an SPF value of 2 to under 12. Select one of the following: “minimal” or “minimum”) “sun protection product.”

(ii) For products containing active ingredient(s) that provide an SPF value of 12 to under 30. “moderate sun protection product.”

(iii) For products containing active ingredient(s) that provide an SPF value of 30 or above. “high sun protection product.”

(2) For products containing any ingredient identified in §352.10, the following labeling statement may be used under the heading “Other information” or anywhere outside of the “Drug Facts” box or enclosure. “Sun alert: Limiting sun exposure, wearing protective clothing, and using sunscreens may reduce the risks of skin aging, skin cancer; and other harmful effects of the sun.” Any variation of this statement will cause the product to be misbranded under section 502 of the act.

(1) Products labeled for use only on specific small areas of the face (e.g., lips, nose, ears, and/or around eyes) and that meet the criteria established in §201.66(d)(10) of this chapter. The title, headings, subheadings, and information described in §201.66(c) of this chapter shall be printed in accordance with the following specifications:

(1) The labeling shall meet the requirements of §201.66(c) of this chapter.
except that the title, headings, and information described in §201.66(c)(1), (c)(3), and (c)(7) may be omitted, and the headings, subheadings, and information described in §201.66(c)(2), (c)(4), (c)(5), and (c)(6) may be presented as follows:

(i) The active ingredients (§201.66(c)(2) of this chapter) shall be listed in alphabetical order.

(ii) The heading and the indication required by §201.66(c)(4) may be limited to: “Use [in bold type] helps prevent sunburn.”

(iii) The “external use only” warning in §201.66(c)(5)(i) of this chapter may be omitted.

(iv) The subheadings in §201.66(c)(5)(iii) through (c)(5)(vii) of this chapter may be omitted, provided the information after the heading “Warnings” states: “Keep out of eyes.” and “Stop use if skin rash occurs.”

(v) The warning in §201.66(c)(5)(x) of this chapter may be limited to the following: “Keep out of reach of children.”

(vi) For a lipstick, the warnings “Keep out of eyes” in §352.52(f)(1)(iv) and “Keep out of reach of children” in §352.52(f)(1)(v) and the directions in §352.52(d) may be omitted.

(2) The labeling shall be printed in accordance with the requirements of §201.66(d) of this chapter except that any requirements related to §201.66(c)(1), (c)(3), and (c)(7), and the horizontal barlines and hairlines described in §201.66(d)(8), may be omitted.

§352.60 Labeling of permitted combinations of active ingredients.

Statements of identity, indications, warnings, and directions for use, respectively, applicable to each ingredient in the product may be combined to eliminate duplicative words or phrases so that the resulting information is clear and understandable.

(a) Statement of identity. For a combination drug product that has an established name, the labeling of the product states the established name of the combination drug product, followed by the statement of identity for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the statement of identity sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs. For a combination drug product that does not have an established name, the labeling of the product states the statement of identity for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the statement of identity sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs.

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Uses,” the indication(s) for each ingredient in the combination as established in the indications sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs, unless otherwise stated in this paragraph. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established in the applicable OTC drug monographs or listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided by §330.11(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) In addition, the labeling of the product may contain any of the “other allowable statements” that are identified in the applicable monographs.

(2) For permitted combinations containing a sunscreen and a skin protectant identified in §352.20(b).

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Warnings,” the warning(s) for each ingredient in the combination, as established in the warnings section of the applicable OTC drug monographs. For permitted combinations containing a sunscreen and a skin protectant identified in §352.20(b).

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Directions,” directions that conform to the directions established for each ingredient in the directions sections of the applicable OTC drug monographs, unless otherwise stated in this paragraph. When the time intervals or age limitations for administration of the individual ingredients differ, the directions for the combination product may not contain any dosage that exceeds those established for any individual ingredient in the applicable OTC drug monographs.
monograph(s), and may not provide for use by any age group lower than the highest minimum age limit established for any individual ingredient. For permitted combinations containing a sunscreen and a skin protectant identified in §352.20(b).

Subpart D—Testing Procedures

§352.70 Standard sunscreen.

(a) Laboratory validation. A standard sunscreen shall be used concomitantly in the testing procedures for determining the SPF value of a sunscreen drug product to ensure the uniform evaluation of sunscreen drug products. The standard sunscreen shall be an 8-percent homosalate preparation with a mean SPF value of 4.47 (standard deviation = 1.279). In order for the SPF determination of a test product to be considered valid, the SPF of the standard sunscreen must fall within the standard deviation range of the expected SPF (i.e., 4.47 ± 1.279) and the 95-percent confidence interval for the mean SPF must contain the value 4.

(b) Preparation of the standard homosalate sunscreen. (1) The standard homosalate sunscreen is prepared from two different preparations (preparation A and preparation B) with the following compositions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredients</th>
<th>Percent by weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preparation A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lanolin</td>
<td>5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homosalate</td>
<td>8.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White petrolatum</td>
<td>2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stearic acid</td>
<td>4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propylparaben</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylparaben</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edetate disodium</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propylene glycol</td>
<td>5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triethanolamine</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purified water U.S.P</td>
<td>74.30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Preparation A and preparation B are heated separately to 77 to 82 °C, with constant stirring, until the contents of each part are solubilized. Add preparation A slowly to preparation B while stirring. Continue stirring until the emulsion formed is cooled to room temperature (15 to 30 °C). Add sufficient purified water to obtain 100 grams of standard sunscreen preparation.

(c) Assay of the standard homosalate sunscreen. Assay the standard homosalate sunscreen preparation by the following method to ensure proper concentration:

(1) Preparation of the assay solvent. The solvent consists of 1 percent glacial acetic acid (V/V) in denatured ethanol. The denatured ethanol should not contain a UV radiation absorbing denaturant.

(2) Preparation of a 1-percent solution of the standard homosalate sunscreen preparation. Accurately weigh 1 gram of the standard homosalate sunscreen preparation into a 100-milliliter volumetric flask. Add 50 milliliters of the assay solvent. Heat on a steam bath and mix well. Cool the solution to room temperature (15 to 30 °C). Then dilute the solution to volume with the assay solvent and mix well to make a 1-percent solution.

(3) Preparation of the test solution (1:50 dilution of the 1-percent solution). Filter a portion of the 1-percent solution through number 1 filter paper. Discard the first 10 to 15 milliliters of the filtrate. Collect the next 20 milliliters of the filtrate (second collection). Add 1 milliliter of the second collection of the filtrate to a 50-milliliter volumetric flask. Dilute this solution to volume with assay solvent and mix well. This is the test solution (1:50 dilution of the 1-percent solution).

(4) Spectrophotometric determination. The absorbance of the test solution is measured in a suitable double beam spectrophotometer with the assay solvent and reference beam at a wavelength near 306 nanometers.

(5) Calculation of the concentration of homosalate. The concentration of homosalate is determined by the following formula which takes into consideration the absorbance of the sample of the test solution, the dilution of the 1-percent solution (1:50), the weight of the sample of the standard homosalate sunscreen preparation (1 gram), and the standard absorbance value (172) of homosalate as determined by averaging the absorbance of a large number of batches of raw homosalate.
§ 352.71 Concentration of homosalate = absorbance x 50 x 100 x 172 = percent concentration by weight.

§ 352.71 Light source (solar simulator).
A solar simulator used for determining the SPF of a sunscreen drug product should be filtered so that it provides a continuous emission spectrum from 290 to 400 nanometers similar to sunlight at sea level from the sun at a zenith angle of 10°. It has less than 1 percent of its total energy output contributed by nonsolar wavelengths shorter than 290 nanometers; and it has not more than 5 percent of its total energy output contributed by wavelengths longer than 400 nanometers. In addition, a solar simulator should have no significant time-related fluctuations in radiation emissions after an appropriate warmup time, and it should have good beam uniformity (within 10 percent) in the exposure plane. To ensure that the solar simulator delivers the appropriate spectrum of UV radiation, it must be measured periodically with an accurately-calibrated spectroradiometer system or equivalent instrument.

§ 352.72 General testing procedures.
(a) Selection of test subjects (male and female). (1) Only fair-skin subjects with skin types I, II, and III using the following guidelines shall be selected:

Selection of Fair-skin Subjects
Skin Type and Sunburn and Tanning History (Based on first 30 to 45 minutes sun exposure after a winter season of no sun exposure.)

I—Always burns easily; never tans (sensitive).
II—Always burns easily; tans minimally (sensitive).
III—Burns moderately; tans gradually (light brown) (normal).
IV—Burns minimally; always tans well (moderate brown) (normal).
V—Rarely burns; tans profusely (dark brown) (insensitive).
VI—Never burns; deeply pigmented (insensitive).

(2) A medical history shall be obtained from all subjects with emphasis on the effects of sunlight on their skin. Ascertain the general health of the individual, the individual’s skin type (I, II, or III), whether the individual is taking medication (topical or systemic) that is known to produce abnormal sunlight responses, and whether the individual is subject to any abnormal responses to sunlight, such as a phototoxic or photoallergic response.

(b) Test site inspection. The physical examination shall determine the presence of sunburn, suntan, scars, active dermal lesions, and uneven skin tones on the areas of the back to be tested. The presence of nevi, blemishes, or moles will be acceptable if in the physician’s judgment they will not interfere with the study results. Excess hair on the back is acceptable if the hair is clipped or shaved.

(c) Informed consent. Legally effective written informed consent must be obtained from all individuals.

(d) Test site delineation—(1) Test site area. A test site area serves as an area for determining the subject’s MED after application of either the sunscreen standard or the test sunscreen product, or for determining the subject’s MED when the skin is unprotected (control site). The area to be tested shall be the back between the beltline and the shoulder blade (scapulae) and lateral to the midline. Each test site area for applying a product or the standard sunscreen shall be a minimum of 50-square centimeters, e.g., 5 × 10 centimeters. The test site areas are outlined with ink. If the person is to be tested in an upright position, the lines shall be drawn on the skin with the subject upright. If the subject is to be tested while prone, the markings shall be made with the subject prone.

(2) Test subsite area. Each test site area shall be divided into at least three test subsite areas that are at least 1 square centimeter. Usually four or five subsites are employed. Each test subsite within a test site area is subjected to a specified dosage of UV radiation, in which the test site area is exposed for the determination of the MED.

(e) Application of test materials. To ensure standardized reporting and to define a product’s SPF value, the application of the product shall be expressed on a weight basis per unit area which establishes a standard film. Both the
test sunscreen product and the standard sunscreen application shall be 2 milligrams per square centimeter. For oils and most lotions, the viscosity is such that the material can be applied with a volumetric syringe. For creams, heavy gels, and butters, the product shall be warmed slightly so that it can be applied volumetrically. On heating, care shall be taken not to alter the product’s physical characteristics, especially separation of the formulations. Pastes and ointments shall be weighed, then applied by spreading on the test site area. A product shall be spread by using a finger cot. If two or more sunscreen drug products are being evaluated at the same time, the test products and the standard sunscreen, as specified in §352.70, should be applied in a blinded, randomized manner. If only one sunscreen drug product is being tested, the testing subsites should be exposed to the varying doses of UV radiation in a randomized manner.

(f) Waiting period. Before exposing the test site areas after applying a product, a waiting period of at least 15 minutes is required.

(g) Number of subjects. A test panel shall consist of not more than 25 subjects with the number fixed in advance by the investigator. From this panel, at least 20 subjects must produce valid data for analysis.

(h) Response criteria. In order that the person who evaluates the MED responses does not know which sunscreen formulation was applied to which site or what doses of UV radiation were administered, he/she must not be the same person who applied the sunscreen drug product to the test site or administered the doses of UV radiation. After UV radiation exposure from the solar simulator is completed, all immediate responses shall be recorded. These include several types of typical responses such as the following: An immediate darkening or tanning, typically greyish or purplish in color, fading in 30 to 60 minutes, and attributed to photo-oxidation of existing melanin granules; immediate reddening, fading rapidly, and viewed as a normal response of capillaries and venules to heat, visible and infrared radiation; and an immediate generalized heat response, resembling prickly heat rash, fading in 30 to 60 minutes, and apparently caused by heat and moisture generally irritating to the skin’s surface. After the immediate responses are noted, each subject shall shield the exposed area from further UV radiation for the remainder of the test day. The MED is determined 22 to 24 hours after exposure. The erythema responses of the test subject should be evaluated under the following conditions: The source of illumination should be either a tungsten light bulb or a warm white fluorescent light bulb that provides a level of illumination at the test site within the range of 450 to 550 lux, and the test subject should be in the same position used when the test site was irradiated. Testing depends upon determining the smallest dose of energy that produces redness reaching the borders of the exposure site at 22 to 24 hours postexposure for each series of exposures. To determine the MED, somewhat more intense erythemas must also be produced. The goal is to have some exposures that produce absolutely no effect, and of those exposures that produce an effect, the maximal exposure should be no more than twice the total energy of the minimal exposure.

(i) Rejection of test data. Test data shall be rejected if the exposure series fails to elicit an MED response on either the treated or unprotected skin sites, or if the responses on the treated sites are randomly absent (which indicates the product was not spread evenly), or if the subject was noncompliant (e.g., subject withdraws from the test due to illness or work conflicts, subject does not shield the exposed testing sites from further UV radiation until the MED is read, etc.).

§ 352.73 Determination of SPF value.

(a)(1) The following erythema action spectrum shall be used to calculate the erythema effective exposure of a solar simulator:

\[ V(\lambda) = 1.0 \] (250 < \lambda < 298 nm)

\[ V(\lambda) = 1.0^{0.094(298 - \lambda)} \] (298 < \lambda < 328 nanometers)

\[ V(\lambda) = 1.0^{0.015(328 - \lambda)} \] (328 < \lambda < 400 nanometers)

(2) The data contained in this action spectrum are to be used as spectral
weighting factors to calculate the erythema effective exposure of a solar simulator as follows:

\[ E = \sum_{250}^{400} V_i(\lambda) \cdot I(\lambda) \cdot t_{\text{exp}} \]

where:
- \( E \) = Erythema Effective Exposure (dose: Joules per square meter)
- \( V_i \) = Weighting Factor (Erythema Action Spectrum)
- \( I \) = Spectral Irradiance (Watts per square meter per nanometer)
- \( t_{\text{exp}} \) = exposure time (seconds)

(b) **Determination of MED of the unprotected skin.** A series of UV radiation exposures expressed as Joules per square meter (adjusted to the erythema action spectrum calculated according to §352.73(a)) is administered to the subsite areas on each subject with an accurately calibrated solar simulator. A series of five exposures shall be administered to the untreated, unprotected skin to determine the subject’s inherent MED. The doses selected shall be a geometric series represented by \((1.25^n)\), wherein each exposure time interval is 25 percent greater than the previous time to maintain the same relative uncertainty (expressed as a constant percentage), independent of the subject’s sensitivity to UV radiation, regardless of whether the subject has a high or low MED. Usually, the MED of a person’s unprotected skin is determined the day prior to testing a product. This MED(US) should be used in calculating the SPF.

(c) **Determination of individual SPF values.** A series of UV radiation exposures expressed as Joules per square meter (adjusted to the erythema action spectrum calculated according to §352.73(a)) is administered to the subsite areas on each subject with an accurately-calibrated solar simulator. A series of seven exposures shall be administered to the protected test sites to determine the MED of the protected skin (MED(PS)). The doses selected shall consist of a geometric series of five exposures, where the middle exposure is placed to yield the expected SPF plus two other exposures placed symmetrically around the middle exposure. The exact series of exposures to be given to the protected skin shall be determined by the previously established MED(US) and the expected SPF of the test sunscreen. For products with an expected SPF less than 8, the exposures shall be the MED(US) times 0.64X, 0.80X, 0.90X, 1.00X, 1.10X, 1.25X, and 1.56X, where X equals the expected SPF of the test product. For products with an expected SPF between 8 and 15, the exposures shall be the MED(US)
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 352.76 Determination of the test product’s SPF value and PCD. Use data from at least 20 test subjects with n representing the number of subjects used. First, for each subject, compute the SPF value as stated in §352.73(b) and (c). Second, compute the mean SPF value, \( \bar{x} \), and the standard deviation, s, for these subjects. Third, obtain the upper 5-percent point from the t distribution table with n-1 degrees of freedom. Denote this value by t. Fourth, compute ts/√n. Denote this quantity by A (i.e., A = ts/√n). Fifth, calculate the SPF value to be used in labeling as follows: the label SPF equals the largest whole number less than \( \bar{x} - A \). Sixth and last, the drug product is classified into a PCD as follows: if 30 + A < \( \bar{x} \), the PCD is High; if 12 + A < \( \bar{x} < 30 + A \), the PCD is Moderate; if 2 + A < \( \bar{x} < 12 + A \), the PCD is Minimal; if \( \bar{x} < 2 + A \), the product shall not be labeled as a sunscreen drug product and shall not display an SPF value.

§ 352.76 Determination if a product is water resistant or very water resistant.

The general testing procedures in §352.72 shall be used as part of the following tests, except where modified in this section. An indoor fresh water pool, whirlpool, and/or jacuzzi maintained at 23 to 32 °C shall be used in these testing procedures. Fresh water is clean drinking water that meets the standards in 40 CFR part 141. The pool and air temperature and the relative humidity shall be recorded.

(a) Procedure for testing the water resistance of a sunscreen product. For sunscreen products making the claim of “water resistant,” the label SPF shall be the label SPF value determined after 40 minutes of water immersion using the following procedure for the water resistance test:

1. Apply sunscreen product (followed by the waiting period after application of the sunscreen product indicated on the product labeling).
2. 20 minutes moderate activity in water.
3. 20-minute rest period (do not towel test sites).
4. 20 minutes moderate activity in water.
5. Conclude water test (air dry test sites without toweling).
6. Begin solar simulator exposure to test site areas as described in §352.73.

(b) Procedure for testing a very water resistant sunscreen product. For sunscreen products making the claim of “very water resistant,” the label SPF shall be the label SPF value determined after 80 minutes of water immersion using the following procedure for the very water resistant test:

1. Apply sunscreen product (followed by the waiting period after application of the sunscreen product indicated on the product labeling).
2. 20 minutes moderate activity in water.
3. 20-minute rest period (do not towel test sites).
4. 20 minutes moderate activity in water.
5. 20-minute rest period (do not towel test sites).
6. 20 minutes moderate activity in water.
7. 20-minute rest period (do not towel test sites).
8. 20 minutes moderate activity in water.
9. Conclude water test (air dry test sites without toweling).
10. Begin solar simulator exposure to test site areas as described in §352.73.
§ 352.77 Test modifications.

The formulation or mode of administration of certain products may require modification of the testing procedures in this subpart. In addition, alternative methods (including automated or in vitro procedures) employing the same basic procedures as those described in this subpart may be used. Any proposed modification or alternative procedure shall be submitted as a petition in accord with §10.30 of this chapter. The petition should contain data to support the modification or data demonstrating that an alternative procedure provides results of equivalent accuracy. All information submitted will be subject to the disclosure rules in part 20 of this chapter.

PART 355—ANTICARIES DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
355.1 Scope.
355.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Active Ingredients

355.10 Anticaries active ingredients.
355.20 Packaging conditions.

Subpart C—Labeling

355.50 Labeling of anticaries drug products.
355.55 Principal display panel of all fluoride rinse drug products.
355.60 Professional labeling.

Subpart D—Testing Procedures

355.70 Testing procedures for fluoride dentifrice drug products.


SOURCE: 60 FR 52507, Oct. 6, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 355.1 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter anticaries drug product in a form suitable for topical administration to the teeth is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each condition established in §330.1 of this chapter.

(b) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 355.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) Abrasive. Solid materials that are added to dentifrices to facilitate mechanical removal of dental plaque, debris, and stain from tooth surfaces.

(b) Anhydrous glycerin. An ingredient that may be prepared by heating glycerin U.S.P. at 150–C for 2 hours to drive off the moisture content.

(c) Anticaries drug. A drug that aids in the prevention and prophylactic treatment of dental cavities (decay, caries).

(d) Dental caries. A disease of calcified tissues of teeth characterized by demineralization of the inorganic portion and destruction of the organic matrix.

(e) Dentifrice. An abrasive-containing dosage form (gel, paste, or powder) for delivering an anticaries drug to the teeth.

(f) Fluoride. The inorganic form of the chemical element fluorine in combination with other elements.

(g) Fluoride ion. The negatively charged atom of the chemical element fluorine.

(h) Fluoride supplement. A special treatment rinse dosage form that is intended to be swallowed, and is promoted to health professionals for use in areas where the water supply contains 0 to 0.7 parts per million (ppm) fluoride ion.

(i) Preventive treatment gel. A dosage form for delivering an anticaries drug to the teeth. Preventive treatment gels are formulated in an anhydrous glycerin base with suitable thickening agents included to adjust viscosity. Preventive treatment gels do not contain abrasives.

(j) Treatment rinse. A liquid dosage form for delivering an anticaries drug to the teeth.

(k) Treatment rinse concentrated solution. A fluoride treatment rinse in a concentrated form to be mixed with
§ 355.20 Packaging conditions.

(a) Package size limitation. Due to the toxicity associated with fluoride active ingredients, the following package size limitations are required for anticaries drug products:

(i) Sodium fluoride 0.02 percent aqueous solution with a pH of approximately 7.

(ii) Sodium fluoride 0.05 percent aqueous solution with a pH of approximately 7.

(iii) Sodium fluoride concentrate containing adequate directions for mixing with water before using to result in a 0.02-percent or 0.05-percent aqueous solution with a pH of approximately 7.

(b) Sodium monofluorophosphate—(1) Dentifrices containing 850 to 1,150 ppm theoretical total fluorine in a gel or paste dosage form. Sodium monofluorophosphate 0.654 to 0.884 percent with an available fluoride ion concentration (consisting of PO$_3^{3-}$ and F$^-$ combined) ≥ 800 ppm.

(2) Dentifrices containing 1,500 ppm theoretical total fluorine in a gel or paste dosage form. Sodium monofluorophosphate 1.153 percent with an available fluoride ion concentration (consisting of PO$_3^{3-}$ and F$^-$ combined) ≥ 1,275 ppm.

(c) Stannous fluoride—(1) Dentifrices containing 850 to 1,150 ppm theoretical total fluorine in a gel or paste dosage form. Stannous fluoride 0.351 to 0.474 percent with an available fluoride ion concentration ≥ 700 ppm for products containing abrasives other than calcium pyrophosphate.

(2) Preventive treatment gel. Stannous fluoride 0.4 percent in an anhydrous glycerin gel, made from anhydrous glycerin and the addition of suitable thickening agents to adjust viscosiy.

(3) Treatment rinse. Stannous fluoride concentrate marketed in a stable form and containing adequate directions for mixing with water immediately before using to result in a 0.1-percent aqueous solution.
§ 355.50 Labeling of anticaries drug products

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as: (select one or both of the following: “anticavity” or “fluoride”) (select one of the following as appropriate: “dentinifrice,” “toothpaste,” “tooth polish,” “tooth powder;” (optional: “dental”) “preventive treatment gel;” or (optional: “treatment” or “dental”)) (select one of the following: “rinse,” “concentrated solution,” “rinse powder,” or “rinse effervescence tablets”). The word “mouthwash” may be substituted for the word “rinse” in this statement of identity if the product also has a cosmetic use, as defined in section 201(i) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act). (21 U.S.C. 321(i)).

(b) Indication. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indication,” the following: “Aids in the prevention of dental (select one of the following: “cavities,” “decay,” “caries (decay),” or “caries (cavities)”). Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indication for use that has been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(g)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 30(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 506(a) of the act.

(c) Warning. The labeling of the product contains the following warning under the heading “Warning”:

(1) For all fluoride dentifrice (gel, paste, and powder) products. “Keep out of reach of children under 6 years of age. (highlighted in bold type) If more than used for brushing is accidentally swallowed, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away.” These warnings shall be used in place of the general warning statements required by §330.1(g) of this chapter.

(2) For all fluoride rinse and preventive treatment gel products. “Keep out of reach of children. (highlighted in bold type) If more than used for brushing is accidentally swallowed, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away.” These warnings shall be used in place of the general warning statements required by §330.1(g) of this chapter.

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following statements under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For anticaries dentifrice products—

(i) Gel or paste dosage form with a theoretical total fluorine concentration of 850 to 1,150 ppm identified in §355.10(a)(1), (b)(1), and (c)(1). Adults and children 2 years of age and older: Brush teeth thoroughly, preferably after each meal or at least twice a day, or as directed by a dentist or doctor. Instruct children under 6 years of age in good brushing and rinsing habits (to minimize swallowing). Supervise children as necessary until capable of using without supervision. Children under 2 years of age: Consult a dentist or doctor.

(ii) Gel or paste dosage form with a theoretical total fluorine concentration of 1,300 ppm identified in §355.10(b)(2). Adults and children 6 years of age and
Food and Drug Administration, HHS

§ 355.50

older: Brush teeth thoroughly, preferably after each meal or at least twice a day, or as directed by a dentist or doctor. Instruct children under 12 years of age in good brushing and rinsing habits (to minimize swallowing). Supervise children as necessary until capable of using without supervision. Children under 6 years of age: Do not use unless directed by a dentist or doctor.

(iii) Powdered dosage form with a theoretical total fluoride concentration of 830 to 1,150 ppm identified in §355.10(a)(2). Adults and children 6 years of age and older: Apply powder to a wet toothbrush; completely cover all bristles. Brush for at least 30 seconds. Reapply powder as before and brush again. Rinse and spit out thoroughly. Brush teeth, preferably after each meal or at least twice a day, or as directed by a dentist or doctor. Instruct children under 12 years of age in good brushing and rinsing habits (to minimize swallowing). Supervise children as necessary until capable of using without supervision. Children under 6 years of age: Do not use unless directed by a dentist or doctor.

(2) For anticaries treatment rinse products—(i) For acidulated phosphate fluoride solution containing 0.02 percent fluoride ion, sodium fluoride 0.05 percent, sodium fluoride concentrate, and stannous fluoride concentrate identified in §355.10(a)(3)(i), (a)(3)(iv), (a)(3)(v), and (c)(3). Adults and children 6 years of age and older: Use once a day after brushing your teeth with a toothpaste. Vigorously swish 10 milliliters of rinse between your teeth for 1 minute and then spit out. Do not swallow the rinse. Do not eat or drink for 30 minutes after rinsing. Instruct children under 12 years of age in good rinsing habits (to minimize swallowing). Supervise children as necessary until capable of using without supervision. Children under 6 years of age: consult a dentist or doctor.

(3) For stannous fluoride treatment rinse products. (i) “Use immediately after preparing the rinse.” (ii) For powder or effervescent tablets used to prepare treatment rinses. “Do not use as a rinse until all the” (select one of the following: “powder” or “tablet”) “has dissolved.”

(4) For anticaries preventive treatment gel products. Adults and children 6 years of age and older: Use once a day after brushing your teeth with a toothpaste. Apply the gel to your teeth and brush thoroughly. Allow the gel to remain on your teeth for 1 minute and then spit out. Do not swallow the gel. Do not eat or drink for 30 minutes after brushing. Instruct children under 12 years of age in the use of this product (to minimize swallowing). Supervise children as necessary until capable of using without supervision. Children under 6 years of age: consult a dentist or doctor.

(5) For all concentrated treatment rinse solutions, powders, and effervescent tablets. The following statement shall appear as the first statement under directions: “Do not use before mixing with water.”

(e) Additional labeling statements for anticaries drug products. The following statements need not appear under warnings, but are required to appear on the label of anticaries drug products as applicable.

(1) For all preventive treatment gels. “This is a(n)” (select one or both of the following: “anticavity” or “fluoride”) “preventive treatment gel, not a toothpaste. Read directions carefully before using.”

(2) For all stannous fluoride treatment rinse, preventive treatment gel, and dentifrice products. “This product may produce surface staining of the teeth. Adequate toothbrushing may prevent these stains which are not harmful or
permanent and may be removed by your dentist.”

(f) Optional additional labeling statements—(1) For fluoride treatment rinses and preventive treatment gels. The following labeling statement may appear in the required boxed area designated “APPROVED USES”: “The combined daily use of a fluoride preventive treatment” (select one of the following: “rinse” or “gel”) “and a fluoride toothpaste can help reduce the incidence of dental cavities.”

(2) For dentifrice products containing 1,500 ppm theoretical total fluoride. “Adults and children over 6 years of age may wish to use this extra-strength fluoride dentifrice if they reside in a nonfluoridated area or if they have a greater tendency to develop cavities.”


§ 355.55 Principal display panel of all fluoride rinse drug products.

In addition to the statement of identity required in §355.50, the following statement shall be prominently placed on the principal display panel: “IMPORTANT: Read directions for proper use.”

§ 355.60 Professional labeling.

(a) The labeling for anticaries fluoride treatment rinses identified in §355.10(a)(3) and (c)(3) that are specially formulated so they may be swallowed (fluoride supplements) and are provided to health professionals (but not to the general public) may contain the following additional dosage information: Children 3 to under 14 years of age: As a supplement in areas where the water supply is nonfluoridated (less than 0.3 parts per million (ppm)), clean the teeth with a toothpaste and rinse with 5 milliliters (mL) of 0.02 percent or 10 mL of 0.01 percent fluoride ion rinse daily, then swallow. When the water supply contains 0.3 to 0.7 ppm fluoride ion, reduce the dose to 2.5 mL of 0.02 percent or 5 mL of 0.01 percent fluoride ion rinse daily.

(b) The labeling for products marketed to health to health professionals in package sizes larger than those specified in §355.20 shall include the statements: “For Professional Office Use Only” and “This product is not intended for home or unsupervised consumer use.”

Subpart D—Testing Procedures

§ 355.70 Testing procedures for fluoride dentifrice drug products.

(a) A fluoride dentifrice drug product shall meet the biological test requirements for animal caries reduction and one of the following tests: Enamel solubility reduction or fluoride enamel uptake. The testing procedures for these biological tests are labeled Biological Testing Procedures for Fluoride Dentifrices; these testing procedures are on file under Docket No. 80N–0042 in the Dockets Management Branch (HFA–305), Food and Drug Administration, rm. 1–23, 12420 Parklawn Dr., Rockville, MD 20857, and are available on request to that office.

(b) The United States Pharmacopeia fluoride dentifrice reference standards along with reference standard stability profiles (total fluoride, available fluoride ion, pH, and specific gravity) required to be used in the biological tests are available to any purchaser upon written request to the United States Pharmacopeial Convention, Inc., 1260 Twinbrook Parkway, Rockville, MD 20852.

(c) Alternative testing procedures may be used. Any proposed modification or alternative testing procedures shall be submitted as a petition in accord with §10.30 of this chapter. The petition should contain data to support the modification or data demonstrating that an alternative testing procedure provides results of equivalent accuracy. All information submitted will be subjected to the disclosure rules in part 20 of this chapter.

PART 357—MISCELLANEOUS INTERNAL DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A [Reserved]

Subpart B—Anthelmintic Drug Products

Sec.
357.101 Scope.
357.103 Definition.
357.110 Anthelmintic active ingredient.
§ 357.150 Labeling of anthelmintic drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “pinworm treatment.”

(b) Indication. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indication,” the following: “For the treatment of pinworms.” Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

1. “Abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headache, or dizziness sometimes occur after taking this drug. If any of these conditions persist consult a doctor.”

2. “If you are pregnant or have liver disease, do not take this product unless directed by a doctor.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

1. Adults, children 12 years of age and over, and children 2 years to under 12 years of age: Oral dosage is a single dose of 5 milligrams of pyrantel base per pound, or 11 milligrams per kilogram, of body weight not to exceed 1 gram. Dosing information should be converted to easily understood directions for the consumer using the following dosage schedule:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Dosage (taken as a single dose)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Less than 25 pounds or under 2 years old</td>
<td>Do not use unless directed by a doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 to 37 pounds</td>
<td>125 milligrams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 to 62 pounds</td>
<td>250 milligrams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63 to 87 pounds</td>
<td>375 milligrams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88 to 112 pounds</td>
<td>500 milligrams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113 to 137 pounds</td>
<td>625 milligrams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138 to 162 pounds</td>
<td>750 milligrams.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 357.152 Package inserts for anthelmintic drug products.

The labeling of the product contains a consumer package insert which includes the following information:

(a) A discussion of the symptoms suggestive of pinworm infestation, including a statement that pinworms must be visually identified before taking this medication.

(b) A detailed description of how to find and identify the pinworm.

(c) A commentary on the life cycle of the pinworm.

(d) A commentary on the ways in which pinworms may be spread from person to person and hygienic procedures to follow to avoid such spreading.

(e) The appropriate labeling information contained in § 357.150

(2) “Read package insert carefully before taking this medication. Take only according to directions and do not exceed the recommended dosage unless directed by a doctor. Medication should only be taken on time as a single dose; do not repeat treatment unless directed by a doctor. When one individual in a household has pinworms, the entire household should be treated unless otherwise advised. See Warnings. If any worms other than pinworms are present before or after treatment, consult a doctor. If any symptoms or pinworms are still present after treatment, consult a doctor.”

(3) “This product can be taken any time of day, with or without meals. It may be taken alone or with milk or fruit juice. Use of a laxative is not necessary prior to, during, or after medication.”

(e) Optional wording. The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.

[51 FR 27759, Aug. 1, 1986, as amended at 52 FR 2515, Jan 23, 1987]

§ 357.180 Professional labeling.

The labeling provided to health professionals (but not to the general public) may contain an additional indication: “For the treatment of common roundworm infestation.”

Subpart C—Cholecystokinetic Drug Products

§ 357.201 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter cholecystokinetic drug product in a form suitable for oral administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions in this subpart in addition to each of the general conditions established in § 330.1.

(b) References in this subpart to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

[48 FR 27005, June 10, 1983]

§ 357.203 Definition.

As used in this subpart:

Cholecystokinetic drug product. A drug product that causes contraction of the gallbladder and is used during the course of diagnostic gallbladder studies (cholecystography).

§ 357.210 Cholecystokinetic active ingredients.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following when used within the specified concentration and dosage form established for each ingredient:

(a) 50-percent aqueous emulsion of corn oil.

(b) Hydrogenated soybean oil in a suitable, water-dispersible powder. The hydrogenated soybean oil is food-grade, partially hydrogenated with a melting
§ 357.250 Labeling of cholecystokinetic drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a ‘‘gallbladder diagnostic agent.’’

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading ‘‘Indications,’’ the following: ‘‘For the contraction of the gallbladder during diagnostic gallbladder studies.’’ Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in this paragraph (b), may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2), subject to the provisions of section 502 of the act relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. [Reserved]

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following statements under the heading ‘‘Directions’’:

(1) ‘‘Take only when instructed by a doctor.’’

(2) ‘‘For products containing 50-percent aqueous emulsion of corn oil.‘‘

(i) ‘‘Shake well before using.’’

(ii) Oral dosage is 60 milliliters 20 minutes before diagnostic gallbladder x-ray or as directed by a doctor.

(3) ‘‘For products containing hydrogenated soybean oil. Oral dosage is 12.4 grams in a suitable, water-dispersible powder in 2 to 3 ounces of water. Stir briskly to prepare a suspension before using. Drink 20 minutes before diagnostic gallbladder x-ray or as directed by a doctor.

(e) The word ‘‘physician’’ may be substituted for the word ‘‘doctor’’ in any of the labeling statements in this section.


§ 357.280 Professional labeling.

The labeling provided to health professionals (but not to the general public) may contain the following information for ingredients identified in §357.210: ‘‘Indication. ‘‘For visualization of biliary ducts during cholecystography.’’

[54 FR 8321, Feb. 28, 1989]

Subparts D–H [Reserved]

Subpart I—Deodorant Drug Products for Internal Use

SOURCE: 55 FR 19865, May 11, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

§ 357.801 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter deodorant drug product for internal use in a form suitable for oral administration is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each condition in this subpart and each general condition established in §330.1 of this chapter.

(b) References in this subpart to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 357.803 Definitions.

As used in this subpart:

(a) Colostomy. An external operative opening of the colon.

(b) Deodorant for internal use. An ingredient taken internally to reduce odors arising from conditions such as colostomies, ileostomies, or fecal incontinence.

(c) Ileostomy. An external operative opening from the ileum.

(d) Incontinence. An inability to retain urine or feces.
§ 357.810 Active ingredients for deodorant drug products for internal use.

The active ingredient of the product consists of either of the following when used within the dosage limits established for each ingredient in § 357.850(d):

(a) Bismuth subgallate.

(b) Chlorophyllin copper complex.

§ 357.850 Labeling of deodorant drug products for internal use.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “deodorant for internal use” or as a “colostomy or ileostomy deodorant.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” any of the phrases listed in paragraph (b) of this section as appropriate. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in paragraph (b) of this section may also be used, as provided in § 330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) For products containing bismuth subgallate identified in § 357.810(a). “An aid to reduce odor from a colostomy or ileostomy.”

(2) For products containing chlorophyllin copper complex identified in § 357.810(b). (i) “An aid to reduce odor from a colostomy or ileostomy.”

(ii) “An aid to reduce fecal odor due to incontinence.”

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”: (1) For products containing chlorophyllin copper complex identified in § 357.810(b). (i) “If cramps or diarrhea occurs, reduce the dosage. If symptoms persist, consult your doctor.”

(ii) The warning required by § 330.1(g) of this chapter concerning overdose is not required on products containing chlorophyllin copper complex identified in § 357.810(b).

(2) [Reserved]

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions.”

(1) For products containing bismuth subgallate identified in § 357.810(a). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 200 to 400 milligrams up to 4 times daily. Children under 12 years of age: consult a doctor.

(2) For products containing chlorophyllin copper complex identified in § 357.810(b). Adults and children 12 years of age and over: Oral dosage is 100 to 200 milligrams daily in divided doses as required. If odor is not controlled, take up to an additional 100 milligrams daily in divided doses as required. The smallest effective dose should be used. Do not exceed 300 milligrams daily. Children under 12 years of age: consult a doctor.

PART 358—MISCELLANEOUS EXTERNAL DRUG PRODUCTS FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER HUMAN USE

Subpart A [Reserved]

Subpart B—Wart Remover Drug Products

Sec. 358.101 Scope.
358.103 Definitions.
358.110 Wart remover active ingredients.
358.150 Labeling of wart remover drug products.

Subparts C-E [Reserved]

Subpart F—Corn and Callus Remover Drug Products

358.501 Scope.
358.503 Definitions.
358.510 Corn and callus remover active ingredients.
358.550 Labeling of corn and callus remover drug products.

Subpart G—Pediculicide Drug Products

358.601 Scope.
358.603 Definition.
358.610 Pediculicide active ingredients.
358.650 Labeling of pediculicide drug products.
Subpart H—Drug Products for the Control of Dandruff, Seborrheic Dermatitis, and Psoriasis

§ 358.701 Scope.

§ 358.703 Definitions.

§ 358.710 Active ingredients for the control of dandruff, seborrheic dermatitis, or psoriasis.

§ 358.720 Permitted combinations of active ingredients.

§ 358.750 Labeling of drug products for the control of dandruff, seborrheic dermatitis, or psoriasis.

Subpart A [Reserved]

Subpart B—Wart Remover Drug Products

§ 358.101 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter wart remover drug product in a form suitable for topical application is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions in this subpart and each of the general conditions established in § 330.1 of this chapter.

(b) References in this subpart to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 358.103 Definitions.

As used in this subpart:

(a) Wart remover drug product. A topical agent used for the removal of common or plantar warts.

(b) Collodion-like vehicle. A solution containing pyroxylin (nitrocellulose) in an appropriate nonaqueous solvent that leaves a transparent cohesive film when applied to the skin in a thin layer.

(c) Plaster vehicle. A fabric, plastic, or other suitable backing material in which medication is usually incorporated for topical application to the skin.

§ 358.110 Wart remover active ingredients.

The product consists of any of the following active ingredients within the specified concentration and in the dosage form established for each ingredient:

(a) Salicylic acid 12 to 40 percent in a plaster vehicle.

(b) Salicylic acid 5 to 17 percent in a collodion-like vehicle.

(c) Salicylic acid 15 percent in a karaya gum, glycol plaster vehicle.

§ 358.150 Labeling of wart remover drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “wart remover.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” any of the phrases listed in paragraph (b) of this section. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established in this chapter, subject to the provisions of § 330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, may also be used, as provided in § 330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) “For the removal of common warts. The common wart is easily recognized by the rough ‘cauliflower-like’ appearance of the surface.”

(2) “For the removal of plantar warts on the bottom of the foot. The plantar wart is recognized by its location only on the bottom of the foot, its tenderness, and the interruption of the footprint pattern.”

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in § 358.110.

(i) “For external use only.”

(ii) “Do not use this product on irritated skin, on any area that is infected or reddened, if you are diabetic, or if you have poor blood circulation.”

(iii) “If discomfort persists, see your doctor.”

(iv) “Do not use on moles, birthmarks, warts with hair growing from them, genital warts, or warts on the face or mucous membranes.”
(2) For any product formulated in a flammable vehicle. (i) The labeling should contain an appropriate flammability signal word, e.g., “extremely flammable,” “flammable,” “combustible,” consistent with 16 CFR 1500.3(b)(10).

(ii) “Keep away from fire or flame.”

(iii) For any product formulated in a volatile vehicle. “Cap bottle tightly and store at room temperature away from heat.”

(4) For any product formulated in a colloid-like vehicle. (i) “If product gets into the eye, flush with water for 15 minutes.”

(ii) “Avoid inhaling vapors.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For products containing salicylic acid identified in §358.110(a). “Wash affected area.” (Optional: “May soak wart in warm water for 5 minutes.”) “Dry area thoroughly.” (If appropriate: “Cut plaster to fit wart.”) “Apply medicated plaster. Repeat procedure every 48 hours as needed (until wart is removed) for up to 12 weeks.”

(2) For products containing salicylic acid identified in §358.110(b). “Wash affected area.” (Optional: “May soak wart in warm water for 5 minutes.”) “Dry area thoroughly. Apply” (select one of the following, as appropriate: “one drop” or “small amount”) “at a time with” (select one of the following, as appropriate: “applicator” or “brush”) “to sufficiently cover each wart. Let dry. Repeat this procedure once or twice daily as needed (until wart is removed) for up to 12 weeks.”

(3) For products containing salicylic acid identified in §358.110(c). “Wash affected area.” (Optional: “May soak wart in warm water for 5 minutes.”) “Dry area thoroughly. Gently smooth wart surface with emery file supplied.” (If appropriate: “Cut plaster to fit wart.”) “Apply a drop of warm water to the wart, keeping the surrounding skin dry. Apply medicated plaster at bedtime and leave in place for at least 8 hours. In the morning, remove plaster and discard. Repeat procedure every 24 hours as needed (until wart is removed) for up to 12 weeks.”

(e) The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.

(f) The phrase “or podiatrist” may be used in addition to the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section when a product is labeled with the indication identified in §358.150(b)(2).

21 CFR Ch. I (4-1-02 Edition)

Subparts C-E [Reserved]

Subpart F—Corn and Callus Remover Drug Products

SOURCE: 55 FR 33261, Aug. 14, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

§ 358.501 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter corn and callus remover drug product in a form suitable for topical application is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each of the conditions in this subpart and each of the general conditions established in §301 of this chapter.

(b) References in this subpart to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 358.503 Definitions.

As used in this subpart:

(a) Corn and callus remover drug product. A topical agent used for the removal of corns and calluses.

(b) Colloid-like vehicle. A solution containing pyroxylin (nitrocellulose) in an appropriate nonaqueous solvent that leaves a transparent cohesive film when applied to the skin in a thin layer.

(c) Plaster vehicle. A fabric, plastic, or other suitable backing material in which medication is usually incorporated for topical application to the skin.
§ 358.550 Labeling of corn and callus remover drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “corn and callus remover.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the phrase listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section and may contain the additional phrase listed in paragraph (b)(2) of this section. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established in paragraph (b) of this section, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) “For the removal of corns and calluses.”

(2) In addition to the information identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the labeling of the product may contain the following statement: “Relieves pain by removing corns and calluses.”

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) For products containing salicylic acid identified in §358.510(a). “Wash affected area and dry thoroughly.” (If appropriate: “Cut plasters to fit corn/callus.”) “Apply medicated plaster. After 48 hours remove the medicated plaster. Repeat this procedure every 48 hours as needed for up to 14 days (until corn/callus is removed).” (Optional: “May soak corn/callus in warm water for 5 minutes to assist in removal.”)

(2) For products containing salicylic acid identified in §358.510(b). “Wash affected area and dry thoroughly. Apply” (select one of the following, as appropriate: “one drop” or “small amount”) “at a time with” (select one of the following, as appropriate: “applicator” or “brush”) “to sufficiently cover each corn/callus. Let dry. Repeat this procedure once or twice daily as needed for up to 14 days (until corn/callus is removed).” (Optional: “May soak corn/callus in warm water for 5 minutes to assist in removal.”)

(e) The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.


Subpart G—Pediculicide Drug Products

SOURCE: 58 FR 65455, Dec. 14, 1993, unless otherwise noted.
§ 358.601 Scope.

(a) An over-the-counter pediculicide drug product in a form suitable for topical application is generally recognized as safe and effective and is not misbranded if it meets each condition in this subpart and each general condition established in §330.1 of this chapter.

(b) References in this subpart to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to chapter I of title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 358.603 Definition.

As used in this subpart:

Pediculicide drug product. A drug product for the treatment of head, pubic (crab), and body lice.

§ 358.610 Pediculicide active ingredients.

The active ingredients of the product consist of the combination of pyrethrum extract (providing a concentration of pyrethrins of 0.17 to 0.33 percent) with piperonyl butoxide (2 to 4 percent) in a nonaerosol dosage formulation.

§ 358.650 Labeling of pediculicide drug products.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product as a “pediculicide (lice treatment)” or “lice treatment.”

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the following: “For the treatment of head, pubic (crab), and body lice.” Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in paragraph (b) of this section, may also be used, as provided in §330.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) “Use with caution on persons allergic to ragweed.”

(2) “For external use only. Do not use near the eyes or permit contact with mucous membranes, such as inside the nose, mouth, or vagina, as irritation may occur. Keep out of eyes when rinsing hair. Adults and children: Close eyes tightly and do not open eyes until product is rinsed out. Also, protect children’s eyes with washcloth, towel or other suitable material, or by a similar method. If product gets into the eyes, immediately flush with water.”

(3) “If skin irritation or infection is present or develops, discontinue use and consult a doctor. Consult a doctor if infestation of eyebrows or eyelashes occurs.”

(4) The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the warning statements in this paragraph.

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions”:

(1) For all products. “Important: Read warnings before using.” [statement in boldface type]

(2) For nonshampoo products. “Apply to affected area until all the hair is thoroughly wet with product. Allow product to remain on area for 10 minutes but no longer. Wash area thoroughly with warm water and soap or shampoo. A fine-toothed comb or a special lice/nit removing comb may be used to help remove dead lice or their eggs (nits) from hair. A second treatment must be done in 7 to 10 days to kill any newly hatched lice.”

(3) For products formulated for use as a shampoo. “Apply to affected area until all the hair is thoroughly wet with product. Allow product to remain on area for 10 minutes but no longer. Add sufficient warm water to form a lather and shampoo as usual. Rinse thoroughly. A fine-toothed comb or a special lice/nit removing comb may be used to help remove dead lice or their eggs (nits) from hair. A second treatment must be done in 7 to 10 days to kill any newly hatched lice.”

[63 FR 43303, Aug. 13, 1998]
Other required statements.

1. "Head Lice: Head lice live on the scalp and lay small white eggs (nits) on the hair shaft close to the scalp. The nits are most easily found on the nape of the neck or behind the ears. All personal headgear, scarfs, coats, and bed linen should be disinfected by machine washing in hot water and drying, using the hot cycle of a dryer for at least 20 minutes. Personal articles of clothing or bedding that cannot be washed may be dry-cleaned, sealed in a plastic bag for a period of about 2 weeks, or sprayed with a product specifically designed for this purpose. Personal combs and brushes may be disinfected by soaking in hot water (above 130 °F) for 5 to 10 minutes. Thorough vacuuming of rooms inhabited by infected patients is recommended."

2. "Pubic (Crab) Lice: Pubic lice may be transmitted by sexual contact; therefore, sexual partners should be treated simultaneously to avoid re-infestation. The lice are very small and look almost like brown or grey dots on the skin. Pubic lice usually cause intense itching and lay small white eggs (nits) on the hair shaft generally close to the skin surface. In hairy individuals, pubic lice may be present on the short hairs of the thighs and trunk, underarms, and occasionally on the beard and mustache. Underwear should be disinfected by machine washing in hot water; then drying, using the hot cycle for at least 20 minutes."

3. "Body Lice: Body lice and their eggs are generally found in the seams of clothing, particularly in the waistline and armpit area. They move to the skin to feed, then return to the seams of the clothing where they lay their eggs. Clothing worn and not laundered before treatment should be disinfected by the same procedure as described for head lice, except that sealing clothing in a plastic bag is not recommended for body lice because the nits (eggs) from these lice can remain dormant for a period of up to 30 days."
§ 358.710 Active ingredients for the control of dandruff, seborrheic dermatitis, or psoriasis.

The active ingredient of the product consists of any of the following within the specified concentration established for each ingredient:

(a) Active ingredients for the control of dandruff. (1) Coal tar, 0.5 to 5 percent. When a coal tar solution, derivative, or fraction is used as the source of the coal tar, the labeling shall specify the identity and concentration of the coal tar source used and the concentration of the coal tar present in the final product.

(b) Active ingredients for the control of seborrheic dermatitis. (1) Coal tar, 0.5 to 5 percent. When a coal tar solution, derivative, or fraction is used as the source of the coal tar, the labeling shall specify the identity and concentration of the coal tar source used and the concentration of the coal tar present in the final product.

(2) Pyrithione zinc, 0.3 to 2 percent when formulated to be applied and then washed off after brief exposure.

(3) Pyrithione zinc, 0.1 to 0.25 percent when formulated to be applied and left on the skin or scalp.

(4) Salicylic acid, 1.8 to 3 percent.

(5) Selenium sulfide, 1 percent.

(6) Selenium sulfide, micronized, 0.6 percent.

(7) Sulfur, 2 to 5 percent.

(2) Pyrithione zinc, 0.95 to 2 percent when formulated to be applied and then washed off after brief exposure.

(3) Pyrithione zinc, 0.1 to 0.25 percent when formulated to be applied and left on the skin or scalp.

(4) Salicylic acid, 1.8 to 3 percent.

(5) Selenium sulfide, 1 percent.

§ 358.720 Permitted combinations of active ingredients.

Sulfur identified in §358.710(a) (4) may be combined with sulfur identified in §358.710(a)(6) provided each ingredient is present within the established concentration and the product is labeled for the control of dandruff.

§ 358.750 Labeling of drug products for the control of dandruff, seborrheic dermatitis, or psoriasis.

(a) Statement of identity. The labeling of the product contains the established name of the drug, if any, and identifies the product with one or more of the following, as appropriate:

(1) “Dandruff (insert product form)” or “antidandruff (insert product form)”.

(2) “Seborrheic dermatitis (insert product form)”.

(3) “Psoriasis (insert product form)”.

(b) Indications. The labeling of the product states, under the heading “Indications,” the phrase listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section and may contain any of the terms listed in paragraph (b)(2) or (b)(3) of this section. Other truthful and nonmisleading statements, describing only the indications for use that have been established and listed in paragraph (b) of this section, may also be used, as provided in §339.1(c)(2) of this chapter, subject to the provisions of section 502 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) relating to misbranding and the prohibition in section 301(d) of the act against the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of unapproved new drugs in violation of section 505(a) of the act.

(1) (“For relief of” or “Controls”) “the symptoms of” (select one or more of the following, as appropriate: “dandruff,” “seborrheic dermatitis,” and/or “psoriasis.”)

(2) The following terms or phrases may be used in place of or in addition to the words “For the relief of” or “Controls” in the indications in paragraph (b)(1) of this section: “fights,” “reduces,” “helps eliminate,” “helps stop,” “controls recurrence of,” “fights
recurrence of,” “helps prevent recurrence of,” “helps eliminate recurrence of,” “helps stop recurrence of.”

(3) The following terms may be used in place of the words “the symptoms of” in the indications in paragraph (b)(1) of this section: (“skin” and/or “scalp,” as appropriate) (select one or more of the following: “itching,” “irritation,” “redness,” “flaking,” “scaling,” ) “associated with.”

(c) Warnings. The labeling of the product contains the following warnings under the heading “Warnings”:

(1) For products containing any ingredient identified in §358.710. (i) “For external use only.”

(ii) “Avoid contact with the eyes. If contact occurs, rinse eyes thoroughly with water.”

(iii) “If condition worsens or does not improve after regular use of this product as directed, consult a doctor.”

(2) For any product containing coal tar identified in §358.710(a), (b), or (c). (i) “Use caution in exposing skin to sunlight after applying this product. It may increase your tendency to sunburn for up to 24 hours after application.”

(ii) “Do not use for prolonged periods without consulting a doctor.”

(3) For products containing coal tar when formulated to be applied and left on the skin (e.g., creams, ointments, lotions). “Do not use this product in or around the rectum or in the genital area or groin except on the advice of a doctor.”

(4) For products containing coal tar identified in §358.710(c) for the control of psoriasis. “Do not use this product with other forms of psoriasis therapy such as ultraviolet radiation or prescription drugs unless directed to do so by a doctor.”

(5) For products containing any ingredient identified in §358.710(b) or (c) for the control of seborrheic dermatitis or psoriasis. “If condition covers a large area of the body, consult your doctor before using this product.”

(d) Directions. The labeling of the product contains the following information under the heading “Directions.” More detailed directions applicable to a particular product formulation may also be included.

(1) For products containing active ingredients for the control of dandruff, seborrheic dermatitis, or psoriasis when formulated to be applied and then washed off after brief (a few minutes) exposure (e.g., shampoos, preshampoo rinses, postshampoo rinses). “For best results use at least twice a week or as directed by a doctor.”

(2) For products containing active ingredients for the control of dandruff, seborrheic dermatitis, or psoriasis when formulated so as to be applied and left on the skin or scalp (e.g., creams, ointments, lotions, hairgrooms). “Apply to affected areas one to four times daily or as directed by a doctor.”

(3) For products containing active ingredients for the control of seborrheic dermatitis or psoriasis of the skin when formulated as soaps. “Use on affected areas in place of your regular soap.”

(e) The word “physician” may be substituted for the word “doctor” in any of the labeling statements in this section.

PART 361—PRESCRIPTION DRUGS FOR HUMAN USE GENERALLY RECOGNIZED AS SAFE AND EFFECTIVE AND NOT MISBRANDED: DRUGS USED IN RESEARCH


§ 361.1 Radioactive drugs for certain research uses.

(a) Radioactive drugs (as defined in §319.3(n) of this chapter) are generally recognized as safe and effective when administered, under the conditions set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, to human research subjects during the course of a research project intended to obtain basic information regarding the metabolism (including kinetics, distribution, and localization) of a radioactively labeled drug or regarding human physiology, pathophysiology, or biochemistry, but not intended for immediate therapeutic, diagnostic, or similar purposes or to determine the safety and effectiveness of the drug in humans for such purposes (i.e., to carry out a clinical trial). Certain basic research studies, e.g., studies to determine whether a drug localizes in a particular organ or fluid space and to describe the kinetics of that localization,
§361.1

may have eventual therapeutic or diagnostic implications, but the initial studies are considered to be basic research within the meaning of this section.

(b) The conditions under which use of radioactive drugs for research are considered safe and effective are:

(1) Approval by Radioactive Drug Research Committee. A Radioactive Drug Research Committee, composed and approved by the Food and Drug Administration in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, has determined, in accordance with the standards set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, that:

(i) The pharmacological dose is within the limits set forth in paragraph (b)(2) of this section;

(ii) The radiation dose is within the limits set forth in paragraph (b)(3) of this section;

(iii) The radiation exposure is justified by the quality of the study being undertaken and the importance of the information it seeks to obtain;

(iv) The study meets the other requirements set forth in paragraph (d) of this section regarding qualifications of the investigator, proper licensure for handling radioactive materials, selection and consent of research subjects, quality of radioactive drugs used, research protocol design, reporting of adverse reactions, and approval by an appropriate Institutional Review Committee; and

(v) The use of the radioactive drug in human subjects has the approval of the Radioactive Drug Research Committee.

(2) Limit on pharmacological dose. The amount of active ingredient or combination of active ingredients to be administered shall be known not to cause any clinically detectable pharmacological effect in human beings. If the same active ingredients (exclusive of the radionuclide) are to be administered simultaneously, e.g., under a “Investigational New Drug Application” or for a therapeutic use in accordance with labeling for a drug approved under part 314 of this chapter, the total amount of active ingredients including the radionuclide shall be known not to exceed the dose limitations applicable to the separate administration of the active ingredients excluding the radionuclide.

(3) Limit on radiation dose. The amount of radioactive material to be administered shall be such that the subject receives the smallest radiation dose with which it is practical to perform the study without jeopardizing the benefits to be obtained from the study.

(i) Under no circumstances may the radiation dose to an adult research subject from a single study or cumulatively from a number of studies conducted within 1 year be generally recognized as safe if such dose exceeds the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ</th>
<th>Single dose limit</th>
<th>Annual and total dose limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Whole body, active blood-forming organs, lens of the eye, and gonads:</td>
<td>3 Rems</td>
<td>5 Rems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other organs:</td>
<td>5 Rems</td>
<td>15 Rems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(ii) For a research subject under 18 years of age at his last birthday, the radiation dose shall not exceed 10 percent of that set forth in paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section.

(iii) All radioactive material included in the drug either as essential material or as a significant contaminant or impurity shall be included when determining the total radiation doses and dose commitments. Radiation doses from x-ray procedures that are part of the research study (i.e., would not have occurred but for the study) shall also be included. The possibility of followup studies shall be considered for inclusion in the dose calculations.

(iv) Numerical definitions of dose shall be based on an absorbed fraction method of radiation absorbed dose calculation, such as the system set forth by the Medical Internal Radiation Dose Committee of the Society of Nuclear Medicine, or the system set forth by the International Commission on Radiological Protection.

(c) A Radioactive Drug Research Committee, in order to comply with paragraph (b)(1) of this section, shall be composed, shall function, and shall obtain and maintain approval of the Food and Drug Administration in conformity with the following:
(1) Membership. A Radioactive Drug Research Committee shall consist of at least five individuals. Each committee shall include the following three individuals: (i) A physician recognized as a specialist in nuclear medicine, (ii) a person qualified by training and experience to formulate radioactive drugs, and (iii) a person with special competence in radiation safety and radiation dosimetry. The remainder of the committee shall consist of individuals qualified in various disciplines pertinent to the field of nuclear medicine (e.g., radiology, internal medicine, clinical pathology, hematology, endocrinology, radiation therapy, radiation physics, radiation biophysics, health physics, and radiopharmacy). Membership shall be sufficiently diverse to permit expert review of the technical and scientific aspects of proposals submitted to the committee. The addition of consultants in other pertinent medical disciplines is encouraged. A Radioactive Drug Research Committee shall be either associated with a medical institution operated for care of patients and with sufficient scientific expertise to allow for selection of committee members from its faculty, or with a committee established by a State authority to provide advice on radiation health matters. Joint committees involving more than one medical institution may modify any of the foregoing requirements in a particular situation where alternative factors provide substantially the same composition and association.

(2) Function. Each Radioactive Drug Research Committee shall select a chairman, who shall sign all applications, minutes, and reports of the committee. Each committee shall meet at least once per quarter in which research activity has been authorized or conducted. A quorum consisting of more than 50 percent of the membership must be present with appropriate representation of the required fields of specialization. Minutes shall be kept and shall include the numerical results of votes on protocols involving use in human subjects. No member shall vote on a protocol in which he is an investigator.

(3) Reports. Each Radioactive Drug Research Committee shall submit an annual report on or before January 31 of each year to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, HFD–160, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. The annual report shall include the names and qualifications of the members of, and of any consultants used by, the Radioactive Drug Research Committee, and, for each study conducted during the preceding year, a summary of information presented in the following format:

**REPORT ON RESEARCH USE OF RADIOACTIVE DRUG**

1. Title of the research project.
2. Brief description of the purpose of the research project.
3. Name of the investigator responsible.
4. Pharmacological dose:
   a. Active ingredients.
   b. Maximum amount administered per subject.
5. Name of the radionuclide(s) used, including any present, as significant contaminants or impurities.
6. Radiation absorbed dose. Provide the maximum dose commitment to the whole body and each organ specified in 21 CFR 361.1(b)(3)(i) that was received by a representative subject and the calculations or references that were used to estimate these maximum dose commitments. The report shall include the dose contribution of both the administered radionuclide(s) and any X-ray procedures associated with the study. If the study elicits data on the uptake or excretion of the radioactive drug pertinent to the estimation of dose commitment, report the mean value and range of values. For each subject provide:
   (a) Age, sex, and approximate weight.
   (b) Total activity of each radionuclide administered for each radioactive drug used in the study. Report each X-ray procedure used in conjunction with the study.
   (c) If the subject has participated in other radioactive drug research studies, report the name of the radioactive drug used in these other studies, the date of administration, and the total activity of each radionuclide administered. If any X-ray procedures were used, identify the X-ray procedure(s) and include an estimate of the absorbed radiation doses.
   (d) If more than one administration of a radioactive drug per subject, cumulative radiation dose and dose commitment, expressed as whole body, active blood-forming organs,
§361.1  l

lens of the eye, gonads, and other organ
doses from the administered radionuclides.

7. A claim of confidentiality, if any.

NOTE: Contents of this report are available
for public disclosure unless confidentiality is
requested by the investigator and it is ade-
quately shown by the investigator that the
report constitutes a trade secret or confiden-
tial commercial information as defined in 21
CFR 20.61.

Investigator
Chairman, Radioactive Drug
Research Committee

At any time a proposal is approved
which involves exposure either of more
than 30 research subjects, or of any re-
search subject under 18 years of age,
the committee shall immediately sub-
mit to the Food and Drug Administra-
tion a special summary of information
in the format shown in this paragraph.
Contents of these reports are available
for public disclosure, unless confiden-
tiality is requested by the investigator and it is ade-
quately shown by the in-
vestigator that the report constitutes a
trade secret or confidential com-
mercial information as defined in §20.61 of
this chapter.

(4) Approval. Each Radioactive Drug
Research Committee shall be specifi-
cally approved by the Center for Drug
Evaluation and Research of the Food
and Drug Administration. Applications
shall be submitted to the Food and
Drug Administration, Center for Drug
Evaluation and Research, HFD–160, 5600
Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857, and
shall contain the names and qualifica-
tions of the members of the committee,
and a statement that the committee
agrees to comply with the require-
ments set forth in this section. Ap-
proval shall be based upon an assess-
ment of the qualifications of the mem-
ers of the committee, and the assur-
ance that all necessary fields of exper-
tise are covered. Approval of a com-
mittee may be withdrawn at any time
for failure of the committee to comply
with any of the requirements of this
section. Approval of a committee shall
remain effective unless and until the
FDA withdraws such approval. Changes
in membership and applications for
new members shall be submitted to the
Food and Drug Administration as soon
as, or before, vacancies occur on the
committee.

(5) Monitoring. The Food and Drug
Administration shall conduct periodic
reviews of approved committees. Moni-
toring of the activities of the com-
mittee shall be conducted through re-
view of its annual report, through re-
view of minutes and full protocols for
certain studies, and through on-site in-
spections.

(d) In making the determination re-
quired in paragraph (b)(1) of this sec-
tion, a Radioactive Drug Research
Committee shall consider the following
requirements and assure that each is
met:

(1) Radiation dose to subjects. To as-
sure that the radiation dose to re-
search subjects is as low as practicable
to perform the study and meet the cri-
teria of §361.1(b)(3), the Radioactive
Drug Research Committee shall require
that:

(i) The investigator provide absorbed
dose calculations based on biologic dis-
tribution data available from published
literature or from other valid studies.

(ii) The investigator provide for an
acceptable method of radioassay of the
radioactive drug prior to its use to as-
sure that the dose calculations actu-
ally reflect the administered dose.

(iii) The radioactive drug chosen for
the study has that combination of halflife, types of radiations, radiation en-
ergy, metabolism, chemical properties,
etc., which results in the lowest dose to
the whole body or specific organs with
which it is possible to obtain the nec-
essary information.

(iv) The investigator utilize adequate
and appropriate instrumentation for
the detection and measurement of the
specific radionuclide.

(2) Pharmacological dosage. To deter-
mine that the amount of active ingre-
dients to be administered does not ex-
ceed the limitations set forth in para-
graph (b)(2) of this section, the com-
mittee shall require that the investi-
gator provide pharmacological dose
calculations based on data available
from published literature or from other
valid human studies.

(3) Qualifications of investigators. Each
investigator shall be qualified by train-
ing and experience to conduct the pro-
posed research studies.
(4) License to handle radioactive materials. The responsible investigator or institutions shall, in the case of reactor-produced isotopes, be licensed by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission or Agreement State to possess and use the specific radionuclides for research use or be a listed investigator under a broad license, or in the case of non-reactor-produced isotopes, be licensed by other appropriate State or local authorities, when required by State or local law, to possess and use the specific radionuclides for research use.

(5) Human research subjects. Each investigator shall select appropriate human subjects and shall obtain the review and approval of an institutional review committee that conforms to the requirements of part 56 of this chapter, and shall obtain the consent of the subjects or their legal representatives in accordance with part 50 of this chapter. The research subjects shall be at least 18 years of age and legally competent. Exceptions are permitted only in those special situations when it can be demonstrated to the committee that the study presents a unique opportunity to gain information not currently available, requires the use of research subjects less than 18 years of age, and is without significant risk to the subject. Studies involving minors shall be supported with review by qualified pediatric consultants to the Radioactive Drug Research Committee. Each female research subject of childbearing potential shall state in writing that she is not pregnant, or, on the basis of a pregnancy test be confirmed as not pregnant, before she may participate in any study.

(6) Quality of radioactive drug. The radioactive drug used in the research study shall meet appropriate chemical, pharmaceutical, radiochemical, and radionuclidic standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity as needed for safety and be of such uniform and reproducible quality as to give significance to the research study conducted. The Radioactive Drug Research Committee shall determine that radioactive materials for parenteral use are prepared in sterile and pyrogen-free form.

(7) Research protocol. No matter how small the amount of radioactivity, no study involving administration of a radioactive drug, as defined in §310.3(n) of this chapter, to research subjects under this section, shall be permitted unless the Radioactive Drug Research Committee concludes, in its judgment, that scientific knowledge and benefit is likely to result from that study. Therefore, the protocol shall be based upon a sound rationale derived from appropriate animal studies or published literature and shall be of sound design such that information of scientific value may result. The radiation dose shall be both sufficient and no greater than necessary to obtain valid measurement. The projected number of subjects shall be sufficient but no greater than necessary for the purpose of the study. The number of subjects shall also reflect the fact that the study is intended to obtain basic research information referred to in paragraph (a) of this section and not intended for immediate therapeutic, diagnostic or similar purposes or to determine the safety and effectiveness of the drug in humans for such purposes (i.e., to carry out a clinical trial).

(8) Adverse reactions. The investigator shall immediately report to the Radioactive Drug Research Committee all adverse effects associated with the use of the radioactive drug in the research study. All adverse reactions probably attributable to the use of the radioactive drug in the research study shall be immediately reported by the Radioactive Drug Research Committee to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, HFD–160, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(9) Approval by an institutional review board. The investigator shall obtain the review and approval of an institutional review board that conforms to the requirements of part 56 of this chapter.

(e) The results of any research conducted pursuant to this section as part of the evaluation of a drug pursuant to part 312 of this chapter shall be included in the submissions required under part 312 of this chapter.

(f) A radioactive drug prepared, packaged, distributed, and primarily intended for use in accordance with the requirements of this section shall be exempt from section 502(f)(1) of the act.
and §§201.5 and 201.100 of this chapter if the packaging, label, and labeling are in compliance with Federal, State, and local law regarding radioactive materials and if the label of the immediate container and shielded container, if any, either separate from or as part of any label and labeling required for radioactive materials by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission or by State or local radiological health authorities bear the following:

(1) The statement “Caution: Federal law prohibits dispensing without prescription”; (2) The statement “To be administered in compliance with the requirements of Federal regulations regarding radioactive drugs for research use (21 CFR 361.1)”;

(3) The established name of the drug, if any;

(4) The established name and quantity of each active ingredient;

(5) The name and half-life of the radionuclide, total quantity of radioactivity in the drug product’s immediate container, and amount of radioactivity per unit volume or unit mass at a designated referenced time;

(6) The route of administration, if it is for the other than oral use;

(7) The net quantity of contents;

(8) An identifying lot or control number from which it is possible to determine the complete manufacturing history of the package of the drug;

(9) The name and address of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor;

(10) The expiration date, if any;

(11) If the drug is intended for parenteral use, a statement as to whether the contents are sterile;

(12) If the drug is for other than oral use, the names of all inactive ingredients, except that:

(i) Trace amounts of harmless substances added solely for individual product identification need not be named.

(ii) If the drug is intended for parenteral use, the quantity or proportion of all inactive ingredients, except that ingredients added to adjust pH or to make the drug isotonic may be declared by name and a statement of their effect; if the vehicle is water for injection, it need not be named. Provided, however, that in the case of containers too small or otherwise unable to accommodate a label with sufficient space to bear all such information, the information required by paragraphs (f) (1) and (12) of this section may be placed on the shielded container only.


EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 67 FR 4907, Feb. 1, 2002, §361.1 was amended in paragraph (f)(1) by removing the phrase “Caution: Federal law prohibits dispensing without prescription” and by adding in its place the phrase “Rx only”, effective Apr. 2, 2002.

PART 369—INTERPRETATIVE STATEMENTS RE WARNINGS ON DRUGS AND DEVICES FOR OVER-THE-COUNTER SALE

Subpart A—Definitions and Interpretations

Sec.

369.1 Purpose of issuance.

369.2 Definitions.

369.3 Warnings required on drugs exempted from prescription-dispensing requirements of section 503(b)(1)(C).

369.4 Warnings suggested for drugs by formal or informal statements of policy.

369.6 [Reserved]

369.7 Warnings required by official compendia.

369.8 Warning statements in relation to conditions for use.

369.9 General warnings re accidental ingestion by children.

369.10 Conspicuousness of warning statements.

Subpart B—Warning and Caution Statements for Drugs

369.20 Drugs: recommended warning and caution statements.

369.21 Drugs: warning and caution statements required by regulations.

369.22 Drugs: warning and caution statements specifically required by law.


SOURCE: 39 FR 11745, Mar. 29, 1974, unless otherwise noted.
§ 369.1 Purpose of issuance.

The warning and caution statements suggested in subparts B and C of this part, for inclusion in the label or labeling of drugs and devices subject to section 502(d) and (f)(2) and other relevant provisions of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act are issued for the purpose of assisting industry in preparing proper labeling for these articles for over-the-counter sale and in meeting the legal requirements of the act that the label or labeling of drugs and devices bear adequate warnings, in such manner and form as are necessary for the protection of users. Only section 502(d) of the act requires use of the specific language included in these suggested warning and caution statements. These suggested warning or caution statements are illustrative of those that may be necessary or desirable. It is the responsibility of the manufacturer, packer, shipper, or distributor in interstate commerce to see that such statements are adequate for compliance with the provisions of the law. Omission of any article from this suggested list does not relieve drugs and devices subject to provisions of the act from bearing adequate warning or caution statements where such statements are necessary or desirable for the protection of the user.

§ 369.2 Definitions.

(a) As used in this part, the term act means the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.
(b) The terms drugs and devices are defined in section 201(g) and (k) of the act.
(c) Official compendia are defined in section 201(j) of the act.

§ 369.3 Warnings required on drugs exempted from prescription-dispensing requirements of section 503(b)(1)(C).

Drugs exempted from prescription-dispensing requirements under section 503(b)(1)(C) of the act are subject to the labeling requirements prescribed in §310.201(a) of this chapter. Although, for convenience, warning and caution statements for a number of the drugs named in §310.201 of this chapter (cross-referenced in the text of this part) are included in subpart B of this part, the inclusion of such drugs in §§369.20, 369.21, 369.22 in no way affects the requirements for compliance with §310.201(a) of this chapter, or the provisions of an effective application pursuant to section 505(b) of the act.

§ 369.4 Warnings suggested for drugs by formal or informal statements of policy.

The warning and caution statements included in subpart B of this part in no way affect any warning statement suggested for such drugs or devices by any statement of policy or interpretation in subchapter C of this chapter.

§ 369.6 [Reserved]

§ 369.7 Warnings required by official compendia.

Any drug included in the official compendia defined by the act shall bear such warning or caution statement as may be required by such compendia, and no statement in subpart B or subpart C of this part is intended to alter, modify, or permit the omission of any such statement required by such compendia.

§ 369.8 Warning statements in relation to conditions for use.

The mention in any warning or caution statement included in subparts A, B, and C of this part, of a disease condition does not imply a finding on the part of the Food and Drug Administration that any drug or device is efficacious in such condition; nor is any drug or device bearing labeling referring to such disease condition precluded from regulatory action under the applicable provisions of the act if such claim is considered to be misbranding.

§ 369.9 General warnings re accidental ingestion by children.

Section 369.20 includes under certain items, but not all medicines, the statement: “Keep this and all medicines out of children’s reach. In case of overdose, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away,” or
§ 369.10

“Keep out of reach of children...” However, in view of the possibility of accidental ingestion of drugs, it is not only suggested but is recommended that one of these statements be used on the label of all drug products.

(64 FR 13296, Mar. 17, 1999)

§ 369.10 Conspicuousness of warning statements.

Necessary warning statements should appear in the labeling prominently and conspicuously as compared to other words, statements, designs, and devices, and in bold type on clearly contrasting background, in order to comply with the provisions of section 502(c) and (f)(2) of the act. The warning statements should be placed in the labeling in juxtaposition with the directions for use and, in any case, should appear on the label when there is sufficient label space in addition to mandatory label information.

Subpart B—Warning and Caution Statements for Drugs

§ 369.20 Drugs; recommended warning and caution statements.

ACETANILID.

Warning—Do not exceed recommended dosage. Overdosage or continued use may result in serious blood disturbances.

ACETOPHENETIDIN CONTAINING PREPARATIONS. (See §201.309 of this chapter.)

Warning—This medication may damage the kidneys when used in large amounts or for a long period of time. Do not take more than the recommended dosage, nor take regularly for longer than 10 days without consulting your physician.

ANESTHETICS FOR EXTERNAL USE (LOCAL ANESTHETICS). (See also §310.201(a)(19) and (23) of this chapter.)

Warning—This medication may damage the kidneys when used in large amounts or for a long period of time. Do not take more than the recommended dosage, nor take regularly for longer than 10 days without consulting your physician.

ANTISEPTICS FOR EXTERNAL USE.

Caution—In case of deep or puncture wounds or serious burns, consult physician. If redness, irritation, swelling, or pain persists or increases or if infection occurs discontinue use and consult physician.

The reference to wounds and burns is not required on preparations intended solely for diaper rash.

ARSENIC PREPARATIONS.

Warning—Frequent or prolonged use may cause serious injury. Do not exceed recommended dosage. Keep out of the reach of children.

BELLADONNA PREPARATIONS AND PREPARATIONS OF ITS ALKALOIDS (ATROPINE, HYOSCYAMINE, AND SCOPOLAMINE (HYOSCINE); HYOSCYAMUS, STRAMONIUM, THEIR DERIVATIVES, AND RELATED DRUG PREPARATIONS).

Warning—Not to be used by persons having glaucoma or excessive pressure within the eye, by elderly persons (where undiagnosed glaucoma or excessive pressure within the eye occurs most frequently), or by children under 6 years of age, unless directed by a physician. Discontinue use if blurring of
vision, rapid pulse, or dizziness occurs. Do not exceed recommended dosage. Not for frequent or prolonged use. If dryness of the mouth occurs, decrease dosage. If eye pain occurs, discontinue use and see your physician immediately as this may indicate undiagnosed glaucoma.

In the case of scopolamine or scopolamine aminoxide preparations indicated for insomnia, the portion of the above warning that reads "children under 6 years of age" should read instead "children under 12 years of age".

BORIC ACID (POWDERED, CRYSTALLINE, OR GRANULAR).

Warning—Do not use as a dusting powder, especially on infants, or take internally. Use only as a solution. Do not apply to badly broken or raw skin, or to large areas of the body.

BROMIDES.

Caution—Use only as directed. Do not give to children or use in the presence of kidney disease. If skin rash appears or if nervous symptoms persist, recur frequently, or are unusual, discontinue use and consult physician.

CARBOLIC ACID (PHENOL) PREPARATIONS (MORE THAN 0.5 PERCENT) FOR EXTERNAL USE.

Warning—Use according to directions. Do not apply to large areas of the body. If applied to fingers or toes, do not bandage.

CATHARTICS AND LAXATIVES—IRRITANTS AND OTHER PERISTALTIC STIMULANTS.

Warning—Do not use when abdominal pain, nausea, or vomiting are present. Frequent or prolonged use of this preparation may result in dependence on laxatives.

Mercury preparations should have added to the "frequent use" statement, the words "and serious mercury poisoning".

Phenolphthalein preparations should bear, in addition to the general warning, the following statement:

Caution—If skin rash appears, do not use this or any other preparation containing phenolphthalein.

See also Mineral Oil Laxatives.

CHLORATES: MOUTH WASH OR GARGL.

Avoid swallowing.

COBALT PREPARATIONS (See also §250.106 of this chapter.)

Warning—Do not exceed the recommended dosage. Do not administer to children under 12 years of age unless directed by physician. Do not use for more than 2 months unless directed by physician.

This warning is not required on articles containing not more than 0.5 milligram of cobalt as a cobalt salt per dosage unit and which recommend administration of not more than 0.5 milligram per dose and not more than 2 milligrams per 24-hour period.

"COUGH-DUE-TO-COLD" PREPARATIONS. (See also §310.201(a)(20) of this chapter.)

Warning—Persons with a high fever or persistent cough should not use this preparation unless directed by physician.

COUNTERIRRITANTS AND RUBEFACIENTS.

Caution—Do not apply to irritated skin or if excessive irritation develops. Avoid getting into the eyes or on mucous membranes.

If offered for use in arthritis or rheumatism, in juxtaposition therewith, the statement:

Caution—If pain persists for more than 10 days, or redness is present, or in conditions affecting children under 12 years of age consult a physician immediately.

See also "Salicylates" in this section for additional warnings for preparations containing methyl salicylate.

CREOSOTE, CRESOLS, GUAIACOL, AND SIMILAR SUBSTANCES IN PREPARATIONS FOR EXTERNAL USE.

Warning—The use of solutions stronger than those recommended may result in severe local irritation, burns, or serious poisoning. Mix as directed before pouring into douche bag. Do not use more often than twice weekly unless directed by physician.

DENTURE RELINERS, PADS, AND CUSHIONS.
§ 369.20

Warning—For temporary use only. Long-term use of this product may lead to faster bone loss, continuing irritation, sores, and tumors. For Use Only Until a Dentist Can Be Seen.

DENTURE REPAIR KITS.

Warning—For emergency repairs only. Long-term use of home-repaired dentures may cause faster bone loss, continuing irritation, sores, and tumors. This kit for emergency use only. See Dentist Without Delay.

DIARRHEA PREPARATIONS.

Warning—Do not use for more than 2 days or in the presence of high fever or in infants or children under 3 years of age unless directed by a physician.

DOUCHE PREPARATIONS.

Warning—Do not use more often than twice weekly unless directed by a physician.

See also Creosote * * * Douche for additional warning.

DRESSINGS, PROTECTIVE SPRAY-ON TYPE. (See also §310.201(a) (11) and (18) of this chapter.)

Warning—in case of deep or puncture wounds or serious burns consult physician. If redness, irritation, swelling or pain persists or increases or if infection occurs consult physician. Keep away from eyes or other mucous membranes. Avoid inhaling.

See also Dispensers Pressurized by Gaseous Propellants * * * for additional warnings to be included for products under pressure.

IODINE AND IODIDES (ORAL).

Caution—if a skin rash appears, discontinue use and consult physician.

MERCURY PREPARATIONS FOR EXTERNAL USE.

Warning—Discontinue use if rash or irritation develops or if condition for which used persists. Frequent or prolonged use, or application to large areas may cause serious mercury poisoning.

MINERAL OIL LAXATIVES. (See also §201.302 of this chapter.)

Caution—Take only at bedtime. Avoid prolonged use. Do not administer to infants or young children, in pregnancy, or to bedridden or aged patients unless directed by physician.

NASAL PREPARATIONS: VASOCONSTRICITORS (PHENYLPROANOLAMINE).

Caution—Do not exceed recommended dosage.

NUX VOMICA AND STRYCHNINE PREPARATIONS.

“Do not use more than the recommended dosage. Keep out of reach of children. In case of overdose, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away.”

OPHTHALMIC PREPARATIONS. (See also §200.50 of this chapter.)

Boric acid offered for use in the preparation of ophthalmic solutions should bear the statement: Prepare solution by boiling in water. Store in a sterile container. Prepare sufficient for one day’s use and discard unused portion.

PHENACETIN-CONTAINING PREPARATION. (See acetophenetidin.)

PHENYLPROPANOLAMINE HYDROCHLORIDE PREPARATIONS, ORAL.

Caution—Individuals with high blood pressure, heart disease, diabetes, or thyroid disease should use only as directed by physician.

POTASSIUM PERMANGANATE AQUEOUS SOLUTIONS (CONTAINING NOT MORE THAN 0.04 PERCENT POTASSIUM PERMANGANATE). (See §250.108 of this chapter.)

Warning—for external use on the skin only. Severe injury may result from use internally or as a douche. Avoid contact with mucous membranes.

QUININE AND OTHER CINCHONA DERIVATIVES (EXCEPT FOR USE IN MALARIA).

Caution—Discontinue use if ringing in the ears, deafness, skin rash, or visual disturbances occur.

RESINS, OLEORESINS, AND VOLATILE OILS.

Caution—if nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort, diarrhea, or skin rash occurs, discontinue use and consult physician.

RESORCINOL (NOT THE MONOACETATE) HAIR PREPARATIONS.
Caution—Excessive use of this preparation may temporarily discolor blond, white, or red hair.

SALICYLATES, INCLUDING ASPIRIN AND SALICYLAMIDE (EXCEPT METHYL SALICYLATE, EFFERVESCENT SALICYLATE PREPARATIONS, AND PREPARATIONS OF AMINOSALICYLIC ACID AND ITS SALTS). (See also §201.314 of this chapter.)

"Keep out of reach of children. In case of overdose, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away;" or "Keep out of reach of children."

If the article is an aspirin preparation, it should bear the first of the above two warning statements. In either case, the above information should appear on the label.

Caution—For children under 3 years of age, consult your physician; or

Caution—For younger children, consult your physician.

One of the two immediately preceding caution statements is required on the label of all aspirin tablets, but such a statement is not required on the labels of other salicylates clearly offered for administration to adults only. If offered for use in arthritis or rheumatism, in juxtaposition therewith, the statement:

Caution—If pain persists for more than 10 days, or redness is present, or in conditions affecting children under 12 years of age, consult a physician immediately.

SALICYLATES: METHYL SALICYLATE (WINTERGREEN OIL). (See also §§201.303 and 201.314 of this chapter.)

"Do not use otherwise than as directed. Keep out of reach of children to avoid accidental poisoning. If swallowed, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away."

If the preparation is a counter-irritant or rubefacient the statement:

Caution—Discontinue use if excessive irritation of the skin develops. Avoid getting into the eyes or on mucous membranes.

If offered for use in arthritis or rheumatism, in juxtaposition therewith, the statement:

Caution—If pain persists for more than 10 days, or redness is present, or in conditions affecting children under 12 years of age consult a physician immediately.

SILVER.

Caution—Frequent or prolonged use of this preparation may result in permanent discoloration of skin and mucous membranes.

SODIUM PERBorate MOUTHWASH AND GARGLE AND TOOTHPASTE.

Caution—Discontinue use if irritation or inflammation develops, or increases. Avoid swallowing.

SULFONAMIDE NOSE DROPS.

Caution—Do not use if a known allergy to sulfonamide drugs exists.

SULFUR PREPARATION FOR EXTERNAL USE.

Caution—If undue skin irritation develops or increases, discontinue use and consult physician.

THROAT PREPARATIONS FOR TEMPORARY RELIEF OF MINOR SORE THROAT: LOZENGES, TROCHES, WASHES, GARGLES, ETC. (See also §201.315 of this chapter.)

Warning—Severe or persistent sore throat or sore throat accompanied by high fever, headache, nausea, and vomiting may be serious. Consult physician promptly. Do not use more than 2 days or administer to children under 3 years of age unless directed by physician.

TOOTHCHE PREPARATIONS.

For temporary use only until a dentist can be consulted.

ZINC STEARATE DUSTING POWDERS.

"Keep out of reach of children; avoid inhaling. If swallowed, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away."

§ 369.21

Warning—Do not give to children under 3 years of age or use for more than 10 days unless directed by a physician.

If offered for use in arthritis, or rheumatism, in juxtaposition therewith, the statement:

Caution—If pain persists for more than 10 days, or redness is present, or in conditions affecting children under 12 years of age consult a physician immediately.

ALCOHOL RUBBING COMPOUND. (See 26 CFR 182.855(a)(5); The National Formulary, Tenth Edition 1955, pp. 27–28; and section 502(g) of the act).

Warning—For external use only. If taken internally serious gastric disturbances will result.

ANTIHISTAMINICS, ORAL (PHENYLTOLOXAMINE DIHYDROGEN CITRATE AND CHLOROTHEN CITRATE PREPARATIONS). (See §310.201(a)(4) and (a)(24) of this chapter.)

Caution—This preparation may cause drowsiness. Do not drive or operate machinery while taking this medication. Do not give to children under 6 years of age or exceed the recommended dosage unless directed by physician.

If offered for symptoms of colds, the statement:

Caution—If relief does not occur within 3 days, discontinue use and consult physician.

CARBETAPENTANE CITRATE PREPARATIONS. (See Cough-Due-to-Cold Preparations.)

“COUGH–DUE–TO–COLD” PREPARATIONS (CARBETAPENTANE CITRATE). (See §310.201(a)(20) of this chapter.)

“Keep out of reach of children. In case of overdose, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away.”

DICYCLOMINE HYDROCHLORIDE WITH AN ANTACID. (See §310.201(a)(8) of this chapter.)

Warning—Do not exceed the recommended dosage. Do not administer to children under 12 years of age or use for a prolonged period unless directed by physician, since persistent or recurring symptoms may indicate a serious disease requiring medical attention.

DIPHEMANIL METHYLSULFATE FOR EXTERNAL USE. (See §310.201(a)(22) of this chapter.)

Caution—If redness, irritation, swelling, or pain persists or increases, discontinue use and consult physician.

DRUGS IN DISPENSERS PRESSURIZED BY GASEOUS PROPELLANTS. (See also §310.201(a) (11) and (18) of this chapter.)

The warnings herein shall appear prominently and conspicuously, but in no case may the letters be less than \( \frac{1}{16} \) inch in height.

If the label of any package is too small to accommodate the warnings, the Commissioner may establish by regulation an acceptable alternative method, e.g., a type size smaller than \( \frac{1}{16} \) inch in height. A petition requesting such a regulation, as an amendment to this paragraph, shall be submitted to the Dockets Management Branch in the form established in part 10 of this chapter.

Warning—Avoid spraying in eyes. Contents under pressure. Do not puncture or incinerate. Do not store at temperature above 120° F. Keep out of reach of children.

In the case of products packaged in glass containers, the word “break” may be substituted for the word “puncture.”

The words “Avoid spraying in eyes” may be deleted from the warning in the case of a product not expelled as a spray, or that is intended to be used in the eyes.

In addition to the above warning, the label of a drug packaged in a self-presurized container in which the propellant consists in whole or in part of a halocarbon or hydrocarbon shall bear the following warning:

Warning—Use only as directed. Intentional misuse by deliberately concentrating and inhaling the contents can be harmful or fatal.

The warning is not required for the following products:

(a) Products expelled in the form of a foam or cream, which contain less than ten percent propellant in the container;

(b) Products in a container with a physical barrier that prevents escape of the propellant at the time of use;
(c) Products of a net quantity of contents of less than 2 ozs. that are designed to release a measured amount of product with each valve actuation;
(d) Products of a net quantity of contents of less than ½ oz.

**DYCLONINE HYDROCHLORIDE.** (See §310.201(a)(23) of this chapter.)

*Caution*—Do not use in the eyes. Not for prolonged use. Do not apply to large areas of the body. If redness, irritation, swelling, or pain persists or increases, discontinue use unless directed by physician. Do not use, but consult physician for deep or puncture wounds or serious burns. Do not use in case of rectal bleeding, as this may indicate serious disease.

**HEXADENOL.** (See §310.201(a)(11) of this chapter.)

*Caution*—Do not use for treatment of serious burns or skin conditions or for conditions which persist for prolonged periods. In such cases, consult your physician. Do not spray in vicinity of eyes, mouth, nose, or ears. Do not store above 120°F.

**IPECAC SYRUP IN ONE-FLUID OUNCE CONTAINERS FOR EMERGENCY TREATMENT OF POISONING, TO INDUCE VOMITING.** (See §201.308 of this chapter.)

Ipecac syrup packaged for over-the-counter sale must bear statements to the following effect, in a prominent and conspicuous manner:

The following statement (boxed and in red letters):

“For emergency use to cause vomiting in poisoning. Before using, call physician, the Poison Control Center, or hospital emergency room immediately for advice.”

The following warning: **Warning**—Keep out of reach of children. Do not use in unconscious persons. Ordinarily, this drug should not be used if strychnine, corrosives such as alkalies (lye) and strong acids, or petroleum distillates such as kerosene, gasoline, coal oil, fuel oil, paint thinner, or cleaning fluid have been ingested.

**ISOAMYLHYRDOCUPREINE AND ZOLAMINE HYDROCHLORIDE RECTAL PREPARATIONS FOR EXTERNAL USE** (See §310.201(a)(3) of this chapter.)

**Warning**—Do not use this preparation in case of rectal bleeding, as this may indicate serious disease.

**NEOMYCIN SULFATE WITH A VASOCONSTRICTOR, IN NASAL PREPARATIONS (SPRAY OR DROPS).**

*Caution*—Do not exceed recommended dosage. Do not administer to children under 3 years of age unless directed by physician.

**PRAMOXINE HYDROCHLORIDE FOR EXTERNAL USE.** (See §310.201(a)(19) of this chapter.)

*Caution*—Do not use in the eyes or nose. Not for prolonged use. Do not apply to large areas of the body. If redness, irritation, swelling, or pain persists or increases, discontinue use unless directed by a physician.

**SODIUM GENTISATE.** (See §§201.314 and 310.361(a)(2) of this chapter.)

**Warning**—Do not use in children under 6 years of age or use for prolonged period unless directed by physician.

“Keep out of reach of children. In case of overdose, get medical help or contact a Poison Control Center right away.”

If offered for use in arthritis or rheumatism, in juxtaposition therewith, the statement:

*Caution*—If pain persists for more than 10 days, or redness is present, or in conditions affecting children under 12 years of age, consult a physician immediately.

**TUAMINOHEPTANE SULFATE NASAL PREPARATIONS.** (See §310.201(a)(16) of this chapter.)

*Caution*—Do not exceed recommended dosage. Overdosage may cause nervousness, restlessness, or sleeplessness. Individuals with high blood pressure, heart disease, diabetes, or thyroid disease should use only as directed by physician. Do not use for more than 3 or 4 consecutive days unless directed by physician.

**VIBESATE PREPARATIONS.** (See §310.201(a)(18) of this chapter.)

*Caution*—Do not use but consult physician for deep or puncture wounds or serious burns. If redness, irritation, swelling, or pain persists or increases, discontinue use and consult physician.
Warning—Contents under pressure. Do not puncture. Do not use or store near heat or open flame. Exposure to temperatures above 130°Fahrenheit may cause bursting. Never throw container into fire or incinerator.

§ 369.22 Drugs; warning and caution statements specifically required by law.

PREPARATIONS CONTAINING HABIT-FORMING DERIVATIVES OF SUBSTANCES NAMED IN SECTION 502(d) OF THE ACT. (See §§ 329.1, 329.10, and 329.20 of this chapter.)

The statement “Warning—May be habit forming” is required to appear on the labels of all drugs containing derivatives designated in §329.1 of this chapter as habit forming, including exempt narcotic preparations described in §329.20(a) of this chapter and preparations containing one or more derivatives of barbituric acid, unless such drug is not suitable for internal use and is distributed and sold exclusively for such external use as involves no possibility of habit formation.

Effective Date Note: At 67 FR 4907, Feb. 1, 2002, §369.22 was removed, effective Apr. 2, 2002.

PARTS 370–499 [RESERVED]
FINDING AIDS

A list of CFR titles, subtitles, chapters, subchapters and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are included in the CFR Index and Finding Aids volume to the Code of Federal Regulations which is published separately and revised annually.

- Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference
- Table of CFR Titles and Chapters
- Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
- List of CFR Sections Affected
Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference
(Revised as of April 1, 2002)

The Director of the Federal Register has approved under 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR Part 51 the incorporation by reference of the following publications. This list contains only those incorporations by reference effective as of the revision date of this volume. Incorporations by reference found within a regulation are effective upon the effective date of that regulation. For more information on incorporation by reference, see the preliminary pages of this volume.

21 CFR (PARTS 300 TO 499)
FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION, DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

AOAC International (Association of Official Analytical Chemists)
481 N. Frederick Ave., Suite 500, Gaithersburg, MD 20877-2417
Telephone: (301) 924-7077

Table of CFR Titles and Chapters
(Revised as of April 1, 2002)

Title 1—General Provisions

I Administrative Committee of the Federal Register (Parts 1—49)
II Office of the Federal Register (Parts 50—299)
IV Miscellaneous Agencies (Parts 400—500)

Title 2 [Reserved]

Title 3—The President

I Executive Office of the President (Parts 100—199)

Title 4—Accounts

I General Accounting Office (Parts 1—99)

Title 5—Administrative Personnel

I Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1—1199)
II Merit Systems Protection Board (Parts 1200—1299)
III Office of Management and Budget (Parts 1300—1399)
V The International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board
   (Parts 1500—1599)
VI Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Parts 1600—1699)
VII Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations (Parts
   1700—1799)
VIII Office of Special Counsel (Parts 1800—1899)
IX Appalachian Regional Commission (Parts 1900—1999)
XI Armed Forces Retirement Home (Part 2100)
XIV Federal Labor Relations Authority, General Counsel of the Fed-
   eral Labor Relations Authority and Federal Service Impasses
   Panel (Parts 2400—2499)
XV Office of Administration, Executive Office of the President
   (Parts 2500—2599)
XVI Office of Government Ethics (Parts 2600—2699)
XXI Department of the Treasury (Parts 3100—3199)
XXII Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Part 3201)
XXIII Department of Energy (Part 3301)
XXIV Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (Part 3401)
Title 5—Administrative Personnel—Continued

XXV Department of the Interior (Part 3501)
XXVI Department of Defense (Part 3601)
XXVIII Department of Justice (Part 3801)
XXIX Federal Communications Commission (Parts 3900—3999)
XXX Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation (Parts 4000—4099)
XXXI Farm Credit Administration (Parts 4100—4199)
XXXIII Overseas Private Investment Corporation (Part 4301)
XXXV Office of Personnel Management (Part 4501)
XL Interstate Commerce Commission (Part 5001)
XLI Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Part 5101)
XLII Department of Labor (Part 5201)
XLIII National Science Foundation (Part 5301)
XLV Department of Health and Human Services (Part 5501)
XLVI Postal Rate Commission (Part 5601)
XLVII National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Part 5801)
L Department of Transportation (Part 6001)
LI Export-Import Bank of the United States (Part 6201)
LII Department of Education (Parts 6300—6399)
LIV Environmental Protection Agency (Part 6401)
LV General Services Administration (Part 6701)
LVII Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (Part 6801)
LVIII National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Part 6901)
LX United States Postal Service (Part 7001)
LXI National Labor Relations Board (Part 7101)
LXII Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Part 7201)
LXIII Inter-American Foundation (Part 7301)
LXV Department of Housing and Urban Development (Part 7501)
LXVI National Archives and Records Administration (Part 7601)
LXIX Tennessee Valley Authority (Part 7901)
LXX Consumer Product Safety Commission (Part 8101)
LXXII Department of Agriculture (Part 8301)
LXXIV Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Part 8401)
LXXVI Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Part 8601)
LXXVII Office of Management and Budget (Part 8701)

Title 6 [Reserved]

Title 7—Agriculture

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of Agriculture (Parts 0—26)
Subtitle B—Regulations of the Department of Agriculture
Title 7—Agriculture—Continued

I Agricultural Marketing Service (Standards, Inspections, Marketing Practices), Department of Agriculture (Parts 27–209)

II Food and Nutrition Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 210–299)

III Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300–399)

IV Federal Crop Insurance Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 400–499)

V Agricultural Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 500–599)

VI Natural Resources Conservation Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 600–699)

VII Farm Service Agency, Department of Agriculture (Parts 700–799)

VIII Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration (Federal Grain Inspection Service), Department of Agriculture (Parts 800–899)

IX Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Fruits, Vegetables, Nuts), Department of Agriculture (Parts 900–999)

X Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Milk), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1000–1199)

XI Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Miscellaneous Commodities), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1200–1299)

XIII Northeast Dairy Compact Commission (Parts 1300–1399)

XIV Commodity Credit Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1400–1499)

XV Foreign Agricultural Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1500–1599)

XVI Rural Telephone Bank, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1600–1699)

XVII Rural Utilities Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1700–1799)

XVIII Rural Housing Service, Rural Business-Cooperative Service, Rural Utilities Service, and Farm Service Agency, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1800–2099)

XXVI Office of Inspector General, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2600–2699)

XXVII Office of Information Resources Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2700–2799)

XXVIII Office of Operations, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2800–2899)

XXIX Office of Energy, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2900–2999)

XXX Office of the Chief Financial Officer, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3000–3099)

XXXI Office of Environmental Quality, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3100–3199)

XXXII Office of Procurement and Property Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3200–3299)
Title 7—Agriculture—Continued

XXXIII Office of Transportation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3300—3399)

XXXIV Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3400—3499)

XXXV Rural Housing Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3500—3599)

XXXVI National Agricultural Statistics Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3600—3699)

XXXVII Economic Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3700—3799)

XXXVIII World Agricultural Outlook Board, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3800—3899)

XLI [Reserved]

XLII Rural Business-Cooperative Service and Rural Utilities Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 4200—4299)

Title 8—Aliens and Nationality

I Immigration and Naturalization Service, Department of Justice (Parts 1—599)

Title 9—Animals and Animal Products

I Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1—199)

II Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration (Packers and Stockyards Programs), Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)

III Food Safety and Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300—599)

Title 10—Energy

I Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 0—199)

II Department of Energy (Parts 200—699)

III Department of Energy (Parts 700—999)

X Department of Energy (General Provisions) (Parts 1000—1099)

XVII Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board (Parts 1700—1799)

XVIII Northeast Interstate Low-Level Radioactive Waste Commission (Part 1800)

Title 11—Federal Elections

I Federal Election Commission (Parts 1—9099)

Title 12—Banks and Banking

I Comptroller of the Currency, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)
Title 12—Banks and Banking—Continued

II Federal Reserve System (Parts 200—299)
III Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Parts 300—399)
IV Export-Import Bank of the United States (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Thrift Supervision, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)
VI Farm Credit Administration (Parts 600—699)
VII National Credit Union Administration (Parts 700—799)
VIII Federal Financing Bank (Parts 800—899)
IX Federal Housing Finance Board (Parts 900—999)
XI Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council (Parts 1100—1199)
XIV Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation (Parts 1400—1499)
XV Department of the Treasury (Parts 1500—1599)
XVII Office of Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII Community Development Financial Institutions Fund, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1800—1899)

Title 13—Business Credit and Assistance

I Small Business Administration (Parts 1—199)
III Economic Development Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
IV Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board (Parts 400—499)
V Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board (Parts 500—599)

Title 14—Aeronautics and Space

I Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II Office of the Secretary, Department of Transportation (Aviation Proceedings) (Parts 200—399)
III Commercial Space Transportation, Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
V National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1200—1299)
VI Office of Management and Budget (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Commerce (Parts 0—29)
SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Commerce and Foreign Trade
I Bureau of the Census, Department of Commerce (Parts 30—199)
II National Institute of Standards and Technology, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)
Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade—Continued

III International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
IV Foreign-Trade Zones Board, Department of Commerce (Parts 400—499)
VII Bureau of Export Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 700—799)
VIII Bureau of Economic Analysis, Department of Commerce (Parts 800—899)
IX National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 900—999)
XI Technology Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 1100—1199)
XIII East-West Foreign Trade Board (Parts 1300—1399)
XIV Minority Business Development Agency (Parts 1400—1499)

SUBTITLE C—REGULATIONS RELATING TO FOREIGN TRADE AGREEMENTS
XX Office of the United States Trade Representative (Parts 2000—2099)

SUBTITLE D—REGULATIONS RELATING TO TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND INFORMATION
XXIII National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 2300—2399)

Title 16—Commercial Practices

I Federal Trade Commission (Parts 0—999)
II Consumer Product Safety Commission (Parts 1000—1799)

Title 17—Commodity and Securities Exchanges

I Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Parts 1—199)
II Securities and Exchange Commission (Parts 200—399)
IV Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)

Title 18—Conservation of Power and Water Resources

I Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, Department of Energy (Parts 1—399)
III Delaware River Basin Commission (Parts 400—499)
VI Water Resources Council (Parts 700—799)
VIII Susquehanna River Basin Commission (Parts 800—899)
XIII Tennessee Valley Authority (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 19—Customs Duties

I United States Customs Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)
II United States International Trade Commission (Parts 200—299)
Chap.

Title 19—Customs Duties—Continued

III International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 20—Employees’ Benefits

I Office of Workers’ Compensation Programs, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)
II Railroad Retirement Board (Parts 200—399)
III Social Security Administration (Parts 400—499)
IV Employees’ Compensation Appeals Board, Department of Labor (Parts 500—599)
V Employment and Training Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 600—699)
VI Employment Standards Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 700—799)
VII Benefits Review Board, Department of Labor (Parts 800—899)
VIII Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries (Parts 900—999)
IX Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans’ Employment and Training, Department of Labor (Parts 1000—1099)

Title 21—Food and Drugs

I Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—1299)
II Drug Enforcement Administration, Department of Justice (Parts 1300—1399)
III Office of National Drug Control Policy (Parts 1400—1499)

Title 22—Foreign Relations

I Department of State (Parts 1—199)
II Agency for International Development (Parts 200—299)
III Peace Corps (Parts 300—399)
IV International Joint Commission, United States and Canada (Parts 400—499)
V Broadcasting Board of Governors (Parts 500—599)
VII Overseas Private Investment Corporation (Parts 700—799)
IX Foreign Service Grievance Board Regulations (Parts 900—999)
X Inter-American Foundation (Parts 1000—1099)
XI International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, United States Section (Parts 1100—1199)
XII United States International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 1200—1299)
XIV Foreign Service Labor Relations Board; Federal Labor Relations Authority; General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority; and the Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel (Parts 1400—1499)
XV African Development Foundation (Parts 1500—1599)
Title 22—Foreign Relations—Continued

XVI Japan-United States Friendship Commission (Parts 1600—1699)

XVII United States Institute of Peace (Parts 1700—1799)

Title 23—Highways

I Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—999)

II National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)

III National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 24—Housing and Urban Development

SUBTITLE A—OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY, DEPARTMENT OF HOUSING AND URBAN DEVELOPMENT (PARTS 0—99)

SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS RELATING TO HOUSING AND URBAN DEVELOPMENT

I Office of Assistant Secretary for Equal Opportunity, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 100—199)

II Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing-Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 200—299)

III Government National Mortgage Association, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 300—399)

IV Office of Housing and Office of Multifamily Housing Assistance Restructuring, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 400—499)

V Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 500—599)

VI Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 600—699) [Reserved]

VII Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Housing Assistance Programs and Public and Indian Housing Programs) (Parts 700—799)

VIII Office of the Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Section 8 Housing Assistance Programs, Section 202 Direct Loan Program, Section 202 Supportive Housing for the Elderly Program and Section 811 Supportive Housing for Persons With Disabilities Program) (Parts 800—899)

IX Office of Assistant Secretary for Public and Indian Housing, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 900—999)

X Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Interstate Land Sales Registration Program) (Parts 1700—1799)
Title 24—Housing and Urban Development—Continued

XII Office of Inspector General, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2000—2099)
XX Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 3200—3899)
XXV Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation (Parts 4100—4199)

Title 25—Indians

I Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—299)
II Indian Arts and Crafts Board, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)
III National Indian Gaming Commission, Department of the Interior (Parts 500—599)
IV Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation (Parts 700—799)
V Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior, and Indian Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Part 900)
VI Office of the Assistant Secretary-Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Parts 1000—1199)
VII Office of the Special Trustee for American Indians, Department of the Interior (Part 1200)

Title 26—Internal Revenue

I Internal Revenue Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—899)

Title 27—Alcohol, Tobacco Products and Firearms

I Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—299)

Title 28—Judicial Administration

I Department of Justice (Parts 0—199)
III Federal Prison Industries, Inc., Department of Justice (Parts 300—399)
V Bureau of Prisons, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)
VI Offices of Independent Counsel, Department of Justice (Parts 600—699)
VII Office of Independent Counsel (Parts 700—799)
VIII Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency for the District of Columbia (Parts 800—899)
IX National Crime Prevention and Privacy Compact Council (Parts 900—999)
XI Department of Justice and Department of State (Parts 1100—1199)
Title 29—Labor

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of Labor (Parts 0—99)
Subtitle B—Regulations Relating to Labor
I National Labor Relations Board (Parts 100—199)
II Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 200—299)
III National Railroad Adjustment Board (Parts 300—399)
IV Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 400—499)
V Wage and Hour Division, Department of Labor (Parts 500—899)
IX Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission (Parts 900—999)
X National Mediation Board (Parts 1200—1299)
XII Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service (Parts 1400—1499)
XIV Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Parts 1600—1699)
XVII Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1900—1999)
XX Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2200—2499)
XXV Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 2500—2599)
XXVII Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2700—2799)
XL Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation (Parts 4000—4999)

Title 30—Mineral Resources

I Mine Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)
II Minerals Management Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—299)
III Board of Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)
IV Geological Survey, Department of the Interior (Parts 400—499)
VI Bureau of Mines, Department of the Interior (Parts 600—699)
VII Office of Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Department of the Interior (Parts 700—999)

Title 31—Money and Finance: Treasury

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of the Treasury (Parts 0—50)
Subtitle B—Regulations Relating to Money and Finance
I Monetary Offices, Department of the Treasury (Parts 51—199)
II Fiscal Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 200—399)
IV Secret Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)
Title 31—Money and Finance: Treasury—Continued

VI Bureau of Engraving and Printing, Department of the Treasury (Parts 600—699)
VII Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, Department of the Treasury (Parts 700—799)
VIII Office of International Investment, Department of the Treasury (Parts 800—899)
IX Federal Claims Collection Standards (Department of the Treasury—Department of Justice) (Parts 900—999)

Title 32—National Defense

SUBTITLE A—DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE
I Office of the Secretary of Defense (Parts 1—399)
V Department of the Army (Parts 400—699)
VI Department of the Navy (Parts 700—799)
VII Department of the Air Force (Parts 800—1099)
SUBTITLE B—OTHER REGULATIONS RELATING TO NATIONAL DEFENSE
XII Defense Logistics Agency (Parts 1200—1299)
XVI Selective Service System (Parts 1600—1699)
XVIII National Counterintelligence Center (Parts 1800—1899)
XIX Central Intelligence Agency (Parts 1900—1999)
XX Information Security Oversight Office, National Archives and Records Administration (Parts 2000—2099)
XXI National Security Council (Parts 2100—2199)
XXIV Office of Science and Technology Policy (Parts 2400—2499)
XXVII Office for Micronesian Status Negotiations (Parts 2700—2799)
XXVIII Office of the Vice President of the United States (Parts 2800—2899)

Title 33—Navigation and Navigable Waters

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 200—399)
IV Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 34—Education

SUBTITLE A—OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY, DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION (PARTS 1—99)
SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS OF THE OFFICES OF THE DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
I Office for Civil Rights, Department of Education (Parts 100—199)
II Office of Elementary and Secondary Education, Department of Education (Parts 200—299)
III Office of Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Department of Education (Parts 300—399)
Title 34—Education—Continued

IV Office of Vocational and Adult Education, Department of Education (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Department of Education (Parts 500—599)
VI Office of Postsecondary Education, Department of Education (Parts 600—699)
VII Office of Educational Research and Improvement, Department of Education (Parts 700—799)
XI National Institute for Literacy (Parts 1100—1199)

Subtitle C, Regulations Relating to Education

XII National Council on Disability (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 35—Panama Canal

I Panama Canal Regulations (Parts 1—299)

Title 36—Parks, Forests, and Public Property

I National Park Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)
II Forest Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)
III Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 300—399)
IV American Battle Monuments Commission (Parts 400—499)
V Smithsonian Institution (Parts 500—599)
VII Library of Congress (Parts 700—799)
VIII Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (Parts 800—899)
IX Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation (Parts 900—999)
X Presidio Trust (Parts 1000—1099)
XI Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (Parts 1100—1199)
XII National Archives and Records Administration (Parts 1200—1299)
XV Oklahoma City National Memorial Trust (Part 1501)
XVI Morris K. Udall Scholarship and Excellence in National Environmental Policy Foundation (Parts 1600—1699)

Title 37—Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

I United States Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce (Parts 1—199)
II Copyright Office, Library of Congress (Parts 200—299)
IV Assistant Secretary for Technology Policy, Department of Commerce (Parts 400—499)
V Under Secretary for Technology, Department of Commerce (Parts 500—599)

Title 38—Pensions, Bonuses, and Veterans' Relief

I Department of Veterans Affairs (Parts 0—99)
Title 39—Postal Service

I United States Postal Service (Parts 1—999)
III Postal Rate Commission (Parts 3000—3099)

Title 40—Protection of Environment

I Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1—799)
IV Environmental Protection Agency and Department of Justice (Parts 1400—1499)
V Council on Environmental Quality (Parts 1500—1599)
VI Chemical Safety and Hazard Investigation Board (Parts 1600—1699)
VII Environmental Protection Agency and Department of Defense; Uniform National Discharge Standards for Vessels of the Armed Forces (Parts 1700—1799)

Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management

SUBTITLE B—OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO PUBLIC CONTRACTS
50 Public Contracts, Department of Labor (Parts 50–1—50–999)
51 Committee for Purchase From People Who Are Blind or Severely Disabled (Parts 51–1—51–99)
60 Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor (Parts 60–1—60–999)
61 Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans' Employment and Training Service, Department of Labor (Parts 61–1—61–999)

SUBTITLE C—FEDERAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT REGULATIONS SYSTEM
101 Federal Property Management Regulations (Parts 101–1—101–99)
102 Federal Management Regulation (Parts 102–1—102–299)
105 General Services Administration (Parts 105–1—105–999)
109 Department of Energy Property Management Regulations (Parts 109–1—109–99)
114 Department of the Interior (Parts 114–1—114–99)
115 Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 115–1—115–99)
128 Department of Justice (Parts 128–1—128–99)

SUBTITLE D—OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO PROPERTY MANAGEMENT [RESERVED]

SUBTITLE E—FEDERAL INFORMATION RESOURCES MANAGEMENT REGULATIONS SYSTEM
201 Federal Information Resources Management Regulation (Parts 201–1—201–99) [Reserved]

SUBTITLE F—FEDERAL TRAVEL REGULATION SYSTEM
300 General (Parts 300–1—300–99)
301 Temporary Duty (TDY) Travel Allowances (Parts 301–1—301–99)
302 Relocation Allowances (Parts 302–1—302–99)
303 Payment of Expenses Connected with the Death of Certain Employees (Part 303–70)
Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management—Continued

304 Payment from a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses (Parts 304-1—304-99)

Title 42—Public Health

I Public Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—199)
IV Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Inspector General-Health Care, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1999)

Title 43—Public Lands: Interior

SUBTITLE A—OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR (PARTS 1—199)
SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS RELATING TO PUBLIC LANDS
I Bureau of Reclamation, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—499)
II Bureau of Land Management, Department of the Interior (Parts 1000—9999)
III Utah Reclamation Mitigation and Conservation Commission (Parts 10000—10005)

Title 44—Emergency Management and Assistance

I Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 0—399)
IV Department of Commerce and Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 45—Public Welfare

SUBTITLE A—DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES (PARTS 1—199)
SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS RELATING TO PUBLIC WELFARE
II Office of Family Assistance (Assistance Programs), Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 200—299)
III Office of Child Support Enforcement (Child Support Enforcement Program), Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)
IV Office of Refugee Resettlement, Administration for Children and Families Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)
V Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)
VI National Science Foundation (Parts 600—699)
VII Commission on Civil Rights (Parts 700—799)
VIII Office of Personnel Management (Parts 800—899)
Title 45—Public Welfare—Continued

X Office of Community Services, Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1099)
XI National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities (Parts 1100—1199)
XII Corporation for National and Community Service (Parts 1200—1299)
XIII Office of Human Development Services, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1300—1399)
XVI Legal Services Corporation (Parts 1600—1699)
XVII National Commission on Libraries and Information Science (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation (Parts 1800—1899)
XXV Corporation for National and Community Service (Parts 2500—2599)

Title 46—Shipping

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II Maritime Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—399)
III Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage), Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
IV Federal Maritime Commission (Parts 500—599)

Title 47—Telecommunication

I Federal Communications Commission (Parts 0—199)
II Office of Science and Technology Policy and National Security Council (Parts 200—299)
III National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System

1 Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1—99)
2 Department of Defense (Parts 200—299)
3 Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)
4 Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)
5 General Services Administration (Parts 500—599)
6 Department of State (Parts 600—699)
7 United States Agency for International Development (Parts 700—799)
8 Department of Veterans Affairs (Parts 800—899)
Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System—Continued

9 Department of Energy (Parts 900—999)
10 Department of the Treasury (Parts 1000—1099)
12 Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)
13 Department of Commerce (Parts 1300—1399)
14 Department of the Interior (Parts 1400—1499)
15 Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1500—1599)
16 Office of Personnel Management Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1600—1699)
17 Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1700—1799)
18 National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1800—1899)
19 Broadcasting Board of Governors (Parts 1900—1999)
20 Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 2000—2099)
21 Office of Personnel Management, Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 2100—2199)
23 Social Security Administration (Parts 2300—2399)
24 Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2400—2499)
25 National Science Foundation (Parts 2500—2599)
28 Department of Justice (Parts 2800—2899)
29 Department of Labor (Parts 2900—2999)
34 Department of Education Acquisition Regulation (Parts 3400—3499)
35 Panama Canal Commission (Parts 3500—3599)
44 Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 4400—4499)
51 Department of the Army Acquisition Regulations (Parts 5100—5199)
52 Department of the Navy Acquisition Regulations (Parts 5200—5299)
53 Department of the Air Force Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (Parts 5300—5399)
54 Defense Logistics Agency, Department of Defense (Part 5452)
57 African Development Foundation (Parts 5700—5799)
61 General Services Administration Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6100—6199)
63 Department of Transportation Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6300—6399)
99 Cost Accounting Standards Board, Office of Federal Procurement Policy, Office of Management and Budget (Parts 9900—9999)

Title 49—Transportation

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Transportation (Parts 1—99)
SUBTITLE B—Other Regulations Relating to Transportation
  I Research and Special Programs Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 100—199)
Chap.

**Title 49—Transportation—Continued**

II Federal Railroad Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—299)

III Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 300—399)

IV Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

V National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 500—599)

VI Federal Transit Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 600—699)

VII National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK) (Parts 700—799)

VIII National Transportation Safety Board (Parts 800—999)

X Surface Transportation Board, Department of Transportation (Parts 1000—1399)

XI Bureau of Transportation Statistics, Department of Transportation (Parts 1400—1499)

XII Transportation Security Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1500—1599)

**Title 50—Wildlife and Fisheries**

I United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)

II National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)

III International Fishing and Related Activities (Parts 300—399)

IV Joint Regulations (United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior and National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce); Endangered Species Committee Regulations (Parts 400—499)

V Marine Mammal Commission (Parts 500—599)

VI Fishery Conservation and Management, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 600—699)

**CFR Index and Finding Aids**

Subject/Agency Index
List of Agency Prepared Indexes
Parallel Tables of Statutory Authorities and Rules
List of CFR Titles, Chapters, Subchapters, and Parts
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
### Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
(Revised as of April 1, 2002)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administrative Committee of the Federal Register</td>
<td>1, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Research Projects Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations</td>
<td>5, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advisory Council on Historic Preservation</td>
<td>36, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African Development Foundation</td>
<td>22, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency for International Development, United States</td>
<td>22, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Marketing Service</td>
<td>7, I, IX, X, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Research Service</td>
<td>7, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture Department</td>
<td>5, LXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Marketing Service</td>
<td>7, I, IX, X, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Research Service</td>
<td>7, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service</td>
<td>7, III; 9, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Financial Officer, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Credit Corporation</td>
<td>7, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service</td>
<td>7, XXXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Research Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Quality, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Service Agency</td>
<td>7, VII, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Crop Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>7, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Nutrition Service</td>
<td>7, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Safety and Inspection Service</td>
<td>9, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Agricultural Service</td>
<td>7, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Service</td>
<td>36, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration</td>
<td>7, VIII; 9, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Resources Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Library</td>
<td>7, XLI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Statistics Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Resources Conservation Service</td>
<td>7, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement and Property Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Business-Cooperative Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Development Administration</td>
<td>7, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Housing Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XXXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Telephone Bank</td>
<td>7, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Utilities Service</td>
<td>7, XVII, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Agriculture, Office of</td>
<td>7, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Agricultural Outlook Board</td>
<td>7, XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Force Department</td>
<td>32, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement</td>
<td>48, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of</td>
<td>27, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMTRAK</td>
<td>49, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Battle Monuments Commission</td>
<td>36, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Indians, Office of the Special Trustee</td>
<td>25, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service</td>
<td>7, III; 9, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appalachian Regional Commission</td>
<td>5, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board</td>
<td>36, XI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

339
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arctic Research Commission</td>
<td>45, XXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armed Forces Retirement Home</td>
<td>5, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army Department</td>
<td>32, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineers, Corps of</td>
<td>33, II; 36, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefits Review Board</td>
<td>20, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of</td>
<td>34, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blind or Severely Disabled, Committee for Purchase From</td>
<td>41, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People Who Are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcasting Board of Governors</td>
<td>22, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census Bureau</td>
<td>15, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centers for Medicare &amp; Medicaid Services</td>
<td>42, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Intelligence Agency</td>
<td>32, XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Financial Officer, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Support Enforcement, Office of</td>
<td>45, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children and Families, Administration for</td>
<td>45, II, III, IV, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil Rights, Commission on</td>
<td>45, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil Rights, Office for</td>
<td>34, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard</td>
<td>33, I; 46, I; 49, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage)</td>
<td>46, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commerce Department</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census Bureau</td>
<td>15, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Affairs, Under Secretary</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Analysis, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Development Administration</td>
<td>13, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Management and Assistance</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Administration, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishery Conservation and Management</td>
<td>50, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign-Trade Zones Board</td>
<td>15, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Trade Administration</td>
<td>15, III; 19, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institute of Standards and Technology</td>
<td>15, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Marine Fisheries Service</td>
<td>50, II, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration</td>
<td>15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Telecommunications and Information</td>
<td>15, XXIII; 47, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Weather Service</td>
<td>15, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent and Trademark Office, United States</td>
<td>37, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant</td>
<td>37, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Commerce, Office of Technology, Under Secretary for</td>
<td>15, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Administration</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Policy, Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>15, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial Space Transportation</td>
<td>14, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Credit Corporation</td>
<td>7, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Futures Trading Commission</td>
<td>5, LXXI; 17, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant</td>
<td>24, V, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comptroller of the Currency</td>
<td>12, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission</td>
<td>29, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Product Safety Commission</td>
<td>5, LXXI; 16, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service</td>
<td>7, XXXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright Office</td>
<td>37, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporation for National and Community Service</td>
<td>45, XII, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Accounting Standards Board</td>
<td>48, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Council on Environmental Quality</td>
<td>40, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency for the District of</td>
<td>28, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Columbia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customs Service, United States</td>
<td>19, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Contract Audit Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Defense Department                                                  | 5, XXVI; 32, Subtitle A; 40,  
<p>| Advanced Research Projects Agency                                    | 32, I                         |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air Force Department</td>
<td>32, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army Department</td>
<td>32, V; 33, II; 36, III, 48, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Intelligence Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Logistics Agency</td>
<td>32, I, XII; 48, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineers, Corps of</td>
<td>33, II; 36, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Imagery and Mapping Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navy Department</td>
<td>32, VI; 48, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Defense, Office of</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Contract Audit Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Intelligence Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Logistics Agency</td>
<td>32, XII; 48, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board</td>
<td>10, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delaware River Basin Commission</td>
<td>18, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>District of Columbia, Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency for the Drug Enforcement Administration</td>
<td>21, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East-West Foreign Trade Board</td>
<td>15, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Affairs, Under Secretary</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Analysis, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Development Administration</td>
<td>13, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Research Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education, Department of</td>
<td>5, I, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of</td>
<td>34, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil Rights, Office for</td>
<td>34, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educational Research and Improvement, Office of</td>
<td>34, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postsecondary Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of</td>
<td>34, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocational and Adult Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educational Research and Improvement, Office of</td>
<td>34, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board</td>
<td>13, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board</td>
<td>13, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employees' Compensation Appeals Board</td>
<td>20, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employees Loyalty Board</td>
<td>5, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment and Training Administration</td>
<td>20, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment Standards Administration</td>
<td>20, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endangered Species Committee</td>
<td>50, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy, Department of</td>
<td>5, XXIII; 10, II, III, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Energy Regulatory Commission</td>
<td>5, XXIV; 18, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineers, Corps of</td>
<td>33, II; 36, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engraving and Printing, Bureau of</td>
<td>31, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Protection Agency</td>
<td>5, LJV; 40, I, IV, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Quality, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal Employment Opportunity Commission</td>
<td>5, LXII; 29, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Office of the President</td>
<td>3, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration, Office of</td>
<td>5, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Quality, Council on Management and Budget, Office of</td>
<td>40, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Drug Control Policy, Office of</td>
<td>5, III, LXXVII; 14, VI; 48, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Security Council</td>
<td>32, XI; 47, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presidential Documents</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science and Technology Policy, Office of</td>
<td>32, XXIV; 47, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade Representative, Office of the United States</td>
<td>15, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Administration, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency</td>
<td>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export-Import Bank of the United States</td>
<td>5, LII; 12, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family Assistance, Office of</td>
<td>45, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Credit Administration</td>
<td>5, XXXI; 12, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>5, XXX; 12, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Service Agency</td>
<td>7, VII, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Aviation Administration</td>
<td>14, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial Space Transportation</td>
<td>14, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Claims Collection Standards</td>
<td>31, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Communications Commission</td>
<td>5, XXIX; 47, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of</td>
<td>41, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Crop Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>7, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>5, XXII; 12, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Election Commission</td>
<td>11, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Emergency Management Agency</td>
<td>44, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>5, LVII; 41, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Energy Regulatory Commission</td>
<td>5, XXXIV; 18, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council</td>
<td>12, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Financing Bank</td>
<td>12, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Highway Administration</td>
<td>23, I, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight Office</td>
<td>12, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Housing Finance Board</td>
<td>12, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Labor Relations Authority, and General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority</td>
<td>5, XIV; 22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Law Enforcement Training Center</td>
<td>31, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Management Regulation</td>
<td>41, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Maritime Commission</td>
<td>46, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service</td>
<td>29, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission</td>
<td>5, LXXIV; 29, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration</td>
<td>49, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Prison Industries, Inc.</td>
<td>29, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Procurement Policy Office</td>
<td>48, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Railroad Administration</td>
<td>49, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Register, Administrative Committee of</td>
<td>1, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Register, Office of</td>
<td>1, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Reserve System</td>
<td>12, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board of Governors</td>
<td>5, LVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board</td>
<td>5, VI, LXXXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Service Impasses Panel</td>
<td>5, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Trade Commission</td>
<td>5, XLVII; 16, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Transit Administration</td>
<td>49, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Travel Regulation System</td>
<td>41, Subtitle F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine Arts, Commission on</td>
<td>45, XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiscal Service</td>
<td>31, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Service, United States</td>
<td>50, I, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishery Conservation and Management</td>
<td>50, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
<td>21, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Nutrition Service</td>
<td>7, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Safety and Inspection Service</td>
<td>9, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Agricultural Service</td>
<td>7, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Assets Control, Office of</td>
<td>31, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States</td>
<td>45, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Grievance Board</td>
<td>22, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Impasses Disputes Panel</td>
<td>22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Labor Relations Board</td>
<td>22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign-Trade Zones Board</td>
<td>15, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Service</td>
<td>36, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Accounting Office</td>
<td>4, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Services Administration</td>
<td>5, LVII; 41, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>48, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Management Regulation</td>
<td>41, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency</td>
<td>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geological Survey</td>
<td>30, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Affairs, Bureau of</td>
<td>25, I, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Affairs, Office of the Assistant Secretary</td>
<td>25, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Arts and Crafts Board</td>
<td>25, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land Management, Bureau of</td>
<td>43, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals Management Service</td>
<td>30, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mines, Bureau of</td>
<td>30, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Indian Gaming Commission</td>
<td>25, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Park Service</td>
<td>36, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reclamation, Bureau of</td>
<td>43, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of the Interior, Office of</td>
<td>43, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>30, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of</td>
<td>30, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Revenue Service</td>
<td>26, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Boundary and Water Commission, United States</td>
<td>22, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Mexico, United States Section</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Development, United States Agency for</td>
<td>22, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Development Cooperation Agency, United States</td>
<td>22, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>States</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Fishing and Related Activities</td>
<td>50, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Investment, Office of</td>
<td>31, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Joint Commission, United States and Canada</td>
<td>22, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board</td>
<td>5, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Trade Administration</td>
<td>15, III; 19, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Trade Commission, United States</td>
<td>19, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interstate Commerce Commission</td>
<td>5, XL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation</td>
<td>45, XXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan–United States Friendship Commission</td>
<td>22, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries</td>
<td>20, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Justice Department</td>
<td>5, XXVIII; 28, I, XI; 40, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug Enforcement Administration</td>
<td>21, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Claims Collection Standards</td>
<td>31, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Prison Industries, Inc.</td>
<td>28, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States</td>
<td>45, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immigration and Naturalization Service</td>
<td>8, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offices of Independent Counsel</td>
<td>28, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prisons, Bureau of</td>
<td>28, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labor Department</td>
<td>5, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefits Review Board</td>
<td>20, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employees’ Compensation Appeals Board</td>
<td>20, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment and Training Administration</td>
<td>20, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment Standards Administration</td>
<td>20, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of</td>
<td>41, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Procurement Regulations System</td>
<td>41, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labor-Management Standards, Office of</td>
<td>29, II, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mine Safety and Health Administration</td>
<td>30, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupational Safety and Health Administration</td>
<td>29, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration</td>
<td>29, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Contracts</td>
<td>41, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Labor, Office of</td>
<td>29, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veterans’ Employment and Training Service, Office of the</td>
<td>41, 61; 20, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wage and Hour Division</td>
<td>29, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workers’ Compensation Programs, Office of</td>
<td>20, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labor-Management Standards, Office of</td>
<td>29, II, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land Management, Bureau of</td>
<td>43, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal Services Corporation</td>
<td>45, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library of Congress</td>
<td>36, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright Office</td>
<td>37, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management and Budget, Office of</td>
<td>5, III, LXXVII; 14, VI; 48, 99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Agency | CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
--- | ---
Marine Mammal Commission | 50, V
Maritime Administration | 46, II
Merit Systems Protection Board | 5, II
Micronesian Status Negotiations, Office for | 32, XXVII
Mine Safety and Health Administration | 30, I
Minerals Management Service | 30, II
Minerals, Bureau of | 30, VI
Minority Business Development Agency | 15, XIV
Miscellaneous Agencies | 1, IV
Monetary Offices | 31, I
Morris K. Udall Scholarship and Excellence in National Environmental Policy Foundation | 36, XVI
National Aeronautics and Space Administration | 5, LIX; 14, V
Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 18
National Agricultural Library | 7, XLI
National Agricultural Statistics Service | 7, XXXVI
National and Community Service, Corporation for | 45, XII, XXV
National Archives and Records Administration | 5, LXVI; 36, XII
Information Security Oversight Office | 32, XX
National Bureau of Standards | 15, II
National Capital Planning Commission | 1, IV
National Commission for Employment Policy | 1, IV
National Commission on Libraries and Information Science | 45, XVII
National Council on Disability | 34, XII
National Counterintelligence Center | 32, XVIII
National Credit Union Administration | 12, VII
National Crime Prevention and Privacy Compact Council | 29, IX
National Drug Control Policy, Office of | 21, III
National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities | 45, XI
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration | 23, II, III; 49, V
National Imagery and Mapping Agency | 32, I
National Indian Gaming Commission | 25, III
National Institute for Literacy | 34, XI
National Institute of Standards and Technology | 15, II
National Labor Relations Board | 5, LXI; 29, I
National Marine Fisheries Service | 50, II, IV, VI
National Mediation Board | 29, X
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration | 15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI
National Park Service | 36, I
National Railroad Adjustment Board | 29, III
National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK) | 49, VII
National Science Foundation | 5, XLIII; 45, VI
Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 25
National Security Council | 32, XXI
National Security Council and Office of Science and Technology Policy | 47, II
National Telecommunications and Information Administration | 15, XXIII; 47, III

Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 18
Occupational Safety and Health Administration | 29, XVII
Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission | 29, XX
Office of Independent Counsel | 29, VI
Oklahoma City National Memorial Trust | 36, XV
Operations Office | 7, XXVIII
Overseas Private Investment Corporation | 5, XXXIII; 22, VII
Panama Canal Commission | 48, 35
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Panama Canal Regulations</td>
<td>35, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent and Trademark Office, United States</td>
<td>37, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment From a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses</td>
<td>41, 304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment of Expenses Connected With the Death of Certain</td>
<td>41, 303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employees</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peace Corps</td>
<td>22, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation</td>
<td>36, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration</td>
<td>29, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation</td>
<td>29, XL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personnel Management, Office of</td>
<td>5, I, XXXV; 45, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Service</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Contracts, Department of Labor</td>
<td>41, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public and Indian Housing, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Health Service</td>
<td>42, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Railroad Retirement Board</td>
<td>26, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reclamation, Bureau of</td>
<td>43, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refugee Resettlement, Office of</td>
<td>45, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Action Planning Commissions</td>
<td>13, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relocation Allowances</td>
<td>41, 302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research and Special Programs Administration</td>
<td>49, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Business-Cooperative Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Development Administration</td>
<td>7, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Housing Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XXXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Telephone Bank</td>
<td>7, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Utilities Service</td>
<td>7, XVII, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation</td>
<td>33, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science and Technology Policy, Office of</td>
<td>32, XXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science and Technology Policy, Office of, and National</td>
<td>47, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Council</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Service</td>
<td>31, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Securities and Exchange Commission</td>
<td>17, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Service System</td>
<td>32, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Business Administration</td>
<td>13, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smithsonian Institution</td>
<td>36, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Security Administration</td>
<td>20, III; 48, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soldiers’ and Airmen’s Home, United States</td>
<td>5, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Counsel, Office of</td>
<td>5, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of</td>
<td>34, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Department</td>
<td>22, I; 28, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>30, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of</td>
<td>30, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Transportation Board</td>
<td>49, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susquehanna River Basin Commission</td>
<td>18, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Administration</td>
<td>15, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Policy, Assistant Secretary for Technology, Under Secretary for</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tennessee Valley Authority</td>
<td>5, LXIX; 18, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrift Supervision Office, Department of the Treasury</td>
<td>12, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade Representative, United States, Office of</td>
<td>15, XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation, Department of</td>
<td>5, L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard</td>
<td>33, I; 46, I; 49, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage)</td>
<td>46, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial Space Transportation</td>
<td>14, III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

346
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contract Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>48, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Management and Assistance</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Aviation Administration</td>
<td>14, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Highway Administration</td>
<td>23, I, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration</td>
<td>49, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Railroad Administration</td>
<td>49, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Transit Administration</td>
<td>49, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maritime Administration</td>
<td>46, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration</td>
<td>23, II, III; 49, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research and Special Programs Administration</td>
<td>49, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation</td>
<td>33, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>14, II; 49, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Transportation Board</td>
<td>49, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Security Administration</td>
<td>49, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Statistics Bureau</td>
<td>49, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Security Administration</td>
<td>49, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Statistics Bureau</td>
<td>49, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel Allowances, Temporary Duty (TDY)</td>
<td>41, 301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treasury Department</td>
<td>5, XXI; 12, XV; 17, IV; 31, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of</td>
<td>27, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Development Financial Institutions Fund</td>
<td>12, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comptroller of the Currency</td>
<td>12, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customs Service, United States</td>
<td>19, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engraving and Printing, Bureau of</td>
<td>31, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Law Enforcement Training Center</td>
<td>31, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiscal Service</td>
<td>31, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Assets Control, Office of</td>
<td>31, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Revenue Service</td>
<td>26, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Investment, Office of</td>
<td>31, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary Offices</td>
<td>31, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Service</td>
<td>31, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of the Treasury, Office of</td>
<td>31, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrift Supervision, Office of</td>
<td>12, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truman, Harry S. Scholarship Foundation</td>
<td>45, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States and Canada, International Joint Commission</td>
<td>22, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States and Mexico, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States Section</td>
<td>22, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utah Reclamation Mitigation and Conservation Commission</td>
<td>43, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veterans Affairs Department</td>
<td>38, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veterans’ Employment and Training Service, Office of the Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>41, 61; 20, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vice President of the United States, Office of</td>
<td>32, XXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocational and Adult Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wage and Hour Division</td>
<td>29, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Resources Council</td>
<td>18, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workers’ Compensation Programs, Office of</td>
<td>20, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Agricultural Outlook Board</td>
<td>7, XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of CFR Sections Affected

All changes in this volume of the Code of Federal Regulations which were made by documents published in the *Federal Register* since January 1, 1986, are enumerated in the following list. Entries indicate the nature of the changes effected. Page numbers refer to *Federal Register* pages. The user should consult the entries for chapters and parts as well as sections for revisions.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>21 CFR</th>
<th>51 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory compliance date 1–1–89</td>
<td>34085</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>24479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.305 Added</td>
<td>24479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>28810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.534 Added; eff. 7–18–87</td>
<td>26114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.80 (a) amended</td>
<td>24481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>28810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>16265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330.1 (c) redesignated as (c)(1); (c)(2) added</td>
<td>16266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>18590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330.2 Authority citation removed</td>
<td>16265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330.10 Authority citation removed</td>
<td>16265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330.13 Authority citation removed</td>
<td>16265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>16266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.11 (k)(1) amended</td>
<td>27763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>32212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.30 (b) revised</td>
<td>16266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>18580, 32212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) added</td>
<td>27763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>332 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>16266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>332.30 (a) revised</td>
<td>16266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>18580, 32212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) added</td>
<td>27763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>341 Added; eff. 10–2–87</td>
<td>35339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344 Added; eff. 8–10–87</td>
<td>28660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>16267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357.101—357.180 (Subpart B)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Added (effective date pending in part)</td>
<td>27759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357.250 (b) revised</td>
<td>16267</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of CFR Sections Affected

21 CFR—Continued

Chapter I—Continued

357.150 (b) corrected .................... 7831
357.152 OMB number ..................... 2515
357.250 (b) corrected .................... 7830
357.4 Authority citation revised ....... 30057,
357.250 (b) corrected .................... 7831
357.150 (b) corrected .................... 7831
Technical correction .................... 34047
Amended; eff. 12–12–88 .................. 47324
357.21 Amended; eff. 5–2–88 .......... 15893
Amended; eff. 8–12–88 .................. 30057
Technical correction .................... 34047
Amended; eff. 12–12–88 .................. 47324
430.4 (a)(56) added ..................... 4611
430.5 (a)(89) and (91) added .......... 4611
(a)(90) and (b)(92) added ............. 42297
(a)(91) and (b)(93) added ............. 42431
430.6 (b)(91) added ..................... 4611
(b)(92) added ............................. 42288
(b)(93) added ............................. 42431
430.20 (d)(9) added ..................... 4611
436.105 (b) table amended ............. 45526
436.215 (b) table amended; (c)(9) added ............................................. 42432
Correctly designated .................. 43966
(c)(9)(i) corrected ...................... 45528
436.217 Added ............................ 42432
436.361 Added ............................ 4611
436.361 (c)(4) corrected ............... 8550
436.542 (c) amended .................... 35912
440.9a (b)(1)(i) revised; (b)(1)(ii)(d) added ............................................. 42888
(b)(1)(ii)(d)(4) formula corrected ....... 45281
440.209 Redesignated as 440.209a; new 440.209 added ..................... 42288
440.209a Redesignated from 440.209 ..................... 42288
440.209b Added .......................... 42288
442.19 Added ............................. 42432
436.80 (b)(1)(i) (A) and (D) and (iv)(A) formula corrected ................. 45528
442.27 (a)(1) amended .................. 35912
442.55a (b)(1)(v)(a) revised ............ 35912
442.55 Added ............................ 44860
442.119 Added ............................ 42493
(b)(1)(ii)(i) formula corrected ......... 45528
442.127a (a)(1) amended ................ 20710
442.255 Redesignated as 442.255a; new 442.255 added ..................... 44860
442.255a Redesignated from 442.255 ................................................. 44860

1988

21 CFR—Continued

Chapter I

Uniform compliance date 1–1–91 ........ 44861
310.540 Added ............................ 31271
312.23 (e) added ........................ 1918
312.30 (d) introductory text amended .................. 1918
312.31 (b) introductory text amended .................. 1918
312.30–312.38 (Subpart E) Added; interim .......................... 41523
Technical correction .................... 41444
312.110–312.145 (Subpart E) Redesignated as Subpart F; interim .......... 41523
(Subpart F) Redesignated from Subpart E; interim .................. 41523
312.160 (Subpart F) Redesignated as Subpart G; interim .................. 41523
(Subpart G) Redesignated from Subpart F; interim .................. 41523
314.125 (c) added; interim .................. 41524
Technical correction .................... 41444
314.420 (c) amended ..................... 33122
333.110 (e) redesignated as (f); new (e) added ............................. 18838
333.120 (a)(10) revised .................. 18838
336.50 (d) (1), (2), (3), and (4) revised .................. 35809
340 Added; eff. 3–1–89 .................. 6105
Authority citation corrected .......... 11731
341.74 (d)(1) (i), (ii), and (iii) revised .................. 35809
341.76 (d)(1), (2)(i)(a), and (ii) revised .................. 35810
349 Added ............................... 7090
Addition effective date corrected to 3–6–89 ..................................... 13217
357 Authority citation revised ........ 35810
357.150 (d)(1) revised .................. 35810
369.20 Amended ......................... 7093
Amendment effective date corrected to 3–6–89 ..................................... 13217
430.4 (a)(58) added ..................... 13400

Page 351
### 21 CFR (4102 Edition)

#### Chapter I—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>430.5</td>
<td>(a)(92) and (b)(94) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.6</td>
<td>(b)(94) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.20</td>
<td>(d)(10) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.31</td>
<td>(b)(16) added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.32</td>
<td>(j) added</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Correctly designated: 39839

341.3 | (d) added | 8509 |

#### 1989

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>330</td>
<td>Authority citation added; sectional authority citations removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.501</td>
<td>Revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.501a</td>
<td>Removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.516</td>
<td>(f) and (g) revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.527</td>
<td>Added</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Technical correction: 31405

Clarification: 50364

310.528 | Added | 28786 |

Clarification: 50364

312 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

314 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

320 | Authority citation revised; sectional and subpart authority citations removed | 39636 |

329 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

329.1 | Authority citation removed | 39636 |

330 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

331 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

332 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

333 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

336 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

338 | Added | 6826 |

Authority citation revised: 39636

340 | Authority citation revised | 39636 |

341 | Policy statement | 36762 |

Authority citation revised: 39636

341.3 | (d) added | 8509 |
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 21 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I—Continued</th>
<th>54 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>341.18 Added</td>
<td>8509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>11866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>341.78 Added</td>
<td>8509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>11866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>341.90 (d) added</td>
<td>8509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>11866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>349 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360 Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) (2) and (3) revised</td>
<td>8321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>362.20 Revised</td>
<td>8321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>361 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>389 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>429 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430 Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.4 (a)(60) added</td>
<td>20784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.5 (a)(94) and (b)(96) added</td>
<td>20784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(95) and (b)(97) added</td>
<td>38224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.6 (b)(96) added</td>
<td>20784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(97) added</td>
<td>38224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(34) amended</td>
<td>47204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>431 Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>432 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>433 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436 Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.215 (b) table footnote and (c)(10)(iii) amended</td>
<td>47204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) table amended; (c)(11) added</td>
<td>48859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.216 (c)(1) and (2) revised; (c)(5) added</td>
<td>47351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.237 Heading revised; (c)(2) amended</td>
<td>20785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.235 Added</td>
<td>38375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) corrected</td>
<td>42896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.266 Added</td>
<td>20383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g)(3) corrected</td>
<td>25849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.377 Added</td>
<td>48860</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) corrected</td>
<td>51816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.542 (b)(2) amended</td>
<td>41824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440 Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440.9a (a)(1) (vii) and (viii) revised</td>
<td>47204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440.103b (b)(4) revised</td>
<td>47351</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### 21 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I—Continued</th>
<th>54 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>440.209b (b)(1)(i)(B) and (C) amended</td>
<td>47205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.15 (a)(1), (b)(1)(ii) (A), (C) and (iii)(E) amended</td>
<td>47205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.16 Added</td>
<td>40652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.18 Added</td>
<td>40654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.19 (b)(1)(v) revised</td>
<td>47351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.20a (a)(1)(vi) amended</td>
<td>41824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrected</td>
<td>43384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.23 Added</td>
<td>48860</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.23a Added</td>
<td>20785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.104b (a)(1) amended</td>
<td>41824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.106b (a)(1) amended</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.119 (b)(1)(iii) revised</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(1)(iii) corrected</td>
<td>50472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.128 Added</td>
<td>48860</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.212b (a)(1) amended</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.216 Redesignated as 442.216a; new 442.216 added</td>
<td>40652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.216a Redesignated from</td>
<td>442.216...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.216b Added</td>
<td>40652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.218 Redesignated as 442.218a; new 442.218 added</td>
<td>40654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.218a Redesignated from</td>
<td>442.218...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.218b Added</td>
<td>40654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.238 Added</td>
<td>20786</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444 Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444.380c Added</td>
<td>13879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446 Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.60 (b)(1)(iii)(e) and (iv) amended</td>
<td>47205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.115c Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.116b Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.116d Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.15c Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.165e Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.180a Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.180b Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.181a Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.181b Removed</td>
<td>47352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446.260 (b)(1)(ii)(o) amended</td>
<td>47205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>448 Authority citation revised; sectional authority citations removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>448.330 Added</td>
<td>38376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>449 Authority citation revised; sectional authorities removed</td>
<td>39637</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 21 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Amended Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>314.330</td>
<td>(b), (e)(2)(ii)(a) and (b), (f)(5) and (6) amended</td>
<td>11580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.440</td>
<td>(a) introductory text, (1), (2), (3), (4) amended; (b) introductory text revised</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.445</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Technical correction 50279, 51799</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.30</td>
<td>(c) amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.31</td>
<td>Heading revised; (a) introductory text, (c), (d), and (f) amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.10</td>
<td>(a)(4)(ii) amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.13</td>
<td>(b), (c) and (d) revised; and new (a)(3) and (4) added; eff. 5-13-91</td>
<td>19859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.20</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>47038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.22</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.30</td>
<td>(g) amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.31</td>
<td>Redesignated from 331.30 and 331.31</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.32</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>50279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.63</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>52991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.80</td>
<td>Redesignated from 331.31 and new (a)(3) and (4) added; eff. 5-13-91</td>
<td>19859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.01</td>
<td>(a)(4)(iv) added; (5) and (6) added; eff. 12-5-91</td>
<td>50172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.14</td>
<td>(b)(2)(i) amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.11</td>
<td>(a)(1) and (4) revised; eff. 5-13-91</td>
<td>19859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.22</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.30</td>
<td>(g) amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.31</td>
<td>Redesignated as 331.30 and new (a)(3) and (4) added; eff. 5-13-91</td>
<td>19859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.40</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.50</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.51</td>
<td>(d) amended</td>
<td>11581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.53</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.17</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.32</td>
<td>(a)(3)(ii) introductory text revised</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.40</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.50</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.51</td>
<td>(d) amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.53</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.17</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.32</td>
<td>(a)(3)(ii) introductory text revised</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.40</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.50</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.51</td>
<td>(d) amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.53</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321.17</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.14</td>
<td>(b)(2), (c)(1), (3), (4), (d)(6) and (e) amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 21 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Amended Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>333.120</td>
<td>(b)(3) added; eff. 3-15-91</td>
<td>9722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333.125</td>
<td>(a)(7) revised; eff. 10-3-91</td>
<td>40381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333.150</td>
<td>(a)(5)(ii) and (d)(3) corrected</td>
<td>37403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333.155</td>
<td>(c)(1)(ii) and (d)(3) corrected</td>
<td>37403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333.501</td>
<td>(Subpart F) Added; eff. 8-14-91</td>
<td>33361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.15</td>
<td>(b)(2) and (c)(3) and (d) corrected</td>
<td>37403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.150</td>
<td>(Subpart F) Added; eff. 8-14-91</td>
<td>33361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.20</td>
<td>Amended; eff. 8-5-91</td>
<td>31783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.30</td>
<td>Authority citation corrected</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.40</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.50</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.60</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.70</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335.80</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>11582</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## List of CFR Sections Affected

### 21 CFR—Continued

#### 56 FR Page

**Chapter I—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>455.40</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>2641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(1) introductory text, (a)(1)(ii) and (b)(2) corrected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(1) introductory text corrected</td>
<td></td>
<td>11110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.82a</td>
<td>(a)(3)(ii) amended</td>
<td>11585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.185b</td>
<td>(a)(3)(ii) introductory text amended</td>
<td>11585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.204a</td>
<td>Corrected</td>
<td>9317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(3)(ii) introductory text amended</td>
<td></td>
<td>11585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.540</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>2641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.510d</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td>11585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.204a</td>
<td>Corrected</td>
<td>9317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(1) introductory text, (a)(2) introductory text and (1) revised; (d)(6) added; eff. 12–9–93</td>
<td></td>
<td>58374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(21), (d)(7) and (8) added; (d) introductory text revised; eff. 6–18–93</td>
<td></td>
<td>60423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(10)(iv) and (d)(9) added; (d) introductory text revised; eff. 6–18–93</td>
<td></td>
<td>60427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(22) and (d)(10) added; (d) introductory text revised; eff. 6–18–93</td>
<td></td>
<td>60431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.95</td>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>19458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.34</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>13248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.35</td>
<td>(a) amended</td>
<td>13249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.42</td>
<td>(b)(3)(ii) and (4) added</td>
<td>13249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.44</td>
<td>(b)(1) and (2) revised</td>
<td>13249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(1) and (2) revised</td>
<td></td>
<td>13249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.145</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>10814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314 Technical correction</td>
<td></td>
<td>61489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.1</td>
<td>(a)(1) and (2) amended</td>
<td>17981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.3</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
<td>17981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.50</td>
<td>Introductory text amended, (a)(2) and (c)(1) amended; (g)(3) added</td>
<td>17982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.54</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>17982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(2) corrected</td>
<td></td>
<td>61612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.55</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.56</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.60</td>
<td>Existing text designated as (a) and (b) added</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.70</td>
<td>(e) added</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.71</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.80</td>
<td>(a), (c)(1) and (d)(1) amended; (b) revised</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.81</td>
<td>(b)(3)(ii) added</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.92–314.99</td>
<td>(Subpart C) Designated as subpart D</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.94</td>
<td>(a)(9)(ii) corrected</td>
<td>29353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.100–314.170</td>
<td>(Subpart C) Re-designated as subpart D</td>
<td>17983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.100</td>
<td>Heading revised</td>
<td>17987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.101</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>17987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.102</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>17988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)(3) and (4) corrected</td>
<td></td>
<td>29353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.103</td>
<td>(a) revised; (b) and (c)(2) amended</td>
<td>17988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.104</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>17989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.105</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>17989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.110</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>17989</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1991

**56 FR Page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>310.545</td>
<td>(a)(20) added; (d) revised</td>
<td>37798</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 56 FR 37792 effective date corrected; (d)(2) corrected</td>
<td></td>
<td>46823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(7) amended; (d) introductory text revised; (d)(3) added; eff. 12–4–92</td>
<td></td>
<td>63568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.120</td>
<td>(c)(4) revised</td>
<td>22113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.145</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>3776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.445</td>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>3776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333.301–333.350</td>
<td>(Subpart D) Added; eff. 8–16–92</td>
<td>41019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>358.701–358.750</td>
<td>(Subpart H) Added</td>
<td>64568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>361.1</td>
<td>(c)(3), (4) and (d)(8) amended</td>
<td>10806</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>429.55</td>
<td>(b) revised; interim</td>
<td>50249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.216a</td>
<td>(a)(1), (2), (b)(1)(i)(a) and (1)(a) revised</td>
<td>484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(1)(i)(a) corrected</td>
<td></td>
<td>2585</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1992

**57 FR Page**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>2366, 4607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.201</td>
<td>(a)(25) removed; (b) added; eff. 12–9–93</td>
<td>58374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.305</td>
<td>(a) revised; (b)(2), (c)(4) and (d)(1) amended</td>
<td>17980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.537</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>29173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.545</td>
<td>(a)(1), (2), (6)(1), (11), (7), (8) and (12)(iv) amended</td>
<td>3526</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Note:** This text appears to be a list of federal regulations affected by changes in the Code of Federal Regulations. The sections listed include various amendments and revisions to specific provisions within the 21 CFR regulations, notably in Chapters I and II, effective in 1991 and 1992. The table outlines the specific sections amended, added, or revised, along with the dates of effect and corresponding pages from the Federal Register where these changes were announced. The list is organized in a tabular format, detailing each section's number, the nature of the change, and the associated page number for further reference.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Revised</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>310.56</td>
<td>Redesignated as 320.35</td>
<td>18001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.55</td>
<td>Redesignated as 320.34</td>
<td>18001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.54</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.53</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.52</td>
<td>Redesignated as 320.33</td>
<td>18001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.51</td>
<td>Redesignated as 320.32</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.50</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.49</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.48</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.47</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.46</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.45</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.44</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.43</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.42</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.41</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.40</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.39</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>18000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.38</td>
<td>Designated from 320.38</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.37</td>
<td>Designated from 320.37</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.36</td>
<td>Designated from 320.36</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.35</td>
<td>Designated from 320.35</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.34</td>
<td>Designated from 320.34</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.33</td>
<td>Designated from 320.33</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.32</td>
<td>Designated from 320.32</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.31</td>
<td>Designated from 320.31</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.30</td>
<td>Designated from 320.30</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.29</td>
<td>Designated from 320.29</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.28</td>
<td>Designated from 320.28</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.27</td>
<td>Designated from 320.27</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.26</td>
<td>Designated from 320.26</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.25</td>
<td>Designated from 320.25</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.24</td>
<td>Designated from 320.24</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.23</td>
<td>Designated from 320.23</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.22</td>
<td>Designated from 320.22</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.21</td>
<td>Designated from 320.21</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.20</td>
<td>Designated from 320.20</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.19</td>
<td>Designated from 320.19</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.18</td>
<td>Designated from 320.18</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.17</td>
<td>Designated from 320.17</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.16</td>
<td>Designated from 320.16</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.15</td>
<td>Designated from 320.15</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.14</td>
<td>Designated from 320.14</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.13</td>
<td>Designated from 320.13</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.12</td>
<td>Designated from 320.12</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.11</td>
<td>Designated from 320.11</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.10</td>
<td>Designated from 320.10</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.9</td>
<td>Designated from 320.9</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.8</td>
<td>Designated from 320.8</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.7</td>
<td>Designated from 320.7</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.6</td>
<td>Designated from 320.6</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.5</td>
<td>Designated from 320.5</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.4</td>
<td>Designated from 320.4</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.3</td>
<td>Designated from 320.3</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.2</td>
<td>Designated from 320.2</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.1</td>
<td>Designated from 320.1</td>
<td>46745</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 21 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>21 CFR—Continued</th>
<th>59 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>450.224b (a)(1), (3)(i)(A), (B), (b)(1) and (4) revised; (b) introductory text amended; (b)(2) removed</td>
<td>9641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452.160 Redesignated as 456.160a; new 456.160 added</td>
<td>52078</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452.160a Redesignated from 452.160</td>
<td>52078</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452.160b Added</td>
<td>52078</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.86 Added</td>
<td>8400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>455.88 Added</td>
<td>40807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(1) corrected</td>
<td>46479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(2) redesignated as (a)(2)(1); (a)(15)(ii) stayed in part</td>
<td>42436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(6)(iv), (d)(19) and (20) added</td>
<td>38642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(15)(i) stayed in part</td>
<td>42436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(2) redesignated as (a)(2)(1); (a)(2)(i) heading, (ii) and (d)(24) added; (d) introductory text and (1) revised; eff. 10–7–96</td>
<td>52507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>329 Added; eff. 3–13–96</td>
<td>13595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>355 Added; eff. 10–7–96</td>
<td>52507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>57927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>355.50 (a) corrected</td>
<td>57927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>369 Technical correction</td>
<td>57927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>369.21 Amended; eff. 10–7–96</td>
<td>52510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>429.55 (b) revised; interim</td>
<td>56516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.4 (a)(70) added</td>
<td>58230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.5 (a)(105) and (b)(107) added</td>
<td>58230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430.6 (b)(107) added</td>
<td>58230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.105 Table corrected; CFR correction</td>
<td>66898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.106 Table corrected; CFR correction</td>
<td>66898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436.215 (b) table amended; (c)(9) revised</td>
<td>27221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) table amended; (c)(19) added</td>
<td>58230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442.52 (b)(1)(iv) and (3) revised</td>
<td>33712</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1995

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>21 CFR</th>
<th>60 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>310.201 (a)(10) and (15) removed; eff. 10–7–96</td>
<td>29477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.201 (a) (10) and (15) removed; eff. 10–7–96</td>
<td>29477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.545 (a)(6)(i)(B) stayed in part; (a)(6)(iv)(C) and (d)(25) added; (d) introductory text revised</td>
<td>25142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.2 (b)(6) added</td>
<td>51529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.20 (c) added</td>
<td>51529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.23 (f) added</td>
<td>51529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.30 Introductory text amended</td>
<td>51529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.42 (b)(5) added</td>
<td>51530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.53 (c)(1)(v)(d) revised</td>
<td>57280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.54 Added</td>
<td>51530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.60 Amended</td>
<td>51530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.92 (b) revised</td>
<td>57280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.130 (d) added</td>
<td>51530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.330 (d) redesignated as (d)(1); (d)(2) added</td>
<td>51530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328.10 (f) redesignated as (g); new (f) added</td>
<td>58630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.21 redesignated from 331.29 and revised; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.21 Redesignated as 331.20; new 331.21 redesignated from 331.21 and revised; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.21 Redesignated as 331.20; new 331.21 redesignated from 331.29 and revised; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.22 Removed; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.23 Removed; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.24 Removed; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.25 Removed; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.26 Removed; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.29 Redesignated as 331.21; eff. 2–10–97</td>
<td>4823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.30 (c)(5) and (f) removed; (c)(6), (7) and (g) redesignated as (c)(5), (6) and (f)</td>
<td>17806</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 21 CFR—Continued

**Chapter I—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Revised/Amended</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>310.47</td>
<td>Added; (b)(1)(i) and (2) heading revised; (b)(1)(iv), (v) and (2) introductory text amended; (b)(2)(iii) redesignated as (b)(2)(iv); new (b)(2)(iii) added</td>
<td>48576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.53</td>
<td>(c)(4) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310.57</td>
<td>(b) and (c) redesigned as (c) and (d); new (b) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.23</td>
<td>(a)(10)(iii) redesigned as (a)(10)(iv); new (a)(10)(iii) added</td>
<td>66669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.53</td>
<td>(c)(4) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.57</td>
<td>(b) and (c) redesigned as (c) and (d); new (b) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.64</td>
<td>(d) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.82</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended</td>
<td>66669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312.80–312.88</td>
<td>(Subpart E) Authority citation revised</td>
<td>26698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.107</td>
<td>(c)(1) and (4) amended; interim</td>
<td>59712</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.170</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>26698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.200</td>
<td>(d)(3) amended; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.300</td>
<td>(b)(6) introductory text amended; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.430</td>
<td>(f)(6) amended</td>
<td>26698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.36</td>
<td>Existing text designated as (a); (b) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330.10</td>
<td>(f) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>341.20</td>
<td>(b)(1) revised; eff. 7–30–99</td>
<td>40650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>341.80</td>
<td>(c)(12)(i), (vii), (d)(2)(i) and (viii) heading revised; eff. 7–30–99</td>
<td>40650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>343</td>
<td>Added; eff. 10–25–99</td>
<td>56814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>343.80</td>
<td>(a)(1) corrected; eff. 10–25–99</td>
<td>66015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### List of CFR Sections Affected

**21 CFR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Revised/Amended</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>318.215</td>
<td>(c)(16)(iv) and (18)(iv) corrected; CFR correction</td>
<td>52659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.250</td>
<td>(k) redesignated as (l); new (b) added; eff. 8–10–98</td>
<td>6862</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.300</td>
<td>(a)(8) revised; eff. 6–1–99</td>
<td>66399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.350</td>
<td>(b)(2)(iv); new (b)(2)(iii) redesignated as (a); and (b)(2)(iii) added; new (b)(2)(iv) added; (b)(2)(ii) revised; eff. 6–1–99</td>
<td>66398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.355</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>66670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.360</td>
<td>(a)(8) revised; eff. 6–1–99</td>
<td>66399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.365</td>
<td>(c)(1) and (4) amended; interim</td>
<td>59712</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.370</td>
<td>(c)(1) and (4) amended; interim</td>
<td>59712</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.375</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>26698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.380</td>
<td>(d)(3) amended; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.390</td>
<td>(f)(6) amended</td>
<td>26698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320.36</td>
<td>Existing text designated as (a); (b) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>329.10</td>
<td>(f) added; eff. 2–2–99</td>
<td>5253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.20</td>
<td>(b)(1) revised; eff. 7–30–99</td>
<td>40650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331.80</td>
<td>(c)(2)(i), (vii), (d)(2)(i) and (viii) heading revised; eff. 7–30–99</td>
<td>40650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333.80</td>
<td>Added; eff. 10–25–99</td>
<td>56814</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333.85</td>
<td>(a)(1) corrected; eff. 10–25–99</td>
<td>66015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>338</td>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>46389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>358</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>43903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>369</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>26698</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Effective date confirmation: 48576